Oracle® Revenue Management and Billing

Version 2.4.0.0.0

Banking User Guide

Revision 5.0

E61292-01

March, 2015

ORACLE®

Notices

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Version 2.4.0.0.0 Banking User Guide

E61292-01

Copyright Notice

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Trademark Notice

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

License Restrictions Warranty/Consequential Damages Disclaimer

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure, and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or de-compilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

Warranty Disclaimer

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

Restricted Rights Notice

If this software or related documentation is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS

Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware and/or documentation delivered to U.S. Government end users are “commercial computer software” pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware and/or documentation shall be subject to license terms and restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

Hazardous Applications Notice

This software is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use of this software. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software in dangerous applications.

Third Party Content, Products, and Services Disclaimer

This software and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third party content, products, or services.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Contents

Preface: About this Document.....xvii
Intended Audience..... xvii
Organization of the Document.....xviii
Conventions.....xix
Related Documents..... xix

Chapter 1: Banking Control Central..... 21
Banking Control Central..... 22
Searching for an Account.....24
Viewing Contracts Assigned to an Account..... 26
Viewing Payment History of an Account..... 27
Searching for a Customer.....27
Using Advanced Search for an Account..... 29
View Account Contracts Information..... 32
Searching for Contracts Assigned to an Account.....34
View Account Financial Transaction History.....34
Searching for Financial Transactions of an Account 36
Account Payment Summary.....37
Searching Payments Made for an Account..... 38
View Accounts of Customer..... 39
Searching for Accounts of a Customer..... 41
Control Central.....41
Searching for Child Persons' Accounts..... 43

Chapter 2: Invoicing Group.....45
Manage Invoicing Groups.....47
Searching for a Master Account.....47
Searching for a Member Account..... 48
Viewing the Master Account Details..... 50
Viewing the Member Account Details.....51
Invoicing Group Maintenance — Add/Edit.....51
Adding a Member to the Master Account.....55
Editing the Member Account Assignment Details.....56
Removing a Member from the Master Account.....57
Invoicing Group Information..... 58
Editing the Member Account Assignment Details.....60
Removing a Member from the Master Account.....61

Chapter 3: Pricing Management..... 63
Types of Pricing..... 65
Multi Parameter Based Pricing..... 65
Price List Assignment (Account).....68
Viewing Price Lists Assigned to an Account.....75
Viewing Historical Price List Assignments of an Account.....76
Viewing Inactive Price List Assignments of an Account..... 76
Assigning a Price List to an Account.....77

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment....79
Editing the Price List Assignment Details....80
Price List Assignment (Customer)....82
Viewing Price Lists Assigned to a Customer....88
Viewing Historical Price List Assignments of a Customer....89
Viewing Inactive Price List Assignments of a Customer....89
Assigning a Price List to a Customer....90
Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment....92
Editing the Price List Assignment Details....93
Pricing (Account)....95
Viewing Effective Pricing of an Account....100
Exporting Effective Pricing in CSV Format....101
Assigning a Product to an Account....103
Pricing (Customer)....104
Viewing Effective Pricing of a Customer....109
Exporting Effective Pricing in CSV Format....110
Assigning a Product to a Customer....112
Manage Products....113
Searching for a Product....120
Viewing the Product Details....121
Creating a Product....122
Defining Characteristics for a Product....123
Associating a Parameter with a Product....124
Associating a Product with a Division....126
Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Product....127
Editing a Product....129
Manage Price Lists....130
Searching for a Price List....132
Viewing the Price List Details....133
Creating a Price List....133
Defining the Price List Hierarchy....135
Defining Characteristics for a Price List....136
Associating a Price List with a Division....137
Editing a Price List....138
Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists....139
Viewing Products Assigned to a Price List....142
Removing a Product from a Price List....143
Assigning a Product to a Price List....143
Copy Price List....144
Copying a Price List....147
Product Relationship Maintenance....148
Viewing Products Added in a Bundle....150
Filtering Products of a Bundle....150
Adding a Product to a Bundle....152
Removing a Product from a Bundle....154
Copy Bundle....154
Copying a Bundle....157
Manage Rate Definitions....158
Defining Tiering Setup of a Rate Component....160
Editing Tiering Setup of a Rate Component....161
Deleting Tiering Setup of a Rate Component....162
Manage Tiering Criteria....163
Creating a Tiering Criterion....165
Editing a Tiering Criterion....165
Add Product Pricing....166
Defining Product Pricing....172

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Edit Product Pricing.... 174
Editing Product Pricing.... 179
Override Product Pricing.... 181
Overriding Product Pricing.... 186
Price Assignment Characteristics.... 187
Defining Characteristics for the Price Assignment.... 188
Editing the Price Assignment Characteristics.... 189
Variance Parameter.... 190
Filtering the Variance Parameters.... 190
Defining a Variance Parameter.... 191
Editing a Variance Parameter.... 191
Deleting a Variance Parameter.... 192
Parameter.... 192
Searching for a Parameter.... 194
Defining a Parameter.... 194
Editing a Parameter.... 196
Deleting a Parameter.... 198
Copying a Parameter.... 198
Viewing the Parameter Details.... 200
Product Parameters.... 201
Setting Product Parameters.... 202

Chapter 4: Division.... 203

Division Search.... 204
Searching for a Division.... 204
Division.... 205
Defining a Division.... 207
Associating Access Groups with a Division.... 210
Associating Products with a Division.... 211
Associating Price Lists with a Division.... 212
Associating Languages with a Division.... 212
Associating Invoice Currencies with a Division.... 213
Associating Customer Identifier Types with a Division.... 214
Associating Algorithms with a Division.... 215
Defining Characteristics for a Division.... 217
Associating Bill Messages with a Division.... 218
Associating Party Char Types with a Division.... 219
Associating Bill Cycles with a Division.... 220
Associating Account Identifier Types with a Division.... 221
Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Product.... 222

Chapter 5: Approval Workflow.... 225

Most Commonly Used Terms.... 226
Approval Workflow Process.... 226
Prerequisites.... 228
Approve.... 230
Approving a Request.... 232
Rejecting a Request.... 233
Cancelling a Request.... 234
Resolve.... 236
Resolving a Request.... 238
Withdrawing a Request.... 239
Modify.... 240
Modifying a Request.... 242

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Withdrawing a Request....243
Logs....244
Viewing Log of an Approval Workflow Request....246
Approve Price Assignment....247
Approving Price Assignment Request of an Account....250
Approving Price Assignment Request of a Customer....252
Approving Price Assignment Request of a Price List....253
Rejecting Price Assignment Request of an Account....254
Rejecting Price Assignment Request of a Customer....255
Rejecting Price Assignment Request of a Price List....256
Cancelling Price Assignment Request of an Account....258
Cancelling Price Assignment Request of a Customer....259
Cancelling Price Assignment Request of a Price List....260
Modify Price Assignment....261
Modifying Price Assignment Request of an Account....265
Modifying Price Assignment Request of a Customer....266
Modifying Price Assignment Request of a Price List....266
Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of an Account....267
Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Customer....268
Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Price List....269
Resolve Price Assignment....270
Resolving Price Assignment Request of an Account....274
Resolving Price Assignment Request of a Customer....275
Resolving Price Assignment Request of a Price List....276
Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of an Account....277
Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Customer....278
Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Price List....279
Approval Workflow Group....280
Defining an Approval Workflow Group....283
Editing an Approval Workflow Group....286
Deleting an Approval Workflow Group....290
Adding a Business Object....291
Editing a Business Object....292
Deleting a Business Object....294
Defining a Group BO Relation....294
Editing a Group BO Relation....295
Deleting a Group BO Relation....296
Approval Workflow Chain....297
Defining an Approval Workflow Chain....299
Editing an Approval Workflow Chain....300
Deleting an Approval Workflow Chain....301
Defining an Approval Level....301
Editing an Approval Level....302
Deleting an Approval Level....303
Approval Workflow Criteria Type....304
Defining an Approval Workflow Criteria Type....305
Editing an Approval Workflow Criteria Type....306
Deleting an Approval Workflow Criteria Type....307
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage....307
Creating an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link....309
Editing an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link....310
Deleting an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link....311
Defining an Approval Workflow Criterion....311
Editing an Approval Workflow Criterion....312
Deleting an Approval Workflow Criterion....313
Approval Workflow Settings....314

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Defining Approval Workflow Settings....315
Editing Approval Workflow Settings....317
Deleting Approval Workflow Settings....319
Approval Workflow Reason....319
Defining a Reason Code....320
Editing a Reason Code....320
Deleting a Reason Code....321

Chapter 6: Multi-Currency Accounts....323
Creating Adjustments....325
Generating Bills....325
Applying Payments....325
Monitoring Overdue Debt....325
Generating History....325

Chapter 7: Rules Engine....327
Rule Type....328
Searching for a Rule Type....329
Creating a Rule Type....329
Editing a Rule Type....330
Deleting a Rule Type....331
Copying a Rule Type....332
View Rule Type....332
Viewing the Rule Type Details....333
Rule....333
Searching for a Rule....335
Defining a Rule....335
Editing a Rule....339
Deleting a Rule....343
Copying a Rule....344
View Rule....345
Viewing the Rule Details....347
Rule Check....347
Validating Effective Rules....348

Chapter 8: Alternate Sequential Invoice Numbers....351
Setting Alternate Sequential Invoice Numbers....352

Chapter 9: Currency Conversion....355
Prerequisites....356
Bill Segment Generation....357
Adjustment Creation....357
Payment and Tender Creation....358
Transaction Aggregation....358
FT GL Creation....358
Manage Exchange Rates....359
Searching for an Exchange Rate....363
Editing an Exchange Rate....364
Deleting an Exchange Rate....364
Defining an Exchange Rate....365

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 10: Transaction Feed Management.....367

Transaction Feed Management Process.....369
Header Validation.....370
Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination.....372
Product Pricing Verification.....380
Aggregation.....383
Clean Up.....386
Disaggregation.....388
Cancellation.....393
Rollback.....396
Feed Status Transition.....398
Transaction Status Transition.....398
Transaction Leg Status Transition.....400
CSV File Format.....408
Error List.....411
Feed Management Dashboard.....442
Searching for a Transaction Feed.....445
Viewing Division Level Details of a Transaction Feed.....446
Viewing Transaction Details of a Division in a Feed.....446
View Billed Transactions.....447
Searching for a Bill.....451
Viewing the Bill Segments of a Bill.....451
Viewing Transactions for which the Bill Segment is Generated.....452
Viewing SQIs Calculated on the Billable Charge.....452
Transaction Details.....453
Searching for an UPLD Transaction.....454
Searching for an INPD Transaction.....456
Searching for an COMP Transaction.....459
Searching for an CNCL Transaction.....461
Searching for an EROR Transaction.....463
Searching for an IGNR Transaction.....466
Searching for an INVL Transaction.....468
Viewing the Transaction Legs.....470
Viewing Error Messages.....472
Viewing the Transaction Details.....472
Adding a Transaction.....474
Copying a Transaction.....477
Transaction Source.....479
Searching for a Transaction Source.....480
Defining a Transaction Source.....481
Editing a Transaction Source.....481
Deleting a Transaction Source.....482
Copying a Transaction Source.....483
Transaction Record Type.....483
Searching for a Transaction Record Type.....485
Defining a Transaction Record Type.....485
Editing a Transaction Record Type.....487
Deleting a Transaction Record Type.....489
Copying a Transaction Record Type.....489
Transaction Aggregation Rule.....491
Defining Transaction Aggregation Rule for an SQI.....491
Editing Transaction Aggregation Rule of an SQI.....492
Deleting Transaction Aggregation Rule of an SQI.....493
Product SQIs.....494

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Viewing SQIs Associated with a Product — Division Combination....495
Associating an SQI with a Product — Division Combination....496
Editing SQIs Associated with the Product — Division Combination....497
Removing a Link Between SQIs and the Product — Division Combination....497
Copying Product SQIs....498
Schedule....499
Searching for a Schedule....500
Viewing the Schedule Details....500
Defining a Schedule....501
Editing a Schedule....502
Deleting a Schedule....503
Disaggregation Request....504
Searching for a Disaggregation Request....504
Creating a Disaggregation Request....507
Deleting a Disaggregation Request....511

Chapter 11: On Demand Billing....513
Prerequisites....515
CSV File Format for Banking Usage Data....517
CSV File Format for Insurance Usage Data....519
Usage Record Status Transition....522
File Type....522
Defining a File Type....523
Editing a File Type....528
Deleting a File Type....534
On Demand Billing....534
Searching for a File Group....538
Defining a File Group....538
Editing a File Group....540
Deleting a File Group....541
Closing a File Group....542
Generating Adhoc Bills for a File Group....542
Freezing All Bills of a File Group....543
Freezing Selected Bills of a File Group....544
Viewing All Bills Generated for a File Group....545
Viewing Usage Data Files of a File Group....547
Usage Data Processing....548
Searching for a Usage Data File....551
Uploading a Usage Data File....551
Replacing an Existing File....554
Viewing All Records of a Usage Data File....557
Viewing Valid Records of a Usage Data File....560
Viewing Invalid Records of a Usage Data File....564
Viewing Submitted Records of a Usage Data File....567
Viewing Processed Records of a Usage Data File....570
Viewing Cancelled Records of a Usage Data File....574
Viewing Rejected Records of a Usage Data File....577
Viewing Billed Records of a Usage Data File....580
Viewing Unbilled Records of a Usage Data File....584
Submitting a Valid Record....587
Approving a Valid Record....588
Rejecting a Valid Record....591
Cancelling a Usage Data File....592
Revalidating a Usage Data File....594
Editing a Valid, Invalid, or Rejected Usage Record....595

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Filtering Usage Records....595

Chapter 12: Upload Validated Payment Data....597

Payment Upload Process....598
Upload Payment Records in the Pre-Staging Area....598
Move Payment Records to the Staging Area....599
Create Payment Events and Payments....599
Prerequisites....600
CSV File Format....600
Payment Data File Status Transition....602
Payment Record Status Transition....602
Error List....604
Payment Upload....609
Searching for a Payment Data File....613
Uploading a Payment Data File....613
Viewing All Records of a Payment Data File....615
Viewing Valid Records of a Payment Data File....616
Viewing Invalid Records of a Payment Data File....618
Viewing Error Records of a Payment Data File....619
Viewing Processed Records of a Payment Data File....621
Replacing an Existing File....622
Cancelling a Payment Data File....624
Moving the Payment Records to the Staging Area....624
Editing a Payment Staging Record....625
Creating Payments for a Payment Data File....625
Viewing Payment Events Created for a Payment Data File....626
Viewing Payments Created Through a Payment Event....626

Chapter 13: Freeze Payments on Notification....629

Freeze Payments on Notification Process....630
Creating Automatic Payments....630
Generating a Flat File....630
Freezing or Canceling Automatic Payments....630
Generating To Do Entries....631
Creating Tender Controls....631
Prerequisites....632
Clearing Staging Record Status Transition....632
Auto Payment Upload Reason....633
Defining an Upload Reason....634
Editing an Upload Reason....635
Deleting an Upload Reason....637
Auto Payment Clearing Staging....637
Searching for a Clearing Record....641
Viewing the Clearing Staging Record....641
Viewing the Upload Reason Specified in the Clearing Staging Record....642
Viewing the Characteristics Specified in the Clearing Staging Record....642
Editing a Clearing Staging Record....643
Deleting a Clearing Staging Record....645

Chapter 14: Construct Based Billing....647

Prerequisites....649
Construct Status Transition....649
Template....650

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Searching for a Template.... 652
Defining a Template....652
Defining Characteristics for a Template.... 655
Editing a Template.... 656
Deleting a Template.... 658
Viewing the Template Details....658
Profile....659
Searching for a Profile....661
Defining a Profile....661
Associating Algorithms with a Profile....663
Editing a Profile.... 664
Deleting a Profile.... 665
Viewing the Profile Details....666
Construct.... 666
Searching for a Construct....668
Defining a Construct.... 668
Including Usage Accounts in a Construct....670
Excluding Usage Accounts from a Construct.... 672
Including Billable Charges in a Construct.... 673
Including Adjustments in a Construct....676
Creating an Invoice Account....679
Defining Characteristics for a Construct....682
Editing a Construct....683
Viewing Usage Accounts....686
Viewing the Construct Details.... 687
Copying a Construct....688
Activating a Construct....689
Deactivating a Construct....690
Approving a Construct.... 690
Rejecting a Construct.... 692
View Billing Hierarchy....692
Viewing Usage Accounts Billed through an Invoice Account.... 693
Viewing Invoice Accounts through which a Usage Account is Billed....694

Chapter 15: Trial Billing....697
Trial Bill....699
Searching for a Trial Bill....700
Viewing the Trial Bill Details.... 701
Viewing the Segments of a Trial Bill....702
Printing a Trial Bill in the PDF Format....704

Chapter 16: Bill Tolerance....705
Prerequisites.... 706

Chapter 17: GL Account Validation....709
Static GL Account Validation....710
Dynamic GL Account Validation.... 710

Chapter 18: Payment Distribution....711
Prerequisites.... 712

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 19: Reporting.....713

Report Search.....714
Report Submission.....714
Generating the CI_CSEOPN Report.....715
Generating the CI_CSESGS Report.....717
Generating the CI_CSESTS Report.....718
Generating the CI_CUSTCN Report.....719
Generating the CI_GLACSM Report.....720
Generating the CI_LTRGN_ENG Report.....721
Generating the CI_PMTBAL Report.....722
Generating the CI_RCVAGA Report.....723
Generating the CI_TDENTR Report.....724
Generating the CI_TXPYBL Report.....725

Appendix A: Most Commonly Used Tasks.....727

Changing the Layout.....729
Adding a Column to the Zone.....729
Rearranging Columns in the Zone.....729
Removing a Column from the Zone.....729
Searching for an Access Group.....730
Searching for an Account.....730
Searching for an Algorithm.....732
Searching for an Approval Workflow Chain.....734
Searching for an Approval Workflow Criteria Type.....734
Searching for an Approval Workflow Group.....735
Searching for an Auto Pay Source.....736
Searching for a Bill Message.....737
Searching for a Business Object.....738
Searching for a Dependent Rule.....739
Searching for a Field.....740
Searching for a Parameter.....741
Searching for a Person.....742
Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value.....743
Searching for a Predefined Parameter Value.....744
Searching for a Price List.....745
Searching for a Product.....745
Searching for a Rate Schedule.....746
Searching for a Table.....747
Searching for a Template.....748
Searching for a To Do Role.....749
Searching for a To Do Type.....750
Searching for a UI Map.....751

Appendix B: Administration.....753

UI Maps.....754
Creating Display UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group.....754
Creating Input UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group.....755
Feature Configurations.....756
Setting the Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC) Feature Configuration.....756
Setting the On Demand Billing (C1-ODBFC) Feature Configuration.....757
Setting the Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG) Feature Configuration.....759
Setting the Rule Engine (C1_RLENG) Feature Configuration.....760

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Setting the Dummy Header (C1-TXNDMYID) Feature Configuration..... 761
Setting the C1_PR_REC Feature Configuration..... 761
Setting the C1_PRASNORDR Feature Configuration..... 762
Setting the C1_DIVFUNCT Feature Configuration..... 763
Setting the C1_PERACCT Feature Configuration..... 764
Setting the C1_FINTRANOP Feature Configuration..... 764
Setting the C1_EXP_OVRD Feature Configuration..... 765
Setting the C1_EXCHRATE Feature Configuration..... 766
Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration..... 767
Setting the C1_FM Feature Configuration..... 769
Setting the C1_ACCTINFO Feature Configuration..... 771
Algorithm Types..... 772
C1_CURALGBS..... 772
C1_CURALGAD..... 773
C1_CURALGPY..... 775
C1_CURALGTFM..... 777
FTFREZGLEXTN..... 778

Appendix C: Control Data..... 781
Accounting Environment..... 783
Automatic Payment (EFT) Environment..... 783
Bill Cycle Environment..... 785
Contract Configuration..... 786
Credit and Collections Environment..... 787
Customer Class Environment..... 789
Customer Environment..... 790
Division Environment..... 793
Financial Transaction Environment..... 794
Global Context..... 799
Late Payment Environment..... 799
Notification and Workflow..... 799
Pricing Management..... 800
Rate Environment..... 802
Security Environment..... 803
Services and Characteristics..... 804
Statements..... 804
Wrap Up..... 805

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Preface

About this Document

This document lists and describes various banking features in Oracle Revenue Management and Billing. It describes all screens related to the following features and explains how to perform various tasks in the application:

- Banking Control Central
- Invoicing Group
- Pricing Management
- Division
- Approval Workflow
- Multi-Currency Accounts
- Rules Engine
- Alternate Sequential Invoice Numbers
- Currency Conversion
- Transaction Feed Management
- On Demand Billing
- Upload Validated Payment Data
- Freeze Payments on Notification
- Construct Based Billing
- Trial Billing
- Bill Tolerance
- GL Account Validation
- Reporting

In addition, this document provides information about the control data that needs to be setup in order to use the application.

Intended Audience

This document is intended for the following audience:

- End-users
- System Administrators
- Consulting Team
- Implementation Team
- Development Team

Organization of the Document

Each banking feature is described in a separate chapter in this document. All screens related to the feature and tasks related to the screen are explained in each chapter. This document contains the following chapters:

Chapter Number	Chapter Name	Chapter Description
Chapter 1	Banking Control Central	Explains how to search customer and/or account related information. It also explains how to view the following: • Contracts assigned to an account • Financial and payment history of an account • Effective product pricing of an account or a customer • Price lists assigned to an account or a customer • Customer hierarchy • Accounts of the customer and customer's child persons
Chapter 2	Invoicing Group	Explains invoicing group and how to create a master account. It also explains how to add or remove a member from a master account.
Chapter 3	Pricing Management	Explains how to define products, price lists, and pricing for a product. It also explains how to assign a product and price list to an account or a customer.
Chapter 4	Division	Explains the type of divisions and how to define a division.
Chapter 5	Approval Workflow	Explains the approval workflow process and how to perform various tasks involved in the process. It explains how to implement the approval workflow process. It also lists and describes the prerequisites that needs to be setup before implementing the approval workflow process.
Chapter 6	Multi-Currency Accounts	Lists and describes the business processes that are enhanced to implement the multi-currency accounts feature.
Chapter 7	Rules Engine	Explains how to define, execute, and maintain business rules separately from the application code.
Chapter 8	Alternate Sequential Invoice Numbers	Explains how to generate alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers which are either unique across the globe or within the division.
Chapter 9	Currency Conversion	Describes the business processes where the currency conversion feature can be enabled to meet the business requirements.
Chapter 10	Transaction Feed Management	Explains the transaction feed management process and how a transaction moves from one status to another during this process. It also explains how to search for transactions with different statuses.
Chapter 11	On Demand Billing	Explains the on demand billing process and how a usage record moves from one status to another during this process. It also explains how to view usage records with different statuses.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter Number	Chapter Name	Chapter Description
Chapter 12	Upload Validated Payment Data	Explains how to upload and validate the payment records before you move them to the staging area. It also explains how to create payment events and payments using the validated payment records.
Chapter 13	Freeze Payments on Notification	Explains how the system freezes or cancels the automatic payments when the review comments are received from the auto clearing house.
Chapter 14	Construct Based Billing	Explains how to define the billing hierarchy using the construct based billing feature. It also explains the different components of a construct.
Chapter 15	Trial Billing	Explains how to generate trial bills before the actual bill is generated for an account. It also explains how to view the trial bills in the system.
Chapter 16	Bill Tolerance	Explains how to define the tolerance limit for the bill amount. It also describes how the system behaves when the difference between the previous and current bill amount exceeds positive or negative tolerance limit.
Chapter 17	GL Account Validation	Explains how to enable the static and dynamic GL account validation feature.
Chapter 18	Reporting	Lists and describes how to execute ten sample reports provided with the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing application.
Appendix A	Most Commonly Used Tasks	Lists and describes some of the common tasks that are performed while using various functionality in the application.
Appendix B	Administration	Lists some of the administrative tasks.
Appendix C	Control Data	Lists the control data that needs to be setup in the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing application.

Conventions

The following conventions are used across this document:

Convention	Meaning
boldface	Boldface indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in the text.
italic	Italic indicates a document or book title.
`Monospace`	Monospace indicates information that an end-user needs to enter in the application.

Related Documents

You can refer to the following documents:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Document Name	Description
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Version 2.4.0.0.0 Release Notes	Provides a brief description about the new features and enhancements in this release. It also highlights the bug fixes and known issues in this release.
ORMB - Transaction Feed Management - Batch Execution Guide	Describes the sequence in which the batches must be executed while performing various tasks in the Transaction Feed Management module.
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide	Lists and describes various ORMB batches.
ORMB-Documaker Integration Guide for Banking	Provides detailed information on how to integrate Oracle Documaker with Oracle Revenue Management and Billing so that you can use Oracle Documaker for the Banking module.
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Installation Guide	Lists the pre-requisites, supported platforms, and hardware and software requirements for installing the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing application. It also explains how to install the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing application.
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Quick Installation Guide	Provides high-level information on how to install the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing application.
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Database Administrator's Guide	Provides detailed information on how to install the database for the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing application.
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Server Administration Guide	Describes the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing architecture. It also explains how to configure, deploy, and monitor web and business application servers.
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Server Administration Guide	Provides detailed information on how to configure and work with the batch component in Oracle Revenue Management and Billing.
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Security Guide	Describes how to configure security for the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing application using the default security features.
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Self Service Guide	Explains the sample pages available in the Self Service application and how to customize these pages as per the customer’s requirements.
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Self Service Installation and Configuration Guide	Explains how to install and configure the Self Service application.
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Reports Installation Guide	Explains how to install reports in Oracle BI Publisher and ORMB. It also explains how to create new reports from scratch or using the sample report as a starting point.
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing ODI Artifacts Installation Guide for TFM	Explains how to install the ODI artifacts for TFM. It also explains how to upload and import the transaction data from a flat file to various tables in the target database.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 1

Banking Control Central

Topics:

- *Banking Control Central*
- *View Account Contracts Information*
- *View Account Financial Transaction History*
- *Account Payment Summary*
- *View Accounts of Customer*
- *Control Central*

Banking Control Central allows you to quickly search for and find the customer and/or account information even if you have a small piece of data, such as a phone number, partial name or address, to begin your search. Based on the search criteria, the system returns a list of account or customer records that meet the search criteria. Besides viewing the account details, you can view all contracts assigned to the account, financial and payment history of the account, effective product pricing of the account, and the price lists assigned to the account. Moreover, you can also view the customer hierarchy, accounts of the customer and customer's child persons, effective product pricing of the customer, and the price lists assigned to the customer.

In other words, this feature allows you to drill down to see or act on all current and historical revenue management and billing details. This allows you to professionally and efficiently handle customer inquiries and complaints at the first point of contact, raising your customer service to previously unattainable levels and reducing the associated time and cost.

Banking Control Central

The **Banking Control Central** screen allows you to search for accounts or customers using various search criteria. By default, whenever you login to the application, the **Banking Control Central** screen appears. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 22
- *Contract Information* on page 23
- *Payment History* on page 23

Through the **Banking Control Central** screen, you can navigate to the following screens:

- *View Account Contracts Information* on page 32
- *View Account Financial Transaction History* on page 34
- *Account Payment Summary* on page 37
- *Pricing (Account)* on page 95
- *Price List Assignment (Account)* on page 68
- *View Accounts of Customer* on page 39
- *Control Central* on page 41
- *Pricing (Customer)* on page 104
- *Price List Assignment (Customer)* on page 82

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for accounts or customers using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The criteria are grouped as indicated by line separators between the criteria. Each group is independent from the other, and only one group is used at a time for searching. If you enter criteria in more than one group, the criteria from the first group is used for searching. For example, if you enter Account Identifier and Customer Name (which are in different criteria groups), the system searches using Account Identifier, which appears before Customer Name.

  The fields in the **Search Criteria** section change depending on the query option selected. You can select either of the following query options:

  - **Account** — Used to indicate that you want to search for an account.
  - **Customer** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a customer.
  - **Additional Account Details** — Used to indicate that you want to use advanced search for accounts.
- **Search Results** — The **Search Results** section either displays account or customer records depending on the search criteria. The account or customer records are further filtered based on the account's or customer's access group, respectively, to ensure that the user belonging to the respective access group can only view those records.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24
How to search for a customer	*Searching for a Customer* on page 27

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to use advanced search for an account	*Using Advanced Search for an Account* on page 29

Contract Information

The **Contract Information** zone lists contracts assigned to the account. The list includes only those contracts whose status is **Pending Start**, **Active**, **Pending Stop**, or **Stopped**. It does not include contracts whose status is either **Closed** or **Cancelled**. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Contract ID	Displays the contract ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Contract** screen appears with the details of the respective contract.
Division	Displays the division which governs the contract.
Contract Type	Displays the contract type to which the contract belongs.
Contract Type Description	Displays the description of the contract type.
Contract Status	Displays the status of the contract.
Effective Start Date	Displays the start date of the contract.
Effective End Date	Displays the end date of the contract.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

By default, the **Contract Information** zone does not appear in the **Banking Control Central** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view contracts assigned to an account	*Viewing Contracts Assigned to an Account* on page 26

Payment History

The **Payment History** zone lists payments made by the account. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payment Date	Displays the date when the payment was made.
Payment Amount	Displays the amount of the payment.
Payment Currency	Display the currency in which the payment was made.
Payment Status	Displays the status of the payment.
Tender Amount	Displays the tender amount. **Note:** The tender amount is usually equal to the payment amount unless cash is returned to the customer.
Tender Currency	Displays the currency in which the tender amount is maintained.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

By default, the **Payment History** zone does not appear in the **Banking Control Central** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the payment history of an account	*Viewing Payment History of an Account* on page 27

Searching for an Account

Prerequisites

To search for an account, you should have:

- Divisions and customer identifier types defined in the application
- Accounts created in the application

Procedure

To search for an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, click **Banking Control Central**.

   The **Banking Control Central** screen appears.
4. Select the **Account** option from the **Query Option** list to indicate that you want to search for an account.

   The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the division to which the account belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Primary Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the primary account identifier.	No
Account ID	Used to specify the account ID.	No
Customer Type	Used to indicate whether you want to search for accounts of all customers or only those customers who have a parent customer.	No
Customer Name	Used to specify the customer whose accounts you want to search.	No
Address	Used to specify the address of the customer whose accounts you want to search.	No
City	Used to specify the city of the customer whose accounts you want to search.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Phone Number	Used to specify the phone number of the customer whose accounts you want to search. **Note:** You must enter the phone number in the defined format.	No
Customer Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for accounts of a customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the customer identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the customer identifier type.
Customer Identifier	Used to specify the ID linked to the customer whose accounts you want to search.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the customer identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the customer identifier.

Note:

The fields in the **Search Criteria** section change depending on the query option selected.

You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an account.

5. Select the division from the list, if required.

   Note: When you specify division as the search criteria, you have to at least specify one more criteria, such as primary account identifier, account ID, customer name, customer identifier, customer address, etc. for searching an account.

6. Enter the search criteria in any of the criteria groups.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

7. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account Information	Displays information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Account** screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the primary account identifier type of the account.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the primary account identifier type.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the customer linked to the account.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Account Relationship Type	Displays the relationship type of the customer linked to the account.
Phone Number	Displays the phone number of the customer. **Note:** This column appears in the **Search Results** section only when you search for accounts using the **Phone Number** field.
Account Type	Indicates the type of account.
Account Currency	Displays the currency in which the account is billed.
Parent Customer Name	Displays the name of the parent customer (if any) of the customer linked to the account. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Person** screen appears with the details of the respective parent customer.
Address	Displays the address of the customer.
City	Displays the city where the customer is located.
Customer Identifier Type	Displays the identifier type of the customer linked to the account. **Note:** This column appears in the **Search Results** section only when you search for an account using the **Customer Identifier Type** and **Customer Identifier** fields.
Customer Identifier	Displays the ID of the customer linked to the account. **Note:** This column appears in the **Search Results** section only when you search for an account using the **Customer Identifier Type** and **Customer Identifier** fields.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Banking Control Central screen	*Banking Control Central* on page 22

Viewing Contracts Assigned to an Account

Procedure

To view contracts assigned to an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose contract *d*etails you want to view.

   The **Contract Information** zone appears.
3. View the contracts assigned to the account in the **Contract Information** zone.

   Note: If an account does not have any contracts, you will not find any records in the **Contract Information** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Contract Information zone	*Contract Information* on page 23

Viewing Payment History of an Account

Procedure

To view payment history of an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose payment history you want to view.

   The **Payment History** zone appears.
3. View the payments made by the account in the **Payment History** zone.

   Note: If any payment is not made for the account, you will not find any records in the **Payment History** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24
Payment History zone	*Payment History* on page 23

Searching for a Customer

Prerequisites

To search for a customer, you should have:

- Divisions and customer identifier types defined in the application
- Customers created in the application

Procedure

To search for a customer:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, click **Banking Control Central**.

   The **Banking Control Central** screen appears.
4. Select the **Customer** option from the **Query Option** list to indicate that you want to search for a customer.

   The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the division to which the customer belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Customer Type	Used to indicate whether you want to search for all customers or only those customers who have a parent customer.	No
Customer Name	Used to specify the name of the customer.	No
Address	Used to specify the address of the customer.	No
City	Used to specify the city in which the customer is located.	No
Phone Number	Used to specify the phone number of the customer. **Note:** You must enter the phone number in the defined format.	No
Customer Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search a customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the customer identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the customer identifier type.
Customer Identifier	Used to specify the ID linked to the customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the customer identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the customer identifier.

Note:

The fields in the **Search Criteria** section change depending on the query option selected.

You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a customer.

5. Select the division from the list, if required.

   Note: When you specify division as the search criteria, you have to at least specify one more criteria, such as customer name, customer type, customer identifier, customer address, etc. for searching a customer.

6. Enter the search criteria in any of the criteria groups.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

7. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of customers that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Customer Name	Displays the name of the customer. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Person** screen appears with the details of the respective customer.
Customer Address	Displays the address of the customer.
City	Displays the city where the customer is located.
Phone Number	Displays the phone number of the customer. **Note:** This column appears in the **Search Results** section only when you search for customers using the **Phone Number** field.
Division	Displays the division to which the customer belongs. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Division** screen appears with the details of the respective division.
Parent Customer Name	Displays the name of the parent customer (if any) of the customer. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Person** screen appears with the details of the respective parent customer.
Customer Identifier Type	Displays the customer identifier type. **Note:** This column appears in the **Search Results** section only when you search for a customer using the **Customer Identifier Type** and **Customer Identifier** fields.
Customer Identifier	Displays the value of the customer identifier type. **Note:** This column appears in the **Search Results** section only when you search for a customer using the **Customer Identifier Type** and **Customer Identifier** fields.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Banking Control Central screen	*Banking Control Central* on page 22

Using Advanced Search for an Account

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides you with the facility to limit the search results based on the division and/or account relationship type along with other search criteria. You can also search for an account using various account identifiers defined for an account.

Prerequisites

To use advanced search for an account, you should have:

- Divisions, currencies, account relationship types, account identifier types, and customer identifier types defined in the application
- Value defined for the **Account Type** option type in the **C1_ACCTINFO** feature configuration

  Note: If you want to use account types other than those available in the product, you need to create a new predefined characteristic type and add the required account types as its characteristic values. Then, specify the newly created characteristic type as the value for the **Account Type** option type in the **C1_ACCTINFO** feature configuration.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Procedure

To use advanced search for an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, click **Banking Control Central**.

   The **Banking Control Central** screen appears.

4. Select the **Additional Account Details** option from the **Query Option** list to indicate that you want to use *a*dvanced search for accounts.

   The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the division to which the account belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Account Relationship Type	Used to specify the relationship type of the customer linked to the account.	No
Account Type	Used to specify the type of account.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Customer Name	Used to specify the customer whose accounts you want to search.	No
Bill Cycle	Used to search for accounts having a particular bill cycle.	No
Account Currency	Used to search for accounts which are billed in a particular currency.	No
Account Category	Used to search for accounts belonging to a particular category. The valid values are: • Invoice Account • Settlement Account • Usage Account	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Customer Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for accounts of a customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the customer identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the customer identifier type.
Customer Identifier	Used to specify the ID linked to the customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the customer identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the customer identifier.

Note:

The fields in the **Search Criteria** section change depending on the query option selected.

You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an account.

5. Select the division and/or account relationship type, if required.

   Note: When you specify division and/or account relationship type as the search criteria, you have to at least specify one more criteria, such as account type, account identifier, customer name, or customer identifier, for searching an account.

6. Enter the search criteria in any of the criteria groups.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

7. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account Information	Displays information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Account** screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the customer linked to the account.
Account Relationship Type	Displays the relationship type of the customer linked to the account.
Account Type	Indicates the type of account.
Bill Cycle	Displays the bill cycle of the account.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Account Category	Indicates whether the account is an invoice, usage, or settlement account.
Account Currency	Displays the currency in which the account is billed.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.
Customer Identifier Type	Displays the identifier type of the customer linked to the account. **Note:** This column appears in the **Search Results** section only when you search for an account using the **Customer Identifier Type** and **Customer Identifier** fields.
Customer Identifier	Displays the ID of the customer linked to the account. **Note:** This column appears in the **Search Results** section only when you search for an account using the **Customer Identifier Type** and **Customer Identifier** fields.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Banking Control Central screen	*Banking Control Central* on page 22
How to setup the C1_ACCTINFO feature configuration	*Setting the C1_ACCTINFO Feature Configuration* on page 771

View Account Contracts Information

The **View Account Contracts Information** screen allows you to view the details of the contracts assigned to the account. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Account Information* on page 32
- *Search Contracts* on page 33

Account Information

The **Account Information** zone displays the details of the account. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Primary Account Identifier	Displays the primary account identifier type of the account along with its value.
Account Type	Indicates the type of account.
Account Currency	Displays the invoice currency of the account.
Billing Cycle	Displays the billing cycle during which the account is billed.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the main customer. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Person** screen appears with the details of the respective customer.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description
Account Info	Displays information about the account. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Account** screen appears with the details of the respective account.

Note: All fields in the **Account Information** zone are read-only.

Search Contracts

The **Search Contracts** zone allows you to search for contracts assigned to the account. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The criteria are grouped as indicated by line separators between the criteria. Each group is independent from the other, and only one group is used at a time for searching. If you enter criteria in more than one group, the criteria from the first group is used for searching. For example, if you enter Contract ID and Contract Type (which are in different criteria groups), the system searches using Contract ID, which appears before Contract Type. The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Contract ID	Used to specify the contract ID.	No
Division	Used to specify the division which governs the contract. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Contract Type	Used to specify the contract type to which the contract belongs.	No
Contract Status	Used to specify the status of the contract.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the start date of the contract.	No
Effective End Date	Used to specify the end date of the contract.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a contract.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Contract ID	Displays the contract ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Contract** screen appears with the details of the respective contract.
Division	Displays the division which governs the contract.
Contract Type	Displays the contract type to which the contract belongs.
Contract Type Description	Displays the description of the contract type.
Contract Status	Displays the status of the contract.
Effective Start Date	Displays the start date of the contract.
Effective End Date	Displays the end date of the contract.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for contracts assigned to an account	*Searching for Contracts Assigned to an Account* on page 34

Searching for Contracts Assigned to an Account

Prerequisites

To search for contracts assigned to an account, you should have:

- Divisions defined in the application

Procedure

To search for contracts assigned to an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Contracts** menu option.

   The **View Account Contracts Information** screen appears.
4. In the **Search Contracts** zone, enter the search criteria in any of the criteria groups.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of contracts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24
View Account Contracts Information screen	*View Account Contracts Information* on page 32
Search Contracts zone	*Search Contracts* on page 33

View Account Financial Transaction History

The **View Account Financial Transaction History** screen allows you to view the financial transaction history of the account. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Account Information* on page 32
- *Search Financial Transactions* on page 35

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Account Information

The **Account Information** zone displays the details of the account. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Primary Account Identifier	Displays the primary account identifier type of the account along with its value.
Account Type	Indicates the type of account.
Account Currency	Displays the invoice currency of the account.
Billing Cycle	Displays the billing cycle during which the account is billed.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the main customer. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Person** screen appears with the details of the respective customer.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.
Account Info	Displays information about the account. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Account** screen appears with the details of the respective account.

Note: All fields in the **Account Information** zone are read-only.

Search Financial Transactions

The **Search Financial Transactions** zone allows you to search for financial transactions which are created for the account. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Freeze Date From	Used to search for financial transactions which are frozen from a particular date onwards. **Note:** By default, the date is set to the current date minus 60 days. You can change the date, if required.	Yes
Freeze Date To	Used to search for financial transactions which are frozen till a particular date. **Note:** By default, the date is set to the current date. You can change the date, if required.	Yes
Accounting Date From	Used to search for financial transactions which are booked from a particular date onwards.	No
Accounting Date To	Used to search for financial transactions which are booked till a particular date.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Financial Transaction Type	Used to search a particular type of financial transactions. The valid values are: • Adjustment • Adjustment Cancellation • Bill Segment • Bill Cancellation • Pay Segment • Pay Cancellation	No
Current Amount	Used to search for financial transactions with the specified current amount.	No
Arrears Date	Used to search for financial transactions with a particular arrears date.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Arrears Date	Displays the date from when the amount is outstanding on the bill.
Financial Transaction Type	Indicates the type of financial transaction.
Current Amount	Displays the amount billed to the customer or received from the customer.
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the amount is billed or received from the customer.
Financial Transaction ID	Displays the financial transaction ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Financial Transaction** screen appears with the details of the respective financial transaction.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for financial transactions of an account	*Searching for Financial Transactions of an Account* on page 36

Searching for Financial Transactions of an Account

Procedure

To search for financial transactions of an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Financial History** menu option.

   The **View Account Financial Transaction History** screen appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Financial Transactions** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of financial transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	**See...**
How to search for an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24
View Account Financial Transaction History screen	*View Account Financial Transaction History* on page 34
Search Financial Transactions zone	*Search Financial Transactions* on page 35

Account Payment Summary

The **Account Payment Summary** screen allows you to search for payments that have been distributed to the account's contracts. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 37

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for payments made for the account using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	**Field Description**	**Mandatory (Yes or No)**
Payment Status	Used to specify the status of the payment. The valid values are: • Canceled • Error • Freezable • Frozen • Incomplete	No
Payment Date	Used to specify the date when the payment was made.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Payment ID	Displays the payment ID.
Payment Date	Displays the date when the payment was made.
Payment Amount	Displays the amount paid through the tender.
Payment Status	Indicates the current status of the payment. The valid values are: • Canceled • Error • Freezable • Frozen • Incomplete
Tender Source	Indicates the tender source through which the payment was remitted.

Note: The **Go To** ( ) button appears corresponding to the payment. On clicking the button, you can view the details of the payment in the **Payment Event** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search payments made for an account	*Searching Payments Made for an Account* on page 38

Searching Payments Made for an Account

Procedure

To search payments made for an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose *d*etails you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Account Payment Summary** menu option.

   The **Account Payment Summary** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of payments that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section. Note that only those payments that are distributed to the account's contracts are listed in this section.

   Note: The **Go To** ( ) button appears corresponding to the payment. On clicking the button, you can view the details of the payment in the **Payment Event** screen.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

6. If required, you can export the list of payments in the Excel format by clicking the **Export To Excel** menu option from the **Explorer Zone** ( ) menu.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24
Account Payment Summary screen	*Account Payment Summary* on page 37
Search zone	*Search* on page 37

View Accounts of Customer

The **View Accounts of Customer** screen allows you to view the details of the customer's accounts. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Customer Information* on page 39
- *Search Accounts* on page 39

Customer Information

The **Customer Information** zone displays the details of the customer. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Customer Name	Displays the name of the customer.
Customer Address	Displays the address of the customer.
Customer Contact	Displays the primary and alternate phone numbers of the customer.
Division	Displays the division to which the customer belongs.

Note: All fields in the **Customer Information** zone are read-only.

Search Accounts

The **Search Accounts** zone allows you to search for accounts of the customer. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The criteria are grouped as indicated by line separators between the criteria. Each group is independent from the other, and only one group is used at a time for searching. If you enter criteria in more than one group, the criteria from the first group is used for searching. For example, if you enter Account Identifier and Account Type (which are in different criteria groups), the system searches using Account Identifier, which appears before Account Type. The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Account ID	Used to specify the account ID.	No
Account Type	Used to specify the type of account.	No
Billing Cycle	Used to specify the billing cycle during which the account is billed.	No
Account Currency	Used to specify the invoice currency of the account.	No
Division	Used to specify the division whose accounts you want to search. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for accounts of a customer.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
Account ID	Displays the account ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Account** screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Account Type	Indicates the type of account.
Billing Cycle	Displays the billing cycle during which the account is billed.
Account Currency	Displays the invoice currency of the account.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.
Current Balance	Displays the amount of money in the account.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for accounts of a customer	*Searching for Accounts of a Customer* on page 41

Searching for Accounts of a Customer

Prerequisites

To search for accounts of a customer, you should have:

- Divisions, account types, billing cycles, and invoice currencies defined in the application

Procedure

To search for accounts of a customer:

1. Search for the customer in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose *d*etails you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Accounts** menu option.

   The **View Accounts of Customer** screen appears.
4. In the **Search Accounts** zone, enter the search criteria in any of the criteria groups.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a customer	*Searching for a Customer* on page 27
View Accounts of Customer screen	*View Accounts of Customer* on page 39
Search Accounts zone	*Search Accounts* on page 39

Control Central

The **Control Central** screen allows you to view the customer hierarchy. It also allows you to search for accounts of the customer's child persons. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Customer Information* on page 42
- *Search* on page 42
- *Child Hierarchy* on page 43

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Customer Information

The **Customer Information** zone displays the details of the customer. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Name	Displays the name of the parent customer.
Customer Address	Displays the address of the customer.
Customer Contact	Displays the primary and alternate phone numbers of the customer.
Division	Displays the division to which the customer belongs.

Note: All the fields in the **Customer Information** zone are read-only.

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for accounts of the customer's child persons. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The criteria are grouped as indicated by line separators between the criteria. Each group is independent from the other, and only one group is used at a time for searching. If you enter criteria in more than one group, the criteria from the first group is used for searching. For example, if you enter Account Identifier and Account Currency (which are in different criteria groups), the system searches using Account Identifier, which appears before Account Currency. The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Customer Name	Used to specify the customer whose accounts you want to search.	No
Account ID	Used to specify the account ID	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Contract ID	Used to specify the contract ID linked to the account.	No
Account Currency	Used to specify the invoice currency of the account.	No
Division	Used to specify the division whose accounts you want to search. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Account Type	Used to specify the type of account.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billing Cycle	Used to specify the billing cycle during which the account is billed.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for accounts of the customer's child persons.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Customer Name	Displays the name of the customer's child person. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Person** screen appears with the details of the respective child person.
Account ID	Displays the account ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Account** screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
Contract ID	Displays the contract ID linked to the account.
Account Currency	Displays the invoice currency of the account.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.
Account Type	Indicates the type of account.
Billing Cycle	Displays the billing cycle during which the account is billed.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for child persons' accounts	*Searching for Child Persons' Accounts* on page 43

Child Hierarchy

The **Child Hierarchy** zone displays the following in a tree view:

- Accounts owned by the customer
- Contracts linked to each of these accounts
- Parent and children linked to the customer

Each node in the tree has a link. On clicking the link, you can navigate to the respective screen.

Searching for Child Persons' Accounts

Prerequisites

To search for child persons' accounts, you should have:

- Divisions, account types, billing cycles, and invoice currencies defined in the application
- Accounts created in the application

Procedure

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To search for child persons' accounts:

1. Search for the customer in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose *d*etails you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Customer Hierarchy** menu option.

   The **Control Central** screen appears.
4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria in any of the criteria groups.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a customer	*Searching for a Customer* on page 27
Control Central screen	*Control Central* on page 41
Search zone	*Search* on page 42

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 2

Invoicing Group

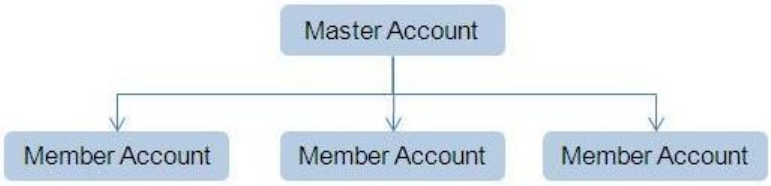
Topics:

- *Manage Invoicing Groups*
- *Invoicing Group Maintenance — Add/Edit*
- *Invoicing Group Information*

Invoicing group allows you to combine the charges for multiple accounts onto one bill for each billing period. It consists of the following:

- **Master Account** - The group level account that controls the billing.
- **Member Accounts** - The accounts whose bills are aggregated at the group level.

The following figure is a graphical representation of an invoicing group.



You can create an invoicing group by adding member accounts to the master account. An account can be the master account in the invoicing group only when its **Invoice Group Account** characteristic type is set to **Y**. On the other hand, an account can be added as a member to the master account only when its **Invoice Group Account** characteristic type is set to **N**.

Note: You can define the Invoice Group Account characteristic for the account only when the **Invoice Group Account** option type in the **C1_ACCTINFO** feature configuration is set. If the **Invoice Group Account** option type in the **C1_ACCTINFO** feature configuration is not set, you will not be able to indicate whether the account is a master or member account. For more information, refer to *Setting the C1_ACCTINFO Feature Configuration* on page 771.

There is no restriction on the number of accounts that can be added to the master account. The accounts in the invoicing group can belong to different customers and may have different currencies, but they should be from the same banking division and customer hierarchy. If the member accounts have a different invoice currency from the master account, the member account's charges will be converted to the master account's currency during billing.

Balances are maintained at the master account level. Bills are added to the master account's balance, and payments are subtracted from that balance. However, the charges can be traced back to the originating member accounts. The master account cannot have charges of its own; all charges come from the member accounts. However, when an account does not belong to any master account, it is billed individually with its charges appearing on the bill.

The contracts linked at the member level are duplicated at the master level when member accounts are added to the master account. However, note that only contracts which are eligible for billing are duplicated at the master level. Once a contract is duplicated at the master level, you need to activate the contract at the master level. Otherwise, the charges will be billed to the member account instead of the master account.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Manage Invoicing Groups

The **Manage Invoicing Groups** screen allows you to search for the master and member accounts using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can navigate to the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** and **Invoicing Group Information** screens.

This screen contains the following two sections:

- Search Criteria
- Search Results

Searching for a Master Account

Prerequisites

To search for a master account, you should have:

- Divisions, billing cycles, and customer classes defined in the application
- Master accounts created in the application

Procedure

To search for a master account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, click **Manage Invoicing Groups**.

   The **Manage Invoicing Groups** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Invoicing Group Assignment Type	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a master or member account.	Yes
Account ID	Used to specify the account ID.	No
Division	Used to specify the division whose accounts you want to search.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Customer Name	Used to specify the customer whose accounts you want to search.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the billing cycle or customer class as a search criteria, you have to specify the customer name.
Billing Cycle	Used to specify the billing cycle during which the account is billed.	No
Customer Class	Used to specify the customer class of the account.	No

The criteria are grouped as indicated by line separators between the criteria. Each group is independent from the other, and only one group is used at a time for searching. If you enter criteria in more than one group, the criteria from the first group is used for searching. For example, if you enter Account ID and Customer Name (which are in different criteria groups), the system searches using Account ID, which appears before Customer Name.

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a master account.

4. Select **Master** from the **Invoicing Group Assignment Type** list.
5. Specify the search criteria in any of the criteria groups.
6. Click **Refresh**.

The master accounts that meet the search criteria and to which you have access based on the account's access group appear in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Displays the master account ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/ Edit** screen appears with the details of the respective master account.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type of the master account.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
Account Currency	Displays the invoice currency of the master account.
Division	Displays the division to which the master account belongs.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the main customer.
Customer Class	Displays the customer class of the master account.
Billing Cycle	Displays the billing cycle during which the master account is billed.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Manage Invoicing Groups screen	*Manage Invoicing Groups* on page 47

Searching for a Member Account

Prerequisites

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To search for a member account, you should have:

- Divisions, billing cycles, and customer classes defined in the application
- Accounts added as a member to the master accounts

Procedure

To search for a member account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, click **Manage Invoicing Groups**.

   The **Manage Invoicing Groups** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Invoicing Group Assignment Type	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a master or member account.	Yes
Account ID	Used to specify the account ID.	No
Division	Used to specify the division whose accounts you want to search.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Customer Name	Used to specify the customer whose accounts you want to search.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the billing cycle or customer class as a search criteria, you have to specify the customer name.
Billing Cycle	Used to specify the billing cycle during which the account is billed.	No
Customer Class	Used to specify the customer class of the account.	No

   The criteria are grouped as indicated by line separators between the criteria. Each group is independent from the other, and only one group is used at a time for searching. If you enter criteria in more than one group, the criteria from the first group is used for searching. For example, if you enter Account ID and Customer Name (which are in different criteria groups), the system searches using Account ID, which appears before Customer Name.

   Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a member account.

4. Select **Member** from the **Invoicing Group Assignment Type** list.

5. Specify the search criteria in any of the criteria groups.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

6. Click **Refresh**.

   The member accounts that meet the search criteria and to which you have access based on the account's access group appear in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Displays the member account ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Invoicing Group Information** screen appears with the details of the respective member account.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type of the member account.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
Account Currency	Displays the invoice currency of the member account. **Note:** If the member account has a different invoice currency from the master account, the member account's charges will be converted to the master account's currency during billing.
Division	Displays the division to which the member account belongs.
Customer Name	Displays the main customer of the member account.
Customer Class	Displays the customer class of the member account.
Master Account Identifier Type	Displays the primary account identifier type of the master account.
Master Account Identifier	Displays the value of the primary account identifier type.
Master Customer Name	Displays the main customer of the master account.
Billing Cycle	Displays the billing cycle during which the member account is billed.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Manage Invoicing Groups screen	*Manage Invoicing Groups* on page 47

Viewing the Master Account Details

Procedure

To view the master account details:

1. Search for the master account in the **Manage Invoicing Groups** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Account ID** column corresponding to the master account whose details you want to view.

   The **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen appears.
3. View the accounts that are already added to the master account in the **Member Accounts** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a master account	*Searching for a Master Account*
Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit screen	*Invoicing Group Maintenance — Add/Edit*

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Member Accounts zone	*Member Accounts*

Viewing the Member Account Details

Procedure

To view the member account details:

1. Search for the member account in the **Manage Invoicing Groups** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Account ID** column corresponding to the member account whose details you want to view.

   The **Invoicing Group Information** screen appears.
3. View the member account details in the **Selected Member Account** zone, and its master account details in the **Invoicing Group Information** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a member account	*Searching for a Member Account*
Invoicing Group Information screen	*Invoicing Group Information*
Invoicing Group Information zone	*Invoicing Group Information*
Selected Member Account zone	*Selected Member Account* on page 58

Invoicing Group Maintenance — Add/Edit

The **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen allows you to view the details of the master account. It also allows you to add, edit, and remove member accounts from the master account. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Account Information* on page 51
- *Member Accounts* on page 52
- *Edit Member Account Assignment* on page 52
- *Search Accounts to Add* on page 53
- *Add Member* on page 54

Account Information

The **Account Information** zone displays the details of the master account. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Invoicing Group Assignment Type	Indicates that the selected account is a master account.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the main customer.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description
Primary Account Identifier	Displays the primary account identifier type of the master account along with its value.
Customer Class	Displays the customer class of the master account.
Account Currency	Displays the invoice currency of the master account.
Billing Cycle	Displays the billing cycle during which the master account is billed.
Division	Displays the division to which the master account belongs.

Note: All fields in the **Account Information** zone are read-only.

Member Accounts

The **Member Accounts** zone lists the member accounts of the master account. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account Identifier Type	Displays the primary account identifier type of the member account.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the primary account identifier type.
Account Currency	Displays the invoice currency of the member account. **Note:** During billing, the charges for the member account are calculated in this currency and then converted to the master account's currency.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the charges for the member account appears on the bill of the master account.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the charges for the member account appears on the bill of the master account.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the main customer.
Customer Class	Displays the customer class of the member account.
Billing Cycle	Displays the billing cycle during which the member account is billed. **Note:** If the account is removed from the master account, it will be billed during this billing cycle.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the member account, the **Edit Member Account Assignment** zone appears with the details of the respective member account.

Edit Member Account Assignment

The **Edit Member Account Assignment** zone allows you to edit the assignment details of the member account. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Start Date	Used to modify the date from when you want the charges for the member account to appear on the bill of the master account. **Note:** You can modify the date only when it is a future date.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Invoicing Group Assignment Type	Indicates that the account is a member account.	Not applicable
Effective End Date	Used to modify the date till when you want the charges for the member account to appear on the bill of the master account. **Note:** You can modify the date only when it is not a past date.	No
Primary Account Identifier	Displays the primary account identifier type of the member account along with its value.	Not applicable

Note: If a bill is already generated for the master account, you cannot modify the effective start and end dates.

This zone contains the following two buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to save the changes made in this zone.
Remove Member	Used to remove the member from the master account.

By default, the **Edit Member Account Assignment** zone does not appear in the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the member account in the **Member Accounts** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit the member account assignment details	*Editing the Member Account Assignment Details* on page 56
How to remove a member from the master account	*Removing a Member from the Master Account* on page 57

Search Accounts to Add

The **Search Accounts to Add** zone lists accounts defined within the division and customer hierarchy to which the master account belongs. The list also includes those accounts that are already added to the master account. You can filter the accounts using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Used to specify the account ID.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Customer Name	Used to specify the customer whose accounts you want to search.	No
Billing Cycle	Used to specify the billing cycle of the account.	No
Customer Class	Used to specify the customer class of the account.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Displays the account ID.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the main customer.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
Account Currency	Displays the invoice currency of the account.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.
Customer Class	Displays the customer class of the account.
Billing Cycle	Displays the billing cycle during which the account is billed.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account, the **Add Member** zone appears with the details of the respective account.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a member to the master account	*Adding a Member to the Master Account* on page 55

Add Member

The **Add Member** zone allows you to add a member to the master account. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Customer Name	Displays the name of the main customer.	Not applicable
Primary Account Identifier	Displays the primary account identifier type of the account along with its value.	Not applicable
Account Currency	Displays the invoice currency of the account.	Not applicable
Customer Class	Displays the customer class of the account.	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when you want the charges for the member account to appear on the bill of the master account. **Note:** The effective start date should be earlier than or equal to the member account's contract end date.	Yes
Billing Cycle	Displays the billing cycle during which the account is billed.	Not applicable

This zone contains the following two buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to add a member to the master account.

By default, the **Add Member** zone does not appear in the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account in the **Search Accounts to Add** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a member to the master account	*Adding a Member to the Master Account* on page 55

Adding a Member to the Master Account

Prerequisites

To add a member to the master account, you should have:

- Accounts within the same banking division and customer hierarchy where the value of the **Invoice Group Account** characteristic type is set to **N**
- Accounts with active contracts

Note: You cannot add an account as a member to a master account if that account is already a member of another master during that overlapping period.

Procedure

To add a member to the master account:

1. Access the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen.
2. In the **Search Accounts to Add** zone, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account that you want *t*o add to the master account.

   The **Add Member** zone appears.
3. Enter the date from when you want the charges for the member account to appear on the bill of the master account *i*n the **Effective Start Date** field.

   Note: The effective start date should be earlier than or equal to the member account's contract end date.
4. Click **Save**.

   The account is added to the master account. The contracts at the member level are duplicated at the master level.

   Note: Once a contract is duplicated at the master level, you need to activate the contract at the master level. Otherwise, the charges will be billed to the member account instead of the master account.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to access the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen	*Viewing the Master Account Details* on page 50
Search Accounts to Add zone	*Search Accounts to Add* on page 53
Add Member zone	*Add Member* on page 54

Editing the Member Account Assignment Details

Procedure

You can edit the member account assignment details from both the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** and **Invoicing Group Information** screens. To edit the member account assignment details:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Edit the member account assignment details from the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen	1. Access the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen. 2. In the **Member Accounts** zone, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the member account whose assignment details you want to edit.
Edit the member account assignment details from the **Invoicing Group Information** screen	1. Access the **Invoicing Group Information** screen. 2. In the **Selected Member Account** zone, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the member account whose assignment details you want to edit.

   The **Edit Member Account Assignment** zone appears.

2. Modify the effective start and end dates, if required.

   Note:

   The effective start date should be earlier than or equal to the member account's contract end date. And, the effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.

   If a bill is already generated for the master account, you cannot modify the effective start and end dates.

3. Click **Save**.

   The changes are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to access the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen	*Viewing the Master Account Details* on page 50

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to access the **Invoicing Group Information** screen	*Viewing the Member Account Details* on page 51
Edit Member Account Assignment zone	*Edit Member Account Assignment* on page 52

Removing a Member from the Master Account

Procedure

You can remove a member from the master account through both the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** and **Invoicing Group Information** screens. To remove a member from the master account:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Remove a member from the master account through the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen	1. Access the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen. 2. In the **Member Accounts** zone, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the member account that you want to remove from the master account.
Remove a member from the master account through the **Invoicing Group Information** screen	1. Access the **Invoicing Group Information** screen. 2. In the **Selected Member Account** zone, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the member account that you want to remove from the master account.

   The **Edit Member Account Assignment** zone appears.

2. Click **Remove Member**.

   The member is removed from the master account.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to access the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen	*Viewing the Master Account Details* on page 50
How to access the **Invoicing Group Information** screen	*Viewing the Member Account Details* on page 51
Edit Member Account Assignment zone	*Edit Member Account Assignment* on page 52

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Invoicing Group Information

The **Invoicing Group Information** screen allows you to view the details of the member account. It also allows you to edit and remove the member account from the master account. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Invoicing Group Information* on page 58
- *Selected Member Account* on page 58
- *Edit Member Account Assignment* on page 59

Invoicing Group Information

The **Invoicing Group Information** zone displays the master account details of the member account. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Invoicing Group Assignment Type	Indicates that this zone displays information about the member's master account.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the main customer.
Primary Account Identifier	Displays the primary account identifier type of the master account along with its value.
Customer Class	Displays the customer class of the master account.
Account Currency	Displays the invoice currency of the master account.
Billing Cycle	Displays the billing cycle during which the master account is billed.
Division	Displays the division to which the master account belongs.

Note: All fields in the **Invoicing Group Information** zone are read-only.

Selected Member Account

The **Selected Member Account** zone displays the details of the member account. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account Identifier Type	Displays the primary account identifier type of the member account.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the primary account identifier type.
Account Currency	Displays the invoice currency of the member account. **Note:** During billing, the charges for the member account are calculated in this currency and then converted to the master account's currency.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the charges for the member account appears on the bill of the master account.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the charges for the member account appears on the bill of the master account.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the main customer.
Customer Class	Displays the customer class of the member account.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Billing Cycle	Displays the billing cycle during which the member account is billed. **Note:** If the member account is removed from the master account, it will be billed during this billing cycle.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the member account, the **Edit Member Account Assignment** zone appears with the details of the respective member account.

Edit Member Account Assignment

The **Edit Member Account Assignment** zone allows you to edit the assignment details of the member account. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Start Date	Used to modify the date from when you want the charges for the member account to appear on the bill of the master account. **Note:** You can modify the date only when it is a future date. The effective start date should be earlier than or equal to the member account's contract end date.	Yes
Invoicing Group Assignment Type	Indicates that the account is a member account.	Not applicable
Effective End Date	Used to modify the date till when you want the charges for the member account to appear on the bill of the master account. **Note:** You can modify the date only when it is not a past date. The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	No
Primary Account Identifier	Displays the primary account identifier type of the member account along with its value.	Not applicable

Note: If a bill is already generated for the master account, you cannot modify the effective start and end dates.

This zone contains the following two buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to save the changes made in this zone.
Remove Member	Used to remove the member from the master account.

By default, the **Edit Member Account Assignment** zone does not appear in the **Invoicing Group Information** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the member account in the **Selected Member Account** zone.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to edit the member account assignment details	*Editing the Member Account Assignment Details* on page 56
How to remove a member from the master account	*Removing a Member from the Master Account* on page 57

Editing the Member Account Assignment Details

Procedure

You can edit the member account assignment details from both the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** and **Invoicing Group Information** screens. To edit the member account assignment details:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Edit the member account assignment details from the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen	1. Access the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen. 2. In the **Member Accounts** zone, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the member account whose assignment details you want to edit.
Edit the member account assignment details from the **Invoicing Group Information** screen	1. Access the **Invoicing Group Information** screen. 2. In the **Selected Member Account** zone, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the member account whose assignment details you want to edit.

   The **Edit Member Account Assignment** zone appears.

2. Modify the effective start and end dates, if required.

   Note:

   The effective start date should be earlier than or equal to the member account's contract end date. And, the effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.

   If a bill is already generated for the master account, you cannot modify the effective start and end dates.

3. Click **Save**.

   The changes are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to access the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen	*Viewing the Master Account Details* on page 50
How to access the **Invoicing Group Information** screen	*Viewing the Member Account Details* on page 51

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Edit Member Account Assignment zone	*Edit Member Account Assignment* on page 52

Removing a Member from the Master Account

Procedure

You can remove a member from the master account through both the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** and **Invoicing Group Information** screens. To remove a member from the master account:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Remove a member from the master account through the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen	1. Access the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen. 2. In the **Member Accounts** zone, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the member account that you want to remove from the master account.
Remove a member from the master account through the **Invoicing Group Information** screen	1. Access the **Invoicing Group Information** screen. 2. In the **Selected Member Account** zone, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the member account that you want to remove from the master account.

   The **Edit Member Account Assignment** zone appears.

2. Click **Remove Member**.

   The member is removed from the master account.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to access the **Invoicing Group Maintenance – Add/Edit** screen	*Viewing the Master Account Details* on page 50
How to access the **Invoicing Group Information** screen	*Viewing the Member Account Details* on page 51
Edit Member Account Assignment zone	*Edit Member Account Assignment* on page 52

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 3

Pricing Management

Topics:

- *Types of Pricing*
- *Multi Parameter Based Pricing*
- *Price List Assignment (Account)*
- *Price List Assignment (Customer)*
- *Pricing (Account)*
- *Pricing (Customer)*
- *Manage Products*
- *Manage Price Lists*
- *Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists*
- *Copy Price List*
- *Product Relationship Maintenance*
- *Copy Bundle*
- *Manage Rate Definitions*
- *Manage Tiering Criteria*
- *Add Product Pricing*
- *Edit Product Pricing*
- *Override Product Pricing*
- *Price Assignment Characteristics*
- *Variance Parameter*
- *Parameter*
- *Product Parameters*

Pricing Management allows you to define the prices that customers pay for products and services offered to them. These prices are either the standard prices defined in the price lists or the override prices that are specific to a customer or an account. The prices can be defined at various levels in a customer hierarchy (for example, at the account level, main customer level, or at the parent customer level). As prices can be defined at multiple places (for example, in the account's price list, main customer's price list, parent customer's price list), the order in which the system searches for prices will affect the price charged to the customer. This search order is configurable, and can vary with each division. The search order is specified when you define a division. You can change the search order at any time.

However, since a global customer is not associated to any division, the system cannot determine the price assignment search order for a global customer. Hence, the default search order is defined for global customers through the **C1_PRASNORDR** feature configuration. You can change this default search order, if required.

The prices that are specific to a customer or an account are referred to as customer agreed or account agreed prices, respectively. You can override these agreed prices. Customer agreed or account agreed prices are effective for a particular duration and do not expire until you manually specify the end date. However, if you set the **Expire Override Switch** option type of the **C1_EXP_OVRD** feature configuration to **Y**, the system will automatically expire an agreed pricing when the agreed pricing of a customer or an account without end date is overridden. In case you do not want an agreed pricing to automatically expire when it is overridden, you must set the **Expire Override Switch** option type of the **C1_EXP_OVRD** feature configuration to **N**.

The system allows you to define the following types of pricing:

- Flat Pricing
- Tiered Pricing

For more information about the types of pricing, see *Types of Pricing* on page 65.

The price for a product or service may differ depending upon various transaction, customer or account attributes. Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides a facility to define pricing for a product based on multiple parameters. This multi parameter based pricing feature enables the price analyst to define product and its parameters which influence pricing. You can then define pricing for the product based on these parameters. Bundles are offered to customers to provide discounted rates. You can also define pricing for bundles based on multiple parameters. To enable the multi parameter based pricing feature, you must set the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration to **True**.

For more information about the multi parameter based pricing feature, see *Multi Parameter Based Pricing* on page 65.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Types of Pricing

The system allows you to define the following types of pricing:

- **Flat Pricing** — Used when you want to charge a fixed price per unit to the customer.
- **Tiered Pricing** — Used when standard flat pricing is not sufficient to meet the business needs. Through tiered pricing, you can offer more favorable pricing to the customers based on service quantity utilization. For example, CG Limited uses wire transfer services provided by a large bank. If CG Limited initiates up to 1,000 wire transfers, the fee charged by the bank will be $5 per transfer. If CG Limited initiates more than 1,000 wire transfers, the fee will be $3 per transfer. To introduce this flexibility in the pricing model, the following tiered pricing is defined:

Quantity Range	Rate ($) per transfer
0 – 1000	5
1000+	3

You can define two types of tiered pricing:

- **Step Tiered Pricing** — The rate of the first tiering range is used to calculate the charge for the maximum quantity in the range, and for incremental service quantity utilization, the rate of the progressive tiering range is used. This happens till the utilized quantity is exhausted. For example, when you define the following step tiered pricing for Product A and the user consumes 60,000 units of the same, the system will charge the first 45,000 units at $2 per unit and the remaining 15,000 units at $1 per unit:

Quantity Range	Rate ($) per unit
0 – 45000	2
45000+	1

- **Threshold Tiered Pricing** — The rate of the tiering range within which the service quantity utilization falls is used to calculate the charge for the entire volume. For example, when you define the following threshold tiered pricing for Product A and the user consumes 75,000 units of the same, the system will charge 75,000 units at $1 per unit as the service quantity utilization falls within 45000+ tiering range:

Quantity Range	Rate ($) per unit
0 – 45000	2
45000+	1

Multi Parameter Based Pricing

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides a facility to define pricing for a product based on multiple parameters. You can also define pricing for bundles based on multiple parameters. You can enable or disable the multi parameter based pricing feature by setting the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration. For more information, see *Setting the Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG) Feature Configuration* on page 759.

If the multi parameter based pricing feature is disabled, you can define pricing for a product based on the variance parameter. If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can define pricing for a product based on multiple parameters. For example:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Product A	Country	Currency
Pricing 1	US	USD
Pricing 2	Germany	USD

Pricing 1 and Pricing 2 are defined for Product A based on two parameters — Country and Currency. Before you define pricing based on country and currency, you need to define these parameters in the system. Once you define these parameters, you need to associate them to the product (i.e. Product A).

Then, when you define Pricing 1 for Product A, you need to set the following product parameters:

- Country — US
- Currency — USD

Similarly, you need to define Pricing 2 with Country set to Germany and Currency set to USD.

The following table lists the tiering ranges defined in Pricing 1 where product parameters are set to US, USD:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Product	Product Parameters	From	To
10	2	Number of Transactions	Product A	US, USD	0	5000
20	1	Number of Transactions	Product A	US, USD	5000	

The following table lists the tiering ranges defined in Pricing 2 where product parameters are set to Germany, USD:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Product	Product Parameters	From	To
10	4	Number of Transactions	Product A	Germany, USD	0	1000
20	3	Number of Transactions	Product A	Germany, USD	1000	

Now, when the user performs 1500 transactions (in USD) of Product A in Germany, 12000 transactions (in USD) of Product A in US, the system creates two billable charges. In one billable charge (with Product A, US and USD combination), the system uses $1 as the rate for calculating charges, and in another billable charge (with Product A, Germany and USD combination), the system uses $3 as the rate for calculating charges.

Note that in this case the parameters based on which you have defined pricing and tiering ranges are same. You can use different parameters while defining pricing and tiering ranges, if required. You can also use another product or bundle and its parameters while defining tiering ranges. For example:

The following table lists the tiering ranges of Pricing 1 defined for Product A where product parameters are set to US, USD:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Product	Product Parameters	From	To
10	2	Number of Transactions	Product B	Germany, USD	0	100
20	1	Number of Transactions	Product B	Germany, USD	100	200
30	0.5	Number of Transactions	Product B	Germany, USD	200	

Now, when the user performs 1500 transactions (in USD) of Product A in US, 200 transactions (in USD) of Product B in Germany, the system creates one billable charge. The system adds the transactions with the following combinations and then determines the range of Product A within which the total units (i.e. 200) fall:

- Product B, Germany, USD

In this case, the total units fall in the 100 – 200 range of Product A, and therefore the system uses $1 as the rate for calculating charges (i.e. 1500*1=1500).

Some parameters might be mandatory and some might be optional while defining product pricing. You can define product pricing based on these parameters at various levels, such as:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- Account Agreed
- Account Price List
- Account Inherited Price List
- Customer Agreed
- Customer Price List
- Customer Inherited Price List
- Parent Customer Agreed
- Parent Customer Price List
- Parent Customer Inherited Price List
- Default Price List
- Global Price List

As prices can be defined at multiple levels, the system first searches for exact match at all levels (using the search order). If the system finds the exact match at multiple levels, the price assignment at the higher precedence level is considered. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Pricing 1 is defined for Product A with the following parameters at the Account Agreed level:

Parameter	**Mandatory (Yes or No)**	**Priority**	**Value**
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	US
Currency	No	2	USD

Pricing 2 is defined for Product A with the following parameters at the Parent Customer Agreed level:

Parameter	**Mandatory (Yes or No)**	**Priority**	**Value**
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	US
Currency	No	2	USD

Pricing 3 is defined for Product A with the following parameters at the Account Price List level:

Parameter	**Mandatory (Yes or No)**	**Priority**	**Value**
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	US
Currency	No	2	—

Now, when the user performs transactions (with the type set to BT in US) of Product A in USD, the system searches for price with exact match (Type — BT, Country — US, and Currency — USD). The exact match is available at two levels — Account Agreed and Parent Customer Agreed. The system considers the price at the Account Agreed level because this level has higher precedence.

Depending on the search order defined for the division (to which the account belongs), the level with higher precedence changes. Accordingly, the price assignment at the higher precedence level is considered for calculating the charges.

If the system does not finds the exact match at any level, it searches for the best fit match at all levels. Let us understand how the best fit match is determined with the help of an example.

Pricing 1 is defined for Product A with the following parameters:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Value
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	US
Currency	No	2	-

Pricing 2 is defined for Product A with the following parameters:

Parameter	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Value
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	-
Currency	No	2	USD

Pricing 3 is defined for Product A with the following parameters:

Parameter	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Value
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	-
Currency	No	2	-

Pricing 4 is defined for Product A with the following parameters:

Parameter	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Value
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	US
Currency	No	2	GBP

The system has Pricing 1, Pricing 2, Pricing 3, and Pricing 4 defined for Product A. Now, when the user performs transactions (with the type set to BT in US) of Product A in USD, the system does not find price with exact match (Type — BT, Country — US, and Currency — USD). Therefore, it searches for the best fit match.

While searching for the best fit match, the system rules out the optional parameter with lowest priority (i.e. Currency) and checks whether the price (with Type — BT and Country — US) is available. If the price is available, the system considers the price as the best fit match. Therefore, in this case, Pricing 1 is considered as the best fit match.

Suppose, if the price (with Type — BT and Country — US) is not available, then the system rules out the optional parameter with next lowest priority (i.e. Country) and checks whether the price (with Type — BT and Currency — USD) is available. If the price is available, the system considers the price as the best fit match. In this case, Pricing 2 would be considered as the best fit match. If the system finds the best fit match with same weight at multiple levels, the price assignment at the higher precedence level is considered.

Price List Assignment (Account)

Once a price list is defined, you can assign it to accounts to indicate the prices to be charged for the products or services offered to the customers. You can assign multiple price lists to an account along with the priority or order in which the pricing should be considered. You can also define whether the account can avail the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. In other words, you can define whether the account can inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For example, suppose you have PL1 (with priority 10) and PL2 (with priority 20) assigned to an account. While determining pricing for a product, the system will search for the product pricing in PL1. If the system does not find the product pricing in PL1, it will search for the product pricing in PL2. The system will behave in this manner only when the price list inheritance for PL1 is set to **No** during price list assignment.

If the price list inheritance for both PL1 and PL2 is set to **Yes**, the system will search for the product pricing in PL1. If the system does not find the product pricing in PL1, it will search for the product pricing from the price list hierarchy defined for PL1. However, if the system does not find the product pricing from the price list hierarchy, it will then search for the product pricing in PL2 (assigned to the account with priority 20). If the system still does not find the product pricing in PL2, it will search for the product pricing from the price list hierarchy defined for PL2.

The **Price List Assignment (Account)** screen allows you to search and assign a price list to the account. It also allows you to view the price lists that are already assigned to the account. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Party* on page 69
- *Assigned Price Lists* on page 69
- *Historical Price List Assignments* on page 70
- *Inactive Price List Assignments* on page 71
- *Price List Products* on page 72
- *Search Price List to Assign* on page 73

Party

The **Party** zone displays details of the account whose price list assignment details you want to view. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Person Name	Displays the name of the main customer.
Account ID	Displays the account ID.
Primary Account Identifier	Displays the primary account identifier type of the account along with its value.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.

Note: All fields in the **Party** zone are read-only.

Assigned Price Lists

The **Assigned Price Lists** zone lists price lists that are already assigned to the account. You will not find any records in this zone if the account does not have any price lists assigned to it. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Priority	Indicates the order in which the assigned price list should be considered while determining the product pricing for the account.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the system will start using prices on the price list to bill products for the account.
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Price List** screen appears where you can view the details of the price list.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the system will use prices on the price list to bill products for the account.
Price List Inheritance	Indicates whether the account can avail the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. In other words, it indicates whether the account can inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy.
Assignment Status	Indicates the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: • **Active** — Indicates that the price list assignment is used for billing. • **Rejected** — Indicates that the price list assignment is rejected by the approver. • **Proposed** — Indicates that the price list assignment is used for quotations.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Price List Assignment (Account)** screen appears where you can edit the details of the price list assignment.
Assignment Information	Displays additional information about the price list assignment. **Note:** The information string appears only when you have created an algorithm using the C1-PLAINFO algorithm type and attached to the **Pricelist Assignment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options — Framework** screen.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view price lists assigned to an account	*Viewing Price Lists Assigned to an Account* on page 75
How to edit the price list assignment details of an account	*Editing the Price List Assignment Details* on page 80

Historical Price List Assignments

The **Historical Price List Assignments** zone lists price lists that were assigned to the account in past, but are no longer used to bill products for the account. In other words, it lists the price list assignments which have expired. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Priority	Indicates the order in which the assigned price list was considered while determining the product pricing for the account.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the system started using prices on the price list to bill products for the account.
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Price List** screen appears where you can view the details of the price list.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the system used prices on the price list to bill products for the account.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Price List Inheritance	Indicates whether the account availed the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it was not available on the assigned price list. In other words, it indicates whether the account inherited product pricing from the price list hierarchy.
Assignment Status	Indicates the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: • **Active** — Indicates that the price list assignment was used for billing. • **Rejected** — Indicates that the price list assignment was rejected by the approver. • **Proposed** — Indicates that the price list assignment was used for quotations.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Price List Assignment (Account)** screen appears where you can edit the details of the price list assignment.
Assignment Information	Displays additional information about the price list assignment. **Note:** The information string appears only when you have created an algorithm using the C1-PLAINFO algorithm type and attached to the **Pricelist Assignment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options — Framework** screen.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view historical price list assignments of an account	*Viewing Historical Price List Assignments of an Account* on page 76
How to edit the price list assignment details of an account	*Editing the Price List Assignment Details* on page 80

Inactive Price List Assignments

The **Inactive Price List Assignments** zone lists price list assignments which are inactive and will never be used to bill products for the account. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Priority	Indicates the order in which the assigned price list was considered while determining the product pricing for the account.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the system started using prices on the price list to bill products for the account.
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Price List** screen appears where you can view the details of the price list.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the system used prices on the price list to bill products for the account.
Price List Inheritance	Indicates whether the account availed the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it was not available on the assigned price list. In other words, it indicates whether the account inherited product pricing from the price list hierarchy.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Assignment Status	Indicates that the status of the price list assignment is inactive.
Assignment Information	Displays additional information about the price list assignment. **Note:** The information string appears only when you have created an algorithm using the C1-PLAINFO algorithm type and attached to the **Pricelist Assignment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options — Framework** screen.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view inactive price list assignments of an account	*Viewing Inactive Price List Assignments of an Account* on page 76

Price List Products

The **Price List Products** zone lists products that are currently assigned to the price list. You can filter the list using various search criteria. You will not find any records in this zone if the price list does not have any products assigned to it.

The **Price List Products** zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Product Description	Used to specify the description of the product.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the product is assigned to the price list.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Product Pricing** screen appears where you can view the details of the product pricing.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Variance	Indicates the variance used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
Product Parameters	Indicates the parameters which are used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the product is assigned to the price list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the product is assigned to the price list.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the product pricing is defined.
Rate Schedule	Displays the rate schedule used for defining the product pricing.
Assignment Information	Displays additional information about the price assignment. **Note:** The information string appears only when you have created an algorithm using the C1-PLPINFO algorithm type and attached to the **Pricelist Products Assignment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options — Framework** screen.
PA Usage Flag	Indicates whether the price assignment is applicable to all customers or only to the new customers.
PA Type Flag	Indicates the price assignment type. The valid values are: • Regular • Post Processing • Post Processing — Invoice Based • Post Processing — Product Based

You can change the layout of this section. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

By default, the **Price List Products** zone does not appear in the **Price List Assignment (Account)** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the assigned, historical, or inactive price assignment in the respective zone.

Search Price List to Assign

The **Search Price List to Assign** zone allows you to search for a price list that you want to assign to the account. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The criteria are grouped as indicated by line separators between the criteria. Each group is independent from the other, and only one group is used at a time for searching. If you enter criteria in more than one group, the criteria from the first group is used for searching. For example, if you enter Price List Description and Effective Start Date (which are in different criteria groups), the system searches using Price List Description, which appears before Effective Start Date.

  The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Query Option	Used to specify whether you want to search against all price lists or against those price lists that are already assigned to either a customer or an account. **Note:** By default, the **Search Price List** option is selected.	Yes
Price List	Used to specify the price list ID.	No
Price List Description	Used to specify the description of the price list.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Used to specify the name of the customer whom the price list is assigned. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type of the account to which the price list is assigned. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Effective Start Date	The date that you enter in this field depends on the query option selected. If you have selected the **Search Price List** option, enter the date from when the price list is effective. If you have selected the **Search Assigned Price List** option, enter the date from when the system will start using prices on the price list to bill products for the customer or account.	No
Effective End Date	The date that you enter in this field depends on the query option selected. If you have selected the **Search Price List** option, enter the date till when the price list is effective. If you have selected the **Search Assigned Price List** option, enter the date till when the system will use prices on the price list to bill products for the customer or account.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price list.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The search results include only those price lists that are valid for the division to which the account belongs. It may also include price lists that are already assigned to the account in case those price lists match the search criteria.

  The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price List ID	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists** screen appears with the details of the respective price list.
Account Information	Displays the account ID. **Note:** This column appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type. **Note:** This column appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type. **Note:** This column appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.
Person Name	Displays the name of the main customer. **Note:** This column appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.
Effective Start Date	The date that appears in this column depends on the query option selected. If you have selected the **Search Price List** option, the date from when the price list is effective appears. If you have selected the **Search Assigned Price List** option, the date from when the system will start using prices on the price list to bill products for the customer or account appears.
Effective End Date	The date that appears in this column depends on the query option selected. If you have selected the **Search Price List** option, the date till when the price list is effective appears. If you have selected the **Search Assigned Price List** option, the date till when the system will use prices on the price list to bill products for the customer or account appears.
Assign	On clicking the **Assign** ( ) icon, the **Assign Price List** screen appears where you can assign the price list to the account.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to assign a price list to an account	*Assigning a Price List to an Account* on page 77

Viewing Price Lists Assigned to an Account

Procedure

To view price lists assigned to an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose *d*etails you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignments** menu option.

   The **Price List Assignment (Account)** screen appears.
4. View the price lists that are already assigned to the account in the **Assigned Price Lists** zone.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24
Price List Assignment (Account) screen	*Price List Assignment (Account)* on page 68
Assigned Price Lists zone	*Assigned Price Lists* on page 69

Viewing Historical Price List Assignments of an Account

Procedure

To view historical (i.e. expired) price list assignments of an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignments** menu option.

   The **Price List Assignment (Account)** screen appears.
4. View the price lists that were assigned to the account in past in the **Historical Price List Assignments** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24
Price List Assignment (Account) screen	*Price List Assignment (Account)* on page 68
Historical Price List Assignments zone	*Historical Price List Assignments* on page 70

Viewing Inactive Price List Assignments of an Account

Procedure

To view inactive price list assignments of an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignments** menu option.

   The **Price List Assignment (Account)** screen appears.
4. View the price list assignments which are inactive in the **Inactive Price List Assignments** zone.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24
Price List Assignment (Account) screen	*Price List Assignment (Account)* on page 68
Inactive Price List Assignments zone	*Inactive Price List Assignments* on page 71

Assigning a Price List to an Account

Prerequisites

To assign a price list to an account, you should have:

- Price list defined in the application
- Pricing for all products assigned to the price list defined in the application
- Price list associated with the division to which the account belongs

Procedure

To assign a price list to an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to edit.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignments** menu option.

   The **Price List Assignment (Account)** screen appears.
4. Search for the price list in the **Search Price List to Assign** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Assign** ( ) icon corresponding to the price list that you want to assign to the account.

   The **Price List Assignment (Account)** screen appears. It contains the following tabs:

   - **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the price list assignment.
   - **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the price list assignment.

   The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the name of the main customer.	Not applicable
Account ID	Displays the account ID.	Not applicable
Primary Account Identifier	Displays the primary account identifier type of the account along with its value.	Not applicable
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** The price list ID is generated automatically when the price list is created.	Not applicable
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.	Not applicable
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the system will start using prices on the price list to bill products for the account. **Note:** The price list assignment start date cannot be earlier than the price list effective start date or later than the price list effective end date.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the system will use prices on the price list to bill products for the account. **Note:** The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date. The price list assignment end date cannot be later than the price list effective end date.	No
Priority	Used to specify the order in which the assigned price list should be considered while determining the product pricing for the account.	Yes
Price List Inheritance	Used to indicate whether the account can avail the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. The valid values are: • **Yes** — Indicates that the account can inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy. • **No** — Indicates that the account cannot inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy.	Yes
Assignment Status	Used to indicate the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: • **Active** — Indicates that the price list assignment will be used for billing. • **Proposed** — Indicates that the price list assignment will be used for quotations.	Yes

6. Enter the required details.
7. Define characteristics for the price list assignment, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

   The price list is assigned to the account.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Search Price List to Assign zone	*Search Price List to Assign* on page 73
How to define characteristics for a price list assignment	*Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment* on page 79

Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment

Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a price list assignment, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Price List Assignment)

Procedure

To define characteristics for a price list assignment:

1. Click the **Characteristics** tab in the **Price List Assignment (Account)** screen when you are assigning a price list to an account or editing the price list assignment details of an account.

   The **Characteristics** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price list assignment.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list assignment.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. **Note:** The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Price List Assignment.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list assignment.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. **Note:** On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list assignment.

2. Enter the required details.

   Note: If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the price list assignment, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step *2*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the price list assignment, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

   The characteristics are defined for the price list assignment.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to assign a price list to an account	*Assigning a Price List to an Account* on page 77
How to edit the price list assignment details of an account	*Editing the Price List Assignment Details* on page 80
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	*Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value* on page 743

Editing the Price List Assignment Details

Procedure

To edit the price list assignment details of an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to edit.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignments** menu option.

   The **Price List Assignment (Account)** screen appears.
4. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Edit the price list assignment which is currently effective	In the **Assigned Price Lists** zone, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the price list whose assignment details you want to edit.
Edit the price list assignment which has expired	In the **Historical Assigned Price Lists** zone, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the price list whose assignment details you want to edit.

The **Price List Assignment (Account)** screen appears. It contains the following tabs:

- **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the price list assignment.
- **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the price list assignment.

The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the name of the main customer.	Not applicable
Account ID	Displays the account ID.	Not applicable
Primary Account Identifier	Displays the primary account identifier type of the account along with its value.	Not applicable
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** The price list ID is generated automatically when the price list is created.	Not applicable
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.	Not applicable
Effective Start Date	Used to modify the date from when the system will start using prices on the price list to bill products for the account. **Note:** The price list assignment start date cannot be earlier than the price list effective start date or later than the price list effective end date.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to modify the date till when the system will use prices on the price list to bill products for the account. **Note:** The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date. The price list assignment end date cannot be later than the price list effective end date.	No
Priority	Used to modify the order in which the assigned price list should be considered while determining the product pricing for the account.	Yes
Price List Inheritance	Used to indicate whether the account can avail the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. The valid values are: • **Yes** — Indicates that the account can inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy. • **No** — Indicates that the account cannot inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy.	Yes
Assignment Status	Used to indicate the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: • **Active** — Indicates that the price list assignment is used for billing. • **Proposed** — Indicates that the price list assignment is used for quotations. This status appears only when you are editing a proposed price list assignment. • **Inactive** — Indicates that the price list assignment must be no longer used in the system.	Yes

5. Modify the required details.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the price list assignment, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the price list assignment are saved.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24
Assigned Price Lists zone	*Assigned Price Lists* on page 69
Historical Price List Assignments zone	*Historical Price List Assignments* on page 70
How to define characteristics for a price list assignment	*Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment* on page 79

Price List Assignment (Customer)

Once a price list is defined, you can assign it to customers to indicate the prices to be charged for the products or services offered to them. You can assign multiple price lists to a customer along with the priority or order in which the pricing should be considered. You can also define whether the customer can avail the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. In other words, you can define whether the customer can inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy.

For example, suppose you have PL1 (with priority 10) and PL2 (with priority 20) assigned to a customer. While determining pricing for a product, the system will search for the product pricing in PL1. If the system does not find the product pricing in PL1, it will search for the product pricing in PL2. The system will behave in this manner only when the price list inheritance for PL1 is set to **No** during price list assignment.

If the price list inheritance for both PL1 and PL2 is set to **Yes**, the system will search for the product pricing in PL1. If the system does not find the product pricing in PL1, it will search for the product pricing from the price list hierarchy defined for PL1. However, if the system does not find the product pricing from the price list hierarchy, it will then search for the product pricing in PL2 (assigned to the customer with priority 20). If the system still does not find the product pricing in PL2, it will search for the product pricing from the price list hierarchy defined for PL2.

The **Price List Assignment (Customer)** screen allows you to search and assign a price list to the customer. It also allows you to view the price lists that are already assigned to the customer. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Party* on page 82
- *Assigned Price Lists* on page 83
- *Historical Price List Assignments* on page 83
- *Inactive Price List Assignments* on page 84
- *Price List Products* on page 85
- *Search Price List to Assign* on page 86

Party

The **Party** zone displays details of the customer whose price list assignment details you want to view. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Person Name	Displays the name of the customer.
Person ID	Displays the person ID.
Division	Displays the division to which the customer belongs.

Note: All fields in the **Party** zone are read-only.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Assigned Price Lists

The **Assigned Price Lists** zone lists price lists that are already assigned to the customer. You will not find any records in this zone if there are no price lists assigned to the customer. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Priority	Indicates the order in which the assigned price list should be considered while determining the product pricing for the customer.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the system will start using prices on the price list to bill products for the customer.
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Price List** screen appears where you can view the details of the price list.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the system will use prices on the price list to bill products for the customer.
Price List Inheritance	Indicates whether the customer can avail the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. In other words, it indicates whether the customer can inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy.
Assignment Status	Indicates the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: • **Active** — Indicates that the price list assignment is used for billing. • **Rejected** — Indicates that the price list assignment is rejected by the approver. • **Proposed** — Indicates that the price list assignment is used for quotations.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Price List Assignment (Customer)** screen appears where you can edit the details of the price list assignment.
Assignment Information	Displays additional information about the price list assignment. **Note:** The information string appears only when you have created an algorithm using the C1-PLAINFO algorithm type and attached to the **Pricelist Assignment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options — Framework** screen.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view price lists assigned to a customer	*Viewing Price Lists Assigned to a Customer* on page 88
How to edit the price list assignment details of a customer	*Editing the Price List Assignment Details* on page 93

Historical Price List Assignments

The **Historical Price List Assignments** zone lists price lists that were assigned to the customer in past, but are no longer used to bill products for the customer. In other words, it lists the price list assignments which have expired. This zone contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Priority	Indicates the order in which the assigned price list was considered while determining the product pricing for the customer.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the system started using prices on the price list to bill products for the customer.
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Price List** screen appears where you can view the details of the price list.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the system used prices on the price list to bill products for the customer.
Price List Inheritance	Indicates whether the customer availed the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it was not available on the assigned price list. In other words, it indicates whether the customer inherited product pricing from the price list hierarchy.
Assignment Status	Indicates the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: • **Active** — Indicates that the price list assignment was used for billing. • **Rejected** — Indicates that the price list assignment was rejected by the approver. • **Proposed** — Indicates that the price list assignment was used for quotations.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Price List Assignment (Customer)** screen appears where you can edit the details of the price list assignment.
Assignment Information	Displays additional information about the price list assignment. **Note:** The information string appears only when you have created an algorithm using the C1-PLAINFO algorithm type and attached to the **Pricelist Assignment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options — Framework** screen.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view historical price list assignments of a customer	*Viewing Historical Price List Assignments of a Customer* on page 89
How to edit the price list assignment details of a customer	*Editing the Price List Assignment Details* on page 93

Inactive Price List Assignments

The **Inactive Price List Assignments** zone lists price list assignments which are inactive and will never be used to bill products for the customer. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Priority	Indicates the order in which the assigned price list was considered while determining the product pricing for the customer.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the system started using prices on the price list to bill products for the customer.
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Price List** screen appears where you can view the details of the price list.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the system used prices on the price list to bill products for the customer.
Price List Inheritance	Indicates whether the customer availed the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it was not available on the assigned price list. In other words, it indicates whether the customer inherited product pricing from the price list hierarchy.
Assignment Status	Indicates that the status of the price list assignment is inactive.
Assignment Information	Displays additional information about the price list assignment. **Note:** The information string appears only when you have created an algorithm using the C1-PLAINFO algorithm type and attached to the **Pricelist Assignment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options — Framework** screen.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view inactive price list assignments of a customer	*Viewing Inactive Price List Assignments of a Customer* on page 89

Price List Products

The **Price List Products** zone lists products that are currently assigned to the price list. You can filter the list using various search criteria. You will not find any records in this zone if the price list does not have any products assigned to it.

The **Price List Products** zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Product Description	Used to specify the description of the product.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the product is assigned to the price list.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Product Pricing** screen appears where you can view the details of the product pricing.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Variance	Indicates the variance used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
Product Parameters	Indicates the parameters which are used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the product is assigned to the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the product is assigned to the price list.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the product pricing is defined.
Rate Schedule	Displays the rate schedule used for defining the product pricing.
Assignment Information	Displays additional information about the price assignment. **Note:** The information string appears only when you have created an algorithm using the C1-PLPINFO algorithm type and attached to the **Pricelist Products Assignment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options — Framework** screen.
PA Usage Flag	Indicates whether the price assignment is applicable to all customers or only to the new customers.
PA Type Flag	Indicates the price assignment type. The valid values are: • Regular • Post Processing • Post Processing — Invoice Based • Post Processing — Product Based

You can change the layout of this section. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

By default, the **Price List Products** zone does not appear in the **Price List Assignment (Customer)** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the assigned, historical, or inactive price assignment in the respective zone.

Search Price List to Assign

The **Search Price List to Assign** zone allows you to search for a price list that you want to assign to the customer. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The criteria are grouped as indicated by line separators between the criteria. Each group is independent from the other, and only one group is used at a time for searching. If you enter criteria in more than

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

one group, the criteria from the first group is used for searching. For example, if you enter Price List Description and Effective Start Date (which are in different criteria groups), the system searches using Price List Description, which appears before Effective Start Date.

The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Query Option	Used to specify whether you want to search against all price lists or against those price lists that are already assigned to either a customer or an account. **Note:** By default, the **Search Price List** option is selected.	Yes
Price List	Used to specify the price list ID.	No
Price List Description	Used to specify the description of the price list.	No
Person Name	Used to specify the name of the customer whom the price list is assigned. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type of the account to which the price list is assigned. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Effective Start Date	The date that you enter in this field depends on the query option selected. If you have selected the **Search Price List** option, enter the date from when the price list is effective. If you have selected the **Search Assigned Price List** option, enter the date from when the system will start using prices on the price list to bill products for the customer or account.	No
Effective End Date	The date that you enter in this field depends on the query option selected. If you have selected the **Search Price List** option, enter the date till when the price list is effective. If you have selected the **Search Assigned Price List** option, enter the date till when the system will use prices on the price list to bill products for the customer or account.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price list.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The search results include only those price lists that are valid for the division to which the customer belongs. It may also include price lists that are already assigned to the customer in case those price lists match the search criteria.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price List ID	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists** screen appears with the details of the respective price list.
Account Information	Displays the account ID. **Note:** This column appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type. **Note:** This column appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type. **Note:** This column appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.
Person Name	Displays the name of the customer. **Note:** This column appears only when you select the **Search Assigned Price List** option from the **Query Option** list.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.
Effective Start Date	The date that appears in this column depends on the query option selected. If you have selected the **Search Price List** option, the date from when the price list is effective appears. If you have selected the **Search Assigned Price List** option, the date from when the system will start using prices on the price list to bill products for the customer or account appears.
Effective End Date	The date that appears in this column depends on the query option selected. If you have selected the **Search Price List** option, the date till when the price list is effective appears. If you have selected the **Search Assigned Price List** option, the date till when the system will use prices on the price list to bill products for the customer or account appears.
Assign	On clicking the **Assign** ( ) icon, the **Assign Price List** screen appears where you can assign the price list to the customer.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to assign a price list to a customer	*Assigning a Price List to a Customer* on page 90

Viewing Price Lists Assigned to a Customer

Procedure

To view the price lists assigned to a customer:

1. Search for the customer in the **Banking Control Central** screen.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose *d*etails you want to view.

   A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignments** menu option.

   The **Price List Assignment (Customer)** screen appears.

4. View the price lists that are already assigned to the customer in the **Assigned Price Lists** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	**See...**
How to search for a customer	*Searching for a Customer* on page 27
Price List Assignment (Customer) screen	*Price List Assignment (Customer)* on page 82
Assigned Price Lists zone	*Assigned Price Lists* on page 83

Viewing Historical Price List Assignments of a Customer

Procedure

To view historical (i.e. expired) price list assignments of a customer:

1. Search for the customer in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose *d*etails you want to view.

   A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignments** menu option.

   The **Price List Assignment (Customer)** screen appears.

4. View the price lists that were assigned to the customer in past in the **Historical Price List Assignments** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	**See...**
How to search for a customer	*Searching for a Customer* on page 27
Price List Assignment (Customer) screen	*Price List Assignment (Customer)* on page 82
Historical Price List Assignments zone	*Historical Price List Assignments* on page 83

Viewing Inactive Price List Assignments of a Customer

Procedure

To view inactive price list assignments of a customer:

1. Search for the customer in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose *d*etails you want to view.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignments** menu option.

   The **Price List Assignment (Customer)** screen appears.

4. View the price list assignments which are inactive in the **Inactive Price List Assignments** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a customer	*Searching for a Customer* on page 27
Price List Assignment (Customer) screen	*Price List Assignment (Customer)* on page 82
Inactive Price List Assignments zone	*Inactive Price List Assignments* on page 84

Assigning a Price List to a Customer

Prerequisites

To assign a price list to a customer, you should have:

- Price list defined in the application
- Pricing for all products assigned to the price list defined in the application
- Price list associated with the division to which the customer belongs

Procedure

To assign a price list to a customer:

1. Search for the customer in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose *d*etails you want to view.

   A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignments** menu option.

   The **Price List Assignment (Customer)** screen appears.

4. Search for the price list in the **Search Price List to Assign** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Assign** ( ) icon corresponding to the price list that you want to assign *t*o the customer.

   The **Price List Assignment (Customer)** screen appears. It contains the following tabs:

   - **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the price list assignment.
   - **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the price list assignment.

   The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the name of the customer.	Not applicable
Person ID	Displays the person ID.	Not applicable
Division	Displays the division to which the customer belongs.	Not applicable
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** The price list ID is generated automatically when the price list is created.	Not applicable
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.	Not applicable
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the system will start using prices on the price list to bill products for the customer. **Note:** The price list assignment start date cannot be earlier than the price list effective start date or later than the price list effective end date.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the system will use prices on the price list to bill products for the customer. **Note:** The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date. The price list assignment end date cannot be later than the price list effective end date.	No
Priority	Used to specify the order in which the assigned price list should be considered while determining the product pricing for the customer.	Yes
Price List Inheritance	Used to indicate whether the customer can avail the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. The valid values are: • **Yes** — Indicates that the customer can inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy. • **No** — Indicates that the customer cannot inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy.	Yes
Assignment Status	Used to indicate the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: • **Active** — Indicates that the price list assignment will be used for billing. • **Proposed** — Indicates that the price list assignment will be used for quotations.	Yes

6. Enter the required details.
7. Define characteristics for the price list assignment, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

   The price list is assigned to the customer.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a customer	*Searching for a Customer* on page 27
Search Price List to Assign zone	*Search Price List to Assign* on page 86
How to define characteristics for a price list assignment	*Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment* on page 92

Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment

Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a price list assignment, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Price List Assignment)

Procedure

To define characteristics for a price list assignment:

1. Click the **Characteristics** tab in the **Price List Assignment (Customer)** screen when you are assigning a price *l*ist to a customer or editing the price list assignment details of a customer.

   The **Characteristics** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price list assignment.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list assignment.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. **Note:** The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Price List Assignment.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list assignment.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. **Note:** On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list assignment.

2. Enter the required details.

   Note: If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the price list assignment, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step *2*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the price list assignment, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The characteristics are defined for the price list assignment.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to assign a price list to a customer	*Assigning a Price List to a Customer* on page 90
How to edit the price list assignment details of a customer	*Editing the Price List Assignment Details* on page 93
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	*Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value* on page 743

Editing the Price List Assignment Details

Procedure

To edit the price list assignment details of a customer:

1. Search for the customer in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose details you want to edit.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignments** menu option.

   The **Price List Assignment (Customer)** screen appears.
4. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Edit the price list assignment which is currently effective	In the **Assigned Price Lists** zone, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the price list whose assignment details you want to edit.
Edit the price list assignment which has expired	In the **Historical Assigned Price Lists** zone, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the price list whose assignment details you want to edit.

The **Price List Assignment (Customer)** screen appears. It contains the following tabs:

- **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the price list assignment.
- **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the price list assignment.

The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the name of the customer.	Not applicable
Person ID	Displays the person ID.	Not applicable
Division	Displays the division to which the customer belongs.	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** The price list ID is generated automatically when the price list is created.	Not applicable
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.	Not applicable
Effective Start Date	Used to modify the date from when the system will start using prices on the price list to bill products for the customer. **Note:** The price list assignment start date cannot be earlier than the price list effective start date or later than the price list effective end date.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to modify the date till when the system will use prices on the price list to bill products for the customer. **Note:** The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date. The price list assignment end date cannot be later than the price list effective end date.	No
Priority	Used to modify the order in which the assigned price list should be considered while determining the product pricing for the customer.	Yes
Price List Inheritance	Used to indicate whether the customer can avail the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. The valid values are: • **Yes** — Indicates that the customer can inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy. • **No** — Indicates that the customer cannot inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy.	Yes
Assignment Status	Used to indicate the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: • **Active** — Indicates that the price list assignment is used for billing. • **Proposed** — Indicates that the price list assignment is used for quotations. This status appears only when you are editing a proposed price list assignment. • **Inactive** — Indicates that the price list assignment must be no longer used in the system.	Yes

5. Modify the required details.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the price list assignment, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the price list assignment are saved.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a customer	*Searching for a Customer* on page 27
Assigned Price Lists zone	*Assigned Price Lists* on page 83
Historical Price List Assignments zone	*Historical Price List Assignments* on page 83
How to define characteristics for a price list assignment	*Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment* on page 92

Pricing (Account)

The **Pricing (Account)** screen allows you to:

- View effective pricing for products assigned to the account either directly or through the customer hierarchy
- Filter products that are already assigned to the account
- Search and assign products to the account
- Edit or override a product pricing

This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Party Information* on page 95
- *Effective Price Assignment* on page 95
- *Search Products to Assign* on page 99

Through the **Pricing (Account)** screen, you can navigate to the following screens:

- *Manage Products* on page 113
- *Add Product Pricing* on page 166
- *Override Product Pricing* on page 181
- *Edit Product Pricing* on page 174

Party Information

The **Party Information** zone displays basic information about the account. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Person Name	Displays the name of the main customer.
Account ID	Displays the account ID.
Primary Account Identifier	Displays the primary account identifier type of the account along with its value.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.

Note: All the fields in the **Party Information** zone are read-only.

Effective Price Assignment

The **Effective Price Assignment** zone allows you to filter price assignments using various search criteria. The order in which the price assignments are listed is controlled by the Price Assignment Search algorithm defined for the division to which the account belongs.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

In case of bundles, the order in which the product pricing is listed in this zone is based on the following condition:

- If the system finds pricing for products that belong to a bundle before finding pricing for the bundle, then the system lists the pricing for products that belong to the bundle, and not the pricing for the bundle. For example, let say, B0001 is a bundle, and contains C0001 and C0002 products. If the system finds pricing for B0001, it validates whether the pricing for C0001 and C0002 has already been found. If yes, then the system lists the pricing for C0001 and C0002. If the system does not find pricing for C0001 and C0002 before finding pricing for B0001, it lists the pricing for B0001.

Note: If the effective pricing is available for the product and regular bundle (to which the product belongs) at the same level, the system lists the pricing depending on the value defined for the **Prefer Product Over Bundle (Valid values: Y, N)** parameter in the price assignment search algorithm. If the value of the **Prefer Product Over Bundle (Valid values: Y, N)** parameter is set to **Y**, the system lists the product pricing in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone. However, if the value of the **Prefer Product Over Bundle (Valid values: Y, N)** parameter is set to **N**, the system lists the regular bundle pricing in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone.

This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Displays the account ID.	Not applicable
Effective Pricing Date	Used to search for price assignments which are effective from a particular date onwards.	No
Product	Used to search for price assignments of a particular product.	No
Product Description	Used to search for price assignments of a product having a particular description.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Assignment Level	Used to search for price assignments with a particular assignment level. The valid values are: • **Account Agreed** – Means product pricing is agreed for the specific account within the hierarchy. • **Account Price List** – Means product pricing is defined within the price list that is assigned to the account. • **Account Inherited Price List** — Means product pricing is inherited from the hierarchy defined for the price list that is assigned to the account. • **Customer Agreed** – Means product pricing is agreed for the specific customer within the hierarchy. • **Customer Price List** – Means product pricing is defined within the price list that is assigned to the customer. • **Customer Inherited Price List** — Means product pricing is inherited from the hierarchy defined for the price list that is assigned to the customer. • **Parent Customer Agreed** – Means product pricing is agreed for the parent customer in the hierarchy. • **Parent Customer Price List** – Means product pricing is defined within the price list that is assigned to the parent customer. • **Parent Customer Inherited Price List** — Means product pricing is inherited from the hierarchy defined for the price list that is assigned to the parent customer.	No
Parent Customer	Used to search for price assignments which are inherited from a particular parent customer.	No
Pricing Status	Used to search for price assignments with a particular status. The valid values are: • Active • Inactive • Proposed • Rejected	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Manage Products** screen appears with the details of the respective product.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Variance	Indicates the variance used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
Product Parameters	Indicates the parameters which are used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. A tool tip appears when you hover over this column corresponding to the product. It indicates the product parameters and their values.
Assignment Type	Indicates the type of price assignment. The valid values are: • Regular • Post Processing • Post Processing — Invoice Based • Post Processing — Product Based
Assignment Level	Indicates the level at which the price assignment is done.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list. **Note:** The description appears only when the pricing assignment type is Account Price List, Account Inherited Price List, Customer Price List, Customer Inherited Price List, Parent Customer Price List, or Parent Customer Inherited Price List.
Rate	Displays the price of the product. It also indicates whether the price is a Flat, Threshold, or Step price. The price can be agreed pricing, price list pricing, or pricing inherited from the price list hierarchy. If the price is applicable only to new customers, an asterisk (*) symbol appears corresponding to the price.
Rate Description	Displays the description of the tiering setup of the rate component.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Edit Product Pricing** screen appears where you can edit the rates, criteria, associated product, and tiering ranges. **Note:** The **Edit** icon appears only when the assignment level is account agreed.
Override	When you override a product pricing, you create prices that are specific to an account (which is referred to as account agreed pricing). In other words, you create a new price assignment within the hierarchy. You can then edit this account agreed pricing. On clicking the **Override** ( ) icon, the **Override Product Pricing** screen appears where you can override rates, criteria, associated product, and tiering ranges.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing assignment is effective.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing assignment is effective.
CCY (P)	Indicates the currency in which the product pricing is defined.
Parent Customer	Displays the name of the parent or grandparent customer from whom the pricing is inherited.

Note: The number of records that can be displayed in the **Search Results** section of the **Effective Price Assignment** zone is controlled via the **C1_PR_REC** feature configuration. You can change the number of records that can be displayed using the **Effective Pricing RecordSet Limit** option type of the **C1_PR_REC** feature configuration. For more information, refer to *Setting the C1_PR_REC Feature Configuration* on page 761.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view effective pricing of an account	*Viewing Effective Pricing of an Account* on page 100
How to override a product pricing	*Overriding Product Pricing* on page 186
How to edit a product pricing	*Editing Product Pricing* on page 179
How to export product pricing in the CSV format	*Exporting Effective Pricing in CSV Format* on page 101

Search Products to Assign

The **Search Products to Assign** zone allows you to search for products that you want to assign to the account. The search for products is restricted to those products that are valid for the account's division. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Product Description	Used to specify the description of the product.	No
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the product is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a product.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Add Product Pricing** screen appears.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Global Price List	Indicates whether the product is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Y • N
Unit of Measure	Displays the unit of measure associated with the product. **Note:** The unit of measure is generated automatically when the product is created.
Bundled	Indicates whether the product is a bundle or not. The valid values are: • Y • N
Bundle Type	Displays the type of bundle. The valid values are: • Phantom • Ratio • Regular

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to assign a product to an account	*Assigning a Product to an Account* on page 103

Viewing Effective Pricing of an Account

Prerequisites

To view effective pricing of an account, you should have:

- Products assigned to the account either directly or through the customer hierarchy

Procedure

To view effective pricing of an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose *d*etails you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

   The **Pricing (Account)** screen appears.
4. View the pricing for products assigned to the account (either directly or through the customer hierarchy) in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone.
5. If required, you can filter the product pricing by entering the search criteria in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24
Pricing (Account) screen	*Pricing (Account)* on page 95
Effective Price Assignment zone	*Effective Price Assignment* on page 95

Exporting Effective Pricing in CSV Format

Procedure

To export effective pricing of an account in CSV format:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

   The **Pricing (Account)** screen appears.
4. If required, you can filter the product pricing by entering the search criteria in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click the **Export to Excel** link in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone.

   The **File Download** dialog box appears.
6. Click **Save**.

   The **Save As** dialog box appears.
7. Browse to the location where you want to save the file.
8. Enter the file name in the respective field, and click **Save**.

   The search results are exported in CSV format.
9. Open the CSV file in Microsoft Excel.

   It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Variance	Indicates the variance used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
Product Parameters	Indicates the parameters which are used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
Assignment Type	Indicates the price assignment type. The valid values are: • Regular • Post Processing • Post Processing — Invoice Based • Post Processing — Product Based
Assignment Level	Displays the pricing assignment type.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list. **Note:** The description appears only when the pricing assignment type is Account Price List, Customer Price List, or Parent Customer Price List.
Rate	Displays the price of the product. It also indicates whether the price is a Flat, Threshold, or Step price. The price can be agreed pricing, price list pricing, or pricing inherited from the price list hierarchy. If the price is applicable only to new customers, an asterisk (*) symbol appears corresponding to the price.
Rate Description	Displays the description of the tiering setup of the rate component.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing assignment is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing assignment is effective.
CCY (P)	Indicates the currency in which the product pricing is defined.
Lower Limit	Displays the lower limit of the tiering range.
Upper Limit	Displays the upper limit of the tiering range.
PA Usage Flag	Indicates whether the price assignment is applicable to all customers or only to the new customers.
Price Assignment ID	Displays the ID that is generated automatically when the price assignment is done.
Parent Level	Displays the numerical level of the parent in the hierarchy from whom the pricing is inherited.
Price List ID	Displays the price list ID from where the pricing is inherited.
Price List Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is effective.
Parent Customer	Displays the name of the parent or grandparent customer from whom the pricing is inherited.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Parent Pricelist Level	Indicates the parent level when pricing is inherited from the price list hierarchy. If the pricing is inherited from the assigned price list, the parent price list level will be 0. However, if the pricing is inherited from the parent price list in the hierarchy, the parent price list level will be 1. And, if the pricing is inherited from the grandparent price list in the hierarchy, the parent price list level will be 2, and so on.
Ignore Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the product should be considered for billing. The valid values are: • Y • N
Aggregate Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the product should be aggregated for billing. The valid values are: • Y • N
Aggregation Schedule	Indicates the aggregation cycle.
Tiering Criterion	Indicates the tiering criterion.
Tiering Product	Indicates whether the product is billed individually or at the bundle level.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24
Pricing (Account) screen	*Pricing (Account)* on page 95
Effective Price Assignment zone	*Effective Price Assignment* on page 95

Assigning a Product to an Account

Prerequisites

To assign a product to an account, you should have:

- Product created in the application
- Product associated with the division to which the account belongs

Procedure

To assign a product to an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose *d*etails you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

   The **Pricing (Account)** screen appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

4. In the **Search Products to Assign** zone, enter the criteria to search for the product that you want to assign to the account.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of products that meet the search criteria appears in the search results.

6. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Product** column corresponding to the product that you want to assign to the account.

   The **Add Product Pricing** screen appears.

7. Define the pricing for the product.

   Note:

   You cannot assign a product to an account until you define the pricing for that product.

   You cannot assign different bundles with same products and product parameters combination to an account. However, you can assign different bundles with same products and different product parameters combination to an account.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search an account	*Searching for an Account* on page 24
Pricing (Account) screen	*Pricing (Account)* on page 95
Search Products to Assign zone	*Search Products to Assign* on page 99
Add Product Pricing screen	*Add Product Pricing* on page 166
How to define product pricing	*Defining Product Pricing* on page 172

Pricing (Customer)

The **Pricing (Customer)** screen allows you to:

- View effective pricing for products assigned to the customer either directly or through the customer hierarchy
- Filter products that are already assigned to the customer
- Search and assign products to the customer
- Edit or override a product pricing

You can also view effective pricing for global customers (i.e. the customers that are not associated to any division) in this screen. The pricing for all products assigned to the global customer either directly or through a price list appears in this screen. However, you will be able to view pricing for only those products that are associated to the division to which you have access.

Since a global customer is not associated to any division, the system cannot determine the price assignment search order for a global customer. Hence, the default search order is defined for global customers through the **C1_PRASNORDR** feature configuration. This feature configuration contains the **Price Assignment Algorithm** option type where you

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

specify the algorithm which contains the default search order for global customers. You can change this default search order, if required. The valid search order values are — **AGREED_PRICELIST** and **AGREED_FIRST**. You can also create a custom search order, if required.

This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Party* on page 105
- *Effective Price Assignment* on page 105
- *Search Products to Assign* on page 108

Through the **Pricing (Customer)** screen, you can navigate to the following screens:

- *Manage Products* on page 113
- *Add Product Pricing* on page 166
- *Override Product Pricing* on page 181
- *Edit Product Pricing* on page 174

Party

The **Party** zone displays basic information about the customer. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Person Name	Displays the name of the customer.
Person ID	Displays the person ID of the customer.
Division	Displays the division to which the customer belongs.

Note: All fields in the **Party** zone are read-only.

Effective Price Assignment

The **Effective Price Assignment** zone allows you to filter price assignments using various search criteria. The order in which the price assignments are listed is controlled by the Price Assignment Search algorithm defined for the division to which the customer belongs.

In case of bundles, the order in which the product pricing is listed in this zone is based on the following condition:

- If the system finds pricing for products that belong to a bundle before finding pricing for the bundle, then the system lists the pricing for products that belong to the bundle and not the pricing for the bundle. For example, let say, B0001 is a bundle, and contains C0001 and C0002 products. If the system finds pricing for B0001, it validates whether the pricing for C0001 and C0002 has already been found. If yes, then the system lists the pricing for C0001 and C0002. If the system does not find pricing for C0001 and C0002 before finding pricing for B0001, it lists the pricing for B0001.

Note: If the effective pricing is available for the product and regular bundle (to which the product belongs) at the same level, the system lists the pricing depending on the value defined for the **Prefer Product Over Bundle (Valid values: Y, N)** parameter in the price assignment search algorithm. If the value of the **Prefer Product Over Bundle (Valid values: Y, N)** parameter is set to **Y**, the system lists the product pricing in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone. However, if the value of the **Prefer Product Over Bundle (Valid values: Y, N)** parameter is set to **N**, the system lists the regular bundle pricing in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone.

This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person ID	Displays the person ID.	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Pricing Date	Used to search for price assignments which are effective from a particular date onwards.	No
Product	Used to search for price assignments of a particular product.	No
Product Description	Used to search for price assignments of a product having a particular description.	No
Assignment Level	Used to search for price assignments with a particular assignment level. The valid values are: • **Customer Agreed** – Means product pricing is agreed for the specific customer within the hierarchy. • **Customer Price List** – Means product pricing is defined within the price list that is assigned to the customer. • **Customer Inherited Price List** — Means product pricing is inherited from the hierarchy defined for the price list that is assigned to the customer. • **Parent Customer Agreed** – Means product pricing is agreed for the parent customer in the hierarchy. • **Parent Customer Price List** – Means product pricing is defined within the price list that is assigned to the parent customer. • **Parent Customer Inherited Price List** — Means product pricing is inherited from the hierarchy defined for the price list that is assigned to the parent customer.	No
Parent Customer	Used to search for price assignments which are inherited from a particular parent customer.	No
Pricing Status	Used to search for price assignments with a particular status. The valid values are: • Active • Inactive • Proposed • Rejected	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Manage Products** screen appears with the details of the respective product.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Variance	Indicates the variance used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
Product Parameters	Indicates the parameters which are used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. A tool tip appears when you hover over this column corresponding to the product. It indicates the product parameters and their values.
Assignment Type	Indicates the type of price assignment. The valid values are: • Regular • Post Processing • Post Processing — Invoice Based • Post Processing — Product Based
Assignment Level	Indicates the level at which the price assignment is done.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list. **Note:** The description appears only when the pricing assignment type is Customer Price List, Customer Inherited Price List, Parent Customer Price List, or Parent Customer Inherited Price List.
Rate	Displays the price of the product. It also indicates whether the price is a Flat, Threshold, or Step price. The price can be agreed pricing, price list pricing, or pricing inherited from the price list hierarchy. If the price is applicable only to new customers, an asterisk (*) symbol appears corresponding to the price.
Rate Description	Displays the description of the tiering setup of the rate component.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Edit Product Pricing** screen appears where you can edit the rates, criteria, associated product, and tiering ranges. **Note:** The **Edit** icon appears only when the assignment level is customer agreed.
Override	When you override a product pricing, you create prices that are specific to a customer (which is referred to as customer agreed pricing). In other words, you create a new price assignment within the hierarchy. You can then edit this customer agreed pricing. On clicking the **Override** ( ) icon, the **Override Product Pricing** screen appears where you can override rates, criteria, associated product, and tiering ranges.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing assignment is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing assignment is effective.
CCY (P)	Indicates the currency in which the product pricing is defined.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Parent Customer	Displays the name of the parent or grandparent customer from whom the pricing is inherited.

Note: The number of records that can be displayed in the **Search Results** section of the **Effective Price Assignment** zone is controlled via the **C1_PR_REC** feature configuration. You can change the number of records that can be displayed using the **Effective Pricing RecordSet Limit** option type of the **C1_PR_REC** feature configuration. For more information, refer to *Setting the C1_PR_REC Feature Configuration* on page 761.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view effective pricing of a customer	*Viewing Effective Pricing of a Customer* on page 109
How to override a product pricing	*Overriding Product Pricing* on page 186
How to edit a product pricing	*Editing Product Pricing* on page 179
How to export product pricing in the CSV format	*Exporting Effective Pricing in CSV Format* on page 110

Search Products to Assign

The **Search Products to Assign** zone allows you to search for products that you want to assign to the customer. If the customer belongs to a division, the search will be limited to those products that are offered by the division. If the customer does not belong to a division, the search will be performed against all products defined in the system. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Product Description	Used to specify the description of the product.	No
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the product is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a product.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Add Product Pricing** screen appears.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Global Price List	Indicates whether the product is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Y • N

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Unit of Measure	Displays the unit of measure associated with the product. **Note:** The unit of measure is generated automatically when the product is created.
Bundled	Indicates whether the product is a bundle or not. The valid values are: • Y • N
Bundle Type	Displays the type of bundle. The valid values are: • Phantom • Ratio • Regular

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to assign a product to a customer	*Assigning a Product to a Customer* on page 112

Viewing Effective Pricing of a Customer

Prerequisites

To view effective pricing of a customer, you should have:

- Products assigned to the customer either directly or through the customer hierarchy

Procedure

To view effective pricing of a customer:

1. Search for the customer in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose *d*etails you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

   The **Pricing (Customer)** screen appears.
4. View the pricing for products assigned to the customer (either directly or through the customer hierarchy) in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone.
5. If required, you can filter the product pricing by entering the search criteria in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search a customer	*Searching for a Customer* on page 27

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Pricing (Customer) screen	*Pricing (Customer)* on page 104
Effective Price Assignment zone	*Effective Price Assignment* on page 105

Exporting Effective Pricing in CSV Format

Procedure

To export effective pricing of a customer in CSV format:

1. Search for the customer in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose details you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

   The **Pricing (Customer)** screen appears.
4. If required, you can filter the product pricing by entering the search criteria in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click the **Export to Excel** link in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone.

   The **File Download** dialog box appears.
6. Click **Save**.

   The **Save As** dialog box appears.
7. Browse to the location where you want to save the file.
8. Enter the file name in the respective field, and click **Save**.

   The search results are exported in CSV format.
9. Open the CSV file in Microsoft Excel.

   It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Variance	Indicates the variance used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Product Parameters	Indicates the parameters which are used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
Assignment Type	Indicates the price assignment type. The valid values are: • Regular • Post Processing • Post Processing — Invoice Based • Post Processing — Product Based
Assignment Level	Displays the pricing assignment type.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list. **Note:** The description appears only when the pricing assignment type is Customer Price List or Parent Customer Price List.
Rate	Displays the price of the product. It also indicates whether the price is a Flat, Threshold, or Step price. The price can be agreed pricing, price list pricing, or pricing inherited from the price list hierarchy. If the price is applicable only to new customers, an asterisk (*) symbol appears corresponding to the price.
Rate Description	Displays the description of the tiering setup of the rate component.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing assignment is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing assignment is effective.
CCY (P)	Indicates the currency in which the product pricing is defined.
Lower Limit	Displays the lower limit of the tiering range.
Upper Limit	Displays the upper limit of the tiering range.
PA Usage Flag	Indicates whether the price assignment is applicable to all customers or only to the new customers.
Price Assignment ID	Displays the ID that is generated automatically when the price assignment is done.
Parent Level	Displays the numerical level of the parent in the hierarchy from whom the pricing is inherited.
Price List ID	Displays the price list ID from where the pricing is inherited.
Price List Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is effective.
Parent Customer	Displays the name of the parent or grandparent customer from whom the pricing is inherited.
Parent Pricelist Level	Indicates the parent level when pricing is inherited from the price list hierarchy. If the pricing is inherited from the assigned price list, the parent price list level will be 0. However, if the pricing is inherited from the parent price list in the hierarchy, the parent price list level will be 1. And, if the pricing is inherited from the grandparent price list in the hierarchy, the parent price list level will be 2, and so on.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Ignore Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the product should be considered for billing. The valid values are: • Y • N
Aggregate Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the product should be aggregated for billing. The valid values are: • Y • N
Aggregation Schedule	Indicates the aggregation cycle.
Tiering Criterion	Indicates the tiering criterion.
Tiering Product	Indicates whether the product is billed individually or at the bundle level.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search a customer	*Searching for a Customer* on page 27
Pricing (Customer) screen	*Pricing (Customer)* on page 104
Effective Price Assignment zone	*Effective Price Assignment* on page 105

Assigning a Product to a Customer

Prerequisites

To assign a product to a customer, you should have:

- Product created in the application
- Product associated with the division to which the customer belongs

Procedure

To assign a product to a customer:

1. Search for the customer in the **Banking Control Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose details you want to view.

   A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

   The **Pricing (Customer)** screen appears.
4. In the **Search Products to Assign** zone, enter the criteria to search for the product that you want to assign to the customer.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of products that meet the search criteria appears in the search results.

6. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Product** column corresponding to the product that you want *t*o assign to the customer.

   The **Add Product Pricing** screen appears.

7. Define the pricing for the product.

   Note:

   You cannot assign a product to a customer until you define pricing for that product.

   You cannot assign different bundles with same products and product parameters combination to a customer. However, you can assign different bundles with same products and different product parameters combination to a customer.

Related Topics

For more information on...	**See...**
How to search a customer	*Searching for a Customer* on page 27
Pricing (Customer) screen	*Pricing (Customer)* on page 104
Search Products to Assign zone	*Search Products to Assign* on page 108
Add Product Pricing screen	*Add Product Pricing* on page 166
How to define product pricing	*Defining Product Pricing* on page 172

Manage Products

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to create two types of products:

- **Non-Bundled** — A product that represents a service offered or provided by financial institutions.
- **Bundled** — A product that represents a set of services that are grouped together for pricing. You can create the following types of bundles:
  - *Regular Bundle* on page 114
  - *Phantom Bundle* on page 115
  - *Ratio Bundle* on page 116

The **Manage Products** screen allows you to search, edit, and create a product. It also allows you to copy a bundle. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search Products* on page 119

Note: You cannot copy a bundle when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Regular Bundle

In case of a regular bundle, pricing is defined at the bundle level. The system determines the price by identifying the tiering range within which the total quantities of services used for all products in the bundle fall. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Bundle X, which is a regular bundle, contains the following three products:

- Product A
- Product B
- Product C

The following tiered pricing is defined for Bundle X:

Quantity Range	Rate ($) per unit
1 – 3000	3
3001 – 4000	2
4001 – 8000	1

Now, when the user consumes 1500 units of Product A, 1000 units of Product B, and 2000 units of Product C, the system adds the quantities of services used for all products in Bundle X (i.e. 1500+1000+2000=4500), and then determines the range within which the total units (i.e. 4500) fall. In this case, the total units fall in the 4001 – 8000 range, and therefore the system uses $1 as the rate for calculating charges.

If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can define pricing for regular bundles based on multiple parameters. For example:

Bundle X	Country	Currency
Pricing 1	US	USD
Pricing 2	Germany	USD

Pricing 1 and Pricing 2 are defined for Bundle X based on two parameters — Country and Currency. Before you define pricing based on country and currency, you need to define these parameters in the system. Once you define these parameters, you need to associate them to the regular bundle (i.e. Bundle X) and then add products (i.e. Product A, Product B, and Product C) to the bundle. Note that you can add a product to a regular bundle only when the regular bundle and product have same parameters associated with them for the specified date range. Therefore, before adding Product A, Product B, and Product C to Bundle X, you should ensure that Country and Currency are also associated with these products.

Then, when you define Pricing 1 for Bundle X, you need to set the following product parameters:

- Country — US
- Currency — USD

Similarly, you need to define Pricing 2 with Country set to Germany and Currency set to USD.

The following table lists the tiering ranges defined in Pricing 1 where product parameters are set to US, USD:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Product	Product Parameters	From	To
10	2	Number of Transactions	Bundle X	US, USD	0	500
20	1	Number of Transactions	Bundle X	US, USD	500	

The following table lists the tiering ranges defined in Pricing 2 where product parameters are set to Germany, USD:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Product	Product Parameters	From	To
10	4	Number of Transactions	Bundle X	Germany, USD	0	1000
20	3	Number of Transactions	Bundle X	Germany, USD	1000	

Now, when the user performs 500 transactions (in USD) of Bundle X in Germany, 1200 transactions (in USD) of Bundle X in US, the system creates two billable charges. In one billable charge (with Bundle X, US and USD combination), the system uses $1 as the rate for calculating charges, and in another billable charge (with Bundle X, Germany and USD combination), the system uses $4 as the rate for calculating charges.

Phantom Bundle

In case of a phantom bundle, pricing is not defined at the bundle level. Instead, pricing is defined separately for each product in the bundle. The system determines the price by identifying the tiering range of each product within which the total quantities of services used for all products in the bundle fall. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Bundle A, which is a phantom bundle, contains the following two products:

- **Product X** — The following tiered pricing is defined for Product X:

Quantity Range	Rate ($) per unit
1 – 3000	3
3001 – 6000	2

- **Product Y** — The following tiered pricing is defined for Product Y:

Quantity Range	Rate ($) per unit
1 – 5000	2
5001 – 10000	1

Now, when the user consumes 2500 units of Product X and 3500 units of Product Y, the system adds the quantities of services used for all products in Bundle A (i.e. 2500+3500=6000), and then determines the range of each product within which the total units (i.e. 6000) fall. In this case, the total units fall in the 3001 – 6000 range of Product X and the 5001 – 10000 range of Product Y, and therefore the system uses $2 and $1, respectively, as the rate for calculating charges (i.e. (2500*2)= 5000 and (3500*1)=3500). This helps the customer to take advantage of the lowest rate.

If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can determine the product utilization in a phantom bundle based on multiple parameters. For example:

Bundle A	Country	Currency
Product X	US	USD
Product Y	Germany	USD

Product X and Product Y are added in Bundle A. Product X and Product Y utilization in Bundle A is determined based on two parameters — Country and Currency. Before you add product to a phantom bundle, you need to define these parameters in the system. Once you define these parameters, you need to associate them to the products (i.e. Product X and Product Y) and then add these products to the bundle (i.e. Bundle A).

While adding Product X to Bundle A, you need to set the following product parameters:

- Country — US
- Currency — USD

Similarly, you need to add Product Y to Bundle A with Country set to Germany and Currency set to USD.

The following table lists the tiered pricing defined for Product X:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Product	Product Parameters	From	To
10	3	Number of Transactions	Bundle A		0	5000
20	2	Number of Transactions	Bundle A		5000	10000
30	1	Number of Transactions	Bundle A		10000	

The following table lists the tiered pricing defined for Product Y:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Product	Product Parameters	From	To
10	5	Number of Transactions	Bundle A		0	5000
20	4	Number of Transactions	Bundle A		5000	

Now, when the user performs 5000 transactions (in USD) of Product Y in Germany, 6000 transactions (in USD) of Product X in US, the system creates two billable charges — one for Product X and another for Product Y. The system adds the transactions with the following combinations and then determines the range of each product within which the total units (i.e. 11000) fall:

- Product X, US, USD
- Product Y, Germany, USD

In this case, the total units fall in the 10000 – Infinite range of Product X and the 5000 – Infinite range of Product Y, and therefore the system uses $1 and $4, respectively, as the rate for calculating charges (i.e. (5000*4)= 20000 and (6000*1)=6000).

You can also add a product more than once in a phantom bundle with different set of parameters. For example:

Bundle A	Country	Currency
Product X	US	USD
Product X	Germany	USD
Product Y	Germany	USD
Product Y	US	USD

In this case, the system adds the transactions with the following combinations and then determines the range of each product (i.e. Product X and Product Y) within which the total units fall:

- Product X, US, USD
- Product X, Germany, USD
- Product Y, Germany, USD
- Product Y, US, USD

Ratio Bundle

In case of a ratio bundle, pricing is not defined at the bundle level. Instead, pricing is defined separately for each product in the bundle.

A ratio expresses the magnitude of quantities relative to each other. It has two factors — Numerator and Denominator. For ratio bundle, the ratio of product quantities is used to determine the rate for volume based pricing. To determine within which range of ratio limit does the product utilization falls, the ratio of product quantities is used. Once the range limits are determined, the rate specified for that range is applied to the quantity of the product used. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Bundle X, which is a ratio bundle, contains the following products:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- **Product A** — It has been added to the bundle using the product relationship type as Numerator. It has the following tiered pricing defined in the system:

Quantity Range	Rate ($) per unit
0 – 0.6	4
0.6 – 0.9	3
0.9+	2

- **Product B** — It has been added to the bundle using the product relationship type as Numerator. It has the following tiered pricing defined in the system:

Quantity Range	Rate ($) per unit
0 – 0.6	5
0.6 – 0.9	4
0.9+	3

- **Product C** — It has been added to the bundle using the product relationship type as Denominator. It has the following tiered pricing defined in the system:

Quantity Range	Rate ($) per unit
0 – 0.6	3
0.6 – 0.9	2
0.9+	1

Now, when the user consumes 500 units of Product A, 2500 units of Product B, and 4000 units of Product C, the system calculates the ratio of product quantities (i.e. (500+2500)/4000=0.75). Once the ratio is calculated, the system determines the range of each product within which the ratio (i.e. 0.75) falls. In this case, the ratio falls in the 0.6 – 0.9 range of Product A, B, and C. Therefore, the system uses $3, $4, and $2, respectively, as the rate for calculating charges (i.e. ((500*3)=1500, (2500*4)=10000, and (4000*2)=8000).

If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can determine the product utilization in a ratio bundle based on multiple parameters. For example:

Bundle X	Country	Currency
Product A	US	USD
Product B	Germany	USD
Product C	England	USD

Product A, Product B, and Product C are added in Bundle X. Product A, Product B, and Product C utilization in Bundle X is determined based on two parameters — Country and Currency. Before you add product to a ratio bundle, you need to define these parameters in the system. Once you define these parameters, you need to associate them to the products (i.e. Product A, Product B, and Product C) and then add these products to the bundle (i.e. Bundle X).

While adding Product A to Bundle X, you need to set the following product parameters:

- Country — US
- Currency — USD

Similarly, you need to add Product B to Bundle X with Country set to Germany and Currency set to USD, and Product C with Country set to England and Currency set to USD.

The following table lists the tiered pricing defined for Product A:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Product	Product Parameters	From	To
10	5	Number of Transactions	Bundle X		0	1.75
20	4	Number of Transactions	Bundle X		1.75	2.50
30	3	Number of Transactions	Bundle X		2.50	

The following table lists the tiered pricing defined for Product B:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Product	Product Parameters	From	To
10	5	Number of Transactions	Bundle X		0	3.5
20	4	Number of Transactions	Bundle X		3.5	

The following table lists the tiered pricing defined for Product C:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Product	Product Parameters	From	To
10	2	Number of Transactions	Bundle X		0	2.0
20	1	Number of Transactions	Bundle X		2.0	

Now, when the user performs 5000 transactions (in USD) of Product A in US, 6000 transactions (in USD) of Product B in Germany, and 5000 transactions (in USD) of Product C in England, the system creates three billable charges — one for each product (i.e. Product A, Product B, and Product C). The system calculates the ratio of transactions with the following combinations and then determines the range of each product within which the ratio (i.e. 2.2) falls:

- Product A, US, USD
- Product B, Germany, USD
- Product C, England, USD

In this case, the ratio falls in the 1.75 – 2.50 range of Product A, the 0 – 3.5 range of Product B, and in the 2.0 — Infinite range of Product C. Therefore, the system uses $4, $5, and $1 as the rate for calculating charges (i.e. (5000*4)=20000 , (6000*5)=30000 , and (5000*1)=5000).

You can also add a product more than once in a ratio bundle with different set of parameters. For example:

Bundle X	Relationship Type	Country	Currency
Product A	Numerator	US	USD
Product A	Numerator	England	USD
Product B	Numerator	Germany	USD
Product C	Denominator	England	USD
Product C	Denominator	US	USD

In this case, the system calculates the ratio of transactions with the following combinations and then determines the range of each product (i.e. Product A, Product B, and Product C) within which the ratio falls:

- Product A, US, USD
- Product A, England, USD
- Product B, Germany, USD
- Product C, England, USD
- Product C, US, USD

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Search Products

The **Search Products** zone allows you to search for products using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Product Description	Used to specify the description of the product.	No
Division	Used to specify the division to which the product belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the product is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No
Unit of Measure	Used to specify the unit of measure associated with the product. **Note:** The unit of measure is generated automatically when the product is created.	No
Bundled	Used to indicate whether the product is a bundle or not. The valid values are: • Yes • No	Yes

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a product.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Product Relationship Maintenance** screen appears.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Global Price List	Indicates whether the product is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Y • N
Unit of Measure	Displays the unit of measure associated with the product.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Bundle	Indicates whether the product is a bundle or not. The valid values are: • Y • N
Bundle Type	Indicates the type of bundle. The valid values are: • Phantom • Ratio • Regular
View	On clicking the **View** ( ) icon, the **View Product** screen appears where you can view the details of the product.
Copy	On clicking the **Copy** ( ) icon, the **Copy Bundle** screen appears where you can copy product assignments from one bundle to a new bundle. **Note:** This column appears in the **Search Results** section only when you search for a bundle. However, if the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**, this column does not appear when you search for a bundle.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Edit Product** screen appears where you can edit the details of the product.

You can create a new product by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a product	*Searching for a Product* on page 120
How to view the product details	*Viewing the Product Details* on page 121
How to create a product	*Creating a Product* on page 122
How to edit a product	*Editing a Product* on page 129
How to copy a bundle	*Copying a Bundle* on page 157

Searching for a Product

Prerequisites

To search for a product, you should have:

- Divisions defined in the application
- Product associated with the division to which the user belongs

Procedure

To search for a product:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Manage Products**.

   The **Manage Products** screen appears.
4. In the **Search Products** zone, select **Yes** or **No** from the **Bundled** list depending on whether you want to search for a bundle or not.
5. Enter the additional search criteria, if required.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
6. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of products that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Manage Products screen	*Manage Products* on page 113
Search Products zone	*Search Products* on page 119

Viewing the Product Details

Procedure

To view the details of a product:

1. Search for the product in the **Manage Products** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the product whose details you want to view.

   The **View Product** screen appears.
3. View the basic details of the product in the **Product** tab.
4. View the characteristics defined for the product in the **Product Characteristics** tab.
5. View the parameters associated with the product in the **Parameters** tab.

   Note:

   The **Parameters** tab appears in the **View Product** screen only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.

   You cannot associate parameters to a ratio and phantom bundle. Therefore, while viewing the details of a ratio or phantom bundle, the **Parameters** tab does not appear in the **View Product** screen.
6. View the divisions to which the product is associated in the **Divisions** tab.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a product	*Searching for a Product* on page 120

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Creating a Product

Prerequisites

To create a product, you should have:

- Contract types defined in the application

Procedure

To create a product:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Manage Products**.

   The **Manage Products** screen appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search Products** zone.

   The **Add Product** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

   - **Product** — Used to specify basic details about the product.
   - **Product Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics (which are applicable across divisions) for the product.
   - **Parameters** — Used to associate one or more parameter with the product. These parameters are used for aggregating transactions and/or for defining product pricing.

     Note:

     The **Parameters** tab appears in the **Add Product** screen only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.

     You cannot associate parameters to a ratio and phantom bundle. Therefore, while creating a ratio or phantom bundle, the **Parameters** tab does not appear in the **Add Product** screen.
   - **Divisions** — Used to associate product with one or more divisions. It also allows you to define division-specific product characteristics.

   The **Product** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the code that uniquely identifies the product.	Yes
Contract Type	Used to specify the contract type that you want to associate with the product.	Yes
Product Description	Used to specify the description for the product.	Yes
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the product can be assigned to a global price list in the near future. The valid values are: • Yes • No **Note:** By default, the **No** option is selected.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bundled	Used to indicate whether the product is a bundle or not. The valid values are: • Yes • No **Note:** By default, the **No** option is selected.	Yes
Bundle Type	Used to indicate the type of bundle. The valid values are: • Phantom • Ratio • Regular **Note:** By default, this list is disabled. It is enabled only when you select the **Yes** option from the **Bundled** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are creating a bundle.

5. Enter the required details in the **Product** tab.
6. Define characteristics for the product, if required.
7. Associate parameters with the product, if required.
8. Associate product with one or more divisions, if required.
9. Define division-specific characteristics for the product, if required.
10. Click **Save**.

    The unit of measure is generated automatically when the product is created.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Manage Products screen	*Manage Products* on page 113
Search Products zone	*Search Products* on page 119
How to define characteristics for a product	*Defining Characteristics for a Product* on page 123
How to associate a product with a division	*Associating a Product with a Division* on page 126
How to define division-specific characteristics for a product	*Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Product* on page 127
How to associate a parameter with a product	*Associating a Parameter with a Product* on page 124

Defining Characteristics for a Product

Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a product, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Product)

Procedure

To define characteristics for a product:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

1. Click the **Product Characteristics** tab in the **Add Product** or **Edit Product** screen depending on whether you are creating or editing a product.

   The **Product Characteristics** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the product.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the product.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. **Note:** The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Product.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the product.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. **Note:** On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the product.

2. Enter the required details.

   Note: If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the product, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step *2*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the product, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

   The characteristics are defined for the product.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a product	*Creating a Product* on page 122
How to edit a product	*Editing a Product* on page 129
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	*Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value* on page 743

Associating a Parameter with a Product

Prerequisites

To associate a parameter with a product, you should have:

- Parameters defined in the application

Procedure

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To associate a parameter with a product:

1. Click the **Parameters** tab in the **Add Product** or **Edit Product** screen depending on whether you are creating *o*r editing a product.

   The **Parameters** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the parameter is effective for the product.	Yes
Parameter	Used to select the parameter. On selecting a parameter, the following fields are enabled: • Business Label • Display Order • Pricing • Mandatory • Priority	Yes
Business Label	Used to specify a business label for the parameter. The business label appears when you define, edit and override pricing for the product.	No
Display Order	Used to indicate the order in which the parameters should be displayed in the **Product Parameters** screen. It also controls the order in which parameter values should be displayed in the product parameter information string across the application.	Yes
Pricing	Used to indicate whether the parameter will be used for aggregation and/or for defining product pricing. The valid values are: • **Yes** — Indicates that the parameter will be used for aggregating transactions and for defining product pricing. • **No** — Indicates that the parameter will be used only for aggregating transactions.	Yes
Mandatory	Used to indicate whether the parameter is mandatory while defining product pricing. The valid values are: • Yes • No **Note:** This field is disabled when you select the **No** option from the **Pricing** list.	Yes
Priority	Used to indicate the priority in which optional parameters should be considered while determining best fit price for the product. **Note:** This field is disabled when you select the **No** option from the **Pricing** list or the **Yes** option from the **Mandatory** list.	Yes

Note:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Parameters** tab appears in the **Add Product** or **Edit Product** screen only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.

You cannot associate parameters to a ratio and phantom bundle. Therefore, while creating or editing a ratio or phantom bundle, the **Parameters** tab does not appear in the **Add Product** or **Edit Product** screen.

2. Enter the date from when you want the parameter(s) to be effective for the product.
3. Select the parameter and enter the required details in the respective fields.
4. If you want to associate more than one parameter with the product, click the **Plus** (+) icon corresponding to the **Parameter** field and then repeat step 3.

   Note:

   However, if you want to remove a parameter from the product, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the parameter. You can edit the parameter details and remove a parameter from the product only when the parameter or any other parameter from the same date range is not yet used for aggregation or for defining product pricing.

   You can add a parameter which will be used for aggregation (in other words, where the **Pricing** flag is set to **No**) anytime, whenever required. However, you can add a parameter which will be used for pricing (in other words, where the **Pricing** flag is set to **Yes**) only when any other parameter from the same date range is not yet used for aggregation or for defining product pricing.
5. If you want to associate a parameter with the product for a different date range, click the **Plus** (+) icon corresponding to the **Effective Start Date** field and then repeat the steps from 2 to 4.

   Note:

   However, if you want to remove all parameters effective from a particular date from the product, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the effective start date. You can edit the parameter details and remove a parameter from the product only when the parameter or any other parameter from the same date range is not yet used for aggregation or for defining product pricing.

   You can add a parameter which will be used for aggregation (in other words, where the **Pricing** flag is set to **No**) anytime, whenever required. However, you can add a parameter which will be used for pricing (in other words, where the **Pricing** flag is set to **Yes**) only when any other parameter from the same date range is not yet used for aggregation or for defining product pricing.
6. Click **Save**.

   The parameters are associated with the product.

   Note: The priority for all parameters which are mandatory is set to 0.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a product	*Creating a Product* on page 122
How to edit a product	*Editing a Product* on page 129
How to add a product to a bundle	*Adding a Product to a Bundle* on page 152

Associating a Product with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate a product with a division, you should have:

- Divisions defined in the application

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Procedure

To associate a product with a division:

1. Click the **Divisions** tab in the **Add Product** or **Edit Product** screen depending on whether you are creating or editing a product.

   The **Divisions** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Characteristic	On clicking the **Add** ( ) icon, the **Division-Specific Product Characteristics** section appears where you can define division-specific characteristics for the product.	Not applicable

2. Select the division from the list.
3. If you want to associate the product with more than one division, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step 2.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a product from the division, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the division.
4. Define division-specific characteristics for the product, if required.
5. Click **Save**.

   The product is associated with the divisions.

Tip: Alternatively, you can associate a product with a division using the **Division** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a product	*Creating a Product* on page 122
How to edit a product	*Editing a Product* on page 129
How to define division-specific characteristics for a product	*Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Product* on page 127

Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Product

Prerequisites

To define division-specific characteristics for a product, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Division/Product Combination)
- Product associated with the division to which the user belongs

Procedure

To define division-specific characteristics for a product:

1. Click the **Divisions** tab in the **Add Product** or **Edit Product** screen depending on whether you are creating or editing a product.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Divisions** tab appears.

2. Click the **Add** ( ) icon in the **Characteristic** field corresponding to the division for which you want to *d*efine product characteristics.

   The **Division-Specific Product Characteristics** section appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Displays the division to which the product is associated.	Not applicable
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the product characteristic is effective for the division.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a division-specific characteristic for the product.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. **Note:** The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Division/Product Combination.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a division-specific characteristic for the product.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. **Note:** On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a division-specific characteristic for the product.

3. Enter the required details.

   Note: If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

4. If you want to define more than one division-specific characteristic for the product, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and *r*epeat step 3.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a division-specific characteristic from the product, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

5. Click **Save**.

   The division-specific characteristics are defined for the product.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a product	*Creating a Product* on page 122
How to edit a product	*Editing a Product* on page 129
How to associate a product with a division	*Associating a Product with a Division* on page 126
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	*Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value* on page 743

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Editing a Product

Procedure

To edit a product:

1. Search for the product in the **Manage Products** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the product that you want to edit.

   The **Edit Product** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

   - **Product** — Used to specify basic details about the product.
   - **Product Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics (which are applicable across divisions) for the product.
   - **Parameters** — Used to associate one or more parameter with the product. These parameters are used for aggregating transactions and/or for defining product pricing.

     Note:

     The **Parameters** tab appears in the **Edit Product** screen only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.

     You cannot associate parameters to a ratio and phantom bundle. Therefore, while editing a ratio or phantom bundle, the **Parameters** tab does not appear in the **Edit Product** screen.
   - **Divisions** — Used to associate product with one or more divisions. It also allows you to define division-specific product characteristics.

   The **Product** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Displays the product code.	Not applicable
Contract Type	Used to modify the contract type associated with the product.	Yes
Product Description	Used to modify the description of the product.	Yes
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the product can be assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Yes • No	Yes
Bundled	Indicates whether the product is a bundle or not. The valid values are: • Y • N	Not applicable
Bundle Type	Indicates the type of bundle. The valid values are: • Phantom • Ratio • Regular	Not applicable

3. Modify the details in the **Product** tab, if required.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

4. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the product, if required.
5. Associate or remove a parameter from the product, if required.

   Note:

   You can edit the parameter details and remove a parameter from the product only when the parameter or any other parameter from the same date range is not yet used for aggregation or for defining product pricing.

   You can add a parameter which will be used for aggregation (in other words, where the **Pricing** flag is set to **No**) anytime, whenever required. However, you can add a parameter which will be used for pricing (in other words, where the **Pricing** flag is set to **Yes**) only when any other parameter from the same date range is not yet used for aggregation or for defining product pricing.
6. Associate or remove the product from the divisions, if required.

   Note: You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list. If the product is associated to a division to which you do not have access, then the **Division** list is grayed out.
7. Define, edit, or remove division-specific characteristics from the product, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the product are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a product	*Searching for a Product* on page 120
How to define characteristics for a product	*Defining Characteristics for a Product* on page 123
How to associate a product with a division	*Associating a Product with a Division* on page 126
How to define division-specific characteristics for a product	*Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Product* on page 127
How to associate a parameter with a product	*Associating a Parameter with a Product* on page 124

Manage Price Lists

Price list allow you to define standard prices for a group of products. You can create more than one price list. For example, you can create a price list for large, medium-sized, and small customers. You can also create a set of price lists for different regions.

Once you create a price list, you have to assign products to the price list and define pricing for each of the product assigned to the price list. The price lists are then assigned to accounts or customers to indicate the prices that will be charged for various products or services offered to them. However, until you define pricing for all products assigned to the price list, you cannot assign the price list to accounts or customers. You can assign multiple price lists to an account or a customer along with the priority or order in which the pricing should be considered. You can also define whether the account or customer can avail the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. In other words, you can define whether the account or customer can inherit product pricing from the price list hierarchy.

You can also create one price list as a global price list which is used when a price for a product is not already defined or has expired for an account or a customer.

The **Manage Price Lists** screen allows you to search, edit, and create a price list. This screen consists of the following zones:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- *Search Price List* on page 131

Through the **Manage Price Lists** screen, you can navigate to the following screens:

- *Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists* on page 139
- *Copy Price List* on page 144

Search Price List

The **Search Price List** zone allows you to search for a price list using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Description	Used to specify the description of the price list.	No
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the price list is a global price list. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price list is effective.	No
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price list is effective.	No
Parent Price List Description	Used to specify the description of the parent price list.	No
Parent Price List Effective Date	Used to specify the date when the parent price list is effective for the price list.	No
Division	Used to search for a price list that is valid for a specific division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price list.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists** screen appears with the details of the respective price list.
Global Price List	Indicates whether the price list is a global price list. The valid values are: • Y • N
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price list is effective.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Edit Price List** screen appears where you can edit the details of the price list.
Copy	On clicking the **Copy** ( ) icon, the **Copy Price List** screen appears where you can copy the price list and its associated products.
View	On clicking the **View** ( ) icon, the **View Price List** screen appears where you can view the details of the price list.
Parent Price List Description	Displays the description of the parent price list.
Parent Price List Effective From Date	Displays the date from when the price list can inherit pricing from the parent price list.
Parent Price List Effective To Date	Displays the date till when the price list can inherit pricing from the parent price list.

Note: While retrieving the details of the price list that meet the search criteria, the system only retrieves the details of the parent price list that is currently effective for the price list. If there is no parent price list that is currently effective for the price list, the system will not display any details in the **Parent Price List Description**, **Parent Price List Effective From Date**, and **Parent Price List Effective To Date** columns. However, when you search for a price list by specifying the date (which can be current, past or future date) in the **Parent Price List Effective Date** field, the system retrieves the price lists that meet the search criteria along with the details of the parent price lists that are effective on that date.

You can create a new price list by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	*Searching for a Price List* on page 132
How to view the price list details	*Viewing the Price List Details* on page 133
How to create a price list	*Creating a Price List* on page 133
How to edit a price list	*Editing a Price List* on page 138
How to copy a price list	*Copying a Price List* on page 147

Searching for a Price List

Prerequisites

To search for a price list, you should have:

- Divisions defined in the application
- Price list associated with the division to which the user belongs

Procedure

To search for a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Manage Price Lists**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Manage Price Lists** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Price List** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Manage Price Lists screen	*Manage Price Lists* on page 130
Search Price List zone	*Search Price List* on page 131

Viewing the Price List Details

Procedure

To view the details of a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Manage Price Lists** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the price list whose details you want to view.

   The **View Price List** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

   - **Hierarchy** — Lists the parent price lists defined for the price list for a particular duration.
   - **Division** — Lists the divisions to which the price list is associated.
   - **Characteristics** — Lists the characteristics defined for the price list.

3. View the details of the price list in the **View Price List** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	*Searching for a Price List* on page 132

Creating a Price List

Procedure

To create a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Manage Price Lists**.

   The **Manage Price Lists** screen appears.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search Price List** zone.

   The **Add Price List** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

   - **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the price list.
   - **Hierarchy** — Used to define parent price list for the price list for a particular duration.
   - **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the price list.
   - **Divisions** — Used to associate price list with one or more divisions.

   The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Description	Used to specify the description for the price list.	Yes
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the price list is a global price list. The valid values are: • Yes • No	Yes
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price list is effective. **Note:** The effective start date cannot be a past date.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price list is effective. **Note:** The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	No

5. Enter the required details in the **Main** tab.
6. Define parent price list for the price list, if required.
7. Define characteristics for the price list, if required.
8. Associate price list with one or more divisions, if required.
9. Click **Save**.

   The price list ID is generated automatically when the price list is created.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Manage Price Lists screen	*Manage Price Lists* on page 130
Search Price List zone	*Search Price List* on page 131
How to define the price list hierarchy	*Defining the Price List Hierarchy* on page 135
How to define characteristics for a price list	*Defining Characteristics for a Price List* on page 136
How to associate a price list with a division	*Associating a Price List with a Division* on page 137

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Defining the Price List Hierarchy

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define price list hierarchy. It helps you to derive the product pricing from the parent price list if the product pricing is not available in the price list (assigned to the account, customer, or parent customer). However, if the product pricing is not available in the parent price list, the system will search for the product pricing in the parent's parent price list (i.e. in the grandparent price list) and continue till it reaches the last level in the hierarchy.

In other words, when you define a price list hierarchy and assign the price list to an account or a customer, the account or customer can avail the product pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. However, if the product pricing is available on both the assigned and parent price lists, the system derives the product pricing from the assigned price list.

You can define multiple parent price lists for a price list. But, only one parent price list is effective for a particular duration. Two or more price lists can have the same parent price list.

Procedure

To define the price list hierarchy:

1. Click the **Hierarchy** tab in the **Add Price List** or **Edit Price List** screen depending on whether you are creating *o*r editing a price list.

   The **Hierarchy** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Price List Description	Used to specify the description of the parent price list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a parent price list for the price list.
Parent Price List Effective From	Used to specify the date from when the price list can inherit pricing from the parent price list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a parent price list for the price list.
Parent Price List Effective To	Used to specify the date till when the price list can inherit pricing from the parent price list. **Note:** The effective to date cannot be earlier than the effective from date.	No

2. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for a price list by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Parent Price List Description** field.

3. If you want to define more than one parent price list for the price list, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step 2.

   Note:

   You can define multiple parent price lists for a price list. But, only one parent price list is effective for a particular duration. Also, while defining parent price list for a price list, you can only specify a price list which is effective during the specified duration.

   If you want to remove a parent price list from the price list hierarchy, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the parent price list.

4. Click **Save**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The parent price lists are defined for the price list.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a price list	*Creating a Price List* on page 133
How to edit a price list	*Editing a Price List* on page 138

Defining Characteristics for a Price List

Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a price list, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Price List)

Procedure

To define characteristics for a price list:

1. Click the **Characteristics** tab in the **Add Price List** or **Edit Price List** screen depending on whether you are creating or editing a price list.

   The **Characteristics** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. **Note:** The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Price List.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. **Note:** On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list.

2. Enter the required details.

   Note: If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the price list, click the **Plus** () icon and then repeat step *2*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the price list, click the **Minus** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The characteristics are defined for the price list.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a price list	*Creating a Price List* on page 133
How to edit a price list	*Editing a Price List* on page 138
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	*Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value* on page 743

Associating a Price List with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate a price list with a division, you should have:

- Divisions defined in the application

Procedure

To associate a price list with a division:

1. Click the **Divisions** tab in the **Add Price List** or **Edit Price List** screen depending on whether you are creating or editing a price list.

   The **Divisions** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No

2. Select the division from the list.
3. If you want to associate the price list with more than one division, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step *2*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a price list from the division, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the division.
4. Click **Save**.

   The price list is associated with the divisions.

Tip: Alternatively, you can associate a price list with a division using the **Division** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a price list	*Creating a Price List* on page 133
How to edit a price list	*Editing a Price List* on page 138

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Editing a Price List

Procedure

To edit a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Manage Price Lists** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the price list that you want to edit.

   The **Edit Price List** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

   - **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the price list.
   - **Hierarchy** — Used to define parent price list for the price list for a particular duration.
   - **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the price list.
   - **Divisions** — Used to associate price list with one or more divisions.

   The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Description	Used to modify the description of the price list.	Yes
Global Price List	Used to convert a non-global price list to a global price list and vice versa. The valid values are: • Yes • No	Yes
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is effective. **Note:** You cannot change the effective start date of the price list because there might be some products that are assigned to the price list on that date. Again, it may conflict with the effective start date that is specified while assigning the price list to an account or a customer.	Not applicable
Effective End Date	Used to modify the date till when the price list is effective. **Note:** The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	No

3. Modify the details in the **Main** tab, if required.
4. Define or remove parent price list from the price list hierarchy, if required.
5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the price list, if required.
6. Associate or remove the price list from the divisions, if required.

   Note: You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list. If the price list is associated to a division to which you do not have access, then the **Division** list is grayed out.
7. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the price list are saved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	*Searching for a Price List* on page 132
How to define the price list hierarchy	*Defining the Price List Hierarchy* on page 135
How to define characteristics for a price list	*Defining Characteristics for a Price List* on page 136
How to associate a price list with a division	*Associating a Price List with a Division* on page 137

Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists

Once the price list is created, you have to assign products to the price list and define pricing for each product assigned to the price list. The **Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists** screen allows you to view and filter the products that are currently associated with the price list. It also allows you to search for the products that you want to associate with the price list. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Price List Information* on page 139
- *Price List Division* on page 139
- *Price List Products* on page 140
- *Search Products* on page 141

Price List Information

The **Price List Information** zone displays information about the price list. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.
Global Price List	Indicates whether the price list is a global price list. The valid values are: • Y • N
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price list is effective.

Note: All the fields in the **Price List Information** zone are read-only.

Price List Division

The **Price List Division** zone lists divisions to which the price list is associated. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Division	Displays the division to which the price list is associated.
Status	Displays the status of the division (that is, whether it is Active, Pending, or Retired).
Comments	Displays additional details about the division.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Price List Products

The **Price List Products** zone lists products that are currently assigned to the price list. You can filter the list using various search criteria. You will not find any records in this zone if the price list does not have any products assigned to it.

The **Price List Products** zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Product Description	Used to specify the description of the product.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the product is assigned to the price list.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Edit Product Pricing** screen appears with the details of the respective product pricing.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Variance	Indicates the variance used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
Product Parameters	Indicates the parameters which are used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
Pricing Status	Indicates the status of the price assignment. The valid values are: • Active • Inactive • Proposed • Rejected
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the product is assigned to the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the product is assigned to the price list.
PA Usage Flag	Indicates whether the price assignment is applicable to all customers or only to the new customers.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
PA Type Flag	Indicates the price assignment type. The valid values are: • Regular • Post Processing • Post Processing — Invoice Based • Post Processing — Product Based
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the product pricing is defined.
Rate Schedule	Displays the rate schedule used for defining pricing for the product.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** icon, you can remove the product from the price list. **Note:** The **Delete** icon appears in this column only when the price list is not yet assigned to any account or customer.

You can change the layout of this section. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to remove a product from a price list	*Removing a Product from a Price List* on page 143
Edit Product Pricing screen	*Edit Product Pricing* on page 174

Search Products

The **Search Products** zone allows you to search for products that you want to assign to the price list. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Product Description	Used to specify the description of the product.	No
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the product is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No
Bundle	Used to indicate whether the product is a bundle or not. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a product.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Add Product Pricing** screen appears.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Global Price List	Indicates whether the product is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Y • N
Unit of Measure	Displays the unit of measure associated with the product. **Note:** The unit of measure is generated automatically when the product is created.
Bundled	Indicates whether the product is a bundle or not. The valid values are: • Y • N
Bundle Type	Indicates the type of bundle. The valid values are: • Phantom • Ratio • Regular **Note:** This column appears only when you select the **Yes** option from the **Bundle** list.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to assign a product to a price list	*Assigning a Product to a Price List* on page 143
Add Product Pricing screen	*Add Product Pricing* on page 166

Viewing Products Assigned to a Price List

Procedure

To view products assigned to a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Manage Price Lists** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Price List** column corresponding to the price list whose *d*etails you want to view.

   The **Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists** screen appears.
3. View the products that are currently assigned to the price list in the **Price List Products** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search a price list	*Searching for a Price List* on page 132
Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists screen	*Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists* on page 139

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Price List Products zone	*Price List Products* on page 140

Removing a Product from a Price List

You can remove the product from the price list only when the price list is not yet assigned to any account or customer.

Procedure

To remove a product from a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Manage Price Lists** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Price List** column corresponding to the price list whose details you want to edit.

   The **Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists** screen appears.
3. Filter the list in the **Price List Products** zone, if required.
4. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the product that you want to remove from the price list.

   The product is removed from the price list.

   Note: The **Delete** icon appears in the **Delete** column only when the price list is not yet assigned to any account or customer.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search a price list	*Searching for a Price List* on page 132
Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists screen	*Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists* on page 139
Price List Products zone	*Price List Products* on page 140

Assigning a Product to a Price List

Prerequisites

To assign a product to a price list, you should have:

- Product created in the application
- Product associated with the division to which the price list belongs

Procedure

To assign a product to a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Manage Price Lists** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Price List** column corresponding to the price list whose details you want to edit.

   The **Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists** screen appears.
3. In the **Search Products** zone, enter the criteria to search for the product that you want to assign to the price list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

4. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of products that meet the search criteria appears in the search results.

5. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Product** column corresponding to the product that you want *t*o assign to the price list.

   The **Add Product Pricing** screen appears.

6. Define the pricing for the product.

   Note: You cannot assign a product to a price list until you define the pricing for that product.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search a price list	*Searching for a Price List* on page 132
Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists screen	*Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists* on page 139
Search Products zone	*Search Products* on page 119
Add Product Pricing screen	*Add Product Pricing* on page 166
How to define product pricing	*Defining Product Pricing* on page 172

Copy Price List

Instead of creating a price list from scratch, you can also create a new price list using an existing price list. You can do this by copying a price list. Once you create a copy of an existing price list, you can assign or remove products from the new price list and change the product pricing, if required.

When you copy a price list, you can copy all products associated with the original price list to the new price list along with or without pricing. In case you copy a price list without pricing, you will have to define the pricing for all products assigned to the new price list. Once you define the pricing for all products in the new price list, you can then assign it to accounts or customers.

The **Copy Price List** screen allows you to copy a price list. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Price List Information* on page 144
- *Price List Division* on page 145
- *Price List Products* on page 145
- *Copy Price List* on page 146

Price List Information

The **Price List Information** zone displays information about the original price list. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Price List Description	Displays the description of the original price list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description
Global Price List	Indicates whether the original price list is a global price list. The valid values are: • Y • N
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the original price list is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the original price list is effective.

Note: All fields in the **Price List Information** zone are read-only.

Price List Division

The **Price List Division** zone lists divisions to which the original price list is associated. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Division	Displays the division to which the original price list is associated.
Status	Displays the status of the division (that is, whether it is Active, Pending, or Retired).
Comments	Displays additional details about the division.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Price List Products

The **Price List Products** zone lists products that are currently assigned to the original price list. You can filter the list using various search criteria. You will not find any records in this zone if the original price list does not have any products assigned to it.

The **Price List Products** zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Product Description	Used to specify the description of the product.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the product is assigned to the price list.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Edit Product Pricing** screen appears with the details of the respective product pricing.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Variance	Indicates the variance used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
Product Parameters	Indicates the parameters which are used for defining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
Pricing Status	Indicates the status of the price assignment. The valid values are: • Active • Inactive • Proposed • Rejected
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the product is assigned to the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the product is assigned to the price list.
PA Usage Flag	Indicates whether the price assignment is applicable to all customers or only to the new customers.
PA Type Flag	Indicates the price assignment type. The valid values are: • Regular • Post Processing • Post Processing — Invoice Based • Post Processing — Product Based
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the product pricing is defined.
Rate Schedule	Displays the rate schedule used for defining pricing for the product.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** icon, you can remove the product from the original price list. **Note:** The **Delete** icon appears in this column only when the price list is not yet assigned to any account or customer.

You can change the layout of this section. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Copy Price List

The **Copy Price List** zone allows you to create a copy of the price list. On copying a price list, divisions and characteristics associated with the original price list are also copied to the new price list. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list whose copy you want to create.	Not applicable
New Price List Description	Used to specify the description for the new price list.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the new price list is effective. **Note:** The effective start date cannot be a past date.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the new price list is effective. **Note:** The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	No
Copy Pricing	Used to indicate whether you want to copy pricing along with the products. The valid values are: • **All** - Used when you want to copy all products associated with the original price list along with product pricing to the new price list. • **None** – Used when you to want copy only products associated with the original price list (and not the product pricing) to the new price list.	Yes
Copy Pricing Hierarchy	Used to indicate whether you want to copy price list hierarchy along with the price list. The valid values are: • **None** — Used when you do not want to copy price list hierarchy. • **With Hierarchy** — Used when you want to copy price list hierarchy.	Yes

This zone contains the following two buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to create the price list.
Cancel	Used to clear the fields in this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to copy a price list	*Copying a Price List* on page 147

Copying a Price List

Prerequisites

To copy a price list, you should have:

- Price list (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Price list (whose copy you want to create) associated to the division to which the user belongs

Procedure

To copy a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Manage Price Lists** screen.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Search Price List** zone, click the **Copy** ( ) icon corresponding to the price list whose copy you want to create.

   The **Copy Price List** screen appears.

3. In the **Copy Price List** zone, enter the description for the new price list.
4. Enter the date from when the new price list is effective in the **Effective Start Date** field.

   Note: The effective start date cannot be a past date.

5. Enter the date till when the new price list is effective in the **Effective End Date** field.

   Note: The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.

6. Select **All** or **None** from the **Copy Pricing** list depending on whether you want to copy the price list along with or without product pricing.
7. Select **With Hierarchy** or **None** from the **Copy Pricing Hierarchy** list depending on whether you want to copy price list hierarchy along with the price list.
8. Click **Save**.

   The price list ID is generated automatically when the price list is created.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search a price list	*Searching for a Price List* on page 132
Copy Price List screen	*Copy Price List* on page 144
Copy Price List zone	*Copy Price List* on page 146

Product Relationship Maintenance

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to associate two or more products with each other. You can associate products using the following relationship types:

- Bundle
- Denominator
- Numerator
- Product
- Service
- Service Group

The **Bundle** relationship type is used while adding products in the regular and phantom bundles. The **Denominator** and **Numerator** relationship types are used while adding products in the ratio bundles. And, the other relationship types are used while creating product to product relationship.

Note:

You cannot add same set of products using the same relationship type while defining two or more bundles with the same bundle type. For example, you cannot add P1 and P2 using the relationship type as Bundle while defining regular bundles named BUN1 and BUN2. However, you can use same set of products while defining two or more product to product relationships.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can add same set of product and product parameter combination (using the same relationship type) in more than one bundle (having the same bundle type) provided the product parameter values are different.

The **Product Relationship Maintenance** screen allows you to view the products associated with the parent product or the products added in the bundle. It also allows you to add or remove products from a group or bundle. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Product Information* on page 149
- *Assigned Products* on page 149

Product Information

The **Product Information** zone displays information about the parent product or bundle. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Product	Displays the product code.
Contract Type	Displays the contract type associated with the product.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Global Price List	Indicates whether the product is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Yes • No
Bundled	Indicates whether the product is a bundle or not. The valid values are: • Y • N
Bundle Type	Indicates the type of bundle. The valid values are: • Phantom • Ratio • Regular

Note: All fields in the **Product Information** zone are read-only.

You can edit the parent product or bundle by clicking the **Edit** button in this zone.

Assigned Products

The **Assigned Products** zone lists products that are already associated with the parent product or bundle. You will not find any records in this zone if the parent product or bundle does not have any products associated with it. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the product is associated with the parent product or bundle.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the product is associated with the parent product or bundle.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Product Relationship Type	Displays how the products are related. The valid values are: • Bundle • Denominator • Numerator • Product • Service • Service Group
Product Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this field is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a product).

You can add or remove a product from the parent product or bundle by clicking the **Add/Edit** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the products added in a bundle	*Viewing Products Added in a Bundle* on page 150

Viewing Products Added in a Bundle

Procedure

To view the products added in a bundle:

1. Search for the bundle in the **Manage Products** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Product** column corresponding to the bundle whose *p*roducts you want to view.

   The **Product Relationship Maintenance** screen appears.
3. View the products that are already added in the bundle in the **Assigned Products** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bundle	*Searching for a Product* on page 120
Product Relationship Maintenance screen	*Product Relationship Maintenance* on page 148
Assigned Products zone	*Assigned Products* on page 149

Filtering Products of a Bundle

Procedure

To filter products of a bundle:

1. Search for the bundle in the **Manage Products** screen.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Product** column corresponding to the bundle whose *p*roducts you want to view.

   The **Product Relationship Maintenance** screen appears.

3. Click the **Add/Edit** link in the upper right corner of the **Assigned Products** zone.

   The **Add/Edit Product Relationship** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Product	Displays the bundle or parent product code.	Not applicable
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the product.	No
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the product is associated with the parent product or bundle.	No
Relationship Type	Used to specify how the products are related. The valid values are: • Bundle • Denominator • Numerator • Product • Service • Service Group	No

4. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

   The search results are filtered based on the specified criteria. This screen contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Indicates the product associated with the parent product or bundle.
Relationship Type	Indicates how the products are related.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the product is associated with the parent product or bundle.
End Date	Displays the date till when the product is associated with the parent product or bundle.
Product Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this field is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a product). **Note:** This column appears only when you are filtering products of a ratio and phantom bundle.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bundle	*Searching for a Product* on page 120

Adding a Product to a Bundle

Prerequisites

To add a product to a bundle, you should have:

- Product associated with the division to which the user belongs
- Product and bundle associated to the same contract type

  Note: If you are associating a product to another product (and not adding a product to a bundle), then the two products need not have same contract type associated with them.
- Parameters associated with the product (in case you want to determine product utilization based on multiple parameters)
- Product and bundle associated to the same parameters (in case of a regular bundle)

  Note: Not only the parameters, but also their details such as pricing flag, mandatory flag, and priority should be identical. Also, the date from when the parameters are effective for the bundle should be earlier than or equal to the date from when the parameters are effective for the product.

Procedure

To add a product to a bundle:

1. Search for the bundle in the **Manage Products** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Product** column corresponding to the bundle in which you want to add a product.

   The **Product Relationship Maintenance** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add/Edit** link in the upper right corner of the **Assigned Products** zone.

   The **Add/Edit Product Relationship** screen appears. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to indicate the product that you want to associate with the parent product or bundle.	Yes
Relationship Type	Used to indicate how the products are related. The valid values are: • Bundle • Denominator • Numerator • Product • Service • Service Group	Yes
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the product is associated with the parent product or bundle. **Note:** The start date cannot be later than the end date.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the product is associated with the parent product or bundle. **Note:** The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.	No
Product Parameters	Used to specify multiple parameters based on which you want to determine the product utilization. **Note:** This columns appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. This column does not appear when you are adding products to a regular bundle. The **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Product Parameters** screen appears.	No

4. Enter the required details.

   Note:

   You can search for a product by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Product** field.

   You can add a product to a regular bundle only when the regular bundle and product have same parameters associated with them for the specified date range.

   You cannot add same set of products using the same relationship type while defining two or more bundles with the same bundle type. For example, you cannot add P1 and P2 using the relationship type as Bundle while defining regular bundles named BUN1 and BUN2. However, you can use same set of products while defining two or more product to product relationships.

   If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can add same set of product and product parameter combination (using the same relationship type) in more than one bundle (having the same bundle type) provided the product parameter values are different.

   You cannot add same product in numerator and denominator while defining a ratio bundle.

5. If you want to determine product utilization based on multiple parameters, select the parameters using the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Product Parameters** field.

6. If you want to add more than one product to the bundle, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat the steps from 4 *to* 5.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a product from the bundle, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the product.

7. Click **Save**.

   The product is added to the bundle.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bundle	*Searching for a Product* on page 120
How to search for a child product	*Searching for a Product* on page 745

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Product Relationship Maintenance screen	*Product Relationship Maintenance* on page 148
Assigned Products zone	*Assigned Products* on page 149
How to associate a parameter with a product	*Associating a Parameter with a Product* on page 124
How to set product parameters	*Setting Product Parameters* on page 202

Removing a Product from a Bundle

Procedure

To remove a product from a bundle:

1. Search for the bundle in the **Manage Products** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Product** column corresponding to the bundle from which you want to remove a product.

   The **Product Relationship Maintenance** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add/Edit** link in the upper right corner of the **Assigned Products** zone.

   The **Add/Edit Product Relationship** screen appears.
4. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the product that you want to remove from the bundle.

   The row is deleted.
5. Click **Save**.

   The product is removed from the bundle.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bundle	*Searching for a Product* on page 120
Product Relationship Maintenance screen	*Product Relationship Maintenance* on page 148
Assigned Products zone	*Assigned Products* on page 149

Copy Bundle

Instead of creating a bundle from scratch, you can also create a new bundle using an existing bundle. You can do this by copying a bundle. Once you create a copy of an existing bundle, you can add or remove products from the new bundle. While copying a bundle, divisions associated with the original bundle are copied to the new bundle.

Note: You cannot copy a bundle when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.

The **Copy Bundle** screen allows you to copy a bundle. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Bundle Information* on page 155
- *Product Division* on page 155

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- *Search Products to Assign* on page 155
- *Copy Assigned Product* on page 156

Bundle Information

The **Bundle Information** zone displays information about the original bundle. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Product	Displays the code of the original bundle.
Contract Type	Displays the contract type associated with the original bundle.
Product Description	Displays the description of the original bundle.
Global Price List	Indicates whether the original bundle is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Y • N
Bundle	Indicates whether the product is a bundle or not. The valid values are: • Y • N
Bundle Type	Displays the type of bundle. The valid values are: • Phantom • Ratio • Regular

Note: All fields in the **Bundle Information** zone are read-only.

Product Division

The **Product Division** zone lists divisions to which the original bundle is associated. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Division	Displays the division to which the original bundle is associated.
Status	Displays the status of the division (that is, whether it is Active, Pending, or Retired).
Comments	Displays additional details about the division.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Search Products to Assign

The **Search Products to Assign** zone allows you to search for products that you want to add to the new bundle. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Product Description	Used to specify the description of the product.	No
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the product is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No
Unit of Measure	Used to specify the unit of measure associated with the product. **Note:** The unit of measure is generated automatically when the product is created.	No
Contract Type	Used to specify the contract type associated with the product.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a product.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Global Price List	Indicates whether the product is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: • Y • N
Unit of Measure	Displays the unit of measure associated with the product.
Bundled	Indicates whether the product is a bundle or not. The valid values are: • Y • N
Bundle Type	Indicates the type of bundle. The valid values are: • Phantom • Ratio • Regular
Contract Type	Displays the contract type associated with the product.

Copy Assigned Product

The **Copy Assigned Product** zone allows you to create a copy of the bundle. This zone contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
New Product	Used to specify the code that uniquely identifies the new bundle.	Yes
New Product Description	Used to specify the description for the new bundle.	Yes
Assign Products	It contains the following two options: • **All** - Allows you to copy all products associated with the original bundle to the new bundle. • **None** – Allows you to create a copy of the original bundle without copying the associated products.	Yes

You can add products to the new bundle or change currently associated products using the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	Yes
Product Relationship Type	Used to indicate how the products are related.	Yes
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the product is associated with the new bundle.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the product is associated with the new bundle.	No

This zone contains the following two buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to create the new bundle.
Cancel	Used to clear the fields in this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to copy a bundle	*Copying a Bundle* on page 157

Copying a Bundle

Prerequisites

To copy a bundle, you should have:

- Bundle associated with the division to which the user belongs

Procedure

To copy a bundle:

1. Search for the bundle in the **Manage Products** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** ( ) icon corresponding to the bundle that you want to copy.

   The **Copy Bundle** screen appears.
3. In the **Copy Assigned Product** zone, enter the code that uniquely identifies the new bundle.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

4. Enter the description for the new bundle.
5. Select **All** or **None** from the **Assign Products** list depending on whether you want to copy the bundle along with or without its associated products.
6. Add or remove products from the new bundle or edit the details of the currently associated products, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

   The unit of measure is generated automatically when the bundle is created.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bundle	*Searching for a Product* on page 120
Copy Bundle screen	*Copy Bundle* on page 154
Copy Assigned Product zone	*Copy Assigned Product* on page 156

Manage Rate Definitions

Rate schedules, rate versions, and rate components are used to define the formulas to calculate the total amount charged to a customer for a product. Some examples of formulas are: price times the number of transactions used and a flat monthly charge plus a percentage of the average daily balance.

The rate is a formula with variables whose values are supplied by a user by setting up a price list or override price. For example, a rate might add a flat monthly charge and a percentage of the average daily balance to arrive at the amount charged to the customer. This rate might be used to calculate the charge for multiple products, each product with its own flat amount and percentage. So, these two factors are defined as variables whose values must be entered by users when they setup price list or override price. In Oracle Revenue Management and Billing (ORMB), these variables are defined as rate components.

The system provides you with the ability to create tiered pricing in case standard flat pricing is not sufficient to meet the business needs. The **Manage Rate Definitions** screen allows you to indicate whether the rate component supports standard flat pricing or tiered pricing. It allows you to define, edit, and delete the tiering setup of a rate component. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate* on page 158
- *Create/Edit Rate Definition* on page 159

Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate

The **Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate** zone allows you to select the rate schedule whose rate components' tiering setup you want to define or edit. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Schedule	Used to select the rate schedule.	Yes

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the rate components of the rate schedule appear in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Rate Schedule	Displays the rate schedule.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence Number	Displays the sequence number of the rate component.
Rate Component Description	Displays the description of the rate component.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the rate version to which the rate component belongs is effective.
Tiering Type	Displays the tiering type.
Maximum Tiering Combinations	Displays the maximum number of tiering ranges supported by the rate component. **Note:** Each tiering range supports more than one tiering criteria. For example, a rate component supports tiering based on two different criteria such as transaction volumes from a bundle and balances of the priced product. In such case, for a single rate, it is possible to enter separate tiering range information for each criterion and vary this information by product.
Rate Component Map Description	Displays the description of the tiering setup of the rate component.
Action	Indicates the action that can be performed on the rate component. The valid values are: • **Add** — Allows you to define the tiering setup of the rate component • **Edit** — Allows you to edit the tiering setup of the rate component
Rate Component Map ID	Displays the rate component map ID. **Note:** This ID is generated automatically when you define the tiering setup of the rate component.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the rate component, the **Create/Edit Rate Definition** zone appears with the details of the respective rate component.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define tiering setup of a rate component	*Defining Tiering Setup of a Rate Component* on page 160
How to edit tiering setup of a rate component	*Editing Tiering Setup of a Rate Component* on page 161
How to delete tiering setup of a rate component	*Deleting Tiering Setup of a Rate Component* on page 162

Create/Edit Rate Definition

The **Create/Edit Rate Definition** zone allows you to define and edit tiering setup of the rate component. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Schedule	Displays the code of the rate schedule.	Not applicable
Rate Component Description	Displays the description of the rate component.	Not applicable
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the rate version to which the rate component belongs is effective.	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Displays the sequence number of the rate component.	Not applicable
Tiering Type	Used to specify the tiering type. The valid values are: • FLAT • STEP • THRESHOLD **Note:** This field is non-editable when you edit the tiering setup of the rate component.	Yes
Maximum Tiering Combinations	Used to specify the maximum number of tiering ranges supported by the rate component. **Note:** This field is non-editable when you: • Select the tiering type as **FLAT** or **STEP** • Edit the tiering setup of the rate component By default, **0** appears in this field when you select the tiering type as **FLAT**, and **1** appears when you select the tiering type as **STEP**.	Yes
Rate Component Map Description	Used to specify the description for the tiering setup of the rate component. For example, if you want the user to enter price per transaction for a tiering range, enter `Price Per Transaction` in the **Rate Component Map Description** field.	Yes

This zone contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description (When the Action is Add)	Button Description (When the Action is Edit)
Save	Used to create the tiering setup.	Used to save the changes made in this zone.
Delete	**Note:** This button is disabled when you define the tiering setup of the rate component.	Used to delete the tiering setup of the rate component. **Note:** You can delete the tiering setup only when the rate component is not yet used for any product pricing.
Cancel	Used to clear the fields in this zone.	Used to reset the changes made in this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define tiering setup of a rate component	*Defining Tiering Setup of a Rate Component* on page 160
How to edit tiering setup of a rate component	*Editing Tiering Setup of a Rate Component* on page 161
How to delete tiering setup of a rate component	*Deleting Tiering Setup of a Rate Component* on page 162

Defining Tiering Setup of a Rate Component

Prerequisites

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To define tiering setup of a rate component, you should have:

- Rate schedules defined in the application
- Rate components of the rate schedule defined in the application

Procedure

To define tiering setup of a rate component:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Manage Rate Definitions**.

   The **Manage Rate Definitions** screen appears.
4. Select the rate schedule in the **Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate** zone.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   The rate components of the rate schedule appear as the search results.
6. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the rate component whose tiering setup you want to define.

   The **Create/Edit Rate Definition** zone appears.
7. Select the tiering type from the list.
8. Enter the maximum number of tiering ranges supported by the rate component.

   Note:

   The **Maximum Tiering Combinations** field is non-editable when you select the tiering type as **FLAT** or **STEP**.

   By default, **0** appears in the **Maximum Tiering Combinations** field when you select the tiering type as **FLAT**, and **1** appears when you select the tiering type as **STEP**.
9. Enter the description for the tiering setup of the rate component.

   For example, if you want the user to enter price per transaction for a tiering range, enter `Price Per Transaction` in the **Rate Component Map Description** field.
10. Click **Save**.

    The rate component map ID is generated automatically when you define the tiering setup of the rate component.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Manage Rate Definitions screen	*Manage Rate Definitions* on page 158
Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate zone	*Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate* on page 158
Create/Edit Rate Definition zone	*Create/Edit Rate Definition* on page 159

Editing Tiering Setup of a Rate Component

Procedure

To edit tiering setup of a rate component:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Manage Rate Definitions**.

   The **Manage Rate Definitions** screen appears.
4. Select the rate schedule in the **Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate** zone.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   The rate components of the rate schedule appear as the search results.
6. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the rate component whose tiering setup you want to edit.

   The **Create/Edit Rate Definition** zone appears.
7. Modify the details of the tiering setup.

   Note: You can only modify the rate component map description.
8. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the tiering setup are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Manage Rate Definitions screen	*Manage Rate Definitions* on page 158
Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate zone	*Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate* on page 158
Create/Edit Rate Definition zone	*Create/Edit Rate Definition* on page 159

Deleting Tiering Setup of a Rate Component

Procedure

To delete tiering setup of a rate component:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Manage Rate Definitions**.

   The **Manage Rate Definitions** screen appears.
4. Select the rate schedule in the **Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate** zone.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   The rate components of the rate schedule appear as the search results.
6. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the rate component whose tiering setup you want to delete.

   The **Create/Edit Rate Definition** zone appears.
7. Click **Delete**.

   The tiering setup of the rate component is deleted, and the action that can be performed on the rate component changes from **Edit** to **Add** in the **Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate** zone.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note:

The **Delete** button is disabled when you define the tiering setup of the rate component.

You can delete the tiering setup only when the rate component is not yet used for any product pricing.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Manage Rate Definitions screen	*Manage Rate Definitions* on page 158
Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate zone	*Select Rate Schedule to Define Rate* on page 158
Create/Edit Rate Definition zone	*Create/Edit Rate Definition* on page 159

Manage Tiering Criteria

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing (ORMB) provides you with the ability to create tiered pricing in case standard flat pricing is not sufficient to meet the business needs. Through tiered pricing, you can offer more favorable pricing to the customers based on service quantity utilization.

Let us understand this with the help of an example. ABC company uses wire transfer services provided by a large bank. If ABC company initiates up to 1,000 wire transfers, the fee charged by the bank will be $5 per transfer. If ABC company initiates more than 1,000 wire transfers, the fee will be $3 per transfer. To introduce this flexibility in the pricing model, you will have to define tiered pricing with the following tiering ranges:

- If the number of wire transfers is greater than 0 and less than or equal to 1000, then charge $5 per transfer to ABC company.
- If the number of wire transfers is greater than 1000, then charge $3 per transfer to ABC company.

In the above example, number of wire transfers is the tiering criterion, 0 – 1000 and 1000 – BLANK are tiering ranges, and $5 and $3 are rates per transfer.

The **Manage Tiering Criteria** screen allows you to create and edit a tiering criterion. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Tiering Criteria* on page 163
- *Edit Tiering Criterion* on page 164
- *Create Tiering Criterion* on page 164

Tiering Criteria

The **Tiering Criteria** zone displays tiering criteria that are already defined in the system. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Tiering Criterion	Displays the code of the tiering criterion.
Tiering Criterion Description	Displays the description of the tiering criterion.
Service Quantity Identifier	Displays the Service Quantity Identifier (SQI) of the tiering criterion.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the tiering criterion, the **Edit Tiering Criterion** zone appears with the details of the respective tiering criterion.

Edit Tiering Criterion

The **Edit Tiering Criterion** zone allows you to edit the tiering criterion. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Tiering Criterion	Displays the code of the tiering criterion.	Not applicable
Tiering Criterion Description	Used to modify the description of the tiering criterion.	Yes
Service Quantity Identifier	Displays the Service Quantity Identifier (SQI) of the tiering criterion.	Not applicable

This zone contains the following two buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to save the changes made in this zone.
Cancel	Used to clear the changes made in this zone.

By default, the **Edit Tiering Criterion** zone does not appear in the **Manage Tiering Criteria** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the tiering criterion in the **Tiering Criteria** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a tiering criterion	*Editing a Tiering Criterion* on page 165

Create Tiering Criterion

The **Create Tiering Criterion** zone allows you to create tiering criterion. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Tiering Criterion	Used to specify the code that uniquely identifies the tiering criterion.	Yes
Tiering Criterion Description	Used to specify the description for the tiering criterion.	Yes
Service Quantity Identifier	Used to specify the Service Quantity Identifier (SQI) for the tiering criterion. **Note:** During billing, the rating engine uses the SQI to determine which service quantities are applied to tiers.	Yes

This zone contains the following two buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to create the tiering criterion.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Button Name	Button Description
Cancel	Used to clear the fields in this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a tiering criterion	*Creating a Tiering Criterion* on page 165

Creating a Tiering Criterion

Prerequisites

To create a tiering criterion, you should have:

- Service Quantity Identifiers (SQIs) defined in the application

Procedure

To create a tiering criterion:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **M** and then click **Manage Tiering Criteria**.

   The **Manage Tiering Criteria** screen appears.
4. In the **Create Tiering Criterion** zone, enter the code that uniquely identifies the tiering criterion.
5. Enter the description for the tiering criterion.
6. Select the Service Quantity Identifier (SQI) that you want to associate with the tiering criterion.
7. Click **Save**.

   The tiering criterion is created.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Manage Tiering Criteria screen	*Manage Tiering Criteria* on page 163
Create Tiering Criterion zone	*Create Tiering Criterion* on page 164

Editing a Tiering Criterion

Procedure

To edit a tiering criterion:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **M** and then click **Manage Tiering Criteria**.

   The **Manage Tiering Criteria** screen appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

4. In the **Tiering Criteria** zone, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the tiering criterion whose details you want to edit.

   The **Edit Tiering Criterion** zone appears.

5. Modify the description of the tiering criterion, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the tiering criterion are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Manage Tiering Criteria screen	*Manage Tiering Criteria* on page 163
Edit Tiering Criterion zone	*Edit Tiering Criterion* on page 164

Add Product Pricing

The **Add Product Pricing** screen allows you to define pricing for a product that you want to assign to a price list, customer or an account. You can also define characteristics for the price assignment through this screen.

Note: A bundle cannot be assigned if its child products are already assigned to a price list, customer, or an account, and vice versa. However, you can assign a parent and child products, which are associated to each other using the relationship type, such as product, service and service group, to the same price list.

You can access the **Add Product Pricing** screen through the following screens:

- *Pricing (Account)* on page 95
- *Pricing (Customer)* on page 104
- *Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists* on page 139

This screen contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Displays the product code for which you are defining the pricing.	Not applicable
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.	Not applicable
Rate Schedule	Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining product pricing. **Note:** Rate schedules control how the bills for the product will be calculated. The **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Search Rate Schedule** screen appears.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are: • **Regular** — Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment. • **Post Processing** — Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account. • **Post Processing — Invoice Based** — Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account. • **Post Processing — Product Based** — Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account. **Note:** By default, **Regular** is selected. The post processing bill segment is generated when the **Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)** characteristic is defined for the product and when the product is associated with another product using the **Product** relationship type.	Yes
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the product pricing is effective. **Note:** By default, the current system date appears in this field. The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the product pricing is effective. **Note:** The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	No
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance based on which you want to define the product pricing. **Note:** This field appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product Parameters	Used to specify multiple parameters based on which you want to define the product pricing. **Note:** This field appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. The **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Product Parameters** screen appears.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required if the parameters are mandatory while defining product pricing.
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the product pricing.	Yes
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: • Yes • No **Note:** By default, **Yes** is selected.	Yes
Pricing Status	Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are: • **Active** — Indicates that the price assignment will be used for billing. • **Proposed** — Indicates that the price assignment will be used for quotations.	Yes
Ignore Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the product should be considered for billing. The valid values are: • **Yes** • **No** **Note:** By default, **No** is selected. The default value appears in this field only when the **Feed Management Used** option type of the **C1_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y**.	No
Aggregate Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the product should be aggregated for billing. The valid values are: • **Yes** • **No** **Note:** By default, **Yes** is selected. The default value appears in this field only when the **Feed Management Used** option type of the **C1_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y**. This field is disabled when you select **Yes** from the **Ignore Transaction** list.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Aggregation Schedule	Used to indicate the aggregation cycle. The valid values are: • Daily • Weekly • Monthly • Quarterly • Yearly **Note:** By default, the **Monthly** option is selected. The default value appears in this field only when the **Feed Management Used** option type of the **C1_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y**. This field is disabled when you select **Yes** from the **Ignore Transaction** list. The system allows you to specify the schedule even if the **Aggregate Transaction** field is set to **No**. In this case, the billable charge start date is equal to the aggregation schedule start date and the billable charge end date is equal to the aggregation schedule end date.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you want to aggregate transactions for billing.
Apply To	Used to indicate whether you want the product pricing to be applied to all customers or only to the new customers. **Note:** This field appears in this screen only when you access this screen through the **Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists** screen.	Yes

When you select the rate schedule, a zone appears at the bottom of this screen. This zone is divided into two sections. The section on the left hand side contains rate components of the rate schedule. Depending on the maximum tiering combinations specified during tiering setup of the rate component, the number of rows are displayed in this section for each rate component. For example, if you have specified the maximum tiering combinations as 3 for a rate component, three rows are displayed for that rate component in this section. The section on the right hand side contains the tiering ranges per component. You can add more than one tiering criterion for each tiering range by clicking the **Plus** ( ) icon, or delete the tiering criterion from a tiering range by clicking the **Minus** () icon corresponding to it. Tiering is not applicable when pricing is flat (or non-tiered).

This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Displays the sequence number of the rate component.	Not applicable
Tiering Type	Displays the tiering type of the rate component.	Not applicable
Rate Schedule Description	Displays the description of the tiering setup of the rate component.	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate	Used to specify the price for the product. The value can be positive or negative. Decimals are allowed. This value is fed into the rate schedule for billing calculations. **Note:** The system provides you with the facility to specify the rate value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values for the rates.	Yes
Tiering Criterion	Used to select the tiering criterion. **Note:** This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product.	Yes
Product	Used to indicate whether the product or bundle's total usage should be considered for determining the rate. By default, the product code for which you are defining the pricing appears in this field. You can specify any other product or bundle code, if required. **Note:** This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product.	Yes
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance based on which product or bundle's total usage should be considered for determining the rate. By default, the variance based on which you are defining the pricing appears in this field. You can specify any other variance, if required. **Note:** This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product. This field appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product Parameters	Used to specify the parameters based on which product or bundle's total usage should be considered for determining the rate. By default, the parameters based on which you are defining the pricing appear in this field. You can specify any other parameters (where the **Pricing** flag is set to **Yes**), if required. However, note that you can only select parameters associated with the product or bundle which is used for defining the tiering criteria. **Note:** This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product. This field appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. The **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Product Parameters** screen appears.	No
From	Used to specify the lower limit of the tiering range. **Note:** The system provides you with the facility to specify the lower limit value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values in the tiering range. This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product.	Yes
To	Used to specify the upper limit of the tiering range. **Note:** The system provides you with the facility to specify the upper limit value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values in the tiering range. When you define single tier with the maximum value as blank (for example, 0 to BLANK), the system will automatically replace the blank space with 999999999999999999.99. This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product.	Yes

This zone contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to define the product pricing.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Button Name	Button Description
Cancel	Used to return to the screen from where this screen was called without saving the changes.
Add Characteristics	Used to define characteristics for the price assignment. **Note:** On clicking the **Add Characteristics** button, the **Price Assignment Characteristics** screen appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define product pricing	*Defining Product Pricing* on page 172
How to define characteristics for the price assignment.	*Defining Characteristics for the Price Assignment* on page 188
Product Parameters screen	*Product Parameters* on page 201

Defining Product Pricing

Prerequisites

To define pricing for a product, you should have:

- Rate schedules, rate versions, and rate components defined in the application
- Tiering criteria defined in the application
- Tiering setup for the rate components defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the product (in case you want to define product pricing based on multiple parameters)

Procedure

To define pricing for a product:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Define pricing for a product that you want assign to a customer	1. Access the **Pricing (Customer)** screen. 2. Search for the product that you want to assign to the customer. 3. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Product** column corresponding to the product that you want to assign to the customer.
Define pricing for a product that you want assign to an account	1. Access the **Pricing (Account)** screen. 2. Search for the product that you want to assign to the account. 3. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Product** column corresponding to the product that you want to assign to the account.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If you want to	Then
Define pricing for a product that you want assign to a price list	1. Access the **Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists** screen. 2. Search for the product that you want to assign to the price list. 3. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Product** column corresponding to the product that you want to assign to the price list.

The **Add Product Pricing** screen appears.

2. Enter the rate schedule that you want to use while defining product pricing.

   A zone appears at the bottom of the screen.

   Note: You can search for a rate schedule by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

3. Select the currency, in which you want to define the pricing, from the **Pricing Currency** list.
4. If you want to define the product pricing based on multiple parameters, select the parameters using the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Product Parameters** field.
5. Enter the date from when the product pricing is effective in the **Effective Start Date** field.
6. Select **All Customers** or **New Customers** from the **Apply To** list depending on whether you want to apply the product pricing to all customers or only to the new customers.
7. Enter the rate that you want to apply when the tiering criteria is satisfied.
8. Select the tiering criterion from the list.
9. If you want to define tiering range based on some other product or bundle's usage, enter the product or bundle code in the **Product** field

   Note: You can search for a product by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Product** field.

10. If you want to define tiering range based on the parameters other than the one used for defining the product pricing, select the parameters using the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Product Parameters** field.
11. Enter the lower and upper limits of the tiering range in the **From** and **To** fields.
12. Repeat the steps from 6 to 8 to define other tiering ranges.
13. Define characteristics for the price assignment, if required.
14. Click **Save**.

    The pricing is defined for the product.

    Note: A bundle cannot be assigned if its child products are already assigned to a price list, customer, or an account, and vice versa, in the same date range.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Add Product Pricing screen	*Add Product Pricing* on page 166
How to define characteristics for the price assignment	*Defining Characteristics for the Price Assignment* on page 188

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to set product parameters while defining product pricing	*Setting Product Parameters* on page 202
How to search for a rate schedule	*Searching for a Rate Schedule* on page 746

Edit Product Pricing

The **Edit Product Pricing** screen allows you to edit pricing for a product that is assigned to a price list, customer, or an account. You can also edit the price assignment characteristics, if required.

You can access the **Edit Product Pricing** screen through the following screens:

- *Pricing (Account)* on page 95
- *Pricing (Customer)* on page 104
- *Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists* on page 139

This screen contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Displays the product code whose pricing you want to modify.	Not applicable
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.	Not applicable
Rate Schedule	Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining product pricing. **Note:** Rate schedules control how the bills for the product will be calculated. The **Search** (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Search Rate Schedule** screen appears.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are: • **Regular** — Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment. • **Post Processing** — Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account. • **Post Processing — Invoice Based** — Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account. • **Post Processing — Product Based** — Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account. **Note:** The post processing bill segment is generated when the **Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)** characteristic is defined for the product and when the product is associated with another product using the **Product** relationship type.	Yes
Effective Start Date	Used to modify the date from when the product pricing is effective. **Note:** The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to modify the date till when the product pricing is effective. **Note:** The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	No
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance based on which you want to define the product pricing. **Note:** This field appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product Parameters	Used to specify multiple parameters based on which you want to define the product pricing. **Note:** This field appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. The **Search** () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Product Parameters** screen appears.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required if the parameters are mandatory while defining product pricing.
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the product pricing.	Yes
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: • Yes • No	Yes
Pricing Status	Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are: • **Active** — Indicates that the price assignment is used for billing. • **Proposed** — Indicates that the price assignment is used for quotations. This status appears only when you are editing a proposed price assignment. • **Inactive** — Indicates that the price assignment must be no longer used in the system.	Not applicable
Ignore Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the product should be considered for billing. The valid values are: • **Yes** • **No**	Yes
Aggregate Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the product should be aggregated for billing. The valid values are: • **Yes** • **No** **Note:** This field is disabled when you select **Yes** from the **Ignore Transaction** list.	Yes
Aggregation Schedule	Used to indicate the aggregation cycle. **Note:** This field is disabled when you select **Yes** from the **Ignore Transaction** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you want to aggregate transactions for billing.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Apply To	Used to indicate whether you want the product pricing to be applied to all customers or only to the new customers. **Note:** This field appears in this screen only when you access this screen through the **Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists** screen.	Yes

When you select the rate schedule, a zone appears at the bottom of this screen. This zone is divided into two sections. The section on the left hand side contains rate components of the rate schedule. Depending on the maximum tiering combinations specified during tiering setup of the rate component, the number of rows are displayed in this section for each rate component. For example, if you have specified the maximum tiering combinations as 3 for a rate component, three rows are displayed in this section for that rate component . The section on the right hand side contains the tiering ranges per component. You can add more than one tiering criterion for each tiering range by clicking the **Plus** ( ) icon, or delete the tiering criterion from a tiering range by clicking the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to it. Tiering is not applicable when pricing is flat (or non-tiered).

This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Displays the sequence number of the rate component.	Not applicable
Tiering Type	Displays the tiering type of the rate component.	Not applicable
Rate Schedule Description	Displays the description of the tiering setup of the rate component.	Not applicable
Rate	Used to modify the price for the product. The value can be positive or negative. Decimals are allowed. This value is fed into the rate schedule for billing calculations. **Note:** The system provides you with the facility to specify the rate value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values for the rates.	Yes
Tiering Criterion	Used to modify the tiering criterion. **Note:** This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product.	Yes
Product	Used to indicate whether the product or bundle's total usage should be considered for determining the rate. By default, the product code for which you are defining the pricing appears in this field. You can specify any other product or bundle code, if required. **Note:** This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance based on which product or bundle's total usage should be considered for determining the rate. By default, the variance based on which you are defining the pricing appears in this field. You can specify any other variance, if required. **Note:** This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product. This field appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.	No
Product Parameters	Used to specify the parameters based on which product or bundle's total usage should be considered for determining the rate. By default, the parameters based on which you are defining the pricing appear in this field. You can specify any other parameters (where the **Pricing** flag is set to **Yes**), if required. However, note that you can only select parameters associated with the product or bundle which is used for defining the tiering criteria. **Note:** This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product. This field appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. The **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Product Parameters** screen appears.	No
From	Used to modify the lower limit of the tiering range. **Note:** The system provides you with the facility to specify the lower limit value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values in the tiering range. This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
To	Used to modify the upper limit of the tiering range. **Note:** The system provides you with the facility to specify the upper limit value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values in the tiering range. When you define single tier with the maximum value as blank (for example, 0 to BLANK), the system will automatically replace the blank space with 999999999999999999.99. This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product.	Yes

This zone contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to save the changes made in this screen.
Cancel	Used to return to the screen from where this screen was called without saving the changes.
Edit Characteristics	Used to edit the price assignment characteristics and their values. **Note:** On clicking the **Edit Characteristics** button, the **Price Assignment Characteristics** screen appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit product pricing	*Editing Product Pricing* on page 179
How to edit the price assignment characteristics and their values	*Editing the Price Assignment Characteristics* on page 189
Product Parameters screen	*Product Parameters* on page 201

Editing Product Pricing

Prerequisites

To edit a product pricing, you should have:

- Rate schedules, rate versions, rate components defined in the application
- Tiering criteria defined in the application
- Tiering setup for the rate components defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the product (in case you want to edit product pricing based on multiple parameters)

Procedure

To edit a product pricing:

1. Do either of the following:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If you want to	Then
Edit the pricing for a product that is assigned to a customer	1. Access the **Pricing (Customer)** screen. 2. In the **Effective Price Assignment** zone, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the product pricing that you want to edit.
Edit the pricing for a product that is assigned to an account	1. Access the **Pricing (Account)** screen. 2. In the **Effective Price Assignment** zone, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the product pricing that you want to edit.
Edit the pricing for a product that is assigned to a price list	1. Access the **Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists** screen. 2. In the **Price List Products** zone, click the link in the **Product** column corresponding to the product whose pricing details you want to edit.

The **Edit Product Pricing** screen appears.

2. Modify the required pricing details.

   Note:

   If you change the effective start and end dates while editing a product pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during that date range.

   While editing a product pricing, you can not only edit the existing tiering combination details, but also add additional tiering combinations until the maximum tiering combinations limit is met.

3. Edit the price assignment characteristics, if required.
4. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the product pricing are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Edit Product Pricing screen	*Edit Product Pricing* on page 174
How to edit the characteristics of the price assignment	*Editing the Price Assignment Characteristics* on page 189
How to set product parameters while editing assigned pricing	*Setting Product Parameters* on page 202
How to search for a rate schedule	*Searching for a Rate Schedule* on page 746

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Override Product Pricing

You can override a product pricing within the hierarchy to create prices that are specific to a customer or an account (also referred to as customer agreed or account agreed pricing). Using the Override feature, you create a new price assignment within the hierarchy.

Customer agreed or account agreed prices are effective for a particular duration and do not expire until you specify the end date manually. However, if you set the **Expire Override Switch** option type of the **C1_EXP_OVRD** feature configuration to **Y**, the system will automatically expire an agreed pricing when the agreed pricing of a customer or an account without end date is overridden. In case you do not want an agreed pricing to automatically expire when it is overridden, you must set the **Expire Override Switch** option type of the **C1_EXP_OVRD** feature configuration to **N**.

The **Override Product Pricing** screen allows you to override effective pricing for a product that is assigned to a customer or an account either directly or through a price list. You can also edit the price assignment characteristics, if required.

You can access the **Override Product Pricing** screen through the following screens:

- *Pricing (Account)* on page 95
- *Pricing (Customer)* on page 104

This screen contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Displays the product code whose pricing you want to override.	Not applicable
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.	Not applicable
Rate Schedule	Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining product pricing. **Note:** Rate schedules control how the bills for the product will be calculated. The **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Search Rate Schedule** screen appears.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are: • **Regular** — Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment. • **Post Processing** — Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account. • **Post Processing — Invoice Based** — Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account. • **Post Processing — Product Based** — Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account. **Note:** The post processing bill segment is generated when the **Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)** characteristic is defined for the product and when the product is associated with another product using the **Product** relationship type.	Yes
Effective Start Date	Used to modify the date from when the product pricing is effective. **Note:** The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to modify the date till when the product pricing is effective. **Note:** The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	No
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance based on which you want to define the product pricing. **Note:** This field appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product Parameters	Used to specify multiple parameters based on which you want to define the product pricing. **Note:** This field appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. The **Search** () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Product Parameters** screen appears.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required if the parameters are mandatory while defining product pricing.
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the product pricing.	Yes
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: • Yes • No	Yes
Pricing Status	Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are: • **Active** — Indicates that the price assignment is used for billing. • **Proposed** — Indicates that the price assignment is used for quotations.	Yes
Ignore Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the product should be considered for billing. The valid values are: • **Yes** • **No**	Yes
Aggregate Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the product should be aggregated for billing. The valid values are: • **Yes** • **No** **Note:** This field is disabled when you select **Yes** from the **Ignore Transaction** list.	Yes
Aggregation Schedule	Used to indicate the aggregation cycle. **Note:** This field is disabled when you select **Yes** from the **Ignore Transaction** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you want to aggregate transactions for billing.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Apply To	Used to indicate whether you want the product pricing to be applied to all customers or only to the new customers. **Note:** This field appears in this screen only when you access this screen through the **Manage Product Assignments to Price Lists** screen.	Yes

When you select the rate schedule, a zone appears at the bottom of this screen. This zone is divided into two sections. The section on the left hand side contains rate components of the rate schedule. Depending on the maximum tiering combinations specified during tiering setup of the rate component, the number of rows are displayed in this section for each rate component. For example, if you have specified the maximum tiering combinations as 3 for a rate component, three rows are displayed in this section for that rate component . The section on the right hand side contains the tiering ranges per component. You can add more than one tiering criterion for each tiering range by clicking the **Plus** ( ) icon, or delete the tiering criterion from a tiering range by clicking the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to it. Tiering is not applicable when pricing is flat (or non-tiered).

This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Displays the sequence number of the rate component.	Not applicable
Tiering Type	Displays the tiering type of the rate component.	Not applicable
Rate Schedule Description	Displays the description of the tiering setup of the rate component.	Not applicable
Rate	Used to modify the price for the product. The value can be positive or negative. Decimals are allowed. This value is fed into the rate schedule for billing calculations. **Note:** The system provides you with the facility to specify the rate value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values for the rates.	Yes
Tiering Criterion	Used to modify the tiering criterion. **Note:** This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product.	Yes
Product	Used to indicate whether the product or bundle's total usage should be considered for determining the rate. By default, the product code for which you are defining the pricing appears in this field. You can specify any other product or bundle code, if required. **Note:** This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance based on which product or bundle's total usage should be considered for determining the rate. By default, the variance based on which you are defining the pricing appears in this field. You can specify any other variance, if required. **Note:** This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product. This field appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.	No
Product Parameters	Used to specify the parameters based on which product or bundle's total usage should be considered for determining the rate. By default, the parameters based on which you are defining the pricing appear in this field. You can specify any other parameters (where the **Pricing** flag is set to **Yes**), if required. However, note that you can only select parameters associated with the product or bundle which is used for defining the tiering criteria. **Note:** This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product. This field appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. The **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Product Parameters** screen appears.	No
From	Used to modify the lower limit of the tiering range. **Note:** The system provides you with the facility to specify the lower limit value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values in the tiering range. This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
To	Used to modify the upper limit of the tiering range. **Note:** The system provides you with the facility to specify the upper limit value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values in the tiering range. When you define single tier with the maximum value as blank (for example, 0 to BLANK), the system will automatically replace the blank space with 999999999999999999.99. This field does not appear when you are defining flat pricing for a product.	Yes

This zone contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to save the changes made in this screen.
Cancel	Used to return to the screen from where this screen was called without saving the changes.
Edit Characteristics	Used to edit the price assignment characteristics and their values. **Note:** On clicking the **Edit Characteristics** button, the **Price Assignment Characteristics** screen appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to override product pricing	*Overriding Product Pricing* on page 186
How to edit the price assignment characteristics and their values	*Editing the Price Assignment Characteristics* on page 189
Product Parameters screen	*Product Parameters* on page 201
How to set the **C1_EXP_OVRD** feature configuration	*Setting the C1_EXP_OVRD Feature Configuration* on page 765

Overriding Product Pricing

Prerequisites

To override a product pricing, you should have:

- Rate schedules, rate versions, rate components defined in the application
- Tiering criteria defined in the application
- Tiering setup for the rate components defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the product (in case you want to override product pricing based on multiple parameters)

Procedure

To override a product pricing:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Override product pricing assigned to the customer either directly or through the customer hierarchy or price list	1. Access the **Pricing (Customer)** screen. 2. In the **Effective Price Assignment** zone, click the **Override** ( ) icon in the **Override** column corresponding to the product pricing that you want to override.
Override product pricing assigned to the account either directly or through the customer hierarchy or price list	1. Access the **Pricing (Account)** screen. 2. In the **Effective Price Assignment** zone, click the **Override** ( ) icon in the **Override** column corresponding to the product pricing that you want to override.

   The **Override Product Pricing** screen appears.

2. Modify the required pricing details.

   Note:

   If you change the effective start and end dates while overriding a product pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during that date range.

   While overriding a product pricing, you can not only edit the existing tiering combination details, but also add additional tiering combinations until the maximum tiering combinations limit is met.

3. Edit the price assignment characteristics, if required.
4. Click **Save**.

   The product pricing is overridden.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Override Product Pricing screen	*Override Product Pricing* on page 181
How to edit the characteristics of the price assignment	*Editing the Price Assignment Characteristics* on page 189
How to set product parameters while overriding product pricing	*Setting Product Parameters* on page 202
How to search for a rate schedule	*Searching for a Rate Schedule* on page 746

Price Assignment Characteristics

The **Price Assignment Characteristics** screen allows you to define characteristics for the price assignment. This screen contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price assignment.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price assignment.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. **Note:** The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Price List Assignment.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price assignment.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. **Note:** On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price assignment.

This screen contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to save the price assignment characteristics and their values.
Cancel	Used to exit from this screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for the price assignment	*Defining Characteristics for the Price Assignment* on page 188
How to edit the characteristics of the price assignment	*Editing the Price Assignment Characteristics* on page 189

Defining Characteristics for the Price Assignment

Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a price assignment, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Price Assignment)

Procedure

To define characteristics for the price assignment:

1. Do either of the following:

If you are	Then
Defining a product pricing	Click the **Add Characteristics** button.
Overriding or editing a product pricing	Click the **Edit Characteristics** button.

   The **Price Assignment Characteristics** screen appears.

2. Select the characteristic type from the list.

   Note: The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Price List Assignment.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. Enter the date from when you want the characteristic to be effective for the price assignment.
4. Enter the value for the characteristic type.

   Note: If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.
5. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the price assignment, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then *r*epeat steps from 2 to 4.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the price assignment, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the characteristic.
6. Click **Save**.

   The characteristics are defined for the price assignment.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define product pricing	*Defining Product Pricing* on page 172
How to edit product pricing	*Editing Product Pricing* on page 179
How to override product pricing	*Overriding Product Pricing* on page 186
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	*Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value* on page 743

Editing the Price Assignment Characteristics

Prerequisites

To edit the price assignment characteristics, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Price Assignment)

Procedure

To edit the price assignment characteristics:

1. Click the **Edit Characteristics** button in the **Edit Product Pricing** or **Override Product Pricing** screen *d*epending on whether you are editing or overriding a product pricing.

   The **Price Assignment Characteristics** screen appears.
2. Modify the required price assignment characteristic details, such as effective date and value.
3. Define or remove characteristics from the price assignment, if required.
4. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the price assignment characteristics are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit product pricing	*Editing Product Pricing* on page 179
How to override product pricing	*Overriding Product Pricing* on page 186
How to define characteristics for the price assignment	*Defining Characteristics for the Price Assignment* on page 188

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Variance Parameter

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define pricing for a product based on the variance parameter. This helps you to maintain variance based pricing for a product. For example, you can define different product pricing for each country or currency, if required. Before you define product pricing based on a variance parameter, you need to define the variance parameter. The **Variance Parameter** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete a variance parameter. It also allows you to filter the variance parameters using a search criteria.

Filtering the Variance Parameters

Procedure

To filter the variance parameters:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **V** and then click **Variance Parameter**.

   The **Variance Parameter** screen appears. It contains the following two sections:

   - **Search Criteria**— The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance parameter.	No

   - **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** ( )icon corresponding to the **Variance Parameter** field, the search results are filtered based on the specified criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Variance Parameter	Displays the variance parameter.
Description	Displays the description of the variance parameter.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Variance Parameter** field.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click the **Search**( ) icon corresponding to the **Variance Parameter** field.

   The search results are filtered based on the specified criteria.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Variance Parameter screen	*Variance Parameter* on page 190

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Defining a Variance Parameter

Procedure

To define a variance parameter:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **V** and then click **Variance Parameter**.

   The **Variance Parameter** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance parameter.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the variance parameter.	Yes

4. Enter the required details.

5. If you want to define more than one variance parameter, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step 4.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a variance parameter, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the variance parameter that you want to delete.

6. Click **Save**.

   The variance parameter is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Variance Parameter screen	*Variance Parameter* on page 190

Editing a Variance Parameter

Procedure

To edit a variance parameter:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **V** and then click **Variance Parameter**.

   The **Variance Parameter** screen appears.

4. If required, you can filter the variance parameters in the **Variance Parameter** screen.

   A list of variance parameters that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Variance Parameter	Displays the variance parameter.	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Description	Used to specify the description for the variance parameter.	Yes

5. Modify the required details.
6. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the variance parameter are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Variance Parameter screen	*Variance Parameter* on page 190
How to filter the variance parameters	*Filtering the Variance Parameters* on page 190

Deleting a Variance Parameter

Procedure

To delete a variance parameter:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **V** and then click **Variance Parameter**.

   The **Variance Parameter** screen appears.
4. If required, you can filter the variance parameters in the **Variance Parameter** screen.

   A list of variance parameters that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
5. Click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the variance parameter that you want to delete.
6. Click **Save**.

   The variance parameter is deleted.

   Note: You can only delete a variance parameter which is not yet used.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Variance Parameter screen	*Variance Parameter* on page 190
How to filter the variance parameters	*Filtering the Variance Parameters* on page 190

Parameter

The price for a product or service may differ depending upon various transaction, customer or account attributes. Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides a facility to define pricing for a product based on multiple parameters.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Parameter** screen allows you to define, edit, delete and copy a parameter. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 193

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for parameters that are already defined in the system. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Used to specify the parameter name.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the parameter.	No
Value Type	Used to indicate the type of value that you can store in the parameter. The valid values are: • Adhoc • Predefined • Reference	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Code	Displays the parameter name.
Value Type	Indicates the type of value that you can store in the parameter. The valid values are: • Adhoc • Predefined • Reference
Description	Displays the description of the parameter.
View	On clicking the **View** ( ) icon, the **Parameter** screen appears where you can view the details of the parameter.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Parameter** screen appears where you can edit the details of the parameter.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the parameter. **Note:** You can delete a parameter only if it is not yet associated to any product.
Copy	On clicking the **Copy** ( ) icon, the **Parameter** screen appears where you can create a new parameter using an existing parameter.

You can create a new parameter by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parameter	*Searching for a Parameter* on page 194
How to define a parameter	*Defining a Parameter* on page 194
How to edit a parameter	*Editing a Parameter* on page 196
How to delete a parameter	*Deleting a Parameter* on page 198
How to copy a parameter	*Copying a Parameter* on page 198
How to view the details of a parameter	*Viewing the Parameter Details* on page 200

Searching for a Parameter

Procedure

To search for a parameter:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Parameter**.

   The **Parameter** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of parameters that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Parameter screen	*Parameter* on page 192
Search zone	*Search* on page 193

Defining a Parameter

Prerequisites

To define a parameter, you should have:

- Validation algorithm defined using the C1_PPARM_VAL algorithm type

Procedure

To define a parameter:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Parameter**.

   The **Parameter** screen appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Parameter** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Used to specify the parameter name. **Note:** You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the parameter name.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the parameter.	Yes
Value Type	Used to indicate the type of value that you want to store in the parameter. The valid values are: • Adhoc • Predefined • Reference	Yes
Validation Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered when you save the parameter value. **Note:** This algorithm validates the parameter value. This field appears only when you select the **Adhoc** option from the **Value Type** list.	No
Reference Entity	Used to indicate the table whose primary key (column) you want to set as the reference entity. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Reference** option from the **Value Type** list. The **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Search Table** screen appears.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you select the **Reference** option from the **Value Type** list.
Field Name	Indicates the column which is the primary key of the table. The parameter value is then validated against the primary column of the table.	Not applicable

In addition, this screen contains the following section:

- **Parameter Values** — This section allows you to define predefined values for the parameter. If you want to define more than one predefined value for the parameter, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then enter the value. However, if you want to remove a predefined value from the list, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the parameter value.

Note:

The **Parameter Values** section appears only when you select the **Predefined** option from the **Value Type** list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the predefined parameter value.

5. Enter the required details depending on whether you want to create a parameter with the adhoc, predefined, or reference value type.

   Note:

   You can search for an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   At least one parameter value should be defined when you select the **Predefined** option from the **Value Type** list.

6. Click **Save**.

   The parameter is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Parameter screen	*Parameter* on page 192
Search zone	*Search* on page 193
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732
How to search for a table	*Searching for a Table* on page 747

Editing a Parameter

Prerequisites

To edit a parameter, you should have:

- Validation algorithm defined using the C1_PPARM_VAL algorithm type

Procedure

To edit a parameter:

1. Search for the parameter in the **Parameter** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the parameter whose details you want to edit.

   The **Parameter** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Displays the parameter name.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the parameter.	Yes
Value Type	Indicates the type of value that you can store in the parameter. The valid values are: • Adhoc • Predefined • Reference	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Validation Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered when you save the parameter value. **Note:** This algorithm validates the parameter value. This field appears only when you edit a parameter whose value type is set to **Adhoc**.	No
Reference Entity	Used to indicate the table whose primary key (column) you want to set as the reference entity. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Reference** option from the **Value Type** list. The **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Search Table** screen appears.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you select the **Reference** option from the **Value Type** list.
Field Name	Indicates the column which is the primary key of the table. The parameter value is then validated against the primary column of the table.	Not applicable

In addition, this screen contains the following section:

- **Parameter Values** — This section allows you to define predefined values for the parameter. If you want to define more than one predefined value for the parameter, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then enter the value. However, if you want to remove a predefined value from the list, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the parameter value.

Note:

You cannot edit or remove a predefined value from the list if it is already used for aggregating transactions or for defining product pricing.

The **Parameter Values** section appears only when you edit a parameter whose value type is set to **Predefined**.

You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the predefined parameter value.

3. Modify the required details.

   Note:

   You can search for an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   At least one parameter value should be defined when you edit a parameter whose value type is set to **Predefined**.

4. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the parameter are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parameter	*Searching for a Parameter* on page 194
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732
How to search for a table	*Searching for a Table* on page 747

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Deleting a Parameter

Procedure

To delete a parameter:

1. Search for the parameter in the **Parameter** screen.
2. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the parameter that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the parameter.

   Note: You can delete a parameter only if it is not yet associated to any product.
3. Click **OK**.

   The parameter is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parameter	*Searching for a Parameter* on page 194

Copying a Parameter

Instead of creating a parameter from scratch, you can create a new parameter using an existing parameter. This is possible through copying a parameter. When you copy a parameter, the predefined values, validation algorithm, and reference entity (depending upon the value type) are copied along with the parameter description. You can then edit the details, if required.

Note: You cannot change the type of value that you can store in the new parameter (which is created using an existing parameter).

Prerequisites

To copy a parameter, you should have:

- Validation algorithm defined using the C1_PPARM_VAL algorithm type

Procedure

To copy a parameter:

1. Search for the parameter in the **Parameter** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** ( ) icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the parameter whose copy you want to create.

   The **Parameter** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Used to specify the parameter name. **Note:** You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the parameter name.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the parameter.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Value Type	Indicates the type of value that you can store in the parameter. The valid values are: • Adhoc • Predefined • Reference	Not applicable
Validation Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered when you save the parameter value. **Note:** This algorithm validates the parameter value. This field appears only when you copy a parameter whose value type is set to **Adhoc**.	No
Reference Entity	Used to indicate the table whose primary key (column) you want to set as the reference entity. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Reference** option from the **Value Type** list. The **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Search Table** screen appears.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you select the **Reference** option from the **Value Type** list.
Field Name	Indicates the column which is the primary key of the table. The parameter value is then validated against the primary column of the table.	Not applicable

In addition, this screen contains the following section:

- **Parameter Values** — This section allows you to define predefined values for the parameter. If you want to define more than one predefined value for the parameter, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then enter the value. However, if you want to remove a predefined value from the list, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the parameter value.

Note:

The **Parameter Values** section appears only when you copy a parameter whose value type is set to **Predefined**.

You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the predefined parameter value.

3. Enter the required details depending on whether you are creating a parameter with the adhoc, predefined, or *r*eference value type.

   Note:

   You can search for an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   At least one parameter value should be defined when you copy a parameter with the value type set to **Predefined**.

4. Click **Save**.

   The parameter is defined.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parameter	*Searching for a Parameter* on page 194
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732
How to search for a table	*Searching for a Table* on page 747

Viewing the Parameter Details

Procedure

To view the details of a parameter:

1. Search for the parameter in the **Parameter** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the parameter whose details you want to view.

   The **Parameter** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Code	Displays the parameter name.
Description	Displays the description of the parameter.
Value Type	Indicates the type of value that you can store in the parameter. The valid values are: • Adhoc • Predefined • Reference
Validation Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered when you save the parameter value. **Note:** This algorithm validates the parameter value. This field appears only when you view the details of a parameter whose value type is set to **Adhoc**.
Reference Entity	Indicates the table whose primary key (column) is set as the reference entity. **Note:** This field appears only when you view the details of a parameter whose value type is set to **Reference**.
Field Name	Indicates the column which is the primary key of the table. The parameter value is then validated against the primary column of the table. **Note:** This field appears only when you view the details of a parameter whose value type is set to **Reference**.

   In addition, this screen contains the following section:

   - **Parameter Values** — This section allows you to view the predefined values of the parameter. It appears only when you view the details of a parameter whose value type is set to **Predefined**.
3. View the details of the parameter in the **Parameter** screen.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parameter	*Searching for a Parameter* on page 194

Product Parameters

The **Product Parameters** screen allows you to define values for the parameters based on which you want to define product pricing. This screen contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Displays the product code.	Not applicable
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.	Not applicable
Parameter	Displays the description of the parameter which is associated with the product. **Note:** The list includes only those parameters which are: • Used for aggregating transactions and for defining product pricing • Effective in the period in which the product pricing is defined If a business label is defined for the parameter, the business label appears in this field.	Not applicable
Mandatory	Indicates whether the parameter is mandatory while defining product pricing. The valid values are: • Yes • No	Not applicable
Priority	Indicates the priority in which optional parameters should be considered while determining best fit price for the product. **Note:** The priority for all parameters which are mandatory is set to 0.	Not applicable
Value	Used to specify the value for the parameter.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If the parameter is mandatory, you must specify the parameter value.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to set product parameters while defining, editing or overriding product pricing	*Setting Product Parameters* on page 202
Add Product Pricing screen	*Add Product Pricing* on page 166

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Edit Product Pricing screen	*Edit Product Pricing* on page 174
Override Product Pricing screen	*Override Product Pricing* on page 181

Setting Product Parameters

Prerequisites

To set product parameters, you should have:

- Parameters (with the **Pricing** field set to **Yes**) associated with the product

Procedure

To set product parameters:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Product Parameters** field.

   The **Product Parameters** screen appears.

2. Enter the value for the parameters based on which you want to define product pricing.

   Note:

   If the parameter value type is **Predefined**, the **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to the **Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined parameter value.

   You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.

3. Click **OK**.

   A comma-separated list of values appear in the **Product Parameters** field. The order in which parameter values appear in the product parameter information string is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a product).

   Note: The value of parameters whose value type is **Adhoc** is validated using the **Validation** algorithm attached to the respective parameter.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a predefined parameter value	*Searching for a Predefined Parameter Value* on page 744
How to define product pricing	*Defining Product Pricing* on page 172
How to edit product pricing	*Editing Product Pricing* on page 179
How to override product pricing	*Overriding Product Pricing* on page 186
How to add a product to a bundle	*Adding a Product to a Bundle* on page 152

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 4

Division

Topics:

- *Division Search*
- *Division*

The following two types of divisions are used while defining a contract type:

- **General Ledger (GL) Division** — GL divisions typically comprise of individual entities (for example, companies) in the general ledger. You must set up a GL division for each such entity. The GL division is used to define the accounting period for financial transactions linked to contracts. Contracts are associated with GL divisions through their contract type. The system uses accounting periods to prevent a user from creating financial transactions in the closed periods. It also uses accounting periods when it generates the flat file that contains the consolidated journal entry that is interfaced to the general ledger.
- **Division** — A division is associated with a jurisdiction. A jurisdiction is a geographic-oriented entity with unique business rules. For example, if you conduct business in California and Japan, each jurisdiction has different set of rules, and therefore you need to have a separate jurisdiction for each division. You must set up a division for each jurisdiction in which you conduct the business. For the Pricing Management functionality, setting up a division is mandatory, and the system must contain information about at least one division.

A division is associated with the following:

- **Person** — You may or may not associate person to a division. It is optional. But, when you are using division specific functionality, you have to associate person to a division while creating a local person or customer.
- **Contract** — Contract is associated to a division through its contract type. The contract type controls multiple business rules which are defined for a given jurisdiction and contract type combination. In addition to controlling the business rules defined on the contract's contract type, the contract's division also controls the type of collection criteria used to determine if and how to collect overdue debt.
- **Account** — The division on account when combined with the account's customer class defines the jurisdiction that governs financial business rules (for example, the bill's due date, when and how late payment charges are calculated, etc.). It also allows you to assign To Do entries associated with the account to a given To Do role based on the account's division.

Division Search

The **Division Search** window allows you to search for a division. This screen contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the division code.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the division.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Division	Displays the division code.
Description	Displays the description of the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204

Searching for a Division

Procedure

To search for a division:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **D** and then click **Division**.

   The **Division Search** window appears.

4. Enter the code or description of the division in the **Search Criteria** section.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   A list of divisions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results.

6. In the **Search Results** section, click the division whose details you want to view or edit.

   The **Division** screen appears.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Division screen	*Division* on page 205

Division

The **Division** screen allows you to define and edit a division. This screen consists of the following tabs:

Tab Name	Tab Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Main	Used to define basic details for a division.	Yes
Access Groups	Used to define the users who have right to associate objects (such as persons, accounts, products, price lists, etc.) with this division. The users can only view those divisions to which they have access in the **Division** list used across the application.	No
Products	Used to define which products are available to persons or accounts in this division. **Note:** Once the product is created, you need to associate it with a division.	No
Price Lists	Used to define which price lists are available to persons or accounts in this division. **Note:** Once the price list is created, you need to associate it with a division. You can associate a price list with a division only when all products in the price list are already associated with the division.	No
Languages	Used to limit the languages that you can select for a person's bills and correspondence in this division.	No
Invoice Currencies	Used to limit the invoice currencies that you can select for accounts in this division. **Note:** Invoice currency is a currency in which the accounts in this division can be billed.	No
Customer Identifier Types	Used to limit the customer identifier types that you can select for persons or customers in this division.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Tab Name	Tab Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Algorithms	Used to associate algorithms with the division. Once a division is created, you must associate the **Price Assignment Search** algorithm to it. For the Banking functionality, this is required to ensure that the product pricing is displayed in the correct order as defined by the algorithm. Each division can have unique hierarchy order or more than one division can have the same hierarchy order. The hierarchy order is also used in billing when the price determination is controlled by the sort order definition of the algorithm. You can define algorithms in the **Algorithm** screen. The search order is governed by the second parameter of the algorithm, and the valid values for the same are: • **AGREED_PRICELIST** – If you use this search order, the product pricing is searched in the following order: Account Agreed, Account Price List, Account Inherited Price List, Customer Agreed, Customer Price List, Customer Inherited Price List, Parent Customer Agreed, Parent Customer Price List, and Parent Customer Inherited Price List. **Note:** In this search order, the account agreed level has highest precedence and parent customer inherited price list level has lowest precedence. • **AGREED_FIRST** - If you use this search order, the product pricing is searched in the following order: Account Agreed, Customer Agreed, Parent Customer Agreed, Account Price List, Account Inherited Price List, Customer Price List, Customer Inherited Price List, Parent Customer Price List, and Parent Customer Inherited Price List. **Note:** In this search order, the account agreed level has highest precedence and parent customer inherited price list level has lowest precedence.	No
Characteristics	Used to define characteristics for the division.	No
Bill Messages	Used to specify the bill messages that are valid for accounts in this division.	No
Party Char Types	Used to limit the characteristic types that you can select for persons and accounts in this division.	No
Bill Cycles	Used to limit the bill cycles that you can select for accounts in this division.	No
Account Identifier Types	Used to limit the account identifier types that you can select for accounts in this division.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Tab Name	Tab Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product Characteristics	Used to define division-specific characteristics for products associated with this division.	No

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207
How to associate access groups with a division	*Associating Access Groups with a Division* on page 210
How to associate products with a division	*Associating Products with a Division* on page 211
How to associate price lists with a division	*Associating Price Lists with a Division* on page 212
How to associate languages with a division	*Associating Languages with a Division* on page 212
How to associate invoice currencies with a division	*Associating Invoice Currencies with a Division* on page 213
How to associate customer identifier types with a division	*Associating Customer Identifier Types with a Division* on page 214
How to associate algorithms with a division	*Associating Algorithms with a Division* on page 215
How to define characteristics for a division	*Defining Characteristics for a Division* on page 217
How to associate bill messages with a division	*Associating Bill Messages with a Division* on page 218
How to associate party characteristic types with a division	*Associating Party Char Types with a Division* on page 219
How to associate bill cycles with a division	*Associating Bill Cycles with a Division* on page 220
How to associate account identifier types with a division	*Associating Account Identifier Types with a Division* on page 221
How to define division-specific characteristics for a product	*Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Product* on page 222

Defining a Division

Prerequisites

To define a division, you should have:

- Work calendars, bill formats, bill route types, time zones, currencies, business objects, To Do types, and To Do roles defined in the application

Procedure

To define a division:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **D** and then click the **Add** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Division** menu option.

   The **Division** screen appears. It contains the following tabs:

   - Main

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- Access Groups
- Products
- Price Lists
- Languages
- Invoice Currencies
- Customer Identifier Types
- Algorithms
- Characteristics
- Bill Messages
- Party Char Types
- Bill Cycles
- Account Identifier Types
- Product Characteristics

The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the code that uniquely identifies the division.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the division.	Yes
Work Calendar	Used to indicate the days on which this division operates. This calendar is used to ensure that the system calculated dates (for example, bill due date, credit and collection event dates, etc.) fall on a working day.	Yes
Status	Used to indicate the status of the division. You can use either of the following values: • **Active** Indicates that the division can be used in the system • **Pending** Indicates that the division is still being defined • **Retired** Indicates that the division is no longer available for use	Yes
Bill Format	Used to specify the default bill format for accounts in this division.	No
Bill Route Type	Used to specify the default bill route type for accounts in this division.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Base Currency Code	Used when accounts in this division can be billed in a currency that is different from the currency required by the GL. The system generates GL entries in the currency defined for an account. If you specify the value in this field, the system will convert the GL amounts maintained in the accounts currency into this currency. The financial transactions in both the currencies will be maintained in the system.	No
Time Zone	Used to indicate the time zone in which this division operates.	No
Comments	Used to specify additional details about the division.	No
Business Object	Used to specify a business object that may govern additional rules related to this division.	Yes
To Do Type	Used when you want the To Do entries (associated with accounts in this division) of a given To Do type must be assigned to the users with a given To Do role.	No
To Do Role	Used when you want the To Do entries (associated with accounts in this division) of a given To Do type must be assigned to the users with a given To Do role.	No

4. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for a To Do type and To Do role by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

5. If you want to add more than one To Do type and To Do role combination for a division, click the **Plus** ( ) *i*con and then enter the To Do type and To Do role.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a To Do type and To Do role combination from the division, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the combination.

6. Associate access groups, products, price lists, languages, invoice currencies, customer identifier types, *a*lgorithms, bill messages, party characteristic types, bill cycles, and account identifier types with the division, if *r*equired.
7. Define characteristics for the division, if required.
8. Define division-specific characteristics for the products, if required.
9. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The division is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to associate access groups with a division	*Associating Access Groups with a Division* on page 210
How to associate products with a division	*Associating Products with a Division* on page 211
How to associate price lists with a division	*Associating Price Lists with a Division* on page 212

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to associate languages with a division	*Associating Languages with a Division* on page 212
How to associate invoice currencies with a division	*Associating Invoice Currencies with a Division* on page 213
How to associate customer identifier types with a division	*Associating Customer Identifier Types with a Division* on page 214
How to associate algorithms with a division	*Associating Algorithms with a Division* on page 215
How to define characteristics for a division	*Defining Characteristics for a Division* on page 217
How to associate bill messages with a division	*Associating Bill Messages with a Division* on page 218
How to associate party characteristic types with a division	*Associating Party Char Types with a Division* on page 219
How to associate bill cycles with a division	*Associating Bill Cycles with a Division* on page 220
How to associate account identifier types with a division	*Associating Account Identifier Types with a Division* on page 221
How to define division-specific characteristics for a product	*Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Product* on page 222

Associating Access Groups with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate access groups with a division, you should have:

- Access groups defined in the application

Procedure

To associate access groups with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate access groups.
2. Click the **Access Groups** tab in the **Division** screen..

   The **Access Groups** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Access Group	Used to specify the access group code.	No
Description	Displays the description of the access group. **Note:** The description appears automatically when you specify the access group.	Not applicable

3. Enter the access group code.

   Note: You can search for an access group by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.
4. If you want to associate more than one access group with the division, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step 3.

   Note: However, if you want to remove an access group from the division, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the access group.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The access groups are associated with the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207
How to search for an access group	*Searching for an Access Group* on page 730

Associating Products with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate products with a division, you should have:

- Products created in the application

Procedure

To associate products with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate products.
2. Click the **Products** tab in the **Division** screen.

   The **Products** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Description	Displays the description of the product. **Note:** The description appears automatically when you specify the product code.	Not applicable

3. Enter the product code.

   Note: You can search for a product by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

4. If you want to associate more than one product with the division, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step 3.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a product from the division, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the product.

5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The products are associated with the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Associating Price Lists with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate price lists with a division, you should have:

- Price lists created in the application

Procedure

To associate price lists with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate price lists.
2. Click the **Price Lists** tab in the **Division** screen.

   The **Price Lists** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List ID	Used to specify the price list ID.	No
Description	Displays the description of the price list. **Note:** The description appears automatically when you specify the price list ID.	Not applicable

3. Enter the price list ID.

   Note: You can search for a price list by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

4. If you want to associate more than one price list with the division, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step *3*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a price list from the division, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the price list.

5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The price lists are associated with the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207
How to search for a price list	*Searching for a Price List* on page 745

Associating Languages with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate languages with a division, you should have:

- Languages defined in the application

Procedure

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To associate languages with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate languages.
2. Click the **Languages** tab in the **Division** screen.

   The **Languages** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Language	Used to specify the language.	No

3. Select the language from the list.
4. If you want to associate more than one language with the division, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step *3*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a language from the division, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the language.
5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The languages are associated with the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207

Associating Invoice Currencies with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate invoice currencies with a division, you should have:

- Currencies defined in the application

Procedure

To associate invoice currencies with a division:

1. Search for the division in the **Division** screen.
2. Click the **Invoice Currencies** tab.

   The **Invoice Currencies** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Currency	Used to specify the currency.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rounding Type	Used to indicate the rounding type for the currency. The valid values are: • Down • Nearest • Up By default, the rounding type is set to **Nearest**.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are associating a currency with the division.

3. Select the currency and its rounding type from the respective list.
4. If you want to associate more than one invoice currency with the division, click the **Plus** (+) icon and then repeat step 3.

   Note: However, if you want to remove an invoice currency from the division, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the invoice currency.
5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The invoice currencies are associated with the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207

Associating Customer Identifier Types with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate customer identifier types with a division, you should have:

- Customer identifier types defined in the application

Procedure

To associate customer identifier types with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate customer identifier types.
2. Click the **Customer Identifier Types** tab in the **Division** screen.

   The **Customer Identifier Types** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Customer Identifier Type	Used to specify the customer identifier type.	No

3. Select the customer identifier type from the list.
4. If you want to associate more than one customer identifier type with the division, click the **Plus** (+) icon and then repeat step 3.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a customer identifier type from the division, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the customer identifier type.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The customer identifier types are associated with the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207

Associating Algorithms with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate algorithms with a division, you should have:

- Algorithms defined in the application

Procedure

To associate algorithms with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate algorithms.
2. Click the **Algorithms** tab in the **Division** screen.

   The **Algorithms** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division Algorithm Entity	Used to indicate the entity to which you want to attach the algorithm. The valid values are: • **Currency Conversion For Adjustments** — Used to attach a currency conversion algorithm which must be triggered during adjustment creation and FT GL creation for adjustments. • **Currency Conversion For Bill Segments** — Used to attach a currency conversion algorithm which must be triggered during bill segment generation and FT GL creation for bill segments. • **Currency Conversion For Payments** — Used to attach a currency conversion algorithm which must be triggered during payment and tender creation and during FT GL creation for payments. • **Currency Conversion For Transaction Feed Management** — Used to attach a currency conversion algorithm which must be triggered during the transaction aggregation process. • **Price Assignment Search** — Used to attach an algorithm which indicates the order in which the product pricing must be determined while billing. It also indicates the order in which the product pricing must be displayed on the **Pricing (Account)** and **Pricing (Customer)** screens. • **Sequential Bill Number Generation** — Used to attach an algorithm which indicates how to sequence alternate bill or invoice numbers which are unique within the division. • **Usage Account Contract Mapping** — Used to attach an algorithm which must be triggered when you create a usage account. It checks whether the usage account satisfies any account selection template criteria defined for any active construct. If yes, it includes the usage account in the active construct provided no bills are generated for the construct. • **GL Account Validation** – Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered during dynamic GL account validation. • **Transaction Feed Management Cancellation Preprocessing** – Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when you execute the C1-TXCNC batch. This algorithm spot is used to undertake some preprocessing activities (such as cleaning data in any custom tables) during the cancellation process. • **Transaction Feed Management Disaggregation Preprocessing** - Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when you execute the C1-PDTXN batch. This algorithm spot is used to undertake some preprocessing	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the division.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Used to specify the order in which the algorithms with the same entity should be executed.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the division.
Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm code.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the division.
Description	Displays the description of the algorithm. **Note:** The description appears automatically when you specify the algorithm code.	Not applicable

3. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

4. If you want to associate more than one algorithm with the division, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step *3*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove an algorithm from the division, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the algorithm.

5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The algorithms are associated with the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732

Defining Characteristics for a Division

Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a division, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Division)

Procedure

To define characteristics for a division:

1. Search for the division for which you want to define characteristics.
2. Click the **Characteristics** tab in the **Division** screen.

   The **Characteristics** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the division.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the division.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. **Note:** The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Division.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the division.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. **Note:** On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the division.

3. Enter the required details.

   Note: If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

4. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the division, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step *3*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the division, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The characteristics are defined for the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	*Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value* on page 743

Associating Bill Messages with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate bill messages with a division, you should have:

- Bill messages defined in the application

Procedure

To associate bill messages with a division:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate bill messages.
2. Click the **Bill Messages** tab in the **Division** screen.

   The **Bill Messages** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when you want the bill message to appear on the bill.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are associating a bill message with the division.
End Date	Used to specify the date till when you want the bill message to appear on the bill.	No
Bill Message	Used to specify the bill message that is valid for accounts in this division.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are associating a bill message with the division.
Description	Displays the description of the bill message. **Note:** The description appears automatically when you specify the message code.	Not applicable

3. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for a bill message by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.
4. If you want to associate more than one bill message with the division, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step 3.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a bill message from the division, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the message code.
5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The bill messages are associated with the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207
How to search for a bill message	*Searching for a Bill Message* on page 737

Associating Party Char Types with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate party char types with a division, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Division)

Procedure

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To associate party char types with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate party char types.
2. Click the **Party Char Types** tab in the **Division** screen.

   The **Party Char Types** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Entity	Used to indicate whether the characteristic type is valid for a person or an account in this division.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are associating a party char type with the division.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. **Note:** The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Division.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are associating a party char type with the division.

3. Enter the required details.
4. If you want to associate more than one party char type with the division, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step 3.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a party char type from the division, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the characteristic type.
5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The party char types are associated with the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207

Associating Bill Cycles with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate bill cycles with a division, you should have:

- Bill cycles defined in the application

Procedure

To associate bill cycles with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate bill cycles.
2. Click the **Bill Cycles** tab in the **Division** screen.

   The **Bill Cycles** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Cycle	Used to specify the bill cycle.	No

3. Select the bill cycle from the list.
4. If you want to associate more than one bill cycle with the division, click the **Plus** (+) icon and then repeat step *3*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a bill cycle from the division, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the bill cycle.
5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The bill cycles are associated with the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207

Associating Account Identifier Types with a Division

Prerequisites

To associate account identifier types with a division, you should have:

- Account Identifier Types defined in the application

Procedure

To associate account identifier types with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate account identifier types.
2. Click the **Account Identifier Types** tab in the **Division** screen.

   The **Account Identifier Types** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	No

3. Select the account identifier type from the list.
4. If you want to associate more than one account identifier type with the division, click the **Plus** (+) icon and *t*hen repeat step 3.

   Note: However, if you want to remove an account identifier type from the division, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the account identifier type.
5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The account identifier types are associated with the division.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207

Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Product

Prerequisites

To define division-specific characteristics for a product, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Division/Product Combination)
- Product associated with the division to which the user belongs

Procedure

To define division-specific characteristics for a product:

1. Search for the division for which you want to define product characteristics.
2. Click the **Product Characteristics** tab in the **Division** screen.

   The **Product Characteristics** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Displays the product code.	Not applicable
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the product characteristic is effective for the division.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a division-specific characteristic for the product.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. **Note:** The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Division/Product Combination.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a division-specific characteristic for the product.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. **Note:** On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a division-specific characteristic for the product.

3. If the division has multiple products associated with it, scroll to define characteristics for the required product.

   Note: You can use the **Previous** ( ) and **Next** ( ) buttons to scroll through the products while defining their characteristics.
4. Enter the required details.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

5. If you want to define more than one division-specific characteristic for the product, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step 4.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a division-specific characteristic from the product, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

6. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The division-specific characteristics are defined for the product.

Related Topics

For more information on...	**See...**
How to search for a division	*Searching for a Division* on page 204
Division screen	*Division* on page 205
How to define a division	*Defining a Division* on page 207
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	*Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value* on page 743

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 5

Approval Workflow

Topics:

- *Most Commonly Used Terms*
- *Approval Workflow Process*
- *Prerequisites*
- *Approve*
- *Resolve*
- *Modify*
- *Logs*
- *Approve Price Assignment*
- *Modify Price Assignment*
- *Resolve Price Assignment*
- *Approval Workflow Group*
- *Approval Workflow Chain*
- *Approval Workflow Criteria Type*
- *Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage*
- *Approval Workflow Settings*
- *Approval Workflow Reason*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing may optionally be configured to use the approval workflow process whenever any addition, modification, or deletion is done manually by a user. The approval workflow process routes any changes made to the business objects (such as person, account, contract, division, and so on) to a group of people for approval. The approval workflow process allows you to manage and track all tasks involved in the approval process.

Approval workflow allows you to define the rules for requiring an approval step before the data changes are committed to the database. Once you establish the approval workflow rules, the application manages the business process flow for having data changes approved before they are reflected in the database.

The system provides you with a flexible set of options used to determine when approvals are required, and how the approval process is to be managed including:

- Turning approval on or off for individual business objects within the application
- Grouping business objects so that approval is required for the group rather than the individual business objects within the group
- Who should approve
- How many levels of approvals are required
- Different approval workflow chains based on different criteria

Once you have turned approval workflow on for an object, or a group of objects, the system will use the approval workflow configuration to manage the entire approval process including:

- Determining whether approval is required based on data changes submitted by a user
- Routing approval workflow requests to one or more qualified approvers
- Managing rejected data changes and sending these back to the submitter for resolution
- Committing the changes once all required approvals are received

Most Commonly Used Terms

Before you understand the approval workflow process, you must familiarize yourself with the following terms:

Term	Description
Submitter	A person who adds, modifies or deletes a business object, such as person, account, contract, and division is called a submitter.
Approver	A person who approves any changes made to a business object is called an approver.
Approval Workflow Group	A group of one or more business objects for which approval is required, under some or all conditions, when data changes are made.
Approval Workflow Chain	The approval workflow chain indicates how many levels of approvals are required to approve the changes made by the submitter.

Approval Workflow Process

When a submitter adds, edits or deletes a business object (for example, an account) that belongs to an approval workflow group, the system checks whether approval workflow is activated for the approval workflow group. If the approval workflow is activated for the group, the system creates an approval workflow request. Every approval workflow request is uniquely identified in the system through the Approval Transaction ID.

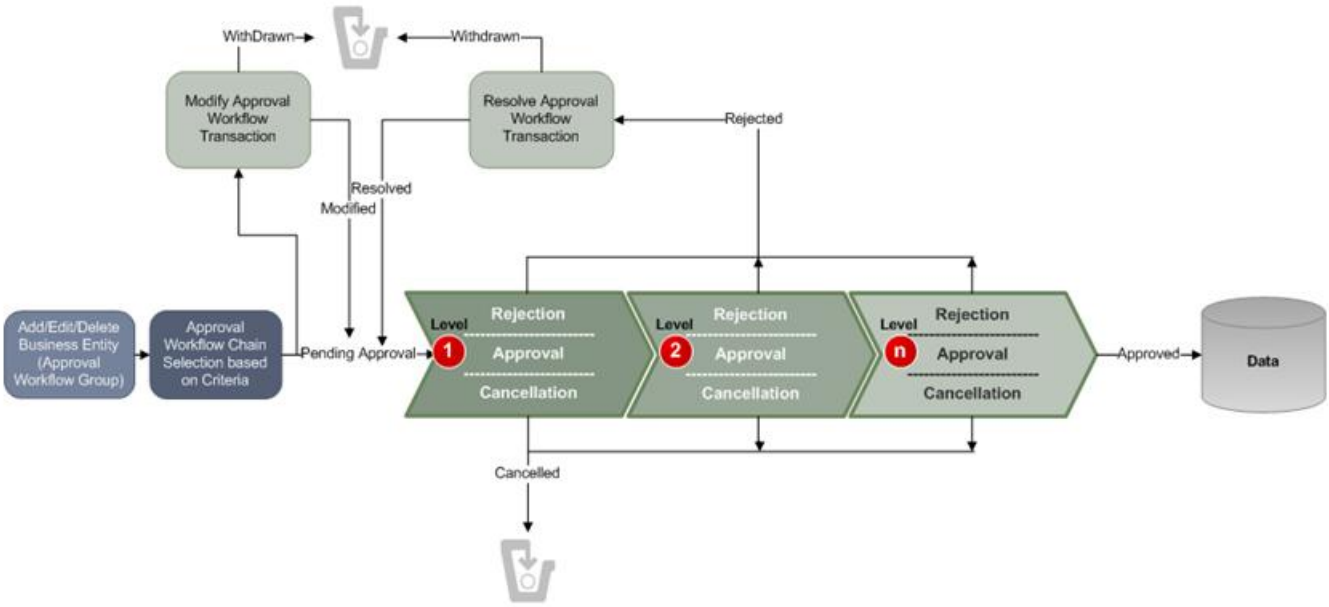
The system identifies the approval workflow chain that must be used for approval depending on the pre-configured conditions or criteria. Based on the number of levels defined in the approval workflow chain, the request is sent to the approver at each level in the chain or hierarchy for approval. When the approver at the first level approves the request, a notification is sent to the approver at the second level for approval. This process continues till the approval is received from all levels in the hierarchy. Once the approvers at all levels approve the request, the changes are committed to the database.

However, if an approver at any level in the hierarchy rejects the request, a notification is sent to the submitter who has made the changes. The submitter then makes the required corrections based on the approver’s comments and resubmits the changes for approval. In this case, the approval process starts once again from the beginning and not from the level at which the request was rejected.

The submitter also has the facility to modify the request before the approver at the first level in the hierarchy approves or rejects the request. Once the changes are made, the submitter submits the request for approval. The submitter also has the facility to cancel the request.

The following figure indicates the flow of the approval workflow process:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.



To implement the approval workflow process, you need to define the following:

- *Approval Workflow Group* on page 280
- *Approval Workflow Chain* on page 297
- *Approval Workflow Criteria* on page 308
- *Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage* on page 307
- *Approval Workflow Settings* on page 314
- *Approval Workflow Reason* on page 319

For price list, product and price assignment, the approval workflow configuration is shipped with ORMB. The following groups are available in the system:

- **C1PRODUCT** – Contains the C1_PRICEITEM_BO business object
- **C1PRICELST** – Contains the C1_F_ADDPLBO business object
- **C1PRICEASG** – Contains the C1_PRICECOMP and C1_PRICEASGN_BO business objects

After creating the approval workflow chains, you need to link these groups to the corresponding approval workflow chains. To setup the approval workflow process for price assignment, you need to do the following:

For Product	1. If a **Determine BO** algorithm is not specified for the **C1_PRICEITEM** maintenance object, create a **Determine BO** algorithm using the **F1-MOBO** algorithm type and specify **C1_PRICEITEM_BO** as the business object on this algorithm. 2. Attach this algorithm on the **Determine BO** algorithm spot of the **C1_PRICEITEM** MO. 3. Link the **C1PRODUCT** group to the appropriate approval workflow chain. 4. Activate the approval workflow for the **C1PRODUCT** group by setting the **Active** flag corresponding to the group in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen to **Y**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For Price List	**1.** If a **Determine BO** algorithm is not specified for the **C1_PRICELIST** maintenance object, create a **Determine BO** algorithm using the **F1-MOBO** algorithm type and specify **C1_F_ADDPLBO** as the business object on this algorithm. **2.** Attach this algorithm on the **Determine BO** algorithm spot of the **C1_PRICELIST** MO. **3.** Link the **C1PRICELST** group to the appropriate approval workflow chain. **4.** Activate the approval workflow for the **C1PRICELST** group by setting the **Active** flag corresponding to the group in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen to **Y**.
For Price Assignments	**1.** If a **Determine BO** algorithm is not specified for the **C1_PRICECOMP** maintenance object, create a **Determine BO** algorithm using the **F1-MOBO** algorithm type and specify **C1_PRICECOMP** as the business object on this algorithm. **2.** Attach this algorithm on the **Determine BO** algorithm spot of the **C1_PRICECOM**P MO. **3.** If a **Determine BO** algorithm is not specified for the **C1_PRICEASGN** maintenance object, create a **Determine BO** algorithm using the **F1-MOBO** algorithm type and specify **C1_PRICEASGN_BO** as the business object on this algorithm. **4.** Attach this algorithm on the **Determine BO** algorithm spot of the **C1_PRICEASGN** MO. **5.** Link the **C1PRICEASG** group to the appropriate approval workflow chain. **6.** Activate the approval workflow for the **C1PRICEASG** group by setting the **Active** flag corresponding to the group in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen to **Y**.

Similarly, for invoicing group, the approval workflow configuration is shipped with ORMB. The following groups are available in the system:

- **C1IGADD**
- **C1IGUPD**

After creating the approval workflow chains, you need to link these groups to the corresponding approval workflow chains, and activate the approval workflow for these groups by setting the following in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen:

- Set **Active** flag to **Yes**
- Set **Prevalidation** flag to **Yes**

Note: You must set the **Active** flag to **No** for both the groups in case you do not want to activate the approval workflow for invoicing group. If you set the **Active** flag to **Yes** for either of the groups, approval workflow is triggered when you add and/or edit an invoicing group.

Prerequisites

You need to setup the following prerequisites to implement the approval workflow process:

- **Setup Feature Configuration for Approval Workflow** — If you create new Maintenance Objects (MOs) and want the access control for these MOs in the approval workflow transactions to be based on the access group and division, then you have to create a custom algorithm and attach it to the **Approval Transaction Entity Access Algorithms** option type of the **C1_AXENTITY** feature configuration. Note that you will then have two access algorithms; one default algorithm (that is, **C1-APPTXN**) and another custom algorithm. For more information

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

about the **C1_AXENTITY** feature configuration, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

- **Create and Attach Determine BO Algorithm** — To use approval workflow for a business object, check the corresponding maintenance object to see if a **Determine BO** algorithm is already attached to it. If not, create a **Determine BO** algorithm using the **F1-MOBO** algorithm type, and specify the appropriate business object name on the newly created algorithm. Attach this algorithm on the **Determine BO** algorithm spot of the maintenance object.
- **Attach Audit Algorithm to Business Objects** — To use the approval workflow process for a business object, you need to attach the **C1-APPTXNBAS** algorithm on the **Audit** algorithm spot of the business object. Unless you attach the audit algorithm to a business object, the approval workflow process will not be triggered for the respective business object. This step is only required when you are using the base panels. If you have created custom UI maps to enter or modify data for a specific business object, this step is not needed.
- **Attach Validation Algorithms to Business Objects** — The following algorithms are shipped with ORMB:

Business Object	Basic Validation Algorithm	Pending Transaction Validation Algorithm
C1-AppBOChain	C1-GRPCHNALG	C1-APPGRPCHL
C1-AppGrp	C1-GRPALG	C1-APPGROUPV
C1-ApprovalChainEligible	C1-ADMALG	C1-APGBYPORT
C1-ApprovalTransactionChain	C1-APCHALGO	C1-APCHNPEND

The basic validation algorithms are attached to the respective business objects, and then shipped with ORMB. However, the pending transaction validation algorithms are not attached to the respective business objects. If you want to restrict the users from either editing or deleting the approval workflow group, approval workflow settings, approval workflow chain, or approval workflow group chain linkage when the respective approval workflow requests are in the **Pending**, **Work-in-Progress**, or **Rejected** state, then you must attach the pending transaction validation algorithm on the **Validation** algorithm spot of the respective business object.

- **Set Colors for Highlighting during Comparison** — While approving, rejecting, or cancelling approval workflow requests where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data. By default, any modifications are highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions are highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Changing the Highlighting Colors*.
- **Create To Do Types** — You need to create the To Do types that you want to use in the approval workflow process. Once the To Do type is created, you need to link it to the required To Do roles so that users belonging to the To Do role can view and work on the To Do type.
- **Create To Do Roles** — You need to create the To Do roles that you want to use in the approval workflow process. Once the To Do role is created, you need to add the users whom you want to assign this role.

  Note: User who is withdrawing the approval workflow request must be assigned to the To Do role to which the approver at the first level in the hierarchy is assigned. Otherwise, the user will not be able to withdraw the approval workflow request.
- **Create Input UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group** — The system provides you with the ability to automatically generate an Input UI map, and associate it with the approval workflow group. Alternatively, you can create an Input UI map manually, and attach it to the approval workflow group. For more information on how to create an Input UI map manually, see *Creating Input UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group* on page 755.
- **Create Display UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group** — The system provides you with the ability to automatically generate a Display UI map, and associate it with the approval workflow group. Alternatively, you can create a Display UI map manually, and attach it to the approval workflow group. For more information on

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

how to create a Display UI map manually, see *Creating Display UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group* on page 754.

Approve

The **Approve** screen allows you to search for the approval workflow requests that are pending in your workflow for approval. You can review the changes, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations.

Note: The system will not allow you to approve, reject, or cancel an approval workflow request that is created by you.

This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 230
- *Log* on page 231

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for the approval workflow requests that are pending in your workflow for approval. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Group	Used to search the approval workflow requests created for the business objects that belong to a particular approval workflow group.	No
Reference ID	Used to search the approval workflow requests created for the business object having the specified reference ID.	No
Division	Used to search the approval workflow requests that belong to a particular division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
From Date	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are created from a particular date onwards.	No
To Date	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are created till a particular date.	No
Action	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are created for adding, updating, or deleting a business object.	No
Submitter ID	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are created by a particular submitter.	No
To Do Type	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are received using a particular To Do Type.	No
Transaction ID	Used to search the approval workflow request using the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the approval workflow request is created.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an approval workflow request.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the approval workflow request is created.
Task	On clicking the **View** link, you can review the changes, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on the observations.
Group	Displays the approval workflow group for which the approval workflow request is created.
Submitter ID	Indicates the submitter who has created the approval workflow request.
To Do Type	Displays the type of To Do (notification) received for the approval workflow request.
Action	Indicates the type of action, such as Add, Update (UPD), or Delete (DEL), performed by the submitter on a business object.
Division	Displays the division to which the approval workflow request belongs.
Submit Date	Displays the date and time when the approval workflow request was created by the submitter.
Reference ID 1	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.
Reference ID 2	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.
Reference ID 3	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.
Reference ID 4	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow request, the **Log** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to approve a request	*Approving a Request* on page 232
How to reject a request	*Rejecting a Request* on page 233
How to cancel a request	*Cancelling a Request* on page 234

Log

The **Log** zone displays the complete trail of submitter and approver actions performed on the approval workflow request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the approval workflow request.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the approval workflow request.
Status	Displays the status of the approval workflow request. The status can be Pending Approval, In Process, Approved, Rejected, Cancelled, or Deleted.
Sequence	Indicates the sequence in which the actions were performed on the approval workflow request.
View	On clicking the **View** link, you can view the details of the approval workflow request.
Reason	Displays the reason why the approval workflow request was rejected or cancelled.
Comment	Displays the additional details entered by the approver on rejecting or cancelling the approval workflow request.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Approving a Request

Procedure

To approve a request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve**.

   The **Approve** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria. For example, to view all approval workflow requests created for adding a business object, select **Add** from the **Action** list.

   Note:

   ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

   The system does not allow you search for an approval workflow request which is created for a product or price list using division as the search criteria. This is because a product or price list may be associated with more than one division at the same time.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of approval workflow requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

   Note: The system provides you with a facility in case you want to view the log of an approval workflow request from the **Approve** screen before approving, rejecting, or cancelling a request. You can view the log of an approval workflow request by clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the request.

6. Click the **View** link in the **Task** column corresponding to the approval workflow request on which you want to take an action.

   A screen appears where you can review the changes, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

   Note:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the approval workflow request.

7. Review the changes, and if they are accurate, then click **Accept Changes**.

   A message appears indicating that the approval workflow request is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy for approval. However, if you are the last approver in the hierarchy, a message appears indicating that the approval workflow request is approved successfully.

8. Click **OK**.

   A To Do (notification) is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy. You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval. In case you are the last approver in the hierarchy, the changes are committed to the database.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approve screen	*Approve* on page 230
Search zone	*Search* on page 230
Log zone	*Log* on page 231

Rejecting a Request

Procedure

To reject a request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve**.

   The **Approve** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria. For example, to view all approval workflow requests created by a submitter, enter the submitter ID in the respective field.

   Note:

   ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

   The system does not allow you search for an approval workflow request which is created for a product or price list using division as the search criteria. This is because a product or price list may be associated with more than one division at the same time.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of approval workflow requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: The system provides you with a facility in case you want to view the log of an approval workflow request from the **Approve** screen before approving, rejecting, or cancelling a request. You can view the log of an approval workflow request by clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the request.

6. Click the **View** link in the **Task** column corresponding to the approval workflow request on which you want to take an action.

   A screen appears where you can review the changes, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

   Note:

   By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

   Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the approval workflow request.

7. Review the changes, and if they are not appropriate, then click **Return to Submitter**.

   The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears.

8. Select the reason for rejecting the approval workflow request, and enter the comments in the respective field.

9. Click **OK**.

   The **Accept Changes** and **Revert to Original** buttons are disabled.

10. Click **Return to Submitter**.

    A To Do (notification) is sent to the submitter. You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approve screen	*Approve* on page 230
Search zone	*Search* on page 230
Log zone	*Log* on page 231

Cancelling a Request

Procedure

To cancel a request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve**.

   The **Approve** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria. For example, to view all approval workflow requests created on 11th October 2010, enter 10-11-2010 in the **From Date** and **To Date** fields.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note:

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

The system does not allow you search for an approval workflow request which is created for a product or price list using division as the search criteria. This is because a product or price list may be associated with more than one division at the same time.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of approval workflow requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

   Note: The system provides you with a facility in case you want to view the log of an approval workflow request from the **Approve** screen before approving, rejecting, or cancelling a request. You can view the log of an approval workflow request by clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the request.

6. Click the **View** link in the **Task** column corresponding to the approval workflow request on which you want to take an action.

   A screen appears where you can review the changes, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

   Note:

   By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

   Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the approval workflow request.

7. Review the changes, and if you want to cancel the request, then click **Revert to Original**.

   The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears.

8. Select the reason for cancelling the approval workflow request, and enter the comments in the respective field.

9. Click **OK**.

   The **Accept Changes** and **Return to Submitter** buttons are disabled.

10. Click **Revert to Original**.

    You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approve screen	*Approve* on page 230
Search zone	*Search* on page 230
Log zone	*Log* on page 231

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Resolve

If an approver at any level in the hierarchy rejects a request, a notification is sent to the submitters having the To Do role to resolve. The submitter then makes the required corrections based on the approver's comments, and resubmits the changes for approval. In this case, the approval process starts once again from the beginning, and not from the level at which the request was rejected.

The **Resolve** screen allows you to resolve or withdraw a request. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 236
- *Log* on page 231

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for the approval workflow requests rejected by approvers and pending for you to resolve. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Group	Used to search the approval workflow requests created for the business objects that belong to a particular approval workflow group.	No
Reference ID	Used to search the approval workflow requests created for the business object having the specified reference ID.	No
Division	Used to search the approval workflow requests that belong to a particular division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
From Date	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are rejected from a particular date onwards.	No
To Date	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are rejected till a particular date.	No
Action	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are created for adding, updating, or deleting a business object.	No
Approver ID	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are rejected by a particular approver.	No
To Do Type	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are received using a particular To Do Type.	No
Transaction ID	Used to search the approval workflow request using the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the approval workflow request is created.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an approval request.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the approval workflow request is created.
To Do Type	Indicates the type of To Do (notification) received when the approval workflow request is rejected.
Group	Displays the approval workflow group for which the approval workflow request is created.
Action	Indicates the type of action, such as Add, Update (UPD), or Delete (DEL), performed by the submitter on a business object.
Approver ID	Indicates the approver who has rejected the approval workflow request.
Reject Date	Displays the date and time when the approval workflow request was rejected by the approver.
Division	Displays the division to which the approval workflow request belongs.
Reject Reason	Indicates the reason why the approval workflow request was rejected.
Reject Comment	Displays the additional details entered by the approver on rejecting the approval workflow request.
Resolve	On clicking the **Resolve** link, you can modify the details of the approval workflow request, and resubmit it for approval. On resubmitting, the approval workflow process starts once again from the first level in the hierarchy.
Withdraw	On clicking the **Withdraw** link, you can withdraw the approval workflow request. Once you withdraw the request, no further action will be taken on the request.
Reference ID 1	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.
Reference ID 2	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.
Reference ID 3	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.
Reference ID 4	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow request, the **Log** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to resolve a request	*Resolving a Request* on page 238
How to withdraw a request	*Withdrawing a Request* on page 239

Log

The **Log** zone displays the complete trail of submitter and approver actions performed on the approval workflow request. This zone contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Date	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the approval workflow request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the approval workflow request.
Status	Displays the status of the approval workflow request. The status can be Pending Approval, In Process, Approved, Rejected, Cancelled, or Deleted.
Sequence	Indicates the sequence in which the actions were performed on the approval workflow request.
View	On clicking the **View** link, you can view the details of the approval workflow request.
Reason	Displays the reason why the approval workflow request was rejected or cancelled.
Comment	Displays the additional details entered by the approver on rejecting or cancelling the approval workflow request.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Resolving a Request

Procedure

To resolve a request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve**.

   The **Resolve** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria. For example, to search all requests rejected on 10th January 2010, enter 01-10-2010 in the **From Date** and **To Date** fields.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of approval workflow requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

   Note: The system provides you with a facility in case you want to view the log of an approval workflow request from the **Resolve** screen before resolving or withdrawing a request. You can view the log of an approval workflow request by clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the request.

6. Click the **Resolve** link in the **Resolve** column corresponding to the approval workflow request that you want to resolve.

   A screen appears where you can review and make the changes.

   Note:

   Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to resolve the request, and resubmit it for approval.

   You cannot resolve an approval workflow request where the submitter action is Delete (DEL). In this case, you can only withdraw the request.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

7. Make the required changes.
8. Click **Save**.

   The approval workflow request is updated and resubmitted for approval.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Resolve screen	*Resolve* on page 236
Search zone	*Search* on page 236
Log zone	*Log* on page 231

Withdrawing a Request

Procedure

To withdraw a request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve**.

   The **Resolve** screen appears.
4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria. For example, to search all records added by you on 10th January 2010, select **Add** from the **Action** list, and enter 01-10-2010 in the **From Date** and **To Date** fields.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of approval workflow requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

   Note: The system provides you with a facility in case you want to view the log of an approval workflow request from the **Resolve** screen before resolving or withdrawing a request. You can view the log of an approval workflow request by clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the request.
6. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the approval workflow request that you want to withdraw.

   A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the approval workflow request.
7. Click **OK**.

   You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Resolve screen	*Resolve* on page 236

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Search zone	*Search* on page 236
Log zone	*Log* on page 231

Modify

The submitter has the facility to modify or withdraw a request before the approver at the first level in the hierarchy approves or rejects the request. Once the changes are made, the submitter submits the request for approval.

The **Modify** screen allows you to modify or withdraw a request. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 240
- *Log* on page 231

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for the approval workflow requests which are in the Pending Approval status. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Group	Used to search the approval workflow requests created for the business objects that belong to a particular approval workflow group.	No
Reference ID	Used to search the approval workflow requests created for the business object having the specified reference ID.	No
Division	Used to search the approval workflow requests that belong to a particular division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Action	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are created for adding, updating, or deleting a business object.	No
From Date	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are created from a particular date onwards.	No
To Date	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are created till a particular date.	No
Transaction ID	Used to search the approval workflow request using the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the approval workflow request is created.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an approval workflow request.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the approval workflow request is created.
Group	Displays the approval workflow group for which the approval workflow request is created.
Action	Indicates the type of action, such as Add, Update (UPD), or Delete (DEL), performed by the submitter on a business object.
Submit Date	Displays the date and time when the approval workflow request was created by the submitter.
Division	Displays the division to which the approval workflow request belongs.
Modify	On clicking the **Modify** link, you can review and modify the details of the approval workflow request.
Withdraw	On clicking the **Withdraw** link, you can withdraw the approval workflow request. Once you withdraw the request, no further action will be taken on the request.
Reference ID 1	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.
Reference ID 2	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.
Reference ID 3	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.
Reference ID 4	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow request, the **Log** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to modify a request	*Modifying a Request* on page 242
How to withdraw a request	*Withdrawing a Request* on page 243

Log

The **Log** zone displays the complete trail of submitter and approver actions performed on the approval workflow request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the approval workflow request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the approval workflow request.
Status	Displays the status of the approval workflow request. The status can be Pending Approval, In Process, Approved, Rejected, Cancelled, or Deleted.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence	Indicates the sequence in which the actions were performed on the approval workflow request.
View	On clicking the **View** link, you can view the details of the approval workflow request.
Reason	Displays the reason why the approval workflow request was rejected or cancelled.
Comment	Displays the additional details entered by the approver on rejecting or cancelling the approval workflow request.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Modifying a Request

Procedure

To modify a request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify**.

   The **Modify** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria. For example, to search all records added by you on 10th January 2010, select **Add** from the **Action** list, and enter 01-10-2010 in the **From Date** and **To Date** fields.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of approval workflow requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

   Note: The system provides you with a facility in case you want to view the log of an approval workflow request from the **Modify** screen before modifying or withdrawing a request. You can view the log of an approval workflow request by clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the request.

6. Click the **Modify** link in the **Modify** column corresponding to the approval workflow request that you want to modify.

   A screen appears where you can review and make the changes.

   Note:

   Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to modify the details of the approval workflow request.

   You cannot modify an approval workflow request where the submitter action is Delete (DEL). In this case, you can only withdraw the request.

7. Make the required changes.

8. Click **Save**.

   The approval workflow request is updated.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Modify screen	*Modify* on page 240
Search zone	*Search* on page 240
Log zone	*Log* on page 231

Withdrawing a Request

Procedure

To withdraw a request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify**.

   The **Modify** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria. For example, to search all records added by you on 10th January 2010, select **Add** from the **Action** list, and enter 01-10-2010 in the **From Date** and **To Date** fields.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of approval workflow requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

   Note: The system provides you with a facility in case you want to view the log of an approval workflow request from the **Modify** screen before modifying or withdrawing a request. You can view the log of an approval workflow request by clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the request.

6. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the approval workflow request that you want to withdraw.

   A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the approval workflow request.

7. Click **OK**.

   You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Modify screen	*Modify* on page 240
Search zone	*Search* on page 240
Log zone	*Log* on page 231

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Logs

The **Logs** screen allows you to view the complete trail of submitter and approver actions performed on the approval workflow request. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 244
- *Log* on page 231

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for the approval workflow requests whose log details you want to view. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Group	Used to search the approval workflow requests created for the business objects that belong to a particular approval workflow group.	No
Reference ID	Used to search the approval workflow requests created for the business object having the specified reference ID.	No
Division	Used to search the approval workflow requests that belong to a particular division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
From Date	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are created from a particular date onwards.	No
To Date	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are created till a particular date.	No
Submitter ID	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are created by a particular submitter.	No
Approval Status	Used to search the approval workflow requests with the specified status.	No
To Do Type	Used to search the approval workflow requests that are received using a particular To Do Type.	No
Transaction ID	Used to search the approval workflow request using the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the approval workflow request is created.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an approval workflow request.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the approval workflow request is created.
To Do Type	Displays the type of To Do (notification) received for the approval workflow request.
Group	Displays the approval workflow group for which the approval workflow request is created.
Action	Indicates the type of action, such as Add, Update (UPD), or Delete (DEL), performed by the submitter on a business object.
Submitter ID	Indicates the submitter who has created the approval workflow request.
Submit Date	Displays the date and time when the approval workflow request was created by the submitter.
Division	Displays the division to which the approval workflow request belongs.
Status	Indicates the status of the approval workflow request.
Reference ID 1	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.
Reference ID 2	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.
Reference ID 3	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.
Reference ID 4	Displays the reference ID of the business object for which the approval workflow request is created.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow request, the **Log** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of an approval workflow request	*Viewing Log of an Approval Workflow Request* on page 246

Log

The **Log** zone displays the complete trail of submitter and approver actions performed on the approval workflow request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the approval workflow request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the approval workflow request.
Status	Displays the status of the approval workflow request. The status can be Pending Approval, In Process, Approved, Rejected, Cancelled, or Deleted.
Sequence	Indicates the sequence in which the actions were performed on the approval workflow request.
View	On clicking the **View** link, you can view the details of the approval workflow request.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Reason	Displays the reason why the approval workflow request was rejected or cancelled.
Comment	Displays the additional details entered by the approver on rejecting or cancelling the approval workflow request.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Viewing Log of an Approval Workflow Request

Procedure

To view the log of an approval workflow request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Logs**.

   The **Logs** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria. For example, to view the logs of all approval workflow requests that are rejected, select **Rejected** from the **Approval Status** list.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of approval workflow requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow request whose log you want to view.

   The **Log** zone appears.

7. Click the **View** link in the **View** column corresponding to the record to view the details of the approval workflow request at that stage in the approval process.

   Note: Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the approval workflow request.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Logs screen	*Logs* on page 244
Search zone	*Search* on page 244
Log zone	*Log* on page 231

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Approve Price Assignment

The **Approve Price Assignment** screen allows you to search for the price assignment requests that are pending in your workflow for approval. You can review the changes, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations.

Note: The system will not allow you to approve, reject, or cancel a price assignment request that is created by you.

This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 247
- *List of Price Assignments* on page 249

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for the price assignment requests that are pending in your workflow for approval. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to search the price assignment requests created for customers that belong to a particular division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Customer Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for price assignment requests of a customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the customer identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the customer identifier type.
Customer Identifier	Used to specify the ID linked to the customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the customer identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the customer identifier.
Division	Used to search the price assignment requests created for accounts that belong to a particular division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Account ID	Used to search for price assignment requests created for an account.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type of the account whose price assignment requests you want to search.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Price List Description	Used to search for price assignment requests created for a price list.	No
Submitter ID	Used to search for price assignment requests that are created by a particular submitter.	No
Transaction ID	Used to search the price assignment request using the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price assignment request.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Displays the account ID. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of an account.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of an account.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of an account.
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a price list.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a price list.
Customer Identifier	Displays the ID linked to the customer. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a customer.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the customer. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a customer.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Division	Displays the division to which the account, customer, or price list belongs.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account, customer, or price list, the **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to approve price assignment request of an account	*Approving Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 250
How to approve price assignment request of a customer	*Approving Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 252
How to approve price assignment request of a price list	*Approving Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 253
How to reject price assignment request of an account	*Rejecting Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 254
How to reject price assignment request of a customer	*Rejecting Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 255
How to reject price assignment request of a price list	*Rejecting Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 256
How to cancel price assignment request of an account	*Cancelling Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 258
How to cancel price assignment request of a customer	*Cancelling Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 259
How to cancel price assignment request of a price list	*Cancelling Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 260

List of Price Assignments

The **List of Price Assignments** zone lists price assignment requests specific to an account, a customer, or a price list. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Select All	On selecting the check box corresponding to the **Select All** column, you can approve, reject, or cancel all price assignment requests (displayed in the **List of Price Assignments** zone) at once. You can also select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request in case you want to approve, reject, or cancel one or more requests at once.
Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.
Submitter ID	Indicates the submitter who has created the price assignment request.
Action	Indicates the type of action, such as Add, Update (UPD), or Delete (DEL), performed by the submitter during price assignment.
Submit Date	Displays the date and time when the price assignment request was created by the submitter.
To Do Type	Displays the type of To Do (notification) received for the price assignment request.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code.
Description	Displays the description of the product.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the product pricing is defined.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the product pricing is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the product pricing is effective.
View Changes	On clicking the **View Change** link, you can view the details of the price assignment request.
View Log	On clicking the **View Log** link, you can view the log of the price assignment request from the **Approve Price Assignment** screen before approving, rejecting, or cancelling a request.

By default, the **List of Price Assignments** zone does not appear in the **Approve Price Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account, customer, or price list in the **Search** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to approve price assignment request of an account	*Approving Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 250
How to approve price assignment request of a customer	*Approving Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 252
How to approve price assignment request of a price list	*Approving Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 253
How to reject price assignment request of an account	*Rejecting Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 254
How to reject price assignment request of a customer	*Rejecting Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 255
How to reject price assignment request of a price list	*Rejecting Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 256
How to cancel price assignment request of an account	*Cancelling Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 258
How to cancel price assignment request of a customer	*Cancelling Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 259
How to cancel price assignment request of a price list	*Cancelling Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 260

Approving Price Assignment Request of an Account

Procedure

To approve price assignment request of an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the account belongs, account ID, or account identifier.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose price assignments you want to review for approval.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

7. Click the **View Change** link in the **View Changes** column corresponding to the price assignment request on which you want to take an action.

   A screen appears where you can review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

   Note:

   By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

   Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

8. Review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and if they are accurate, then click **Accept Changes**.

   A message appears indicating that the price assignment request is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy for approval. However, if you are the last approver in the hierarchy, a message appears indicating that the price assignment request is approved successfully.

9. Click **OK**.

   A To Do (notification) is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy. You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval. In case you are the last approver in the hierarchy, the changes are committed to the database.

   Tip: Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to approve, and then click **Accept Changes**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	**See...**
Approve Price Assignment screen	*Approve Price Assignment* on page 247
Search zone	*Search* on page 247
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 249

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Approving Price Assignment Request of a Customer

Procedure

To approve price assignment request of a customer:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.

   The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the customer belongs or the customer identification type and value.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of customers that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose price assignments you want to review for approval.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

7. Click the **View Change** link in the **View Changes** column corresponding to the price assignment request on which you want to take an action.

   A screen appears where you can review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

   Note:

   By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

   Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

8. Review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and if they are accurate, then click **Accept Changes**.

   A message appears indicating that the price assignment request is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy for approval. However, if you are the last approver in the hierarchy, a message appears indicating that the price assignment request is approved successfully.

9. Click **OK**.

   A To Do (notification) is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy. You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval. In case you are the last approver in the hierarchy, the changes are committed to the database.

   Tip: Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to approve, and then click **Accept Changes**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approve Price Assignment screen	*Approve Price Assignment* on page 247
Search zone	*Search* on page 247
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 249

Approving Price Assignment Request of a Price List

Procedure

To approve price assignment request of a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.

   The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignments you want to review for approval.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

7. Click the **View Change** link in the **View Changes** column corresponding to the price assignment request on which you want to take an action.

   A screen appears where you can review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

   Note:

   By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

   Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

8. Review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and if they are accurate, then click **Accept Changes**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

A message appears indicating that the price assignment request is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy for approval. However, if you are the last approver in the hierarchy, a message appears indicating that the price assignment request is approved successfully.

9. Click **OK**.

   A To Do (notification) is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy. You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval. In case you are the last approver in the hierarchy, the changes are committed to the database.

   Tip: Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to approve, and then click **Accept Changes**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approve Price Assignment screen	*Approve Price Assignment* on page 247
Search zone	*Search* on page 247
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 249

Rejecting Price Assignment Request of an Account

Procedure

To reject price assignment request of an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.

   The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the account belongs, account ID, or account identifier.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose price assignments you want to review for approval.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

7. Click the **View Change** link in the **View Changes** column corresponding to the price assignment request on which you want to take an action.

   A screen appears where you can review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note:

By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

8. Review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and if they are not appropriate, *t*hen click **Return to Submitter**.

   The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears.

   Tip: Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to reject, and then click **Return to Submitter**.

9. Select the reason for rejecting the price assignment request, and enter the comments in the respective field.

10. Click **OK**.

    The **Accept Changes** and **Revert to Original** buttons are disabled.

11. Click **Return to Submitter**.

    A To Do (notification) is sent to the submitter. You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approve Price Assignment screen	*Approve Price Assignment* on page 247
Search zone	*Search* on page 247
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 249

Rejecting Price Assignment Request of a Customer

Procedure

To reject price assignment request of a customer:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.

   The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the customer belongs or the customer *i*dentification type and value.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

A list of customers that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose price assignments you want to review for approval.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

7. Click the **View Change** link in the **View Changes** column corresponding to the price assignment request on which you want to take an action.

   A screen appears where you can review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

   Note:

   By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

   Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

8. Review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and if they are not appropriate, then click **Return to Submitter**.

   The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears.

   Tip: Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to reject, and then click **Return to Submitter**.

9. Select the reason for rejecting the price assignment request, and enter the comments in the respective field.

10. Click **OK**.

    The **Accept Changes** and **Revert to Original** buttons are disabled.

11. Click **Return to Submitter**.

    A To Do (notification) is sent to the submitter. You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approve Price Assignment screen	*Approve Price Assignment* on page 247
Search zone	*Search* on page 247
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 249

Rejecting Price Assignment Request of a Price List

Procedure

To reject price assignment request of a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.

   The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignments you want to review for approval.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

7. Click the **View Change** link in the **View Changes** column corresponding to the price assignment request on which you want to take an action.

   A screen appears where you can review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

   Note:

   By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

   Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

8. Review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and if they are not appropriate, then click **Return to Submitter**.

   The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears.

   Tip: Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to reject, and then click **Return to Submitter**.

9. Select the reason for rejecting the price assignment request, and enter the comments in the respective field.

10. Click **OK**.

    The **Accept Changes** and **Revert to Original** buttons are disabled.

11. Click **Return to Submitter**.

    A To Do (notification) is sent to the submitter. You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approve Price Assignment screen	*Approve Price Assignment* on page 247
Search zone	*Search* on page 247
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 249

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Cancelling Price Assignment Request of an Account

Procedure

To cancel price assignment request of an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.

   The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the account belongs, account ID, or account identifier.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose price assignments you want to review for approval.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

7. Click the **View Change** link in the **View Changes** column corresponding to the price assignment request on which you want to take an action.

   A screen appears where you can review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

   Note:

   By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

   Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

8. Review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and if you want to cancel the request, then click **Revert to Original**.

   The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears.

   Tip: Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to cancel, and then click **Revert to Original**.

9. Select the reason for cancelling the price assignment request, and enter the comments in the respective field.

10. Click **OK**.

    The **Accept Changes** and **Return to Submitter** buttons are disabled.

11. Click **Revert to Original**.

    You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approve Price Assignment screen	*Approve Price Assignment* on page 247
Search zone	*Search* on page 247
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 249

Cancelling Price Assignment Request of a Customer

Procedure

To cancel price assignment request of a customer:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.

   The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the customer belongs or the customer identification type and value.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of customers that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose price assignments you want to review for approval.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

7. Click the **View Change** link in the **View Changes** column corresponding to the price assignment request on which you want to take an action.

   A screen appears where you can review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

   Note:

   By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

   Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

8. Review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and if you want to cancel the request, then click **Revert to Original**.

   The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Tip: Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to cancel, and then click **Revert to Original**.

9. Select the reason for cancelling the price assignment request, and enter the comments in the respective field.
10. Click **OK**.

    The **Accept Changes** and **Return to Submitter** buttons are disabled.
11. Click **Revert to Original**.

    You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approve Price Assignment screen	*Approve Price Assignment* on page 247
Search zone	*Search* on page 247
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 249

Cancelling Price Assignment Request of a Price List

Procedure

To cancel price assignment request of a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.

   The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.
4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignments you want to review for approval.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
7. Click the **View Change** link in the **View Changes** column corresponding to the price assignment request on which you want to take an action.

   A screen appears where you can review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

   Note:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see *Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration* on page 767.

Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

8. Review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and if you want to cancel the *r*equest, then click **Revert to Original**.

   The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears.

   Tip: Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to cancel, and then click **Revert to Original**.

9. Select the reason for cancelling the price assignment request, and enter the comments in the respective field.
10. Click **OK**.

    The **Accept Changes** and **Return to Submitter** buttons are disabled.

11. Click **Revert to Original**.

    You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approve Price Assignment screen	*Approve Price Assignment* on page 247
Search zone	*Search* on page 247
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 249

Modify Price Assignment

The submitter has the facility to modify or withdraw a price assignment request before the approver at the first level in the hierarchy approves or rejects the request. Once the changes are made, the submitter submits the request for approval.

The **Modify Price Assignment** screen allows you to modify or withdraw a price assignment request. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 261
- *List of Price Assignments* on page 264

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for the price assignment requests which are in the Pending Approval status. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to search the price assignment requests created for customers that belong to a particular division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Customer Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for price assignment requests of a customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the customer identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the customer identifier type.
Customer Identifier	Used to specify the ID linked to the customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the customer identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the customer identifier.
Division	Used to search the price assignment requests created for accounts that belong to a particular division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Account ID	Used to search for price assignment requests created for an account.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type of the account whose price assignment requests you want to search.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Price List Description	Used to search for price assignment requests created for a price list.	No
Submitter ID	Used to search for price assignment requests that are created by a particular submitter.	No
Transaction ID	Used to search the price assignment request using the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price assignment request.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Displays the account ID. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of an account.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of an account.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of an account.
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a price list.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a price list.
Customer Identifier	Displays the ID linked to the customer. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a customer.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the customer. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a customer.
Division	Displays the division to which the account, customer, or price list belongs.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account, customer, or price list, the **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to modify price assignment request of an account	*Modifying Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 265
How to modify price assignment request of a customer	*Modifying Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 266
How to modify price assignment request of a price list	*Modifying Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 266
How to withdraw price assignment request of an account	*Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 267
How to withdraw price assignment request of a customer	*Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 268
How to withdraw price assignment request of a price list	*Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 269

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

List of Price Assignments

The **List of Price Assignments** zone lists price assignment requests specific to an account, a customer, or a price list. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.
Submitter ID	Indicates the submitter who has created the price assignment request.
Action	Indicates the type of action, such as Add, Update (UPD), or Delete (DEL), performed by the submitter during price assignment.
Submit Date	Displays the date and time when the price assignment request was created by the submitter.
To Do Type	Displays the type of To Do (notification) received for the price assignment request.
Product	Displays the product code.
Description	Displays the description of the product.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the product pricing is defined.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the product pricing is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the product pricing is effective.
Modify	On clicking the **Modify** link, you can review and modify the details of the price assignment request.
Withdraw	On clicking the **Withdraw** link, you can withdraw the price assignment request. Once you withdraw the request, no further action will be taken on the request.
View Log	On clicking the **View Log** link, you can view the log of the price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** screen before modifying or withdrawing a request.

By default, the **List of Price Assignments** zone does not appear in the **Modify Price Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account, customer, or price list in the **Search** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to modify price assignment request of an account	*Modifying Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 265
How to modify price assignment request of a customer	*Modifying Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 266
How to modify price assignment request of a price list	*Modifying Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 266
How to withdraw price assignment request of an account	*Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 267
How to withdraw price assignment request of a customer	*Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 268

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to withdraw price assignment request of a price list	*Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 269

Modifying Price Assignment Request of an Account

Procedure

To modify price assignment request of an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**.

   The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the account belongs, account ID, or *a*ccount identifier.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose price assignment requests you want to modify.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

7. Click the **Modify** link in the **Modify** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to *m*odify.

   A screen appears where you can modify the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics.

   Note: Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to modify the details of the price assignment request.

8. Make the required changes.

9. Click **Save**.

   The price assignment request is updated.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Modify Price Assignment screen	*Modify Price Assignment* on page 261
Search zone	*Search* on page 261
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 264

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Modifying Price Assignment Request of a Customer

Procedure

To modify price assignment request of a customer:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**.

   The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the customer belongs or the customer identification type and value.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of customers that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose price assignment requests you want to modify.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

7. Click the **Modify** link in the **Modify** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to modify.

   A screen appears where you can modify the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics.

   Note: Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to modify the details of the price assignment request.

8. Make the required changes.

9. Click **Save**.

   The price assignment request is updated.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Modify Price Assignment screen	*Modify Price Assignment* on page 261
Search zone	*Search* on page 261
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 264

Modifying Price Assignment Request of a Price List

Procedure

To modify price assignment request of a price list:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**.

   The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.
4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignment requests you want to modify.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
7. Click the **Modify** link in the **Modify** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to *m*odify.

   A screen appears where you can modify the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics.

   Note: Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to modify the details of the price assignment request.
8. Make the required changes.
9. Click **Save**.

   The price assignment request is updated.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Modify Price Assignment screen	*Modify Price Assignment* on page 261
Search zone	*Search* on page 261
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 264

Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of an Account

Procedure

To withdraw price assignment request of an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. Do the following:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If you want to	Then
Withdraw a price assignment request when it is in the Pending Approval status	From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**. The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.
Withdraw a price assignment request when it has been rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy	From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve Price Assignment**. The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the account belongs, account ID, or account identifier.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose price assignment requests you want to withdraw.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

   Note: The system provides you with a facility to view the log of a price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** and **Resolve Price Assignment** screens before withdrawing a request.

7. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to withdraw.

   A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the price assignment request.

8. Click **OK**.

   You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Modify Price Assignment screen	*Modify Price Assignment* on page 261
Resolve Price Assignment screen	*Resolve Price Assignment* on page 270

Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Customer

Procedure

To withdraw price assignment request of a customer:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. Do the following:

If you want to	Then
Withdraw a price assignment request when it is in the Pending Approval status	From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**. The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.
Withdraw a price assignment request when it has been rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy	From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve Price Assignment**. The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the customer belongs or the customer identification type and value.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of customers that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose price assignment requests you want to withdraw.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

   Note: The system provides you with a facility to view the log of a price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** and **Resolve Price Assignment** screens before withdrawing a request.

7. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to withdraw.

   A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the price assignment request.

8. Click **OK**.

   You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Modify Price Assignment screen	*Modify Price Assignment* on page 261
Resolve Price Assignment screen	*Resolve Price Assignment* on page 270

Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Price List

Procedure

To withdraw price assignment request of a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. Do the following:

If you want to	Then
Withdraw a price assignment request when it is in the Pending Approval status	From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**. The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.
Withdraw a price assignment request when it has been rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy	From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve Price Assignment**. The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignment requests you want to withdraw.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

   Note: The system provides you with a facility to view the log of a price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** and **Resolve Price Assignment** screens before withdrawing a request.

7. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want *t*o withdraw.

   A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the price assignment request.

8. Click **OK**.

   You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Modify Price Assignment screen	*Modify Price Assignment* on page 261
Resolve Price Assignment screen	*Resolve Price Assignment* on page 270

Resolve Price Assignment

If an approver at any level in the hierarchy rejects a price assignment request, a notification is sent to the submitter who has made the changes. The submitter then makes the required corrections based on the approver's comments, and resubmits the changes for approval. In this case, the approval process starts once again from the beginning, and not from the level at which the request was rejected.

The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen allows you to resolve or withdraw a price assignment request. This screen consists of the following zones:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- *Search* on page 271
- *List of Price Assignments* on page 273

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for the price assignment requests rejected by approvers and pending for you to resolve. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to search the price assignment requests created for customers that belong to a particular division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Customer Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for price assignment requests of a customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the customer identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the customer identifier type.
Customer Identifier	Used to specify the ID linked to the customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the customer identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the customer identifier.
Division	Used to search the price assignment requests created for accounts that belong to a particular division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Account ID	Used to search for price assignment requests created for an account.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type of the account whose price assignment requests you want to search.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Price List Description	Used to search for price assignment requests created for a price list.	No
Submitter ID	Used to search for price assignment requests that are created by a particular submitter.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction ID	Used to search the price assignment request using the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price assignment request.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Displays the account ID. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of an account.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of an account.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of an account.
Price List	Displays the price list ID. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a price list.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a price list.
Customer Identifier	Displays the ID linked to the customer. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a customer.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the customer. **Note:** This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a customer.
Division	Displays the division to which the account, customer, or price list belongs.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account, customer, or price list, the **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to resolve price assignment request of an account	*Resolving Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 274

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to resolve price assignment request of a customer	*Resolving Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 275
How to resolve price assignment request of a price list	*Resolving Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 276
How to withdraw price assignment request of an account	*Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 267
How to withdraw price assignment request of a customer	*Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 268
How to withdraw price assignment request of a price list	*Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 269

List of Price Assignments

The **List of Price Assignments** zone lists price assignment requests specific to an account, a customer, or a price list. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID. **Note:** The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.
Submitter ID	Indicates the submitter who has created the price assignment request.
Action	Indicates the type of action, such as Add, Update (UPD), or Delete (DEL), performed by the submitter during price assignment.
Submit Date	Displays the date and time when the price assignment request was created by the submitter.
To Do Type	Displays the type of To Do (notification) received for the price assignment request.
Product	Displays the product code.
Description	Displays the description of the product.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the product pricing is defined.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the product pricing is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the product pricing is effective.
Approver ID	Indicates the approver who has rejected the price assignment request.
Reject Date	Displays the date and time when the price assignment request was rejected by the approver.
Reject Reason	Indicates the reason why the price assignment request was rejected.
Reject Comment	Displays the additional details entered by the approver on rejecting the price assignment request.
Resolve	On clicking the **Resolve** link, you can modify the details of the price assignment request, and resubmit it for approval. On resubmitting, the approval workflow process starts once again from the first level in the hierarchy.
Withdraw	On clicking the **Withdraw** link, you can withdraw the price assignment request. Once you withdraw the request, no further action will be taken on the request.
View Log	On clicking the **View Log** link, you can view the log of the price assignment request from the **Resolve Price Assignment** screen before resolving or withdrawing a request.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

By default, the **List of Price Assignments** zone does not appear in the **Resolve Price Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the account, customer, or price list in the **Search** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to resolve price assignment request of an account	*Resolving Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 274
How to resolve price assignment request of a customer	*Resolving Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 275
How to resolve price assignment request of a price list	*Resolving Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 276
How to withdraw price assignment request of an account	*Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 267
How to withdraw price assignment request of a customer	*Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 268
How to withdraw price assignment request of a price list	*Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 269

Resolving Price Assignment Request of an Account

Procedure

To resolve price assignment request of an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve Price Assignment**.

   The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.
4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the account belongs, account ID, or *a*ccount identifier.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose price assignment requests you want to resolve.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
7. Click the **Resolve** link in the **Resolve** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to *r*esolve.

   A screen appears where you can modify the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to resolve the request, and resubmit it for approval.

8. Make the required changes.
9. Click **Save**.

   The price assignment request is updated and resubmitted for approval.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Resolve Price Assignment screen	*Resolve Price Assignment* on page 270
Search zone	*Search* on page 271
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 273

Resolving Price Assignment Request of a Customer

Procedure

To resolve price assignment request of a customer:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve Price Assignment**.

   The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.
4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the customer belongs or the customer identification type and value.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of customers that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose price assignment requests you want to resolve.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
7. Click the **Resolve** link in the **Resolve** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to resolve.

   A screen appears where you can modify the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics.

   Note: Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to resolve the request, and resubmit it for approval.
8. Make the required changes.
9. Click **Save**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The price assignment request is updated and resubmitted for approval.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Resolve Price Assignment screen	*Resolve Price Assignment* on page 270
Search zone	*Search* on page 271
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 273

Resolving Price Assignment Request of a Price List

Procedure

To resolve price assignment request of a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve Price Assignment**.

   The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.
4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignment requests you want to resolve.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
7. Click the **Resolve** link in the **Resolve** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to *r*esolve.

   A screen appears where you can modify the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics.

   Note: Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to resolve the request, and resubmit it for approval.
8. Make the required changes.
9. Click **Save**.

   The price assignment request is updated and resubmitted for approval.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Resolve Price Assignment screen	*Resolve Price Assignment* on page 270

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Search zone	*Search* on page 271
List of Price Assignments zone	*List of Price Assignments* on page 273

Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of an Account

Procedure

To withdraw price assignment request of an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. Do the following:

If you want to	Then
Withdraw a price assignment request when it is in the Pending Approval status	From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**. The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.
Withdraw a price assignment request when it has been rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy	From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve Price Assignment**. The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the account belongs, account ID, or *a*ccount identifier.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the account whose price assignment requests you want to withdraw.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

   Note: The system provides you with a facility to view the log of a price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** and **Resolve Price Assignment** screens before withdrawing a request.

7. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want *t*o withdraw.

   A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the price assignment request.

8. Click **OK**.

   You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Modify Price Assignment screen	*Modify Price Assignment* on page 261
Resolve Price Assignment screen	*Resolve Price Assignment* on page 270

Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Customer

Procedure

To withdraw price assignment request of a customer:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. Do the following:

If you want to	Then
Withdraw a price assignment request when it is in the Pending Approval status	From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**. The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.
Withdraw a price assignment request when it has been rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy	From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve Price Assignment**. The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the customer belongs or the customer identification type and value.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of customers that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the customer whose price assignment requests you want to withdraw.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

   Note: The system provides you with a facility to view the log of a price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** and **Resolve Price Assignment** screens before withdrawing a request.

7. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to withdraw.

   A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the price assignment request.

8. Click **OK**.

   You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Modify Price Assignment screen	*Modify Price Assignment* on page 261
Resolve Price Assignment screen	*Resolve Price Assignment* on page 270

Withdrawing Price Assignment Request of a Price List

Procedure

To withdraw price assignment request of a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. Do the following:

If you want to	Then
Withdraw a price assignment request when it is in the Pending Approval status	From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**. The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.
Withdraw a price assignment request when it has been rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy	From the **Main Menu**, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve Price Assignment**. The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignment requests you want to withdraw.

   The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

   Note: The system provides you with a facility to view the log of a price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** and **Resolve Price Assignment** screens before withdrawing a request.

7. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to withdraw.

   A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the price assignment request.

8. Click **OK**.

   You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Modify Price Assignment screen	*Modify Price Assignment* on page 261
Resolve Price Assignment screen	*Resolve Price Assignment* on page 270

Approval Workflow Group

The system has predefined data objects, such as person, account, contract, and so on. These predefined data objects are managed through business objects. Approval workflow is configured to act on approval workflow group which consists of either one or more business objects. When you add multiple business objects in the approval workflow group, the system generates a single approval workflow request for the changes made to these objects. This would be useful if you have created custom UI maps that can be used to update or add data for multiple business objects. In this case, the approver will receive one request to approve changes made to these business objects rather than receiving separate request for changes made to each business object.

The **Approval Workflow Group** screen allows you to add, edit and delete an approval workflow group. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Approval Workflow Groups* on page 280
- *Business Objects* on page 281
- *Group BO Relation* on page 282

Approval Workflow Groups

The **Approval Workflow Groups** zone lists approval workflow groups that are already defined in the system. You can add, edit and delete an approval workflow group through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Code	Displays the code of the approval workflow group.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow group.
Display UI Map	Indicates the UI map that will be used for viewing data of the business objects within the approval workflow group.
Input UI Map	Indicates the UI map that will be used for modifying data of the business objects within the approval workflow group.
Dependency Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered before creating the approval workflow request. **Note:** This algorithm can be used to check all prerequisites before creating the approval workflow request.
Approval Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered after the approval workflow request is approved by the approver at the last level in the hierarchy.
Approval Post Processing	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered after the changes (which are approved by all approvers in the hierarchy) are committed to the database.
Transaction Creation Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will create approval workflow requests.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Data Retrieval Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered to retrieve the original data of the business objects within the approval workflow group. This will help an approver to compare the original and new data in case where the submitter action is Update (UPD).
Compare Map Code	Indicates the customized Display UI map used for the approval workflow group. It overrides the UI map specified in the **Display UI Map** field.
Input Script Code	Indicates the customized Input UI map used for the approval workflow group. It overrides the UI map specified in the **Input UI Map** field.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears where you can edit the details of the approval workflow group.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the approval workflow group.

You can define an approval workflow group by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow group, the **Business Objects** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow group	*Defining an Approval Workflow Group* on page 283
How to edit an approval workflow group	*Editing an Approval Workflow Group* on page 286
How to delete an approval workflow group	*Deleting an Approval Workflow Group* on page 290

Business Objects

The **Business Objects** zone lists business objects that you have added in the approval workflow group. You can add, edit and delete the business objects from the approval workflow group through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Code	Displays the code of the business object.
Description	Displays the description of the business object.
Sequence	Indicates the order in which the business objects will be committed to the database.
Reference ID 1	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow requests.
Reference ID 2	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow requests.
Reference ID 3	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow requests.
Reference ID 4	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow requests.
List Flag	Indicates whether the group contains one or multiple instance of the business object.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Business Object** screen appears where you can change the business object.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the business object from the approval workflow group.

You can add a business object in the approval workflow group by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the business object, the **Group BO Relation** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a business object in the approval workflow group	*Adding a Business Object* on page 291
How to edit a business object in the approval workflow group	*Editing a Business Object* on page 292
How to delete a business object from the approval workflow group	*Deleting a Business Object* on page 294

Group BO Relation

The **Group BO Relation** zone indicates how the business objects within a group are linked to each other. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parent BO	Displays the code of the parent business object. This would be one of the business objects within the group.
From Key	Displays the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the parent business object.
To Key	Displays the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the current business object.
Sequence	Indicates the order in which the business objects will be grouped.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Group BO Relation** screen appears where you can edit the business object's relationship details.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the business object's relationship.
BO Sequence Number	Indicates the sequence number of the business object that you have selected.

You can define a relationship between business objects in the approval workflow group by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a Group BO Relation	*Defining a Group BO Relation* on page 294

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a Group BO Relation	*Editing a Group BO Relation* on page 295
How to delete a Group BO Relation	*Deleting a Group BO Relation* on page 296

Defining an Approval Workflow Group

Prerequisites

To define an approval workflow group, you should have:

- Input and Display UI maps created in the application in case you want to use custom UI maps
- Dependency, Approval, and Approval Post Processing algorithms defined in the application in case you want to use any of them

Note: Before you define an approval workflow group for the User BO, you need to attach the **C1-APPTXNBAS** algorithm on the **Audit** algorithm spot of the business object belonging to the USER-SC MO, and not the USER MO.

Procedure

To define an approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Approval Workflow Groups** zone.

   The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Used to specify the code that uniquely identifies the approval workflow group.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the approval workflow group.	Yes
Display UI Map	Used to specify the UI map that you want to use for viewing data of the business objects within the approval workflow group. **Note:** If you do not specify a Display UI map for the approval workflow group, it is generated automatically and associated with the group when you set the **Active** flag of the group to **Yes** in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen.	No
Input UI Map	Used to specify the UI map that you want to use for modifying data of the business objects within the approval workflow group. **Note:** If you do not specify an Input UI map for the approval workflow group, it is generated automatically and associated with the group when you set the **Active** flag of the group to **Yes** in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Dependency Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered before creating the approval workflow request. **Note:** This algorithm can be used to check all prerequisites before creating the approval workflow request.	No
Approval Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered after the approval workflow request is approved by the approver at the last level in the hierarchy. The following approval algorithms are shipped with ORMB: • **C1-APPPROD** — This approval algorithm is used for the C1PRODUCT group, which is shipped with ORMB. • **C1-APPPL** — This approval algorithm is used for the C1PRICELST group, which is shipped with ORMB. • **C1-APPPASG** — This approval algorithm is used for the C1PRICEASG group, which is shipped with ORMB. • **C1-APPALG** — This is a standard approval algorithm that you can use for approval workflow groups where custom logic is not required. You can also create your own approval algorithms for custom UIs.	No
Approval Post Processing	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered after the changes (which are approved by all approvers in the hierarchy) are committed to the database.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Creation Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will create approval workflow requests. The following transaction creation algorithms are shipped with ORMB: • **C1-APPASGCR** — Used to create approval workflow requests for price assignment. • **C1-AXPROD** — Used to create approval workflow requests for product. • **C1-AXUSR** — Used to create approval workflow requests for user. • **C1-IGCREATE** — Used to create approval workflow requests for invoicing group. • **C1-AXCREATE** — This is a standard transaction creation algorithm that you can use to create approval workflow requests for most of the base objects. You can also create your own transaction creation algorithms for custom UIs. In case of the base UIs, this algorithm is only used while modifying or resolving a request. The initial approval transaction creation for base UIs takes place through the Audit algorithm attached on the business object.	Yes
Data Retrieval Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered to retrieve the original data of the business objects within the approval workflow group. This will help an approver to compare the original and new data in case where the submitter action is Update (UPD). The following data retrieval algorithms are shipped with ORMB: • **C1-APPIGDR** — Used to retrieve data for invoicing group. • **C1-AXPRICEOV** — Used to retrieve data for price assignment. • **C1_APPDATA** — This is a standard data retrieval algorithm that you can use to retrieve data for most of the base objects. You can also create your own data retrieval algorithms for custom UIs.	Yes
Compare Map Code	Used to specify customized Display UI map that you want to use for the approval workflow group. It overrides the UI map specified in the **Display UI Map** field.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Input Script Code	Used to specify customized Input UI map that you want to use for the approval workflow group. It overrides the UI map specified in the **Input UI Map** field.	No

5. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for a UI map, code, and an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

6. Click **Save**.

   The approval workflow group is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group screen	*Approval Workflow Group* on page 280
Approval Workflow Groups zone	*Approval Workflow Groups* on page 280
How to create a Display UI map manually	*Creating Display UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group* on page 754
How to create an Input UI map manually	*Creating Input UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group* on page 755
How to define approval workflow settings	*Defining Approval Workflow Settings* on page 315
How to search for a UI map	*Searching for a UI Map* on page 751
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732

Editing an Approval Workflow Group

Prerequisites

To edit an approval workflow group, you should have:

- Input and Display UI maps created in the application in case you want to use custom UI maps
- Dependency, Approval, and Approval Post Processing algorithms defined in the application in case you want to use any of them

Procedure

To edit an approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.

4. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the approval workflow group whose details you want to edit.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Displays the code of the approval workflow group.	Not applicable
Description	Used to modify the description of the approval workflow group.	Yes
Display UI Map	Used to modify the UI map that you want to use for viewing data of the business objects within the approval workflow group. **Note:** If you clear the **Display UI Map** field, you need to either manually specify the UI map or automatically regenerate the UI map by clicking the **Regenerate UI Maps** ( ) icon corresponding to the group in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen.	No
Input UI Map	Used to modify the UI Map that you want to use for modifying data of the business objects within the approval workflow group. **Note:** If you clear the **Input UI Map** field, you need to either manually specify the UI map or automatically regenerate the UI map by clicking the **Regenerate UI Maps** ( ) icon corresponding to the group in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen.	No
Dependency Algorithm	Used to modify the algorithm that will be triggered before creating the approval workflow request. **Note:** This algorithm can be used to check all prerequisites before creating the approval workflow request.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Algorithm	Used to modify the algorithm that will be triggered after the approval workflow request is approved by the approver at the last level in the hierarchy. The following approval algorithms are shipped with ORMB: • **C1-APPPROD** — This approval algorithm is used for the C1PRODUCT group, which is shipped with ORMB. • **C1-APPPL** — This approval algorithm is used for the C1PRICELST group, which is shipped with ORMB. • **C1-APPPASG** — This approval algorithm is used for the C1PRICEASG group, which is shipped with ORMB. • **C1-APPALG** — This is a standard approval algorithm that you can use for approval workflow groups where custom logic is not required. You can also create your own approval algorithms for custom UIs.	No
Approval Post Processing	Used to modify the algorithm that will be triggered after the changes (which are approved by all approvers in the hierarchy) are committed to the database.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Creation Algorithm	Used to modify the algorithm that will create approval workflow requests. The following transaction creation algorithms are shipped with ORMB: • **C1-APPASGCR** — Used to create approval workflow requests for price assignment. • **C1-AXPROD** — Used to create approval workflow requests for product. • **C1-AXUSR** — Used to create approval workflow requests for user. • **C1-IGCREATE** — Used to create approval workflow requests for invoicing group. • **C1-AXCREATE** — This is a standard transaction creation algorithm that you can use to create approval workflow requests for most of the base objects. You can also create your own transaction creation algorithms for custom UIs. In case of the base UIs, this algorithm is only used while modifying or resolving a request. The initial approval transaction creation for base UIs takes place through the Audit algorithm attached on the business object.	Yes
Data Retrieval Algorithm	Used to modify the algorithm that will be triggered to retrieve the original data of the business objects within the approval workflow group. This will help an approver to compare the original and new data in case where the submitter action is Update (UPD). The following data retrieval algorithms are shipped with ORMB: • **C1-APPIGDR** — Used to retrieve data for invoicing group. • **C1-AXPRICEOV** — Used to retrieve data for price assignment. • **C1_APPDATA** — This is a standard data retrieval algorithm that you can use to retrieve data for most of the base objects. You can also create your own data retrieval algorithms for custom UIs.	Yes
Compare Map Code	Used to modify customized Display UI map used for the approval workflow group. It overrides the UI map specified in the **Display UI Map** field.	No
Input Script Code	Used to modify customized Input UI map used for the approval workflow group. It overrides the UI map specified in the **Input UI Map** field.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

5. Modify the required details.

   Note: You can search for a UI map, code, and an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

6. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the approval workflow group are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group screen	*Approval Workflow Group* on page 280
Approval Workflow Groups zone	*Approval Workflow Groups* on page 280
How to create a Display UI map manually	*Creating Display UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group* on page 754
How to create an Input UI map manually	*Creating Input UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group* on page 755
How to search for a UI map	*Searching for a UI Map* on page 751
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732

Deleting an Approval Workflow Group

Procedure

To delete an approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.

4. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the approval workflow group that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the object.

5. Click **OK**.

   The approval workflow group is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group screen	*Approval Workflow Group* on page 280
Approval Workflow Groups zone	*Approval Workflow Groups* on page 280

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Adding a Business Object

Initially, while adding a business object to the approval workflow group, you should always add a business object that can be independently created and does not require a parent business object. For the subsequent business objects, you should specify how these business objects are related to each other. This helps the system to determine which fields need to be copied from the parent to the dependent business object before the dependent business objects are invoked.

For example, you have a group with two business objects (BOs) - Person and Account. When the Account BO is invoked, an appropriate person ID must be passed in the Account BO. This person ID must come from the Person BO. In this case, the Person BO will be defined with no parent BO within the group. However, when the Account BO is added to the group, it must be linked to the Person BO. You can link the Account BO with the Person BO by specifying:

- Person BO as the parent BO
- XPATH of the person ID in the Person BO (in the From Field)
- XPATH of the person ID in the Account BO (in the To Field)

Before ORMB invokes the Account BO (for validation or for crating the account in the application after the approval is received), ORMB will copy the person ID from Person BO to Account BO (based on the specified XPATHs) so that the correct person ID is available in Account BO before it is invoked.

Prerequisites

To add a business object in the approval workflow group, you should have:

- Business object and approval workflow group created in the application

Procedure

To add a business object in the approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.

4. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow group in which you want to add *a* business object.

   The **Business Objects** zone appears.

5. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Business Objects** zone.

   The **Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the code of the approval workflow group.	Not applicable
Business Object	Used to specify the business object that you want to include in the approval workflow group.	Yes
Reference ID 1	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow requests.	No
Reference ID 2	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow requests.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reference ID 3	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow requests.	No
Reference ID 4	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow requests.	No
List Flag	Used to indicate whether the group contains one or multiple instance of the business object. For example, if you want to create a group that contains multiple account objects, you need to set this flag for the Account BO to True. If you want to create a group that contains single instance of the business object, you must set this flag for the business object to False.	Yes

6. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for a business object by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

7. Click **Save**.

   The business object is added in the approval workflow group.

   Note: When you add business objects in an approval workflow group, you need to regenerate the Input and Display UI maps by clicking the **Regenerate UI Maps** ( ) icon corresponding to the group in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen. You must do this only when you are using automatically generated UI maps, and not otherwise.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group screen	*Approval Workflow Group* on page 280
Approval Workflow Groups zone	*Approval Workflow Groups* on page 280
Business Objects zone	*Business Objects* on page 281
How to search for a business object	*Searching for a Business Object* on page 738

Editing a Business Object

Procedure

To edit a business object in the approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.

4. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow group whose business object details you want to edit.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Business Objects** zone appears.

5. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the business object whose details you want to edit.

   The **Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the code of the approval workflow group.	Not applicable
Business Object	Used to modify the business object that you want to include in the approval workflow group.	Yes
Reference ID 1	Used to modify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow requests.	No
Reference ID 2	Used to modify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow requests.	No
Reference ID 3	Used to modify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow requests.	No
Reference ID 4	Used to modify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow requests.	No
List Flag	Used to indicate whether the group contains one or multiple instance of the business object. For example, if you want to create a group that contains multiple account objects, you need to set this flag for the Account BO to True. If you want to create a group that contains single instance of the business object, you must set this flag for the business object to False.	Yes

6. Change the business object or edit the details, if required.

   Note: You can search for a business object by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

7. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the approval workflow group are saved.

   Note: When you change business objects in an approval workflow group, you need to regenerate the Input and Display UI maps by clicking the **Regenerate UI Maps** ( ) icon corresponding to the group in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen. You must do this only when you are using automatically generated UI maps, and not otherwise.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group screen	*Approval Workflow Group* on page 280
Approval Workflow Groups zone	*Approval Workflow Groups* on page 280
Business Objects zone	*Business Objects* on page 281
How to search for a business object	*Searching for a Business Object* on page 738

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Deleting a Business Object

Procedure

To delete a business object from the approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow group whose business object you want to delete.

   The **Business Objects** zone appears.
5. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the business object that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the object.
6. Click **OK**.

   The business object is deleted from the approval workflow group.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group screen	*Approval Workflow Group* on page 280
Approval Workflow Groups zone	*Approval Workflow Groups* on page 280
Business Objects zone	*Business Objects* on page 281

Defining a Group BO Relation

Prerequisites

To define relationship between business objects in the approval workflow group, you should have:

- Business objects added in the approval workflow group

Procedure

To define relationship between business objects in the approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow group whose business object details you want to edit.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Business Objects** zone appears.

5. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the business object whose relationship details you want to add.

   The **Group BO Relation** zone appears.

6. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Group BO Relation** zone.

   The **Approval Workflow Group BO Relation** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the code of the approval workflow group.	Not applicable
Parent BO	Used to specify the parent business object. This should be one of the business objects within the group.	No
From Key	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the parent business object.	No
To Key	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the current business object.	No

7. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for a parent business object by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

8. Click **Save**.

   The business object's relationship is defined in the approval workflow group.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group screen	*Approval Workflow Group* on page 280
Approval Workflow Groups zone	*Approval Workflow Groups* on page 280
Business Objects zone	*Business Objects* on page 281
Group BO Relation zone	*Group BO Relation* on page 282
How to search for a business object	*Searching for a Business Object* on page 738

Editing a Group BO Relation

Procedure

To change the business object's relationship details in the approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

4. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow group whose business object details you want to edit.

   The **Business Objects** zone appears.

5. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the business object whose relationship details you want to edit.

   The **Group BO Relation** zone appears.

6. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the business object's relationship whose details you want to edit.

   The **Approval Workflow Group BO Relation** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the code of the approval workflow group.	Not applicable
Parent BO	Used to modify the parent business object. This should be one of the business objects within the group.	No
From Key	Used to modify the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the parent business object.	No
To Key	Used to modify the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the current business object.	No

7. Modify the required details.

   Note: You can search for a parent business object by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

8. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the approval workflow group are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group screen	*Approval Workflow Group* on page 280
Approval Workflow Groups zone	*Approval Workflow Groups* on page 280
Business Objects zone	*Business Objects* on page 281
Group BO Relation zone	*Group BO Relation* on page 282
How to search for a business object	*Searching for a Business Object* on page 738

Deleting a Group BO Relation

Procedure

To delete a business object's relationship details from the approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.

4. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow group whose business object details you want to edit.

   The **Business Objects** zone appears.

5. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the business object whose relationship details you want to delete.

   The **Group BO Relation** zone appears.

6. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the relationship record that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the object.

7. Click **OK**.

   The business object's relationship details are deleted from the approval workflow group.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group screen	*Approval Workflow Group* on page 280
Approval Workflow Groups zone	*Approval Workflow Groups* on page 280
Business Objects zone	*Business Objects* on page 281
Group BO Relation zone	*Group BO Relation* on page 282

Approval Workflow Chain

The system supports multi-level approval workflow. You can define an approval workflow chain or hierarchy where users with different To Do role at each level can approve or reject the approval workflow request. For example, you can define a chain called Material Procurement with two levels of approval. At the first level, a user with the M1 role will approve or reject the request, and at the second level, a user with the M2 role will approve or reject the request.

When the approval workflow request is created, a notification in the form of To Do is sent to all users with the To Do role defined at the first level in the hierarchy. Once the request is approved at the first level, a notification is sent to all users with the To Do role defined at the next level in the hierarchy. This process continues till the approval is received from all levels in the hierarchy. Once users at all levels approve the request, the changes are reflected in the database. However, if an approver at any level in the hierarchy rejects the request, a notification is sent to all users with the To Do role defined for resolving the request.

The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete an approval workflow chain. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Approval Workflow Chains* on page 297
- *Approval Levels* on page 298

Approval Workflow Chains

The **Approval Workflow Chains** zone lists approval workflow chains that are already defined in the system. You can define, edit, and delete an approval workflow chain through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Code	Displays the code of the approval workflow chain.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow chain.
To Do Role To Resolve	Indicates that the users with the specified To Do role will be sent a notification when the approval workflow request is rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy. **Note:** Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to resolve the request, and resubmit it for approval.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears where you can edit the details of the approval workflow chain.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the approval workflow chain.

You can define an approval workflow chain by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow chain, the **Approval Levels** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow chain	*Defining an Approval Workflow Chain* on page 299
How to edit an approval workflow chain	*Editing an Approval Workflow Chain* on page 300
How to delete an approval workflow chain	*Deleting an Approval Workflow Chain* on page 301

Approval Levels

The **Approval Levels** zone lists the levels defined in the approval workflow chain. For each level in the hierarchy, a To Do role is specified indicating that users with the respective To Do role can either accept or reject the approval workflow request. You can define, edit, and delete the levels in the hierarchy through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Action Algorithm	Indicates the additional action that the system will perform apart from generating a notification when the approver approves or rejects the request.
Level	Indicates the level in the hierarchy.
Approver To Do Role	Indicates that the users with the specified To Do role will either approve or reject the request at this level in the hierarchy. **Note:** Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to approve or reject the request.
Approval To Do Type	Indicates the type of notification that will be generated when the approver approves or rejects the request.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Approval Level** screen appears where you can edit the details of the level in the approval workflow chain.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the level from the approval workflow chain.

You can define a level in the approval workflow chain by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval level in the approval workflow chain	*Defining an Approval Level* on page 301
How to edit an approval level in the approval workflow chain	*Editing an Approval Level* on page 302
How to delete an approval level from the approval workflow chain	*Deleting an Approval Level* on page 303

Defining an Approval Workflow Chain

Prerequisites

To define an approval workflow chain, you should have:

- Required To Do role defined in the application

Procedure

To define an approval workflow chain:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Chain**.

   The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Approval Workflow Chains** zone.

   The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Used to specify the code that uniquely identifies the approval workflow chain.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the approval workflow chain.	Yes
To Do Role To Resolve	Used to specify the To Do role to indicate the users who will be sent a notification when the approval workflow request is rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy.	Yes

5. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for a To Do role by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

6. Click **Save**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The approval workflow chain is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Chain screen	*Approval Workflow Chain* on page 297
Approval Workflow Chains zone	*Approval Workflow Chains* on page 297
How to search for a To Do role	*Searching for a To Do Role* on page 749

Editing an Approval Workflow Chain

Prerequisites

To edit an approval workflow chain, you should have:

- Required To Do role defined in the application

Procedure

To edit an approval workflow chain:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Chain**.

   The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears.
4. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the approval workflow chain whose details you want to edit.

   The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Displays the code of the approval workflow chain.	Not applicable
Description	Used to modify the description of the approval workflow chain.	Yes
To Do Role To Resolve	Used to modify the To Do role to indicate the users who will be sent a notification when the approval workflow request is rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy.	Yes
5. Modify the required details.

   Note: You can search for a To Do role by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.
6. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the approval workflow chain are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Chain screen	*Approval Workflow Chain* on page 297

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Chains zone	*Approval Workflow Chains* on page 297
How to search for a To Do role	*Searching for a To Do Role* on page 749

Deleting an Approval Workflow Chain

Procedure

To delete an approval workflow chain:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Chain**.

   The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears.
4. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the approval workflow chain that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the object.
5. Click **OK**.

   The approval workflow chain is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Chain screen	*Approval Workflow Chain* on page 297
Approval Workflow Chains zone	*Approval Workflow Chains* on page 297

Defining an Approval Level

Prerequisites

To define a level in the approval workflow chain, you should have:

- Required To Do role and To Do type defined in the application
- Action algorithms defined in the application in case you want to use any of them

Procedure

To define a level in the approval workflow chain:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Chain**.

   The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

4. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow chain in which you want *to* define a level.

   The **Approval Levels** zone appears.

5. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Approval Levels** zone.

   The **Approval Level** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Displays the code of the approval workflow chain.	Not applicable
Action Algorithm	Used to specify the additional action that you want the system to perform apart from generating a notification when the approver approves or rejects the request.	No
Approver To Do Role	Used to specify the To Do role to indicate the users who will either approve or reject the request at this level in the hierarchy.	Yes
Approval To Do Type	Used to specify the type of notification that you want to generate when the approver approves or rejects the request.	Yes

6. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for a To Do role, To Do type, and an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

7. Click **Save**.

   The level is defined in the approval workflow chain.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Chain screen	*Approval Workflow Chain* on page 297
Approval Workflow Chains zone	*Approval Workflow Chains* on page 297
Approval Levels zone	*Approval Levels* on page 298
How to search for a To Do role	*Searching for a To Do Role* on page 749
How to search for a To Do type	*Searching for a To Do Type* on page 750
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732

Editing an Approval Level

Prerequisites

To edit a level in the approval workflow chain, you should have:

- Required To Do role and To Do type defined in the application
- Action algorithms defined in the application in case you want to use any of them

Procedure

To edit a level in the approval workflow chain:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Chain**.

   The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow chain whose level you want to edit.

   The **Approval Levels** zone appears.
5. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the level that you want to edit.

   The **Approval Level** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Displays the code of the approval workflow chain.	Not applicable
Action Algorithm	Used to modify the additional action that you want the system to perform apart from generating a notification when the approver approves or rejects the request.	No
Approver To Do Role	Used to modify the To Do role to indicate the users who will either approve or reject the request at this level in the hierarchy.	Yes
Approval To Do Type	Used to modify the type of notification that you want to generate when the approver approves or rejects the request.	Yes

6. Modify the required details.

   Note: You can search for a To Do role, To Do type, and an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.
7. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the approval level are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Chain screen	*Approval Workflow Chain* on page 297
Approval Workflow Chains zone	*Approval Workflow Chains* on page 297
Approval Levels zone	*Approval Levels* on page 298
How to search for a To Do role	*Searching for a To Do Role* on page 749
How to search for a To Do type	*Searching for a To Do Type* on page 750
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732

Deleting an Approval Level

Procedure

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To delete a level from the approval workflow chain:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Chain**.

   The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow chain whose level you want to delete.

   The **Approval Levels** zone appears.
5. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the level that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the object.
6. Click **OK**.

   The level is deleted from the approval workflow chain.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Chain screen	*Approval Workflow Chain* on page 297
Approval Workflow Chains zone	*Approval Workflow Chains* on page 297
Approval Levels zone	*Approval Levels* on page 298

Approval Workflow Criteria Type

The approval workflow request is associated to the approval workflow chain based on the approval workflow criteria. For example, approval workflow requests for the Account group can be associated with different approval workflow chains based on account's division. In this case, account's division would be the criteria type, and division equal to California would be the criteria. Therefore, you need to define the criteria type for each business object that you would like to use for associating approval workflow requests with the approval workflow chains. The system also provides you with a default criteria type named DEF, which can be used for associating approval workflow requests with the approval workflow chains. While using this criteria type, you must always set the value of this criteria type to **Y**.

The **Approval Workflow Criteria Type** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete approval workflow criteria types. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Approval Workflow Criteria Types* on page 304

Approval Workflow Criteria Types

The **Approval Workflow Criteria Types** zone lists approval workflow criteria types that are already defined in the system. You can define, edit, and delete an approval workflow criteria type through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Code	Displays the code of the approval workflow criteria type.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow criteria type.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Business Object	Displays the business object for which you have defined the approval workflow criteria type.
Field	Displays the field using which the criteria for associating approval workflow requests with the approval workflow chains will be defined.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Approval Workflow Criteria Type** screen appears where you can edit the criteria type.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the approval workflow criteria type.

You can define an approval workflow criteria type by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow criteria type	*Defining an Approval Workflow Criteria Type* on page 305
How to edit an approval workflow criteria type	*Editing an Approval Workflow Criteria Type* on page 306
How to delete an approval workflow criteria type	*Deleting an Approval Workflow Criteria Type* on page 307

Defining an Approval Workflow Criteria Type

Procedure

To define an approval workflow criteria type:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Criteria Type**.

   The **Approval Workflow Criteria Type** screen appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Approval Workflow Criteria Types** zone.

   The **Approval Workflow Criteria Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Used to specify the code that uniquely identifies the approval workflow criteria type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the approval workflow criteria type.	Yes
Business Object	Used to specify the business object for which you want to define the approval workflow criteria type.	Yes
Field	Used to specify the field that you want to use to define the criteria for associating approval workflow requests with the approval workflow chains.	Yes
5. Enter the required details.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: You can search for a business object and field by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

6. Click **Save**.

   The approval workflow criteria type is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Criteria Type screen	*Approval Workflow Criteria Type* on page 304
Approval Workflow Criteria Types zone	*Approval Workflow Criteria Types* on page 304
How to search for a business object	*Searching for a Business Object* on page 738
How to search for a field	*Searching for a Field* on page 740

Editing an Approval Workflow Criteria Type

Procedure

To edit an approval workflow criteria type:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Criteria Type**.

   The **Approval Workflow Criteria Type** screen appears.

4. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the criteria type that you want to edit.

   The **Approval Workflow Criteria Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Displays the code of the approval workflow criteria type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to modify the description of the approval workflow criteria type.	Yes
Business Object	Used to modify the business object for which you want to define the approval workflow criteria type.	Yes
Field	Used to modify the field that you want to use to define the criteria for associating approval workflow requests with the approval workflow chains.	Yes

5. Modify the required details.

   Note: You can search for a business object and field by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

6. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the approval workflow criteria type are saved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Criteria Type screen	*Approval Workflow Criteria Type* on page 304
Approval Workflow Criteria Types zone	*Approval Workflow Criteria Types* on page 304
How to search for a business object	*Searching for a Business Object* on page 738
How to search for a field	*Searching for a Field* on page 740

Deleting an Approval Workflow Criteria Type

Procedure

To delete an approval workflow criteria type:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Criteria Type**.

   The **Approval Workflow Criteria Type** screen appears.
4. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the criteria type that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the object.
5. Click **OK**.

   The approval workflow criteria type is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Criteria Type screen	*Approval Workflow Criteria Type* on page 304
Approval Workflow Criteria Types zone	*Approval Workflow Criteria Types* on page 304

Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage

Once the approval workflow group and chain are created, you can link them using the approval workflow criteria. For example, if you want approval workflow requests for all accounts in the California division should be sent to Chain A, then you will have to create a linkage between the Account group and the Chain A using the criteria, division is equal to California. You can also link an approval workflow group and chain using the default criteria type, **DEF**. While using the default criteria type, you must always set its value to **Y**.

The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen allows you to create a link between an approval workflow group and chain with or without using a criteria. This ensures that requests created for the business objects within a particular approval workflow group are sent to the approval workflow chain to which the group is associated. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages* on page 308

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- *Approval Workflow Criteria* on page 308

Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages

The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages** zone lists links created between approval workflow groups and chains. You can create, edit, and delete the links through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Group Chain Linkage ID	Displays the ID which is generated automatically when the link is created.
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the approval workflow group for which the link is created.
Approval Workflow Chain	Displays the approval workflow chain for which the link is created.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears where you can change the approval workflow group and chain.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the approval workflow group chain link.

You can create an approval workflow group chain link by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the approval workflow group chain link, the **Approval Workflow Criteria** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create an approval workflow group chain link	*Creating an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link* on page 309
How to edit an approval workflow group chain link	*Editing an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link* on page 310
How to delete an approval workflow group chain link	*Deleting an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link* on page 311

Approval Workflow Criteria

The **Approval Workflow Criteria** zone displays the approval workflow criteria that you have defined for associating the approval workflow group with the approval workflow chain. You can define, edit, and delete the approval workflow criteria through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Logical Operator	Displays the logical operator used to define the criteria. By default, the system uses AND operator.
Criterion Type	Displays the description of the criteria type.
Operator	Displays the relational operator used to define the relation between the criterion type and criterion value.
Criterion Value	Displays the value of the criteria type.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence	Indicates the order in which the criterion is verified.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Approval Workflow Criteria** screen appears where you can edit the criterion.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the criterion.

You can define an approval workflow criterion by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a criterion	*Defining an Approval Workflow Criterion* on page 311
How to edit a criterion	*Editing an Approval Workflow Criterion* on page 312
How to delete a criterion	*Deleting an Approval Workflow Criterion* on page 313

Creating an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link

Prerequisites

To create an approval workflow group chain link, you should have:

- Required approval workflow group and chain defined in the application

Procedure

To create an approval workflow group chain link:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages** zone.

   The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Used to specify the approval workflow group.	Yes
Approval Workflow Chain	Used to specify the approval workflow chain.	Yes
5. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for an approval workflow group and chain by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.
6. Click **Save**.

   The approval workflow group chain link is created.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage screen	*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage* on page 307
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages zone	*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages* on page 308
How to search for an approval workflow group	*Searching for an Approval Workflow Group* on page 735
How to search for an approval workflow chain	*Searching for an Approval Workflow Chain* on page 734

Editing an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link

Prerequisites

To edit an approval workflow group chain link, you should have:

- Required approval workflow group and chain defined in the application

Procedure

To edit an approval workflow group chain link:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears.
4. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the link whose details you want to edit.

   The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Used to change the approval workflow group.	Yes
Approval Workflow Chain	Used to change the approval workflow chain.	Yes

5. Modify the required details.

   Note: You can search for an approval workflow group and chain by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.
6. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the approval workflow group chain link are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage screen	*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage* on page 307

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages zone	*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages* on page 308
How to search for an approval workflow group	*Searching for an Approval Workflow Group* on page 735
How to search for an approval workflow chain	*Searching for an Approval Workflow Chain* on page 734

Deleting an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link

Procedure

To delete an approval workflow group chain link:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears.
4. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the link that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the object.
5. Click **OK**.

   The approval workflow group chain link is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage screen	*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage* on page 307
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages zone	*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages* on page 308

Defining an Approval Workflow Criterion

Prerequisites

To define an approval workflow criterion, you should have:

- Required criteria type defined in the application

Procedure

To define an approval workflow criterion:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears.

4. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the link for which you want to define a criteria.

   The **Approval Workflow Criteria** zone appears.

5. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Approval Workflow Criteria** zone.

   The **Approval Workflow Criterion** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Group Chain Linkage ID	Displays the ID which is generated automatically when the link is created.	Not applicable
Criterion Type	Used to specify the criteria type that you want to use for defining the criterion.	Yes
Criterion Value	Used to specify the criterion value.	Yes

6. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for a criteria type by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

7. Click **Save**.

   The approval workflow criterion is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage screen	*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage* on page 307
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages zone	*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages* on page 308
Approval Workflow Criteria zone	*Approval Workflow Criteria* on page 308
How to search for a criteria type	*Searching for an Approval Workflow Criteria Type* on page 734

Editing an Approval Workflow Criterion

Prerequisites

To edit an approval workflow criterion, you should have:

- Required criteria type defined in the application

Procedure

To edit an approval workflow criterion:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

4. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the link whose criteria you want to edit.

   The **Approval Workflow Criteria** zone appears.

5. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the criterion that you want to edit.

   The **Approval Workflow Criterion** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Group Chain Linkage ID	Displays the ID which is generated automatically when the link is created.	Not applicable
Criterion Type	Used to modify the criteria type that you want to use for defining the criterion.	Yes
Criterion Value	Used to modify the criterion value.	Yes

6. Modify the required details.

   Note: You can search for a criteria type by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

7. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the approval workflow criterion are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage screen	*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage* on page 307
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages zone	*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages* on page 308
Approval Workflow Criteria zone	*Approval Workflow Criteria* on page 308
How to search for a criteria type	*Searching for an Approval Workflow Criteria Type* on page 734

Deleting an Approval Workflow Criterion

Procedure

To delete an approval workflow criterion:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage**.

   The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears.

4. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the link whose criteria you want to edit.

   The **Approval Workflow Criteria** zone appears.

5. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the criterion that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the object.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

6. Click **OK**.

   The approval workflow criterion is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage screen	*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage* on page 307
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages zone	*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkages* on page 308
Approval Workflow Criteria zone	*Approval Workflow Criteria* on page 308

Approval Workflow Settings

Once the approval workflow group is created, you need to set the **Active** flag of the group to **Yes**. The **Active** flag is used to indicate whether approval workflow request should be created for an approval workflow group or not. If the flag for an approval workflow group (for example, the Account group) is set to **Yes**, then the approval workflow request is created when changes are made to any account.

The **Approval Workflow Settings** screen allows you to define various settings for approval workflow groups. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Approval Workflow Settings* on page 314

Approval Workflow Settings

The **Approval Workflow Settings** zone displays various settings defined for a list of approval workflow groups. You can define, edit, and delete the settings of an approval workflow group through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the description of the approval workflow group.
Approval Chain Selection Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered after creating the approval workflow request. **Note:** This algorithm identifies the approval workflow chain that must be used for the approval workflow group.
Prevalidation Flag	Indicates whether validation must be done before the approval workflow request is created. The valid values are: • Y • N
Active	Indicates whether the approval workflow is required for the business objects in the approval workflow group. The valid values are: • Y • N • Conditional

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Conditional Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be used to determine the business objects for which the approval workflow must be activated.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Approval Workflow Setting** screen appears where you can edit the settings of the approval workflow group.
Regenerate UI Maps	On clicking the **Regenerate UI Maps** ( ) icon, you can regenerate the Input and Display UI maps for the approval workflow group. **Note:** If the Input and Display UI maps already exist for the approval workflow group, they are overwritten with the new Input and Display UI maps. Any manual modifications made to the previous UI maps will be lost. If you want to make any modifications to an automatically generated UI map, it is recommended that you create a copy of an automatically generated UI map, save it with a new name, make the modifications in the new UI map, and then attach it to the group. If the **C1-REGENUI** application service is added in the user's user group, only then the user can automatically regenerate the Input and Display UI maps associated with a group.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the settings of the approval workflow group.

You can define settings for an approval workflow group by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define the settings of an approval workflow group	*Defining Approval Workflow Settings* on page 315
How to edit the settings of an approval workflow group	*Editing Approval Workflow Settings* on page 317
How to delete the settings of an approval workflow group	*Deleting Approval Workflow Settings* on page 319

Defining Approval Workflow Settings

Procedure

To define settings for an approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Settings**.

   The **Approval Workflow Settings** screen appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Approval Workflow Settings** zone.

   The **Approval Workflow Setting** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Used to specify the approval workflow group.	Yes
Approval Chain Selection Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered after creating the approval workflow request. **Note:** This algorithm identifies the approval workflow chain that must be used for the approval workflow group.	Yes
Prevalidation Flag	Used to indicate whether validation must be done before the approval workflow request is created. The valid values are: • Yes • No	Yes
Active	Used to indicate whether the approval workflow is required for the business objects in the approval workflow group. The valid values are: • **Yes** — Used when you want to activate the approval workflow for the business objects in the approval workflow group. • **No** — Used when you do not want to activate the approval workflow for the business objects in the approval workflow group. • **Conditional** — Used when you want to activate the approval workflow for business objects that satisfy particular criteria (for example, when the person or account belongs to a particular division). Note that, at present, this functionality works only for an approval workflow group which consists of a single business object.	Yes
Conditional Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be used to determine the business objects for which the approval workflow must be activated. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Conditional** option from the **Active** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you select the **Conditional** option from the **Active** list.

5. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for an approval workflow group and algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

6. Click **Save**.

   The settings are defined for the approval workflow group.

   Note: On clicking the **Save** button, the system checks whether the **Active** flag for the approval workflow group is set to **Yes**. If yes, the system checks whether you have already specified the Input and Display UI maps manually for the approval workflow group. If not, the system automatically creates the Input and Display UI maps. If you now go to the **Approval Workflow Group** screen, you will be able to view the names of the Input and Display UI maps (which are automatically generated) corresponding to the approval workflow group for which

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

the approval workflow is activated. The Input UI map is named using the `CM_<Approval Workflow Group Code>_AppTxn_Input` naming convention, and the Display UI map is named using the `CM_<Approval Workflow Group Code>_AppTxn_Display` naming convention.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Settings screen	*Approval Workflow Settings* on page 314
Approval Workflow Settings zone	*Approval Workflow Settings* on page 314
How to search for an approval workflow group	*Searching for an Approval Workflow Group* on page 735
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732

Editing Approval Workflow Settings

Procedure

To edit settings of an approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Settings**.

   The **Approval Workflow Settings** screen appears.
4. Click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the group whose settings you want to edit.

   The **Approval Workflow Setting** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the code of the approval workflow group.	Not applicable
Approval Chain Selection Algorithm	Used to modify the algorithm that will be triggered after creating the approval workflow request. **Note:** This algorithm identifies the approval workflow chain that must be used for the approval workflow group.	Yes
Prevalidation Flag	Used to indicate whether validation must be done before the approval workflow request is created. The valid values are: • Yes • No	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Active	Used to indicate whether the approval workflow is required for the business objects in the approval workflow group. The valid values are: • **Yes** — Used when you want to activate the approval workflow for the business objects in the approval workflow group. • **No** — Used when you do not want to activate the approval workflow for the business objects in the approval workflow group. • **Conditional** — Used when you want to activate the approval workflow for business objects that satisfy particular criteria (for example, when the person or account belongs to a particular division). Note that, at present, this functionality works only for an approval workflow group which consists of a single business object.	Yes
Conditional Algorithm	Used to modify the algorithm that will be used to determine the business objects for which the approval workflow must be activated. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Conditional** option from the **Active** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you select the **Conditional** option from the **Active** list.

5. Modify the required details.

   Note: You can search for an approval workflow group and algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

6. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the approval workflow group settings are saved.

   Note: On clicking the **Save** button, the system checks whether the **Active** flag for the approval workflow group is set to **Yes**. If yes, the system checks whether the Input and Display UI maps already exist for the approval workflow group. If not, the system automatically creates the Input and Display UI maps. If you now go to the **Approval Workflow Group** screen, you will be able to view the names of the Input and Display UI maps (which are automatically generated) corresponding to the approval workflow group for which the approval workflow is activated. The Input UI map is named using the `CM_<Approval Workflow Group Code>_AppTxn_Input` naming convention, and the Display UI map is named using the `CM_<Approval Workflow Group Code>_AppTxn_Display` naming convention.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Settings screen	*Approval Workflow Settings* on page 314
Approval Workflow Settings zone	*Approval Workflow Settings* on page 314
How to search for an approval workflow group	*Searching for an Approval Workflow Group* on page 735
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Deleting Approval Workflow Settings

Procedure

To delete settings of an approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Settings**.

   The **Approval Workflow Settings** screen appears.

4. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the approval workflow group whose settings you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the object.

5. Click **OK**.

   The settings of the approval workflow group are deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Settings screen	*Approval Workflow Settings* on page 314
Approval Workflow Settings zone	*Approval Workflow Settings* on page 314

Approval Workflow Reason

You have to define the reason codes which are used when the approval workflow request is either rejected or cancelled. The reason code helps to indicate the reason why a particular request was rejected or cancelled.

The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete a reason code. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Approval Workflow Reasons* on page 319

Approval Workflow Reasons

The **Approval Workflow Reasons** zone lists reason codes that are already defined in the system. You can define, edit, and delete a reason code through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Code	Displays the reason code.
Description	Displays the description of the reason code.
Category	Displays the category to which the reason code belongs.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears where you can edit the reason code.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the reason code.

You can define a reason code by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a reason code	*Defining a Reason Code* on page 320
How to edit a reason code	*Editing a Reason Code* on page 320
How to delete a reason code	*Deleting a Reason Code* on page 321

Defining a Reason Code

Procedure

To define a reason code:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Reason**.

   The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Approval Workflow Reasons** zone.

   The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Used to specify the reason code.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the reason code.	Yes
Category	Used to specify the category to which the reason code belongs. You can either select **Reject** or **Cancelled**.	Yes
5. Enter the required details.
6. Click **Save**.

   The reason code is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Reason screen	*Approval Workflow Reason* on page 319
Approval Workflow Reasons zone	*Approval Workflow Reasons* on page 319

Editing a Reason Code

Procedure

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To edit a reason code:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Reason**.

   The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears.
4. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the reason code that you want to edit.

   The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Displays the reason code.	Not applicable
Description	Used to modify the description of the reason code.	Yes
Category	Used to modify the category to which the reason code belongs. You can either select **Reject** or **Cancelled**.	Yes

5. Modify the required details.
6. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the reason code are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Reason screen	*Approval Workflow Reason* on page 319
Approval Workflow Reasons zone	*Approval Workflow Reasons* on page 319

Deleting a Reason Code

Procedure

To delete a reason code:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Reason**.

   The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears.
4. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the reason code that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the object.
5. Click **OK**.

   The reason code is deleted.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Reason screen	*Approval Workflow Reason* on page 319
Approval Workflow Reasons zone	*Approval Workflow Reasons* on page 319

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 6

Multi-Currency Accounts

Topics:

- *Creating Adjustments*
- *Generating Bills*
- *Applying Payments*
- *Monitoring Overdue Debt*
- *Generating History*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to change the currency in which an account is invoiced. While the charges on a bill must be in a single currency, accounts can now be billed in different currencies over time. For example, when a customer opens an account, he/she might be billed in US Dollars. However, with the Multi-Currency Accounts feature enabled, the same account can be billed in Euros in the near future. You can use the Multi-Currency Accounts functionality only when:

- You set the **Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC)** feature configuration.
- The account's customer class is enabled for open item accounting. In other words, the **Open Item Accounting** check box of the account's customer class is selected.
- The account does not have any active or pending loans, payment plans, payment arrangements, or recurring charge contracts.

The following are some limitations while using the Multi-Currency Accounts functionality:

- Overdue charges in multiple currencies may not be referred to a collection agency. Such cases would be handled via a manual referral.
- Because the account's customer class must be enabled for open-item accounting, you can only use Overdue Processing to collect overdue bills. The Collections and Severance processes are not supported for open-item accounting.
- Write offs involving multiple currencies must be performed manually.
- Budgets, deposits, pay plans, and payment arrangements are not supported.

Note: If there is an outstanding debt for an account in more than one currency, the system displays "***" instead of the total account balance across the application.

To use the Multi-Currency Accounts functionality, you need to:

- Set the **Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC)** feature configuration
- Define required currencies along with currency symbols
- Define invoice currencies for divisions. This is because while changing the invoice currency of an account, you can only view those invoice currencies that are associated to the account's division.
- Define the required exchange rates for currency conversion

- Create tender control and deposit control for every invoice currency defined in the system
- Define an adjustment type that you want to use during currency conversion, and link it to the relevant adjustment profile
- Define an adjustment type that you want to use during Write off process, and link it to the relevant adjustment profile
- Define a contract type that you want to use during over payments to transfer the credit balance to other contracts
- Create an algorithm using the **CM_MEST** algorithm type, and attach it on the **Match Event Status** algorithm spot in the **Installation Options – Framework** screen
- Set the collection method of the account's customer class to **Overdue**
- Setup auto-pay to debit the bill amount, and not the account's balance
- Setup the account's customer class to keep credits on a separate contract

The following business processes are enhanced for implementing the Multi-Currency Accounts functionality:

- *Creating Adjustments* on page 325
- *Generating Bills* on page 325
- *Applying Payments* on page 325
- *Monitoring Overdue Debt* on page 325
- *Generating History* on page 325

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to set the **Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC)** feature configuration	*Setting the Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC) Feature Configuration* on page 756

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Creating Adjustments

If you are using the Multi-Currency Accounts functionality, you can create adjustments in the currency which is different from the account's invoice currency.

Generating Bills

A bill is generated in the account's invoice currency. If you change the invoice currency of an account, any new bills will be generated in the new currency. For example, if you have changed the invoice currency of an account from US Dollars to Euros on 1st Feb 2010, all bills generated thereafter will be generated in Euros.

When a bill is completed and adjustments are swept onto the bill, adjustments that are created in the currency which is different from the account's invoice currency will be converted to the account's invoice currency. The system will create a transfer adjustment for each adjustment that is converted to provide complete audit information. The adjustment type specified in the **Transfer Adjustment Type for Currency Conversion** option type of the **Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC)** feature configuration will be used for the conversion. The original adjustment and to-side of the transfer adjustment will be placed on the same match event.

Also, during bill completion, the Contract Type – Bill Completion algorithm type, **CREDIT-XFER**, which is usually specified on the credit contract, will automatically convert credit amounts in one currency to the invoice currency before distributing those credits.

Applying Payments

If you are using the Multi-Currency Accounts feature, you can apply payments in the currency which is different from the account's invoice currency. However, note that the currency used for payment cannot be different from the one used for billing.

When applying a payment, you can only select **Bill ID** as the match type. Also, all tenders for the same payment event must be in the same currency.

Monitoring Overdue Debt

Currency code is now optional while defining collection class overdue rules. When a batch job is processed, the Overdue Debt Monitor will search for overdue rules that match the account's collection class, division, and currency. If overdue rules for that combination are found, those rules will be executed. If the overdue rules are not found, the Overdue Debt Monitor will search for overdue rules that match the account's collection class and division. If overdue rules for that combination are found, those rules will be executed. If the overdue rules are not found, the account will be skipped.

Generating History

If the account has financial transactions in multiple currencies, zero appears throughout the **Current Balance** and **Payoff Balance** columns in the following screens:

- Account Financial History
- Contract Financial History
- View Account Financial Transaction History

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 7

Rules Engine

Topics:

- *Rule Type*
- *View Rule Type*
- *Rule*
- *View Rule*
- *Rule Check*

A rules engine executes one or more business rules in a runtime production environment. It allows you to define, execute, and maintain these business rules separately from the application code. You can then use these business rules in any program to facilitate operational decisions at runtime. For example, you might use business rules in the Collection module to decide the collection strategy or in the Banking module to derive charges codes or products for the transaction.

A rules engine allows you to classify these rules using the rule type. It also allows you to define the relationship between two or more rules and set the priority for each rule. When a calling program invokes these rules using the rule type, all effective rules with the specified rule type are executed, starting with the rule having highest priority. For example, a rule with the priority 10 will be executed before a rule with the priority 20.

Each rule contains one or more criteria. Depending on whether the criteria is satisfied, the system either executes the next criteria or indicates whether the rule is true or false. The rules engine allows you to define what should happen when the rule is true or false. In both the cases, you can enforce the system to either:

- Execute any dependent rule
- Execute a rule with the same rule type having lower priority
- Return the output parameters and their values to the calling program

You can define a criteria for a rule only using those parameters that are associated with the rule type. Also, when the rule is true, you can only return those parameters that are associated with the rule type to the calling programs. Therefore, in case you want to use any parameter in the rule, you have to associate it with the rule type as an input and output parameter.

A rules engine also allows you to execute preprocessing and postprocessing algorithms. A preprocessing algorithm is triggered before executing any criteria in the rule. It pre-processes the input parameters and then returns processed values against which the criteria is validated. A postprocessing algorithm is triggered after executing all criteria in the rule. It post-processes the output parameters and returns the updated values to the calling programs or dependent rules.

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides you with the Rule Check utility. It allows you to validate whether rules defined with a specific rule type get executed as expected. On validating, it indicates the sequence in which the rules were executed, the total execution time, and displays the output parameters of the rule that was successfully executed.

Rule Type

The **Rule Type** screen allows you to create, edit, delete, and copy a rule type. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 328

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for a rule type. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the rule type.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Rule Type	Displays the rule type.
Description	Displays the description of the rule type.
View	On clicking the **View** ( ) icon, the **View Rule Type** screen appears where you can view the details of the rule type.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Edit Rule Type** screen appears where you can edit the details of the rule type.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the rule type. **Note:** You can delete a rule type only if the rules are not yet defined using the rule type.
Copy	On clicking the **Copy** ( ) icon, the **Copy Rule Type** screen appears where you can create a rule type using an existing rule type.

You can create a new rule type by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a rule type	*Searching for a Rule Type* on page 329
How to view the details of a rule type	*Viewing the Rule Type Details* on page 333
How to create a rule type	*Creating a Rule Type* on page 329
How to edit a rule type	*Editing a Rule Type* on page 330
How to delete a rule type	*Deleting a Rule Type* on page 331
How to copy a rule type	*Copying a Rule Type* on page 332

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Searching for a Rule Type

Procedure

To search for a rule type:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **R** and then click **Rule Type**.

   The **Rule Type** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of rule types that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Rule Type screen	*Rule Type* on page 328
Search zone	*Search* on page 328

Creating a Rule Type

Prerequisites

To create a rule type, you should have:

- Fields that you want to use as parameters defined in the application

Procedure

To create a rule type:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **R** and then click the **Add** (+) icon corresponding to the **Rule Type** menu option.

   The **Add Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the rule type.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

In addition, it contains the **Input and Output Parameters** section. It allows you to specify the fields that you can use as input or output parameters while defining rules of this type. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Field	Used to specify the field name.	No

Tip: Alternatively, you can access the **Add Rule Type** screen by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone in the **Rule Type** screen.

4. Enter the required details.

   Note:

   You can search for a field by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

   If you want to associate more than one field with the rule type, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a field from the rule type, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

5. Click **Save**.

   The rule type is created.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Rule Type screen	*Rule Type* on page 328
Search zone	*Search* on page 328
How to search for a field	*Searching for a Field* on page 740

Editing a Rule Type

Prerequisites

To edit a rule type, you should have:

- Fields that you want to use as parameters defined in the application

Procedure

To edit a rule type:

1. Search for the rule type in the **Rule Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the rule type whose details you want to edit.

   The **Edit Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Displays the rule type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to modify the description of the rule type.	Yes

In addition, it contains the **Input and Output Parameters** section. It allows you to specify the fields that you can use as input or output parameters while defining rules of this type. This section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Field	Used to specify the field name.	No

Tip: Alternatively, you can access the **Edit Rule Type** screen by clicking the **Edit** link in the **View Rule Type** screen.

3. Modify the required details.

   Note:

   You can search for a field by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

   If you want to associate more than one field with the rule type, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a field from the rule type, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

   You can edit or remove a field from the rule type only if the field is not yet used as an input or output parameter in any rule created using this rule type.

4. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the rule type are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a rule type	*Searching for a Rule Type* on page 329
View Rule Type screen	*View Rule Type* on page 332
How to search for a field	*Searching for a Field* on page 740

Deleting a Rule Type

Procedure

To delete a rule type:

1. Search for the rule type in the **Rule Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the rule type that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the rule type.

   Note: You can delete a rule type only if the rules are not yet defined using the rule type.

3. Click **OK**.

   The rule type is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Rule Type screen	*Rule Type* on page 328
Search zone	*Search* on page 328

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copying a Rule Type

Instead of creating a rule type from scratch, you can also create a new rule type using an existing rule type. This process is called copying a rule type. When you copy a rule type, the parameters associated with the original rule type are copied to the new rule type. You can then add or remove parameters from the new rule type.

Prerequisites

To copy a rule type, you should have:

- Rule type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Fields that you want to use as parameters defined in the application

Procedure

To copy a rule type:

1. Search for the rule type in the **Rule Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** ( ) icon corresponding to the rule type whose copy you want to create.

   The **Copy Rule Type** screen appears.
3. Enter the new rule type and description for the new rule type.
4. Add or remove parameters from the new rule type.

   Note:

   You can search for a field by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

   If you want to associate more than one field with the rule type, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a field from the rule type, click the **Minus** () icon corresponding to the field.
5. Click **Save**.

   The new rule type is created.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Rule Type screen	*Rule Type* on page 328
Search zone	*Search* on page 328
How to search for a field	*Searching for a Field* on page 740

View Rule Type

The **View Rule Type** screen allows you to view the details of a rule type. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Rule Type Information* on page 332

Rule Type Information

The **Rule Type Information** zone displays information about the rule type. This zone contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description
Rule Type	Displays the rule type.
Description	Displays the description of the rule type.

The **Input and Output Parameters** section lists the fields that you can use as input or output parameters while defining rules of this type. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Field	Displays the transaction field name.
Field Type	Indicates whether the transaction field is an input or output parameter. The valid values are: • Input • Output

The **Edit** link appears in the upper-right corner of the **Rule Type Information** zone. On clicking the **Edit** link, the **Edit Rule Type** screen appears where you can edit the details of the rule type.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a rule type	*Viewing the Rule Type Details* on page 333

Viewing the Rule Type Details

Procedure

To view the details of a rule type:

1. Search for the rule type in the **Rule Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the rule type whose details you want to view.

   The **View Rule Type** screen appears.
3. View the details of the rule type in the **Rule Type Information** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a rule type	*Searching for a Rule Type* on page 329
View Rule Type screen	*View Rule Type* on page 332
Rule Type Information zone	*Rule Type Information* on page 332

Rule

The **Rule** screen allows you to define, edit, delete, and copy a rule. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 334

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for a rule. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Code	Used to specify the rule code.	No
Rule Type	Used to specify the type of rule.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the rule.	No
Rule Priority	Used to specify the priority of the rule.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the rule is effective.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Priority	Displays the priority of the rule.
Code	Displays the rule code.
Description	Displays the description of the rule.
Type	Displays the type of rule.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the rule is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the rule is effective.
Preprocessing Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered before executing the criteria in the rule. It pre-processes the input parameters and then returns processed values against which the criteria is validated.
Postprocessing Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered when the rule is true. It post-processes the output parameters and returns the updated values to the calling programs or dependent rules.
View	On clicking the **View** ( ) icon, the **View Rule** screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Edit Rule** screen appears where you can edit the details of the rule.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the rule. **Note:** You can delete a rule only if it is not used.
Copy	On clicking the **Copy** ( ) icon, the **Copy Rule** screen appears where you can create a rule using an existing rule.

You can create a new rule by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a rule	*Searching for a Rule* on page 335
How to view the details of a rule	*Viewing the Rule Details* on page 347
How to define a rule	*Defining a Rule* on page 335
How to edit a rule	*Editing a Rule* on page 339
How to delete a rule	*Deleting a Rule* on page 343
How to copy a rule	*Copying a Rule* on page 344

Searching for a Rule

Procedure

To search for a rule:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **R** and then click **Rule**.

   The **Rule** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of rules that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Rule screen	*Rule* on page 333
Search zone	*Search* on page 334

Defining a Rule

Prerequisites

To define a rule, you should have:

- Rule types defined in the application
- Preprocessing and postprocessing algorithms, dependent rules, and parameters defined in the application in case you want to use any of them

Procedure

To define a rule:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **R** and then click the **Add** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Rule** menu option.

   The **Add Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Code	Used to specify the rule code.	Yes
Rule Type	Used to specify the type of rule.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the rule.	Yes
Rule Priority	Used to specify the priority of the rule. **Note:** You cannot define two rules with the same rule type and priority in the same duration.	Yes
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the rule is effective.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the rule is effective. **Note:** The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	No
Preprocessing Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered before executing the criteria in the rule. It pre-processes the input parameters and then returns processed values against which the criteria is validated.	No
Postprocessing Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered when the rule is true. It post-processes the output parameters and returns the updated values to the calling programs or dependent rules.	No
Rule True Action	Used to indicate what should happen when all conditions in the rule are satisfied and returns **Rule is True**. The valid values are: • **Next Dependent Rule** — Used to indicate that the dependent rule should be executed when the rule is true. • **Next Rule by Priority** — Used to indicate that the rule of the same rule type having lower priority should be executed when the rule is true. • **Success** — Used to indicate that no more rules should be executed when the rule is true. The output parameters and their values are returned to the calling programs.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Dependent Rule	Used to specify the next dependent rule that must be executed when **Next Dependent Rule** is selected from the **Rule True Action** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you select **Next Dependent Rule** from the **Rule True Action** list.
Rule False Action	Used to indicate what should happen when any of the criteria in the rule is not satisfied and returns **Rule is False**. The valid values are: • **Next Dependent Rule** — Used to indicate that the dependent rule should be executed when the rule is false. • **Next Rule by Priority** — Used to indicate that the rule of the same rule type having lower priority should be executed when the rule is false. • **Success** — Used to indicate that no more rules should be executed when the rule is false. The output parameters and their values are returned to the calling programs.	Yes
Dependent Rule	Used to specify the next dependent rule that must be executed when **Next Dependent Rule** is selected from the **Rule False Action** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you select **Next Dependent Rule** from the **Rule False Action** list.

In addition, it contains the following two sections:

- **Rule Output Parameters** — Used to specify the output parameters that must be returned to the calling programs or dependent rules when all conditions in the rule are satisfied. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Name	Used to specify the parameter. **Note:** For more information about the output parameters that you can specify while defining a rule, see *Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination* on page 372.	Yes
Parameter Value	Used to specify the value for the parameter. **Note:** You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.	Yes

- **Criteria** — Used to define criteria for the rule. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Used to indicate the order in which the criteria should be executed in the rule.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Name	Used to indicate whether you want to specify a field or an algorithm as an input parameter. It also allows you to specify the field or algorithm name. **Note:** If a business label is defined for a user defined field (that you have selected), the business label appears in the **Parameter Name** field.	Yes
Operator	Used to specify the relational operator to define the relation between the parameter name and value.	Yes
Parameter Value	Used to specify the parameter value. **Note:** You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.	Yes
Is True	Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is true (satisfied). The valid values are: • **Check next condition** — Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed. • **Rule is false** — Used to indicate that the action specified in the **Rule False Action** field should be executed. • **Rule is true** — Used to indicate that the action specified in the **Rule True Action** field should be executed.	Yes
Is False	Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is false (not satisfied). The valid values are: • **Check next condition** — Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed. • **Rule is false** — Used to indicate that the action specified in the **Rule False Action** field should be executed. • **Rule is true** — Used to indicate that the action specified in the **Rule True Action** field should be executed.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Is Insufficient	Used to indicate what should happen when the data is insufficient. The valid values are: • **Check next condition** — Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed. • **Rule is false** — Used to indicate that the action specified in the **Rule False Action** field should be executed. • **Rule is true** — Used to indicate that the action specified in the **Rule True Action** field should be executed.	Yes

Tip: Alternatively, you can access the **Add Rule** screen by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone in the **Rule** screen.

4. Enter the required details.

   Note:

   You can search for a parameter, dependent rule and an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   If you want to associate more than one output parameter with the rule or define more than one criteria for the rule, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove an output parameter or a criteria from the rule, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to it.

5. Click **Save**.

   The rule is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Rule screen	*Rule* on page 333
Search zone	*Search* on page 334
How to search for a parameter	*Searching for a Parameter* on page 741
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732
How to search for a dependent rule	*Searching for a Dependent Rule* on page 739

Editing a Rule

Prerequisites

To edit a rule, you should have:

- Preprocessing and postprocessing algorithms, dependent rules, and parameters defined in the application in case you want to use any of them

Procedure

To edit a rule:

1. Search for the rule in the **Rule** screen.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the rule whose *d*etails you want to edit.

   The **Edit Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Code	Displays the rule code.	Not applicable
Rule Type	Displays the type of rule.	Not applicable
Description	Used to modify the description of the rule.	Yes
Rule Priority	Used to modify the priority of the rule. **Note:** You cannot define two rules with the same rule type and priority in the same duration.	Yes
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the rule is effective.	Not applicable
Effective End Date	Used to modify the date till when the rule is effective. **Note:** The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	No
Preprocessing Algorithm	Used to modify the algorithm that will be triggered before executing the criteria in the rule. It pre-processes the input parameters and then returns processed values against which the criteria is validated.	No
Postprocessing Algorithm	Used to modify the algorithm that will be triggered when the rule is true. It post-processes the output parameters and returns the updated values to the calling programs or dependent rules.	No
Rule True Action	Used to indicate what should happen when all conditions in the rule are satisfied and returns **Rule is True**. The valid values are: • **Next Dependent Rule** — Used to indicate that the dependent rule should be executed when the rule is true. • **Next Rule by Priority** — Used to indicate that the rule of the same rule type having lower priority should be executed when the rule is true. • **Success** — Used to indicate that no more rules should be executed when the rule is true. The output parameters and their values are returned to the calling programs.	Yes
Dependent Rule	Used to modify the next dependent rule that must be executed when **Next Dependent Rule** is selected from the **Rule True Action** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you select **Next Dependent Rule** from the **Rule True Action** list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule False Action	Used to indicate what should happen when any of the criteria in the rule is not satisfied and returns **Rule is False**. The valid values are: • **Next Dependent Rule** — Used to indicate that the dependent rule should be executed when the rule is false. • **Next Rule by Priority** — Used to indicate that the rule of the same rule type having lower priority should be executed when the rule is false. • **Success** — Used to indicate that no more rules should be executed when the rule is false. The output parameters and their values are returned to the calling programs.	Yes
Dependent Rule	Used to modify the next dependent rule that must be executed when **Next Dependent Rule** is selected from the **Rule False Action** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you select **Next Dependent Rule** from the **Rule False Action** list.

In addition, it contains the following two sections:

- **Rule Output Parameters** — Used to specify the output parameters that must be returned to the calling programs or dependent rules when all conditions in the rule are satisfied. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Name	Used to modify the parameter. **Note:** For more information about the output parameters that you can specify while defining a rule, see *Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination* on page 372.	Yes
Parameter Value	Used to modify the value of the parameter. **Note:** You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.	Yes

- **Criteria** — Used to define criteria for the rule. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Used to indicate the order in which the criteria should be executed in the rule.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Name	Used to indicate whether you want to specify a field or an algorithm as an input parameter. It also allows you to specify the field or algorithm name. **Note:** If a business label is defined for a user defined field (that you have selected), the business label appears in the **Parameter Name** field.	Yes
Operator	Used to modify the relational operator to define the relation between the parameter name and value.	Yes
Parameter Value	Used to modify the parameter value. **Note:** You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.	Yes
Is True	Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is true (satisfied). The valid values are: • **Check next condition** — Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed. • **Rule is false** — Used to indicate that the action specified in the **Rule False Action** field should be executed. • **Rule is true** — Used to indicate that the action specified in the **Rule True Action** field should be executed.	Yes
Is False	Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is false (not satisfied). The valid values are: • **Check next condition** — Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed. • **Rule is false** — Used to indicate that the action specified in the **Rule False Action** field should be executed. • **Rule is true** — Used to indicate that the action specified in the **Rule True Action** field should be executed.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Is Insufficient	Used to indicate what should happen when the data is insufficient. The valid values are: • **Check next condition** — Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed. • **Rule is false** — Used to indicate that the action specified in the **Rule False Action** field should be executed. • **Rule is true** — Used to indicate that the action specified in the **Rule True Action** field should be executed.	Yes

Tip: Alternatively, you can access the **Edit Rule** screen by clicking the **Edit** link in the **View Rule** screen.

3. Modify the required details.

   Note: You can search for a parameter, dependent rule and an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

4. Add or remove output parameters or criteria from the rule, if required.

   Note: If you want to associate more than one output parameter with the rule or define more than one criteria for the rule, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove an output parameter or a criteria from the rule, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to it.

5. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the rule are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Rule screen	*Rule* on page 333
Search zone	*Search* on page 334
How to search for a parameter	*Searching for a Parameter* on page 741
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732
How to search for a dependent rule	*Searching for a Dependent Rule* on page 739

Deleting a Rule

Procedure

To delete a rule:

1. Search for the rule in the **Rule** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the rule that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the rule.

   Note: You can delete a rule only if it is not used.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. Click **OK**.

   The rule is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Rule screen	*Rule* on page 333
Search zone	*Search* on page 334

Copying a Rule

Instead of creating a rule from scratch, you can also create a new rule using an existing rule. You can do this by copying a rule. When you copy a rule, the output parameters and criteria defined for the original rule are copied to the new rule. You can then add or remove parameters or criteria from the new rule.

Prerequisites

To copy a rule, you should have:

- Rule (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Preprocessing and postprocessing algorithms, dependent rules, and parameters defined in the application in case you want to use any of them

Procedure

To copy a rule:

1. Search for the rule in the **Rule** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** ( ) icon corresponding to the rule whose copy you want to create.

   The **Copy Rule** screen appears.
3. Enter the new rule code and the description for the new rule.
4. Modify the required details.
5. Add or remove output parameters or criteria from the new rule.

   Note:

   You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.

   You can search for a parameter, dependent rule and an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   If you want to associate more than one output parameter with the rule or define more than one criteria for the rule, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove an output parameter or a criteria from the rule, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to it.

   For more information about the output parameters that you can specify while defining a rule, see *Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination* on page 372.
6. Click **Save**.

   The new rule is defined.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Rule screen	*Rule* on page 333
Search zone	*Search* on page 334
How to define a rule	*Defining a Rule* on page 335
How to search for a parameter	*Searching for a Parameter* on page 741
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732
How to search for a dependent rule	*Searching for a Dependent Rule* on page 739

View Rule

The **View Rule** screen allows you to view the details of a rule. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Rule Information* on page 345

Rule Information

The **Rule Information** zone displays information about the rule. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Rule Code	Displays the rule code.
Rule Type	Indicates the type of rule.
Description	Displays the description of the rule.
Rule Priority	Indicates the priority of the rule. **Note:** You can use the **Move Up** ( ) and **Move Down** ( ) icons corresponding to this field to view the details of a rule (having the same rule type) with a higher or lower priority. Note that this functionality is available only when you access the **View Rule** screen through the **Rule** screen.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the rule is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the rule is effective.
Preprocessing Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered before executing the criteria in the rule. It pre-processes the input parameters and then returns processed values against which the criteria is validated.
Postprocessing Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered after executing the criteria in the rule. It post-processes the output parameters and returns the updated values to the calling programs or dependent rules.
Rule True Action	Indicates what should happen when all conditions in the rule are satisfied and returns **Rule is True**.
Dependent Rule	Indicates the next dependent rule that must be executed when **Next Dependent Rule** is selected from the **Rule True Action** list.
Rule False Action	Indicates what should happen when any of the criteria in the rule is not satisfied and returns **Rule is False**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description
Dependent Rule	Indicates the next dependent rule that must be executed when **Next Dependent Rule** is selected from the **Rule False Action** list.

In addition, it contains the following two sections:

- **Rule Output Parameters** — Lists the output parameters that must be returned to the calling programs or dependent rules when all conditions in the rule are satisfied. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter Name	Displays the name of the parameter. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to the **Field** screen.
Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter.

- **Criteria** — Lists the criteria defined in the rule. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence Number	Indicates the order in which the criteria should be executed in the rule.
Parameter Type	Indicates whether the input parameter is a field or an algorithm.
Parameter Name	Displays the field or algorithm name which is used as an input parameter.
Operator	Indicates the relational operator used to define the relation between the parameter name and value.
Parameter Value	Displays the parameter value.
Is True	Indicates what should happen when the condition is true (satisfied). The valid values are: • **Check next condition** — Indicates that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed. • **Rule is false** — Indicates that the action specified in the **Rule False Action** field should be executed. • **Rule is true** — Indicates that the action specified in the **Rule True Action** field should be executed.
Is False	Indicates what should happen when the condition is false (not satisfied). The valid values are: • **Check next condition** — Indicates that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed. • **Rule is false** — Indicates that the action specified in the **Rule False Action** field should be executed. • **Rule is true** — Indicates that the action specified in the **Rule True Action** field should be executed.
Is Insufficient	Indicates what should happen when the data is insufficient. The valid values are: • **Check next condition** — Indicates that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed. • **Rule is false** — Indicates that the action specified in the **Rule False Action** field should be executed. • **Rule is true** — Indicates that the action specified in the **Rule True Action** field should be executed.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Edit** link appears in the upper-right corner of the **Rule Information** zone. On clicking the **Edit** link, the **Edit Rule** screen appears where you can edit the details of the rule.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a rule	*Viewing the Rule Details* on page 347

Viewing the Rule Details

Procedure

To view the details of a rule:

1. Search for the rule in the **Rule** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the rule whose *d*etails you want to view.

   The **View Rule** screen appears.
3. View the details of the rule in the **Rule Information** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a rule	*Searching for a Rule* on page 335
View Rule screen	*View Rule* on page 345
Rule Information zone	*Rule Information* on page 345

Rule Check

The **Rule Check** screen allows you to validate whether rules of a particular rule type are executed as expected. On validating, it indicates the sequence in which all effective rules were executed, the total execution time, and the output parameters of the rule that was successfully executed. This screen consists of the following sections:

- *Rule Type Input Parameters*
- *Rule Output Parameters*
- *Rule Execution*

Rule Type Input Parameters

The **Rule Type Input Parameters** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type.	Yes
Effective Date	Used when you want to execute the rules which are effective on a particular date. **Note:** If you do not specify the effective date, the system executes all rules which are effective on the system date.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Name	Indicates the input parameter. **Note:** The input parameters listed change depending on the rule type that you have selected.	Not applicable
Parameter Value	Used to specify the value for the input parameter.	Yes

In addition, this section contains the **Check Rule** button. On clicking the button, you can validate the sequence in which the rules with the specified rule type are executed.

Rule Output Parameters

The **Rule Output Parameters** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Status	Displays the status of the rule execution. The valid values are: • **Success** — Indicates that one of the rule was successfully executed and returned the output parameters. • **Fail** — Indicates that none of the rules with the specified rule type were successfully executed. • **Error** — Indicates that an error occurred while executing a rule.
Execution Time	Displays the total time taken to execute all effective rules with the specified rule type.
Error	Displays the error message indicating the error that occurred while executing a rule. **Note:** This field appears only when the status is **Error**.

In addition, this section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter Name	Displays the output parameter of the rule that was successfully executed.
Parameter Value	Displays the value of the output parameter.

Rule Execution

The **Rule Execution** section indicates the sequence in which all effective rules with the specified rule type were executed. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Rule Code	Indicates the rule that was executed.
Rule Type	Indicates the type of rule.
Rule Priority	Indicates the priority of the rule.
Rule Status Flag	Indicates whether the rule was true or false.
Rule Next Action	Indicates the action that took place when the rule was true or false.

Validating Effective Rules

Procedure

To validate effective rules with a particular rule type:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **R** and then click **Rule Check**.

   The **Rule Check** screen appears.
4. Select the rule type from the list to indicate the type of rules you want to validate.

   The input parameters are listed depending on the rule type that you have selected.
5. Enter the value for the input parameters using which you want to validate the rules.

   Note: You must specify the value for at least one input parameter while validating rules in the **Rule Check** screen.
6. Click **Check Rule**.

   The effective rules with the specified rule type are executed based on the priority defined for each rule. The status of the rule execution and the total execution time along with the output parameters are displayed in the **Rule Output Parameters** section. In addition, you can view the sequence in which all effective rules were executed in the **Rule Execution** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Rule Check screen	*Rule Check* on page 347

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 8

Alternate Sequential Invoice Numbers

Topics:

- *Setting Alternate Sequential Invoice Numbers*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing now allows you to configure the application to generate alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers which can be either unique across the globe or within the division. The **Assign Sequential Bill Numbers (ASSGNSBN)** batch allows you to generate alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers. However, you can only generate alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers for bills that are complete and for which the alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers are not yet generated.

This batch contains the **DIV-RESTRICT** parameter. It allows you to specify whether you want to generate alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers only for bills generated in a specific division. For example, if you specify `NEWYK` as the value for the **DIV-RESTRICT** parameter, the system will generate alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers only for bills generated in New York.

However, if you do not specify any value for the **DIV-RESTRICT** parameter, the system will generate alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers for bills generated in all divisions.

Setting Alternate Sequential Invoice Numbers

Procedure

To set alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **I** and then click **Installation Options**.

   The **Installation Options** screen appears.
4. Click the **Billing** tab.

   The **Billing** tab appears.
5. Select the **Use Sequential Bill Numbers** check box to indicate that you want to generate alternate sequential *b*ill or invoice numbers.

   The **Sequential Invoice** and **Sequence Generation Algorithm** fields are enabled.
6. Select the **System-wide** or **Division-specific** option from the **Sequential Invoice** list depending on whether *y*ou want alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers to be unique across the globe or within the division.
7. Do either of the following:

If you want	Then
Alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers to be unique across the globe	1. Enter the algorithm code in the **Sequence Generation Algorithm** field to indicate how the alternate bill or invoice numbers which are unique across the globe should be sequenced. **Note:** The **C1_ALTBLLSYS** is a standard algorithm that is shipped with ORMB. It allows you to generate alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers which are unique across the globe. You can use this standard algorithm or create your own algorithm with custom logic. 2. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area. The changes made to the installation options are saved.
Alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers to be unique within the division	1. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area. The changes made to the installation options are saved. 2. Search for the division for which you want to generate alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers which are unique within the division. The **Division** screen appears. 3. Click the **Algorithms** tab. The **Algorithms** tab appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If you want	Then
	4. Select the **Sequential Bill Number Generation** option from the **Division Algorithm Entity** list. 5. Enter the sequence number to indicate the order in which the algorithms with the same entity should be executed. 6. Enter the algorithm code in the respective field to indicate how alternate bill or invoice numbers which are unique within the division should be sequenced. **Note:** The **C1_ALTBLLDIV** is a standard algorithm that is shipped with ORMB. It allows you to generate alternate sequential bill or invoice numbers which are unique within the division. You can use this standard algorithm or create your own algorithm with custom logic. 7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area. The changes made to the division are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Alternate Sequential Invoice Numbers	*Alternate Sequential Invoice Numbers* on page 351

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 9

Currency Conversion

Topics:

- *Prerequisites*
- *Bill Segment Generation*
- *Adjustment Creation*
- *Payment and Tender Creation*
- *Transaction Aggregation*
- *FT GL Creation*
- *Manage Exchange Rates*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing supports currency conversion using an exchange rate. The currency conversion feature is used only when the multi-currency accounts feature is enabled. In other words, you can use the currency conversion feature only when the **Allow Multi-Currency Accounts** option type of the **Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC)** feature configuration is set to **Y**.

The currency conversion can take place during the following business processes which are configured in the system:

- Bill Segment Generation
- Adjustment Creation
- Payment and Tender Creation
- FT GL Creation
- Transaction Aggregation

To enable the currency conversion feature, you need to attach the currency conversion algorithm at the division level. The system facilitates you to define different conversion currency algorithm for each business process. The currency conversion feature functions only when the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

The system allows you to define global and division-specific exchange rates. The system might use the direct division-specific or global exchange rate (i.e. FROM CCY to TO CCY) or direct reverse division-specific or global exchange rate (i.e. TO CCY to FROM CCY) during currency conversion. If either direct or direct reverse exchange rate is not available, the system might use division-specific or global exchange rate through base currency during currency conversion. You can define the order in which exchange rate must be searched in the currency conversion algorithm.

While converting the amount from the source currency to the target currency (i.e. FROM CCY to TO CCY), the system uses the precision (i.e. decimal positions) of the target currency (i.e. TO CCY). For example, if you set the decimal positions for USD and INR to 1 and 2, respectively, the system uses 1 decimal position during currency conversion from INR to USD.

The system provides you with a facility to define whether you want to enable or disable the currency conversion feature for a rate component. If the currency conversion feature is enabled for a rate component, the currency conversion will take place while generating bill segments for the rate (i.e. rate component) based billable charges.

Prerequisites

To setup the currency conversion feature, you need to do the following:

- Set the following option types of the **Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC)** feature configuration:
  - Allow Multi-Currency Accounts
  - Transfer Adjustment Type
  - Reason Code for Cancelling Original Adjustment
- Set the **Allow Currency Conversion** field for each rate component to either **Yes** or **No** depending on whether you want to enable the currency conversion feature for the rate (i.e. rate component) based billable charges
- Create an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGBS** algorithm type and attach it to the **Currency Conversion For Bill Segments** algorithm spot of the division when you want to enable currency conversion during:
  - Bill Segment Generation
  - FT GL Creation for Bill Segments
- Create an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGAD** algorithm type and attach it to the **Currency Conversion For Adjustments** algorithm spot of the division when you want to enable currency conversion during:
  - Adjustment Creation
  - FT GL Creation for Adjustments
- Create an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGPY** algorithm type and attach it to the **Currency Conversion For Payments** algorithm spot of the division when you want to enable currency conversion during:
  - Payment and Tender Creation
  - FT GL Creation for Payments
- Create an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGTFM** algorithm type and attach it to the **Currency Conversion For Transaction Feed Management** algorithm spot of the division when you want to enable currency conversion during transaction aggregation
- Create an algorithm of the **FTFREZGLEXTN** algorithm type and attach it on the **FT Freeze** system event of the customer class for which you want to create FT GL extension
- Define the required exchange rates for currency conversion

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
FTFREZGLEXTN algorithm type	*FTFREZGLEXTN* on page 778
C1_CURALGBS algorithm type	*C1_CURALGBS* on page 772
C1_CURALGAD algorithm type	*C1_CURALGAD* on page 773
C1_CURALGPY algorithm type	*C1_CURALGPY* on page 775
C1_CURALGTFM algorithm type	*C1_CURALGTFM* on page 777
How to set the **Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC)** feature configuration	*Setting the Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC) Feature Configuration* on page 756
How to define an exchange rate	*Defining an Exchange Rate* on page 365

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Bill Segment Generation

The system allows you to generate bill segments using the following:

- **Pass through billable charges** — If the pass through billable charges have a bill line currency which is different from the account's invoice currency, the bill line amount is converted into the account's invoice currency during the bill segment generation.
- **Rate based billable charges** — If the rate based billable charges have a pricing currency which is different from the account's invoice currency, the amount is converted into the account's invoice currency during the bill segment generation.

In addition, during the post processing bill segment generation, if the pricing currency is different from the account's invoice currency, then the amount is converted into the account's invoice currency. The currency conversion is done only when you have an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGBS** algorithm type attached on the **Currency Conversion For Bill Segments** algorithm spot of the respective division. In addition, the currency conversion is done for rate based billable charges only when the **Allow Currency Conversion** field in the respective rate component is set to **Yes**. Otherwise, the currency conversion will not happen. If the required exchange rate is not available during currency conversion, the status of the bill segment will change to **Error**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
C1_CURALGBS algorithm type	*C1_CURALGBS* on page 772

Adjustment Creation

There might be situations when the adjustment currency is different from the account's invoice currency. The system enables you to determine whether currency conversion must be done during adjustment creation or during bill completion. If you clear the **Print by Default** check box in the respective adjustment type, the currency conversion takes place during adjustment creation. However, if you select the **Print by Default** check box in the respective adjustment type, the currency conversion takes place during bill completion and not during adjustment creation. A transfer adjustment is created when you complete the next bill of the account.

The system creates the transfer adjustment using the adjustment type specified in the **Transfer Adjustment Type** option type of the **Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC)** feature configuration. Once the transfer adjustment is created, the original adjustment is cancelled in the system. On cancelling an adjustment, the system records the reason why the adjustment was cancelled. In case of transfer adjustments, the system uses the reason code specified in the **Reason Code for Cancelling Original Adjustment** option type of the **Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC)** feature configuration.

The currency conversion is done only when you have an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGAD** algorithm type attached on the **Currency Conversion For Adjustments** algorithm spot of the respective division. Otherwise, the currency conversion will not happen. If the required exchange rate is not available during currency conversion, the transfer adjustment will not be created.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
C1_CURALGAD algorithm type	*C1_CURALGAD* on page 773

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Payment and Tender Creation

If the payment currency is different from the account's invoice currency, the amount is converted into the account's invoice currency during payment and tender creation. The currency conversion is done only when you have an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGPY** algorithm type attached on the **Currency Conversion For Payments** algorithm spot of the respective division. Otherwise, the currency conversion will not happen. If the required exchange rate is not available during currency conversion, the payment and tenders will not be created.

Note:

The currency conversion feature is available only when the payment currency (i.e. tender currency) is different from the payor account's invoice currency and not when the payor account's invoice currency is different from the payee account's invoice currency.

The currency conversion feature for payments is currently not supported from the **Payment Portal** screen and while uploading payment data from an external source.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
C1_CURALGPY algorithm type	*C1_CURALGPY* on page 775

Transaction Aggregation

If the transaction or user defined (UDF) currency is different from the pricing currency, the amount is converted into the pricing currency when you are aggregating transactions based on the transaction or UDF amount. The currency conversion is done only when you have an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGTFM** algorithm type attached on the **Currency Conversion For Transaction Feed Management** algorithm spot of the respective division. Otherwise, the currency conversion will not happen. If the required exchange rate is not available during currency conversion, the status of the transaction will change to **Error**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
C1_CURALGTFM algorithm type	*C1_CURALGTFM* on page 777

FT GL Creation

During FT GL creation, the system creates an FT GL extension when the account's invoice currency is different from the division's base currency. The FT GL extension is created for the following financial transaction (FT) types:

- Adjustment
- Adjustment Cancellation
- Bill Segment
- Bill Cancellation
- Pay Segment
- Pay Cancellation

The FT GL extension is created for bill segments only when you have an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGBS** algorithm type attached on the **Currency Conversion For Bill Segments** algorithm spot of the respective division. The FT GL

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

extension is created for payments only when you have an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGPY** algorithm type attached on the **Currency Conversion For Payments** algorithm spot of the respective division. The FT GL extension is created for adjustments only when you have an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGAD** algorithm type attached on the **Currency Conversion For Adjustments** algorithm spot of the respective division. Otherwise, the currency conversion will not happen and the FT GL extension will not be created. In addition, if the required exchange rate is not available during currency conversion, the FT GL extension will not be created.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
FTFREZGLEXTN algorithm type	*FTFREZGLEXTN* on page 778
C1_CURALGBS algorithm type	*C1_CURALGBS* on page 772
C1_CURALGAD algorithm type	*C1_CURALGAD* on page 773
C1_CURALGPY algorithm type	*C1_CURALGPY* on page 775

Manage Exchange Rates

The **Manage Exchange Rates** screen allows you to define exchange rates for currency conversion. You can define global and division-specific exchange rates. The system might use the direct division-specific or global exchange rate (i.e. FROM CCY to TO CCY) or direct reverse division-specific or global exchange rate (i.e. TO CCY to FROM CCY) during currency conversion. If either direct or direct reverse exchange rate is not available, the system might use division-specific or global exchange rate through base currency during currency conversion. For example, if the FROM CCY is Canadian Dollars, TO CCY is Japanese Yen, and the division's base currency is U.S. Dollars, the system will first convert the amount from Canadian Dollars to U.S. Dollars and then convert the amount from U.S. Dollars to Japanese Yen.

You can define the order, in which exchange rate must be searched, in the currency conversion algorithm. The valid search orders are **Direct Rate First** and **Division First**. If you use the **Direct Rate First** search order, the system searches for an exchange rate in the specified order:

1. Division-specific direct exchange rate
2. Global direct exchange rate
3. Division-specific direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
4. Global direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
5. Division-specific exchange rate through base currency
6. Division-specific reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
7. Global exchange rate through base currency
8. Global reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)

If you use the **Division First** search order, the system searches for an exchange rate in the specified order:

1. Division-specific direct exchange rate
2. Division-specific direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
3. Division-specific exchange rate through base currency
4. Division-specific reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
5. Global direct exchange rate
6. Global direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
7. Global exchange rate through base currency

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

8. Global reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)

The following attributes are required while defining an exchange rate:

- Source currency code
- Target currency code
- Rate of exchange (this is the number of units of the target currency that is equivalent to a single unit of the source currency)
- Date from when the exchange rate is effective
- Date till when the exchange rate is effective
- Conversion type

For division-specific exchange rates, the end date is optional. If you want the end date to be mandatory, you must set the **End Date Required for Division Override** option type of the **C1_EXCHRATE** feature configuration to **Y**.

The **Manage Exchange Rates** screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search Exchange Rate* on page 360
- *Edit Exchange Rate* on page 361
- *Create Exchange Rate* on page 362

Search Exchange Rate

The **Search Exchange Rate** zone allows you to search for the exchange rates that are already defined in the system. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
From Currency	Used to specify the source currency.	No
To Currency	Used to specify the target currency.	No
Division	Used to specify the division to which the exchange rate belongs. You must use this field only when you are searching for division specific exchange rates. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Conversion Type	Used to specify the conversion type. The valid values are: • Regular	No
Start Date	Used when you want to search for exchange rates which are effective from a particular date onwards.	No
End Date	Used when you want to search for exchange rates which are effective till a particular date.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an exchange rate.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
From Currency	Displays the source currency.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
To Currency	Displays the target currency.
Division	Displays the division to which the exchange rate belongs. **Note:** In case of a global exchange rate, this column will not have any value.
Conversion Type	Displays the conversion type.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the exchange rate is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the exchange rate is effective. **Note:** The global exchange rates will not have an end date.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate.
Spread	Displays the spread value for the exchange rate, if any.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the exchange rate, the **Edit Exchange Rate** zone appears with the details of the respective exchange rate.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search an exchange rate	*Searching for an Exchange Rate* on page 363

Edit Exchange Rate

The **Edit Exchange Rate** zone allows you to edit the details of an exchange rate. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
From Currency	Displays the source currency.	Not applicable
To Currency	Displays the target currency.	Not applicable
Division	Displays the division to which the exchange rate belongs. **Note:** In case of a global exchange rate, this field will not have any value.	Not applicable
Conversion Type	Displays the conversion type.	Not applicable
Start Date	Displays the date from when the exchange rate is effective.	Not applicable
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the exchange rate is effective. **Note:** This field is blank and non-editable when you are editing a global exchange rate. The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If the **End Date Required for Division Override** option type of the **C1_EXCHRATE** feature configuration is set to **Y**, this field is required when you are editing a division specific exchange rate.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Exchange Rate	Used to specify the exchange rate value. **Note:** The system provides you with the facility to specify the exchange rate value with a precision of up to 18 decimal places (0.000000000000000001).	Yes
Spread	Used to specify the spread value for the exchange rate.	No
Inverse Rate	Displays the inverse rate value for the current exchange rate. This is automatically calculated and displayed in this zone.	Not applicable

This zone contains the following two buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to save the changes made in this zone.
Delete	Used to delete the exchange rate from the system.

By default, the **Edit Exchange Rate** zone does not appear in the **Manage Exchange Rates** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the exchange rate in the **Search Exchange Rate** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit an exchange rate	*Editing an Exchange Rate* on page 364
How to delete an exchange rate	*Deleting an Exchange Rate* on page 364

Create Exchange Rate

The **Create Exchange Rate** zone allows you to define an exchange rate. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
From Currency	Used to specify the source currency.	Yes
To Currency	Used to specify the target currency.	Yes
Division	Used to specify the division to which the exchange rate belongs. **Note:** If you want to create a global exchange rate, then do not specify the division.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are creating a division specific exchange rate.
Conversion Type	Used to specify the conversion type. The valid values are: • Regular	Yes
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the exchange rate is effective.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the exchange rate is effective. **Note:** If you want to create a global exchange rate, then do not specify the end date because global exchange rates do not have an end date. The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If the **End Date Required for Division Override** option type of the **C1_EXCHRATE** feature configuration is set to **Y**, this field is required when you are creating a division specific exchange rate.
Exchange Rate	Used to specify the exchange rate value. **Note:** The system provides you with the facility to specify the exchange rate value with a precision of up to 18 decimal places (0.000000000000000001).	Yes
Spread	Used to specify the spread value for the exchange rate.	No

This zone contains the following two buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to create the exchange rate.
Cancel	Used to clear the fields in this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an exchange rate	*Defining an Exchange Rate* on page 365
How to set the **C1_EXCHRATE** feature configuration	*Setting the C1_EXCHRATE Feature Configuration* on page 766

Searching for an Exchange Rate

Prerequisites

To search for an exchange rate, you should have:

- Divisions and currency codes defined in the application

Procedure

To search for an exchange rate:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Manage Exchange Rates**.

   The **Manage Exchange Rates** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Exchange Rate** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all the input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of exchange rates that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Manage Exchange Rates screen	*Manage Exchange Rates* on page 359
Search Exchange Rate zone	*Search Exchange Rate* on page 360

Editing an Exchange Rate

Procedure

To edit an exchange rate:

1. Search for the exchange rate in the **Manage Exchange Rates** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the exchange rate whose details you want to edit.

   The **Edit Exchange Rate** zone appears.
3. Modify the details of the exchange rate, such as end date, exchange rate value, and spread value, if required.

   Note: If the **End Date Required for Division Override** option type of the **C1_EXCHRATE** feature configuration is set to **Y**, the end date is required when you are creating a division specific exchange rate. The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.
4. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the exchange rate are saved.
5. Click the **Refresh** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes are reflected in the **Search Exchange Rate** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an exchange rate	*Searching for an Exchange Rate* on page 363
Edit Exchange Rate zone	*Edit Exchange Rate* on page 361
How to set the **C1_EXCHRATE** feature configuration	*Setting the C1_EXCHRATE Feature Configuration* on page 766

Deleting an Exchange Rate

Procedure

To delete an exchange rate:

1. Search for the exchange rate in the **Manage Exchange Rates** screen.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the exchange rate that you want *t*o delete.

   The **Edit Exchange Rate** zone appears.

3. Click **Delete**.

   The exchange rate is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	**See...**
How to search for an exchange rate	*Searching for an Exchange Rate* on page 363
Edit Exchange Rate zone	*Edit Exchange Rate* on page 361

Defining an Exchange Rate

Prerequisites

To define an exchange rate, you should have:

- Divisions and currency codes defined in the application

Procedure

To define an exchange rate:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Manage Exchange Rates**.

   The **Manage Exchange Rates** screen appears.

4. In the **Create Exchange Rate** zone, select the source and target currency from the **From Currency** and **To Currency** list, respectively.

5. Select the division if you want to create division specific exchange rate.

   Note: You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.

6. Enter the date from when the exchange rate is effective in the **Start Date** field.

7. Enter the date till when the exchange rate is effective in the **End Date** field.

   Note: If the **End Date Required for Division Override** option type of the **C1_EXCHRATE** feature configuration is set to **Y**, the end date is required when you are creating a division specific exchange rate. The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.

8. Enter the exchange rate value in the respective field.

9. Click **Save**.

   The exchange rate is defined in the system.

   Note: The system will validate whether the exchange rate overlaps any existing exchange rate with the same division and conversion type combination. If yes, the system will not allow you to save the exchange rate.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Manage Exchange Rates screen	*Manage Exchange Rates* on page 359
Create Exchange Rate zone	*Create Exchange Rate* on page 362
How to set the **C1_EXCHRATE** feature configuration	*Setting the C1_EXCHRATE Feature Configuration* on page 766

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 10

Transaction Feed Management

Topics:

- *Transaction Feed Management Process*
- *Feed Status Transition*
- *Transaction Status Transition*
- *Transaction Leg Status Transition*
- *CSV File Format*
- *Error List*
- *Feed Management Dashboard*
- *View Billed Transactions*
- *Transaction Details*
- *Transaction Source*
- *Transaction Record Type*
- *Transaction Aggregation Rule*
- *Product SQIs*
- *Schedule*
- *Disaggregation Request*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides you with a facility to upload banking transactions received from various product processors or banking applications for billing. You can use Oracle Data Integrator (ODI) to upload transaction data files in various formats, such as CSV, XML, and Fixed Length. Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides an out of box sample interface with ODI that maps the flat file in .CSV format to various tables (such as, Transaction Header and Transaction Detail) in the system. You can customize the sample interface to support various other file formats, such as XML and Fixed Length. You can also upload transaction data directly from various product processors or banking applications.

In case you want to use the sample interface, you need to ensure that the CSV file is in the required format. For more information about the CSV file format, see *CSV File Format* on page 408.

Once the transaction data is uploaded in the system, you need to:

- Validate Header Details
- Validate Transaction Details and Determine Initial Product
- Verify Product Pricing
- Create and Update Billable Charge with the SQI values
- Clean-up Unwanted Data

During the transaction feed management process, each transaction goes through various statuses until it is billed to the customer. For more information about the transaction statuses, see *Transaction Status Transition* on page 398.

To setup the transaction feed management process, you need to define the following:

- Transaction Source
- Transaction Record Type
- Product SQIs
- Transaction Aggregation Rule
- Aggregation Schedule
- Rules for Initial Product Determination
- Validation Algorithm for Account Identifier Type (to ensure that the account identifier type and account identifier combination is unique in or across divisions)
- Price Assignment Search algorithm for each division

- Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management characteristic for each division
- Values for the PAGE_NUMBER lookup field

Besides this, you need to setup the following feature configurations:

- *Rule Engine (C1_RLENG)*
- *Dummy Header (C1-TXNDMYID)*
- *Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)*
- *Feed Management (C1_FM)*

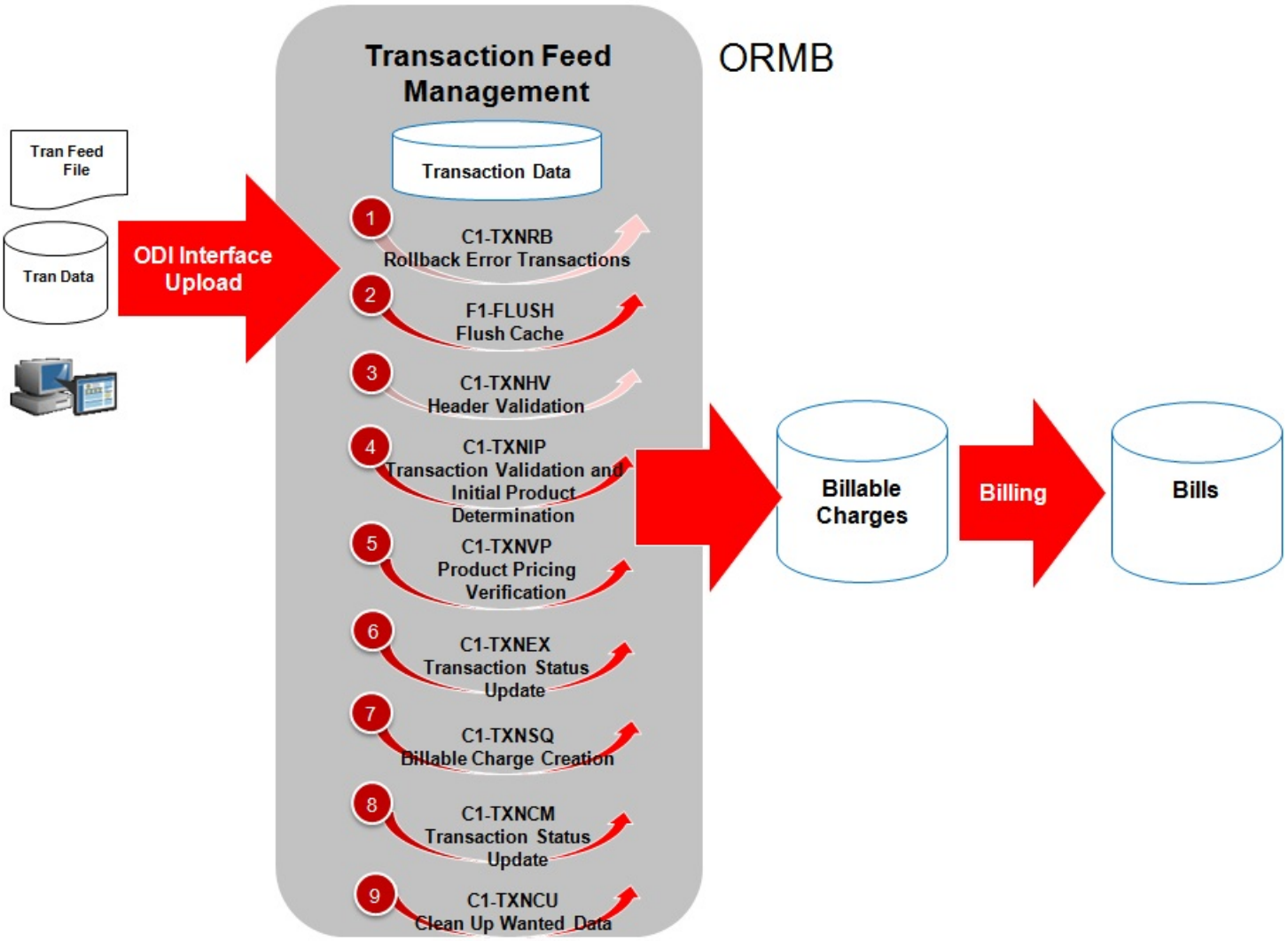
Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Transaction Feed Management Process

The transaction feed management process includes the following sub-processes:

- *Header Validation* on page 370
- *Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination* on page 372
- *Product Pricing Verification* on page 380
- *Aggregation* on page 383
- *Clean Up* on page 386
- *Disaggregation* on page 388
- *Cancellation* on page 393
- *Rollback* on page 396

The following figure graphically explains the transaction feed management process:



Note that during the transaction aggregation process, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

1. Flush All Caches (F1-FLUSH)
2. Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)

   Note:

   You can cache the product pricing information, and thereby improve the **Product Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** batch performance. If you set the **Materialized View Used** option type of the **C1_FM** feature configuration to **true**, the system will cache the product pricing information in the following tables:

   - CI_PRC_AGRD
   - CI_PRC_PL
   - CI_PRC_INH_PL

   But, if you set the **Materialized View Used** option type of the **C1_FM** feature configuration to **false**, the system will not cache the product pricing information. If there are any pricing changes, you will have to update this cache using the **Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)** batch.
3. Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)

   Note: The **Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)** batch is optional. You can directly execute the **Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1-TXNIP)** batch once the transactions are uploaded in the system.
4. Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1-TXNIP)
5. Product Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)
6. Update Status (C1-TXNEX)
7. Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)
8. Mark Completion (C1-TXNCM)
9. Clean Up (C1-TXNCU) with the **Request Type** parameter set to **EROR**

Note:

Before you start the transaction aggregation process, you need to execute the **Flush All Caches (F1-FLUSH)** batch to clean the cache. This batch has one parameter named **DIST-THD-POOL** which allows you to clean cache of a particular thread pool. In case you want to reprocess the error transactions from the earlier cycle, you need to execute the **Rollback (C1-TXNRB)** batch.

The system allows you to execute each batch consecutively. You can execute the **Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1-TXNIP)** batch consecutively with the same division and same parameters, or with the different division and different parameters. But, you cannot execute the **Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1-TXNIP)** batch consecutively with the same division and different parameters. For example, once you execute this batch with division as D1 and transaction source as S1, you cannot execute this batch again with division as D1 and transaction source as S2.

Once the **Product Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** batch is executed, you cannot execute the **Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1-TXNIP)** batch again with the same division and same parameters unless and until the transaction aggregation cycle is complete.

During the transaction aggregation process, you must specify the same division and same parameters across each batch. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

If you have already executed the **Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1-TXNIP)** batch without any division, then you cannot execute this batch once again with a division unless and until the transaction aggregation cycle is complete.

Header Validation

Once the file is uploaded in the system, you can execute the **Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)** batch to validate the file or header level information. It checks whether:

- Transaction Header ID and Transaction Source is available in the header.
- At least one transaction record is available in the file.
- The number of transaction records in the file matches the total transaction records in the header.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- The sum of transaction amount matches the total transaction amount in the header.
- The sum of transaction volume matches the total transaction volume in the header.
- File with the same header date and transaction header ID is not available in the system.

If the file or header information is validated successfully, the status of the file or feed is changed to **Validated (VALI)** and the status of all transactions in the feed remains as **Uploaded (UPLD)**. However, if the header validation fails, the status of the feed and all transactions in the feed is changed to **Invalid (INVL)**.

The **Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)** batch is a multi-threaded batch. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	**Description**	**Mandatory (Yes or No)**
Transaction Source	Used when you want to validate transaction feeds received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to validate a particular transaction feed.	No
Checksum Validation Required	Used to indicate whether the following should be validated: • The number of transaction records in the file matches the total transaction records in the header. • The sum of transaction amount matches the total transaction amount in the header. • The sum of transaction volume matches the total transaction volume in the header. The valid values are: • Y • N	No
Duplicate Check Required	Used to indicate whether the following should be validated: • File with the same header date and external header ID is not available in the system. The valid values are: • Y • N **Note:** If the file or feed with the same header date and external header ID is already available in the system, an error message occurs indicating that the duplicate file already exists in the system. The duplicate check is done only against the files or feeds which are in the **Validated (VALI)** status and not against the feeds which are in the **Uploaded (UPLD)** status.	No
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: While uploading the CSV file from ODI, the default header record is created when the header information is not available in the CSV file. The **Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)** batch does not validate the default header record.

Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination

This process includes the following three sub-processes:

- **Transaction Validation** — In this sub-process, the transaction records are validated. The transaction level validations are done to check the integrity of the data. During the transaction validation, the system checks whether:
  - Transaction source is defined in the system.
  - Transaction record type is defined for the transaction source in the system.
  - Division and currencies are defined in the system.
  - The account with the specified account identifier, account identifier type and division exists in the system.
  - User ID (if available in the transaction information) is defined in the system.
  - The value other than 'Y' or 'N' is not specified in the Manual Switch column.
  - The value other than '+' or '-' is not specified in the Credit/Debit Indicator column.
  - Transaction Amount is specified when Transaction Currency is specified, and vice versa.
  - Additional Amount 1 is specified when Amount 1 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
  - Additional Amount 2 is specified when Amount 2 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
  - Additional Amount 3 is specified when Amount 3 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
  - Additional Amount 4 is specified when Amount 4 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
  - Additional Amount 5 is specified when Amount 5 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.

  If the transaction information is invalid or incorrect (for example, division is invalid), the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**. But, if the transaction information is not available, the status of the transaction is changed to **Invalid (INVL)**.
- **Initial Product Determination** — Once the transaction records are validated, the account which will bear the charges for the transaction and the product and variance parameter or product parameters to which the transaction will be mapped are determined using certain business rules. These business rules are invoked through a rule type. Depending on the transaction record type, a rule type is invoked for each transaction. The effective rules with the specified rule type are executed, starting with the rule having highest priority, until a rule is satisfied. For example, a rule with the priority 10 will be executed before a rule with the priority 20.

  Note:

  The system determines rules and product parameters which are effective based on the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic defined for the division to which the transaction belongs. If the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic type is set to `BATCH_DT`, the system executes the rules which are effective on the batch business date. However, if the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic type is set to `TXN_DT`, the system executes the rules which are effective on the transaction date. Note that the transaction date must be earlier than or equal to the batch business date. And, if the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic is not defined for the division to which the transaction belongs, the system (by default) executes the rules which are effective on the transaction date.

  The system uses the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic which is effective on the transaction date.

  Each rule contains one or more conditions or criteria. For example, Rule A states that if the transaction record type is R001 and the division is New York, then set the following output parameters:
  - ACCT_NO1_Val — Account 1

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- DIVISION1_VAL — D1
- PRODUCT1_1_Val — Product X

Here, Transaction Record Type = R001 and Division = New York are two conditions. If these two conditions in the rule are satisfied, then set three output parameters — ACCT_NO1_Val, DIVISION1_VAL and PRODUCT1_1_Val. Now, when this rule is executed and the transaction satisfies this criteria, the transaction is mapped to Product X and Account 1 which belongs to D1 bears the charges for the transaction. In case, the rule has four output parameters (ACCT_NO1_Val set to Account 1, DIVISION1_VAL set to D1, PRODUCT1_1 Val set to Product X, and PRODUCT1_2_Val set to Product Y), the transaction will be mapped to both the products (i.e. Product X and Product Y) and Account 1 which belongs to D1 bears the charges for the transaction. A transaction can be mapped to one or more products or to one or more product and TOU (variance parameter) combinations. If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can map a transaction to one or more product and product parameters combinations. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Rule B states that if the transaction is performed in US and the transaction amount exceeds 1000 USD, then set the following output parameters:

- ACCT_NO1_Val — Account A
- DIVISION1_VAL — D1
- PRODUCT1_1_Val — Product X
- PCD1_1_1_VAL — Country
- PVL1_1_1_VAL — US
- PCD1_1_2_VAL — Currency
- PVL1_1_2_VAL — USD
- PRODUCT1_2_Val — Product Y
- PCD1_2_1_VAL — Country
- PVL1_2_1_VAL — US
- PCD1_2_2_VAL — Currency
- PVL1_2_2_VAL — USD

Now, when this rule is executed and the transaction satisfies the criteria, Account A which belongs to D1 bears the charges for the transaction which is mapped to the following product and product parameters combinations:

- Product X, Country — US, Currency — USD
- Product Y, Country — US, Currency — USD

More than one account can bear the charges for a transaction and each account can belong to a different division. You can map a transaction to one or more products, to one or more product and TOU (variance parameter) combinations, or to one or more product and product parameters combinations. The system allows you to map products for each account. For example, Rule C states that if the transaction is performed in UK and the transaction amount exceeds 1000 USD, then set the following output parameters:

- ACCT_NO1_Val — Account A
- DIVISION1_VAL — D1
- PRODUCT1_1_Val — Product X
- PCD1_1_1_VAL — Country
- PVL1_1_1_VAL — UK
- PCD1_1_2_VAL — Currency
- PVL1_1_2_VAL — USD

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- PRODUCT1_2_Val — Product Y
- PCD1_2_1_VAL — Country
- PVL1_2_1_VAL — UK
- PCD1_2_2_VAL — Currency
- PVL1_2_2_VAL — USD
- ACCT_NO2_Val — Account B
- DIVISION2_VAL — D2
- PRODUCT2_1_Val — Product A
- PCD2_1_1_VAL — Country
- PVL2_1_1_VAL — US
- PCD2_1_2_VAL — Currency
- PVL2_1_2_VAL — USD

Now, when this rule is executed and the transaction satisfies the criteria, the transaction is mapped to the following product and product parameters combinations:

Charges Borne By	**Division to which the account belongs...**	**Product**	**Country**	**Currency**
Account A	D1	Product X	UK	USD
Account A	D1	Product Y	UK	USD
Account B	D2	Product A	US	USD

You can limit the maximum accounts that can bear the charges for a transaction, maximum products that can be mapped to a transaction, and maximum parameters that can be used with each product to determine product pricing. For more information, see *Defining a Transaction Record Type* on page 485 You can also define rules to ignore transactions based on the transaction attributes. If the rule returns **IGNORE_SW** equal to **Y**, the status of the transaction is changed to **Ignored (IGNR)** and no further processing takes place on the transaction.

You can use the following output parameters while defining rules in the system:

Output Parameter	**Naming Convention**	**Example**	**Description**
Account Identifier	ACCT_NOX_Val	ACCT_NO1_Val, ACCT_NO2_Val, ACCT_NO3_Val, ...	Used to indicate the account which will bear the charges for the transaction.
Account Identifier Column Name	ACCT_NOX_Col	ACCT_NO1_Col, ACCT_NO2_Col, ACCT_NO3_Col, ...	Used to indicate the column from where the account identifier corresponding to the transaction (in the transaction details) must be picked.
Account Identifier Type	ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Val	ACCT_NO_TYPE1_Val, ACCT_NO_TYPE2_Val, ACCT_NO_TYPE3_Val, ...	Used to indicate the type of account identifier.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Output Parameter	Naming Convention	Example	Description
Account Identifier Type Column Name	ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Col	ACCT_NO_TYPE1_Col, ACCT_NO_TYPE2_Col, ACCT_NO_TYPE3_Col, ...	Used to indicate the column from where the account identifier type corresponding to the transaction (in the transaction details) must be picked.
Account Division	DIVISIONX_VAL	DIVISION1_VAL	Used to indicate the division to which the account belongs.
Account Division Column Name	DIVISIONX_COL	DIVISION1_COL	Used to indicate the column from where the division corresponding to the transaction (in the transaction details) must be picked.
Product Name	PRODUCTX_Y_Val **Note:** Here, X represents the account and Y represents the product.	PRODUCT1_1_Val, PRODUCT2_1_Val, PRODUCT2_2_Val, ...	Used to indicate the product to which the transaction is mapped.
Product Column Name	PRODUCTX_Y_Col **Note:** Here, X represents the account and Y represents the product.	PRODUCT1_1_Col,, PRODUCT2_1_Col, PRODUCT2_2_Col, ...	Used to indicate the column from where the product corresponding to the transaction (in the transaction details) must be picked.
TOU	TOUX_Y_Val **Note:** Here, X represents the account and Y represents the product.	TOU1_1_Val, TOU2_1_Val, TOU2_2_Val, ...	Used to indicate the variance parameter which you want to use along with the product for price determination. **Note:** This output parameter appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Output Parameter	Naming Convention	Example	Description
TOU Column Name	TOUX_Y_Col **Note:** Here, X represents the account and Y represents the product.	TOU1_1_Col, TOU2_1_Col, TOU2_2_Col, ...	Used to indicate the column from where the variance parameter corresponding to the transaction (in the transaction details) must be picked. **Note:** This output parameter appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
Parameter Code **Note:** At present, the system does not support the Parameter Code Column output parameter.	PCDX_Y_Z_VAL **Note:** Here, X represents the account, Y represents the product, and Z represents the parameter.	PCD1_1_1_VAL, PCD1_2_1_VAL, PCD2_1_1_VAL, ...	Used to indicate the parameter which you want to use along with the product for price determination. **Note:** This output parameter appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. You must not specify any special character except underscore (_) in the parameter code. Otherwise, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Output Parameter	Naming Convention	Example	Description
Parameter Value	PVLX_Y_Z_VAL **Note:** Here, X represents the account, Y represents the product, and Z represents the parameter.	PVL1_1_1_VAL, PVL1_2_1_VAL, PVL2_1_1_VAL, ...	Used to specify the value for the parameter. **Note:** This output parameter appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. The parameter value must not contain the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols. Otherwise, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**.
Parameter Value Column Name	PVLX_Y_Z_COL **Note:** Here, X represents the account, Y represents the product, and Z represents the parameter.	PVL1_1_1_COL, PVL1_2_1_COL, PVL2_1_1_COL, ...	Used to indicate the column from where the parameter value corresponding to the transaction (in the transaction details) must be picked. **Note:** This output parameter appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. The column from where the parameter value is picked must not contain the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols. Otherwise, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Output Parameter	Naming Convention	Example	Description
Ignore Transaction	IGNORE_SW		Used to ignore transactions based on the transaction attributes. The valid values are: • Y • N

Once the transaction satisfies any rule (invoked through the rule type), the status of the transaction is changed to **Initial Product Determined (INPD)**. However, if a transaction does not satisfy any rule, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**.

- **Parameter Group Creation** — Once the initial product and parameters mapping is complete, the product parameters to which the transaction is mapped are grouped. For example, when a transaction is mapped to the following product and product parameters combinations, the system creates three groups — Group A, Group B, and Group C:
  - Account A, Product X, Country — US, Currency — USD
  - Account A, Product Y, Country — Germany, Currency — USD
  - Account B, Product X, Country — England, Currency — USD

  Group A contains Country — US, Currency — USD; Group B contains Country — Germany, Currency — USD; and Group C contains Country — England, Currency — USD.

  A set of product parameters are grouped only when the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled. A group is used to determine the product pricing. A unique group ID is generated for each group. If a group with a set of product parameters already exists in the system, a new group is not created. Instead, the existing group is used for determining the product pricing.

  While creating a product parameter group, the system checks whether the parameter value is specified for all mandatory product parameters which are effective on the transaction or batch business date. If the parameter value is not specified, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**.

You can execute this process through a multi-threaded batch named **Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1-TXNIP)**. You can specify the following parameters while executing this batch:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Batch Business Date	Used to identify the rules and product parameters which are effective on the batch business date. If the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic type is set to `BATCH_DT` for the division, the system executes the rules which are effective on the batch business date. However, if the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic type is set to `TXN_DT` for the division, the system executes the rules which are effective on the transaction date. But, note that the transaction date must be earlier than or equal to the batch business date. **Note:** If you do not specify any date, the batch business date is set to the current date. The batch business date specified while executing the C1-TXNIP batch is stamped in the database. It is also used while executing all other consequent batches in the transaction aggregation cycle.	No
Transaction Source	Used when you want to validate and derive product for transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to validate and derive product for transactions in a particular feed.	No
Division	Used when you want to validate and derive product for transactions belonging to a particular division.	No
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be committed in the database.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

On executing this batch, one transaction leg is created for each account, division, product, and variance parameter or product parameters combination. Let us understand this with the help of an example. The following table lists the accounts and products to which T1, T2, and T3 are mapped:

Transaction	Charges Borne By	Division to which the account belongs...	Product	Variance Parameter	Product Parameters
T1	A1	D1	P1	-	Country — US, Currency — USD
T1	A1	D1	P2	-	Country — Germany, Currency — USD
T1	A2	D2	P3	USD	-
T2	A1	D1	P1	-	Country — US, Currency — USD

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Transaction	Charges Borne By	Division to which the account belongs...	Product	Variance Parameter	Product Parameters
T2	A2	D2	P2	USD	-
T3	A1	D1	P3	-	Country — Germany, Currency — USD

In such case, the system will create three legs for T1, two legs for T2, and one leg for T3. Each transaction leg will have its own status.

In addition, a log is generated if the **Logging Rules for Transaction Feed** option type in the **Rule Engine (C1_RLENG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. This log indicates the rules that were executed for each transaction and whether each rule passed or failed during the execution.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Rules Engine	*Rules Engine* on page 327
How to create a rule type	*Creating a Rule Type* on page 329
How to define a rule	*Defining a Rule* on page 335
How to set the **Rule Engine (C1_RLENG)** feature configuration	*Setting the Rule Engine (C1_RLENG) Feature Configuration* on page 760
Transaction Leg Status Transition	*Transaction Leg Status Transition* on page 400

Product Pricing Verification

In this process, the system behaves in the following manner:

If the Multi Parameter Based Pricing feature is...	Then...
Disabled	The system checks whether effective pricing is available for the account, product or regular bundle (to which the product belongs) and/or TOU combination on the processing date. The system searches for the product or bundle pricing depending on the price assignment search order defined for the division to which the account belongs. If the product belongs to any regular bundle and the effective pricing is available for the regular bundle at the account level, the system considers the bundle as the final product and maps it to the transaction. In case the effective pricing is not available for the product or regular bundle (to which the product belongs), the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**. Also, when the effective pricing is not available for one or more products to which a transaction is mapped, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If the Multi Parameter Based Pricing feature is...	Then...
Enabled	The system checks whether effective pricing is available for the account, product or regular bundle (to which the product belongs) and/or product parameters (parameter group) combination on the processing date. The system searches for the product or bundle pricing depending on the price assignment search order defined for the division to which the account belongs. The system searches for a price with exact match at all levels defined in the search order. If the exact match is available at two or more levels, the price assignment at the higher precedence level is considered for calculating the charges. But, if the system does not find the exact match at any level, it searches for the best fit match at all levels. For more information about best fit match, see *Multi Parameter Based Pricing* on page 65. If the system finds the best fit match with same weight at multiple levels, the price assignment at the higher precedence level is considered for calculating the charges. If the product belongs to any regular bundle and the exact or best fit price is available for the regular bundle at the account level, the system considers the bundle as the final product and maps it to the transaction. In case the exact or best fit price is not available for the product or regular bundle (to which the product belongs), the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**. Also, when the exact or best fit price is not available for one or more products to which a transaction is mapped, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**.

Note:

The order in which the system searches effective pricing for the product and regular bundle at the same level depends on the value defined for the **Prefer Product Over Bundle (Valid values: Y, N)** parameter in the price assignment search algorithm. If the value of the **Prefer Product Over Bundle (Valid values: Y, N)** parameter is set to **Y**, the system first searches whether effective pricing is available for the product. If the effective pricing is not available for the product, then the system searches whether effective pricing is available for the regular bundle at the same level. However, if the value of the **Prefer Product Over Bundle (Valid values: Y, N)** parameter is set to **N**, the system first searches whether effective pricing is available for the regular bundle. If the effective pricing is not available for the regular bundle, then the system searches whether effective pricing is available for the product at the same level.

The processing date can be the batch business date or the transaction date. If the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic type of the division (to which the account belongs) is set to `BATCH_DT`, the system searches for the pricing which is effective on the batch business date. However, if the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic type of the division (to which the account belongs) is set to `TXN_DT`, the system searches for the pricing which is effective on the transaction date. But, if the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic is not defined for the division (to which the account belongs), the system (by default) searches for the pricing which is effective on the transaction date.

In addition, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)** when:

- There is no contract available with the specified contract type on the transaction date or when the contract is inactive.
- There are multiple effective contracts of the same contract type (available on the transaction date) in **Active**, **Pending Stop**, or **Stop** status.
- The **Price Assignment Search** algorithm is not defined for the division.
- The parameter values are either not defined or invalid in the **Price Assignment Search** algorithm on the processing date.
- The period in which the transaction date falls is not defined in the aggregation schedule.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: The system provides you with a facility to derive the contract using the custom mechanism. If you want to use any custom logic to derive the contract when it is not found, you need to attach an algorithm of the SA_DERV_POPC algorithm type on the **Transaction Feed Management Contract Derivation** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. This algorithm is triggered when you execute the C1-TXNVP batch.

Once the effective pricing is determined for the initial or final product, the following data is retrieved:

- Ignore Transaction
- Aggregate Transaction
- Aggregation Schedule
- Price Assignment ID
- Account ID (in case of account agreed and price list pricing)
- Person ID (in case of customer agreed and price list pricing)
- Price List ID (in case of price list pricing)
- Contract ID
- Regular Bundle Code
- Pricing Currency

You can execute this process through a multi-threaded batch named **Product Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)**. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used when you want to verify product pricing for transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to verify product pricing for transactions in a particular feed.	No
Division	Used when you want to verify product pricing for transactions belonging to a particular division.	No
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Note that the **Product Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** batch does not change the status of the transaction. You need to execute the **Update Status (C1-TXNEX)** batch to update the status of the transaction. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used when you want to change the status of transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to change the status of transactions in a particular feed.	No
Division	Used when you want to change the status of transactions belonging to a particular division.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be committed in the database.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Note: You must specify same parameters in the **Product Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** and **Update Status (C1-TXNEX)** batches. Otherwise, erroneous results will be generated.

If the transaction is ignored and not considered for billing for all products (to which it is mapped), the status of the transaction is changed to **Ignored (IGNR)**. However, if the effective pricing is not available for one or more products to which a transaction is mapped, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**.

You can cache the product pricing information, and thereby improve the **Product Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** batch performance. If you set the **Materialized View Used** option type of the **C1_FM** feature configuration to **true**, the system will cache the product pricing information in the following tables:

- CI_PRC_AGRD
- CI_PRC_PL
- CI_PRC_INH_PL

But, if you set the **Materialized View Used** option type of the **C1_FM** feature configuration to **false**, the system will not cache the product pricing information. If there are any pricing changes, you will have to update this cache before executing the **Product Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** batch. You can update the product pricing information in the cache by executing the **Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)** batch. Ideally, you must execute the **Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)** batch after you execute the **Flush All Caches (F1-FLUSH)** batch in the transaction aggregation process. You can specify the following parameters while executing the **Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)** batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of persons whose product pricing information you want to cache in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Leg Status Transition	*Transaction Leg Status Transition* on page 400
How to set the **C1_FM** feature configuration	*Setting the C1_FM Feature Configuration* on page 769

Aggregation

Once the product pricing verification is complete, you can aggregate the transactions, create a billable charge, and update the SQI values in the billable charge. In the aggregation process, the system behaves in the following manner:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If the Multi Parameter Based Pricing feature is...	Then...
Disabled	The system checks the value defined in the **Aggregate Transaction** field. If the **Aggregate Transaction** is set to **No**, the system creates one billable charge (with the **Billable** status) for each transaction. However, if the **Aggregate Transaction** is set to **Yes**, the system creates one billable charge (with the **Billable** status) for all transactions having the same product and TOU combination and whose transaction date falls between the aggregation schedule. **Note:** During the billable charge creation, the system also considers the contract start and end dates along with the aggregation schedule. If the contract start date falls between the aggregation schedule, the billable charge start date is equal to the contract start date. If the contract start date is earlier than the aggregation schedule start date, the billable charge start date is equal to the aggregation schedule start date. If the contract end date is earlier than the aggregation schedule end date, the billable charge end date is equal to the contract end date. If the contract end date is later than the aggregation schedule end date, the billable charge end date is equal to the aggregation schedule end date. However, if the contract start date is later than the aggregation schedule end date or if the contract end date is earlier than the aggregation schedule start date, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**. If the aggregated billable charge already exists for the account, product and TOU combination and there is no bill segment associated with the billable charge, the system will update the SQI values in the existing billable charge.
Enabled	The system checks the value defined in the **Aggregate Transaction** field. If the **Aggregate Transaction** is set to **No**, the system creates one billable charge (with the **Billable** status) for each transaction. However, if the **Aggregate Transaction** is set to **Yes**, the system creates one billable charge (with the **Billable** status) for all transactions having the same product and product parameters (parameter group) combination and whose transaction date falls between the aggregation schedule. **Note:** During the billable charge creation, the system also considers the contract start and end dates along with the aggregation schedule. If the contract start date falls between the aggregation schedule, the billable charge start date is equal to the contract start date. If the contract start date is earlier than the aggregation schedule start date, the billable charge start date is equal to the aggregation schedule start date. If the contract end date is earlier than the aggregation schedule end date, the billable charge end date is equal to the contract end date. If the contract end date is later than the aggregation schedule end date, the billable charge end date is equal to the aggregation schedule end date. However, if the contract start date is later than the aggregation schedule end date or if the contract end date is earlier than the aggregation schedule start date, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**. If the aggregated billable charge already exists for the account, product and product parameters combination and there is no bill segment associated with the billable charge, the system will update the SQI values in the existing billable charge.

The transaction aggregation is done based on the aggregation schedule defined in the product pricing. You can use the following standard schedules or you can create your own custom schedules for aggregation:

- Daily

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- Weekly
- Monthly
- Quarterly
- Yearly

Once the billable charge is created, the system aggregates the SQIs defined for the product — division combination using the aggregation function and then updates the billable charges with the respective SQI values. Once the SQI values are updated in the billable charge, the status of the transaction is changed to **Completed (COMP)**. However, if the SQIs are not defined for the product — division combination, the transaction aggregation rule is not defined for the SQI, or if the exchange rate is not available during currency conversion, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**.

Note: If the aggregation function is based on the transaction amount or on any other user defined amount and the transaction currency is different from the pricing currency, the system does currency conversion if the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system. If the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic type of the division (to which the account belongs) is set to `BATCH_DT`, the system uses the exchange rate which is effective on the batch business date. However, if the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic type of the division (to which the account belongs) is set to `TXN_DT`, the system uses the exchange rate which is effective on the transaction date. But, if the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic is not defined for the division (to which the account belongs), the system (by default) uses the exchange rate which is effective on the transaction date.

You can execute this process through a multi-threaded batch named **Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)**. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used when you want to create billable charges for transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to create billable charges for transactions in a particular feed.	No
Division	Used when you want to create billable charges for transactions belonging to a particular division.	No
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be committed in the database.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

The **Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)** batch does not change the status of the transaction. You need to execute the **Mark Completion (C1-TXNCM)** batch to update the status of the transaction. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used when you want to change the status of transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to change the status of transactions in a particular feed.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used when you want to change the status of transactions belonging to a particular division.	No
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be committed in the database.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Note: You must specify same parameters in the **Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)** and **Mark Completion (C1-TXNCM)** batches. Otherwise, erroneous results will be generated.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Leg Status Transition	*Transaction Leg Status Transition* on page 400

Clean Up

There might be situations when a transaction is mapped to one or more products and due to some reasons a billable charge could not be created for all products. And, therefore the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**. In such case, you can delete the non aggregated billable charges, if any, created for transactions in the **Error (EROR)** status. You can also recalculate SQIs in a billable charge if the transactions in the **Error (EROR)** and **Completed (COMP)** status are aggregated together in the billable charge.

You can execute this cleanup process through a multi-threaded batch named **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)**. Besides the aggregation process, this batch is also used during the following sub-processes:

- **Cancellation** — During the cancellation process, it deletes non aggregated billable charges and recalculates SQIs in aggregated billable charges.
- **Disaggregation** — During the disaggregation process, it deletes an aggregated billable charge when all the corresponding transaction legs which were aggregated in the billable charge are deleted during disaggregation.

Note:

The SQIs in an aggregated billable charge are recalculated only when the **SQ Recalculation Required** option type in the **C1_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y**. If you set the **SQ Recalculation Required** option type in the **C1_FM** feature configuration to **N**, the SQIs are not recalculated in an aggregated billable charge. We recommend you recalculate SQIs in an aggregated billable charge when more than one account bears the charges for a transaction.

If the aggregation function is based on the transaction amount or on any other user defined amount and the transaction currency is different from the pricing currency, the system does currency conversion if the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system. If the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic type of the division (to which the account belongs) is set to `BATCH_DT`, the system uses the exchange rate which is effective on the batch business date. However, if the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic type of the division (to which the account belongs) is set to `TXN_DT`, the system uses the exchange rate which is effective on the transaction date. Note that the transaction date must be earlier than or equal to the batch business date. But, if the **Processing Date for Transaction Feed Management** characteristic is not defined for the division (to which the account belongs), the system (by default) uses the exchange rate which is effective on the transaction date.

You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to delete or update billable charges created for transactions in a particular feed. **Note:** This parameter should not be used during the disaggregation process.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This parameter is required when you set the request type to CNCL.
Transaction Source	Used when you want to delete or update billable charges created for transactions received from a particular transaction source. **Note:** This parameter should not be used during the cancellation and disaggregation processes.	No
Division	Used when you want to delete or update billable charges created for transactions belonging to a particular division. **Note:** This parameter should not be used during the cancellation process.	No
Account ID	Used when you want to delete or update billable charges of a particular account. **Note:** This parameter should be used only during the disaggregation process.	No
Bill Cycle	Used when you want to delete or update billable charges of accounts having a particular bill cycle. **Note:** This parameter should be used only during the disaggregation process.	No
Disaggregate Transactions From Date	Used when you want to delete or update billable charges created for transactions which were performed from a particular date onwards. You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format. **Note:** This parameter should be used only during the disaggregation process.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This parameter is required when you set the request type to DISAGG.
Request Type	Used to indicate the process during which you want to execute the batch. The valid values are: • CNCL • EROR • DISAGG	Yes
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be committed in the database.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Leg Status Transition	*Transaction Leg Status Transition* on page 400
How to set the **C1_FM** feature configuration	*Setting the C1_FM Feature Configuration* on page 769

Disaggregation

Since the aggregation cycle is different from the billing cycle, there might be situations when due to pricing changes, the billable charges are no longer valid. In such cases, you need to disaggregate the transactions. In the following scenarios, the system automatically creates a disaggregation request in the CI_TXN_DISAGG_REQ table:

If...	Then
A product is assigned to an account	A disaggregation request is created for the account.
The following values in the product pricing assigned to an account is changed: • Effective Start Date • Effective End Date • Aggregation Schedule • Ignore Transaction • Aggregate Transaction • Product Parameter	A disaggregation request is created for the account.
A product is assigned to a customer	A disaggregation request is created for the customer.
The following values in the product pricing assigned to a customer is changed: • Effective Start Date • Effective End Date • Aggregation Schedule • Ignore Transaction • Aggregate Transaction • Product Parameter	A disaggregation request is created for the customer.
A price list is assigned to an account.	A disaggregation request is created for the account.
The following values in the price list assigned to an account is changed: • Effective Start Date • Effective End Date • Priority • Price List Inheritance	A disaggregation request is created for the account.
A price list is assigned to a customer.	A disaggregation request is created for the customer.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If...	Then
The following values in the price list assigned to a customer is changed: • Effective Start Date • Effective End Date • Priority • Price List Inheritance	A disaggregation request is created for the customer.

However, there are various other scenarios for which you have to disaggregate the transactions. But, at the moment, the system does not automatically create a disaggregation request for these scenarios in the CI_TXN_DISAGG_REQ table. You will have to create an appropriate disaggregation request in this table. The system allows you to create a disaggregation request manually through the **Disaggregation Request** screen or through a batch named **Disaggregation Request Creation (C1-DISTG)**.

In the following scenarios, you have to create an appropriate disaggregation request for the account or customer, respectively:

- Effective product pricing assigned to an account is overridden.
- Variance parameter in the product pricing assigned to an account is changed.
- A price list assignment has expired or a price list is no longer available to an account.
- Effective product pricing assigned to a customer is overridden.
- Variance parameter in the product pricing assigned to a customer is changed.
- A price list assignment has expired or a price list is no longer available to a customer.
- A product is added to a price list.
- The following details in the product pricing assigned to a price list is changed:
    - Variance Parameter
    - Effective Start Date
    - Effective End Date
    - Aggregation Schedule
    - Ignore Transaction
    - Aggregate Transaction
- A new bundle is created.
- A product is added to a bundle.
- A product is removed from a bundle.
- A bundle is eliminated (that is, all its products are removed).
- A product is added.
- A price list hierarchy is changed.
- SQIs associated with a product — division combination are changed.
- Transaction aggregation rule defined for an SQI is changed or deleted.
- Business rules used for initial product mapping are changed.

At present, the system disaggregates transactions at the account level and not at the product level. Let us understand this with the help of an example. The following table lists the accounts and products to which T1 is mapped:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Transaction	Account	Product
T1	A1	P1
T1	A1	P2
T1	A2	P1
T1	A2	P2

Now, if the pricing of P1 assigned to A1 changes, the system creates a disaggregation request for A1 and identifies all transaction legs which are mapped to A1 for disaggregation. In this example, the system will consider the first two transaction legs - T1-A1-P1 and T1-A1-P2 - for disaggregation even if the pricing of P2 assigned to A1 has not changed.

The **Disaggregation Request Creation (C1-DISTG)** batch creates an appropriate disaggregation request for the account whose transactions need to be disaggregated. It is a single-threaded batch. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used when you want to create disaggregation request for accounts belonging to a particular division.	No
Bill Cycle	Used when you want to create disaggregation request for accounts having a particular bill cycle.	No
Disaggregate Transactions From Date	Used when you want to create disaggregation request for accounts for which transactions were performed from a particular date onwards. You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Before you proceed with the disaggregation process, you need to ensure that there are no pending bills for the accounts whose transactions need to be disaggregated. If there are pending bills for these accounts, you need to first execute the **Pending Bill Segments Deletion (C1-BSEGD)** batch and then execute the **Pending Bill Deletion (C1-PNBD)** batch. While executing these batches in the specified order, ensure that you specify the same parameters in both these batches. For more information about these batches, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Execution Guide*.

Note: The **Pending Bill Deletion (C1-PNBD)** batch deletes those pending bills which are generated through the billing batches (i.e. **BILLING** or **C1-PNDBL**). It does not delete pending bills which are generated through the user interface. Also, it deletes regular pending bills and not adhoc pending bills.

Once a disaggregation request is either manually or automatically created for an account or a customer, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order to disaggregate transactions:

- **Identify Affected Transactions (C1-IAENT)** — This batch fetches disaggregation requests from the CI_TXN_DISAGG_REQ table and identifies the transactions that need to be disaggregated. It also identifies the aggregated and non aggregated billable charges that must be deleted. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used when you want to identify transactions of accounts belonging to a particular division.	No
Account ID	Used when you want to identify transactions of a particular account.	No
Bill Cycle	Used when you want to identify transactions of accounts having a particular bill cycle.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Disaggregate Transactions From Date	Used when you want to identify transactions which were performed from a particular date onwards. You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format. **Note:** The aggregated billable charge (which is affected) must not include a transaction leg whose transaction date is earlier than the disaggregation transactions from date. Otherwise, erroneous results will occur. Therefore, ensure that you specify the appropriate value for the **Disaggregate Transactions From Date** parameter.	Yes
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

- **Process Non Aggregated Transactions (C1-PDTXN)** — This batch processes the identified transactions, deletes the required transaction legs, and changes the status of the transaction to **Uploaded (UPLD)**. If a non aggregated billable charge exists for a transaction leg and the corresponding bill segment is in the following status:

Status	Then
Freezable	The billable charge, bill segment, and the corresponding transaction leg are deleted, and the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.
Frozen	The billable charge, bill segment, and the corresponding transaction leg are not deleted, and the status of the transaction remains as **Completed (COMP)**. However, if any other leg of the transaction is deleted due to disaggregation, the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.
Pending Cancel	The billable charge, bill segment, and the corresponding transaction leg are not deleted, and the status of the transaction remains as **Completed (COMP)**. However, if any other leg of the transaction is deleted due to disaggregation, the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.
Cancel	The billable charge is cancelled and the corresponding transaction leg is deleted. The status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.

However, if a non aggregated billable charge exists for a transaction leg, but if the bill segment is not yet generated, then the billable charge and the corresponding transaction leg are deleted, and the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used when you want to disaggregate transactions of accounts belonging to a particular division.	No
Account ID	Used when you want to disaggregate transactions of a particular account.	No
Bill Cycle	Used when you want to disaggregate transactions of accounts having a particular bill cycle.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Disaggregate Transactions From Date	Used when you want to disaggregate transactions which were performed from a particular date onwards. You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	Yes
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be committed in the database.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Note: If you want to undertake some preprocessing activities (such as cleaning data in any custom tables) during the disaggregation process, you need to attach an algorithm of the C1_DSAG_PRPC algorithm type on the **Transaction Feed Management Disaggregation Preprocessing** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. This algorithm is triggered when you execute the C1-PDTXN batch. Note that the system invokes the algorithm which is attached on the derived account's division and not on the division to which the transaction belongs.

- **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)** — This batch deletes an aggregated billable charge when all the corresponding transaction legs which were aggregated in the billable charge are deleted during disaggregation. If an aggregated billable charge exists and the corresponding bill segment is in the following status:

Status	Then
Freezable	The billable charge, bill segment, and the corresponding transaction legs are deleted, and the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.
Frozen	The billable charge, bill segment, and the corresponding transaction legs are not deleted, and the status of the transaction remains as **Completed (COMP)**. However, if any other leg of the transaction is deleted due to disaggregation, the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.
Pending Cancel	The billable charge, bill segment, and the corresponding transaction leg are not deleted, and the status of the transaction remains as **Completed (COMP)**. However, if any other leg of the transaction is deleted due to disaggregation, the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.
Cancel	The billable charge is cancelled and the corresponding transaction legs are deleted. The status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.

However, if an aggregated billable charge exists, but if the bill segment is not yet generated, then the billable charge and the corresponding transaction legs are deleted, and the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**. Note that while executing this batch, the **Request Type** parameter must be set to **DISAGG**. For more information about the parameters that you can specify while executing this batch, refer to *Clean Up* on page 386.

- **Update Disaggregation Request Status (C1-DARSU)** — This batch changes the status of the disaggregation request in the CI_TXN_DISAGG_REQ table to **Complete**. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used when you want to update disaggregate request status of accounts belonging to a particular division.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Used when you want to update disaggregate request status of a particular account.	No
Bill Cycle	Used when you want to update disaggregate request status of accounts having a particular bill cycle.	No
Disaggregate Transactions From Date	Used when you want to update disaggregation request status of accounts that satisfy the following conditions: • Transactions for that account were performed from a particular date onwards. • Bill segments created for the transactions are in the **Pending Cancel** or **Frozen** status. You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	Yes
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Leg Status Transition	*Transaction Leg Status Transition* on page 400
How to create a disaggregation request manually	*Creating a Disaggregation Request* on page 507

Cancellation

There might be situations when incorrect transaction data file is uploaded in the system. In such cases, the system provides you with an ability to cancel the whole transaction feed. You can cancel a transaction feed either before the transaction aggregation process starts (that is, before executing the **Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1-TXNIP)** batch) or after the transaction aggregation process ends (that is, after executing the **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)** batch). In other words, you cannot cancel a transaction feed during the transaction aggregation process. Once the transaction feed is cancelled, the status of the feed and all transactions in the feed is changed to **Cancelled (CNCL)**.

The following table explains how the system behaves:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

When you cancel a transaction feed for which...	Then
A bill (with the Pending status) is already generated in the system	The corresponding billable charges, bill segments, and the bill are deleted and the status of the transactions is changed to **Cancelled (CNCL)**. **Note:** If a pending bill has a bill segment in the **Frozen** or **Pending Cancel** status, the system does not allow you to cancel the transaction feed. If a pending bill has a bill segment in the **Cancel** status, the system behaves in the following manner: • Deletes all other bill segments which are not in the **Cancel** status. • The billable charge corresponding to the bill segment which is not in the **Cancel** status is deleted if the billable charge is in the **Billable** status and if the billable charge only includes transactions from the feed that you want to cancel. • The SQIs in the billable charge corresponding to the bill segment which is not in the **Cancel** status are recalculated if the billable charge is in the **Billable** status and if the billable charge includes transactions from multiple feeds. • The billable charge corresponding to the bill segment which is not in the **Cancel** status is not deleted or recalculated if the billable charge is in the **Cancelled** status. • The billable charge corresponding to the bill segment which is in the **Cancel** status is cancelled if the billable charge only includes transactions from the feed that you want to cancel. • The SQIs in the billable charge corresponding to the bill segment which is in the **Cancel** status are recalculated if the billable charge includes transactions from multiple feeds. If a bill is created for transactions which are uploaded through multiple transaction feeds (for example, Feed A and Feed B and you want to cancel Feed A), then: • The bill and their corresponding bill segments are deleted. • The SQIs are recalculated in the corresponding billable charges. • The status of the transactions uploaded through Feed A is changed to **Cancelled (CNCL)**. • The status of Feed A is changed to **Cancelled (CNCL)**. • The status of the transactions uploaded through Feed B remains the same (i.e. **Completed (COMP)**).

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

When you cancel a transaction feed for which...	Then
A bill (with the Complete status) already exists in the system	The system does not allow you to cancel the transaction feed.
A billable charge (with the Billable status) exists in the system	The billable charge is deleted and the status of the transactions is changed to **Cancelled (CNCL)**. **Note:** In case a billable charge is created for transactions uploaded through multiple transaction feeds (for example, Feed A and Feed B and you want to cancel Feed A), then: • The SQIs are recalculated in the billable charge. • The status of the transactions uploaded through Feed A is changed to **Cancelled (CNCL)**. • The status of Feed A is changed to **Cancelled (CNCL)**. • The status of the transactions uploaded through Feed B remains the same (i.e. **Completed (COMP)**).

Note: If any transaction in the feed which you want to cancel belongs to a frozen bill, the system will not cancel the feed.

To cancel a transaction feed, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

1. **Pending Bill Deletion (C1-DELBL)** — This batch deletes the bills (with the Pending status) and their corresponding bill segments. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to delete bills which includes charges for transactions in a particular transaction feed.	Yes
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be committed in the database.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

2. **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)** — This batch deletes non aggregated billable charges and recalculates SQIs in aggregated billable charges. Note that while executing this batch, the **Request Type** parameter must be set to **CNCL**. For more information about the parameters that you can specify while executing this batch, refer to *Clean Up* on page 386.
3. **Cancellation (C1-TXCNC)** — This batch changes the status of the feed and all transactions in the feed to **Cancelled (CNCL)**. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to cancel a particular transaction feed.	Yes
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be committed in the database.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Note: If you want to undertake some preprocessing activities (such as cleaning data in any custom tables) during the cancellation process, you need to attach an algorithm of the C1_CNCL_PRPC algorithm type on the **Transaction Feed Management Cancellation Preprocessing** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. This algorithm is triggered when you execute the C1-TXCNC batch. Note that the system invokes the algorithm which is attached on the derived account's division and not on the division to which the transaction belongs.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Leg Status Transition	*Transaction Leg Status Transition* on page 400

Rollback

In the transaction feed management process, an error occurs when:

- Transaction validation fails.
- Transaction does not satisfy any rule invoked through the rule type.
- Effective pricing is not available for one or more products to which a transaction is mapped.
- SQIs are not defined for the product — division combination.
- Transaction aggregation rule is not defined for the SQI.
- There is no contract available with the specified contract type on the transaction date or when the contract is inactive.
- There are multiple effective contracts of the same contract type (available on the transaction date) in **Active**, **Pending Stop**, or **Stop** status.
- The **Price Assignment Search** algorithm is not defined for the division.
- The parameter values are either not defined or invalid in the **Price Assignment Search** algorithm on the processing date.
- The period in which the transaction date falls is not defined in the aggregation schedule.
- Exchange rate is not available during currency conversion.
- Parameter value is not specified for all mandatory product parameters which are effective on the transaction or batch business date.

In such cases, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**. You can configure the required setup and then execute the following batches once again in the specified order:

1. Flush All Caches (F1–FLUSH)
2. Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)
3. Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)
4. Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1-TXNIP)
5. Product Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

6. Update Status (C1-TXNEX)
7. Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)
8. Mark Completion (C1-TXNCM)
9. Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)

But, before you execute these batches, you need to rollback the transaction status to **Uploaded (UPLD)**. You need to execute the **Rollback (C1-TXNRB)** batch to rollback the status of the transaction from **Error (EROR)** to **Uploaded (UPLD)**. You can also rollback the status of the transaction from **Ignored (IGNR)** to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.

You can specify the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Status	Used to indicate whether you want to rollback transactions which were ignored or where an error occurred. The valid values are: • IGNR • EROR	Yes
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to rollback transactions of a particular feed.	No
Transaction Source	Used when you want to rollback transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Division	Used when you want to rollback transactions belonging to a particular division.	No
Rollback From Date	Used when you want to rollback transactions which were performed from a particular date onwards. You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format. **Note:** The rollback from date cannot be later than the rollback to date.	No
Rollback To Date	Used when you want to rollback transactions which were performed till a particular date. You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format. **Note:** The rollback to date cannot be earlier than the rollback from date.	No
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be committed in the database.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Note: If you want to undertake some preprocessing activities (such as cleaning data in any custom tables) during the rollback process, you need to attach an algorithm of the C1_ROBK_PRPC algorithm type on the **Transaction Feed Management Rollback Preprocessing** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. This algorithm is triggered when you execute the C1-TXNRB batch. Note that the system invokes the algorithm which is attached on the derived account's division and not on the division to which the transaction belongs.

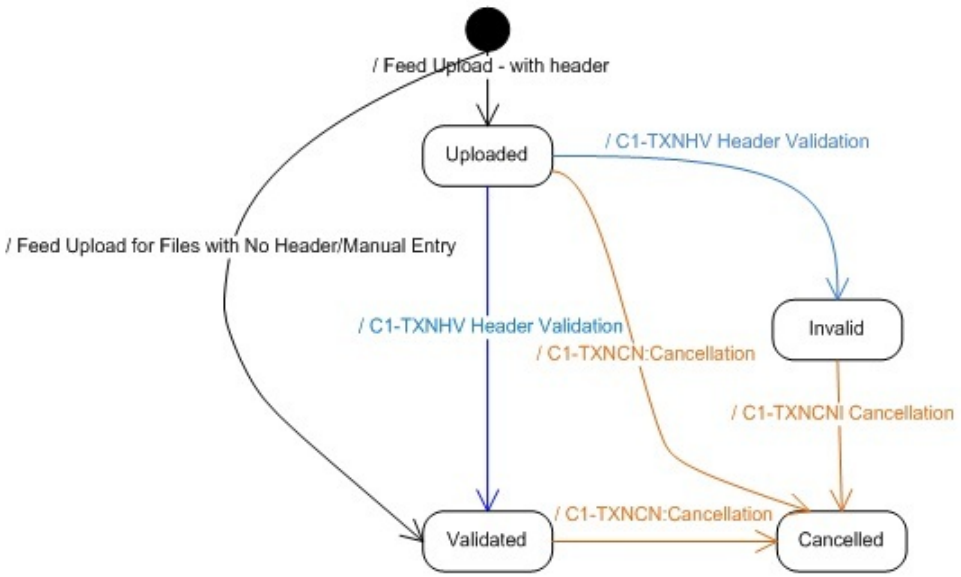
Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Leg Status Transition	*Transaction Leg Status Transition* on page 400

Feed Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a feed moves from one status to another during the transaction feed management process:

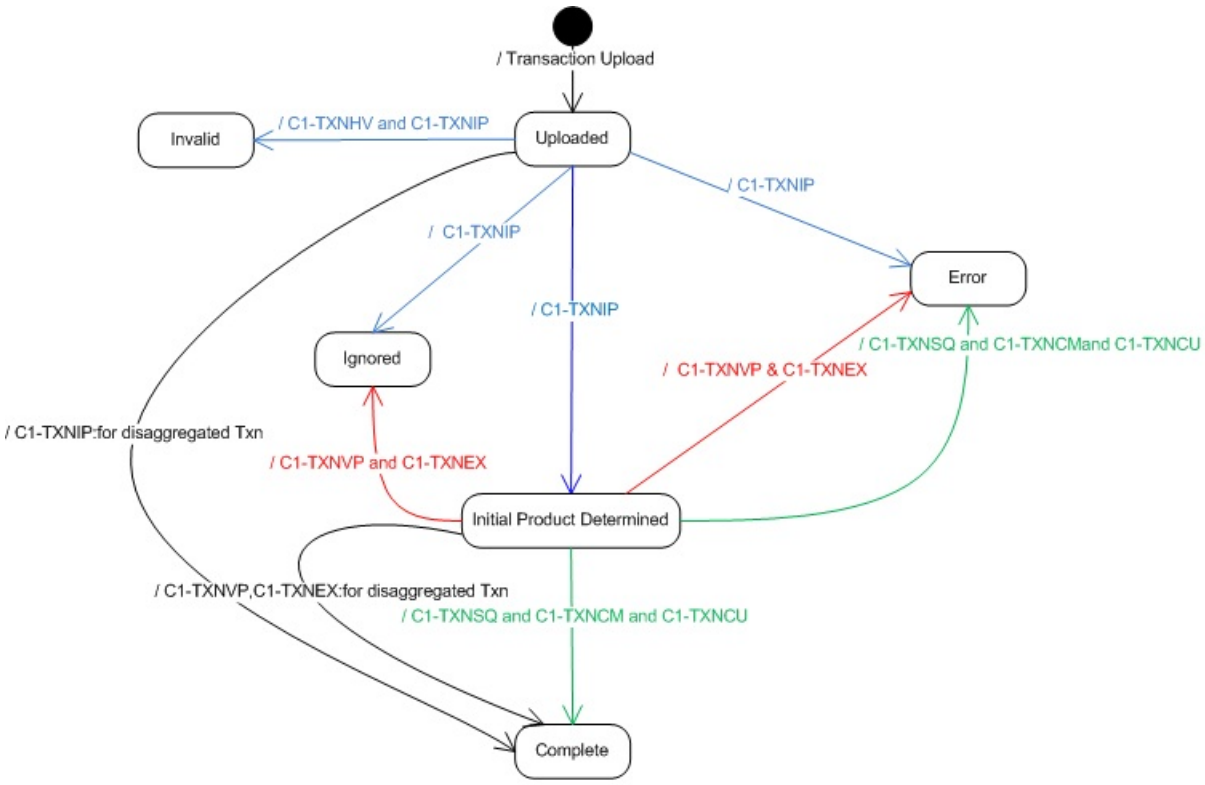


Transaction Status Transition

Aggregation

The following figure graphically indicates how a transaction moves from one status to another during the aggregation process:

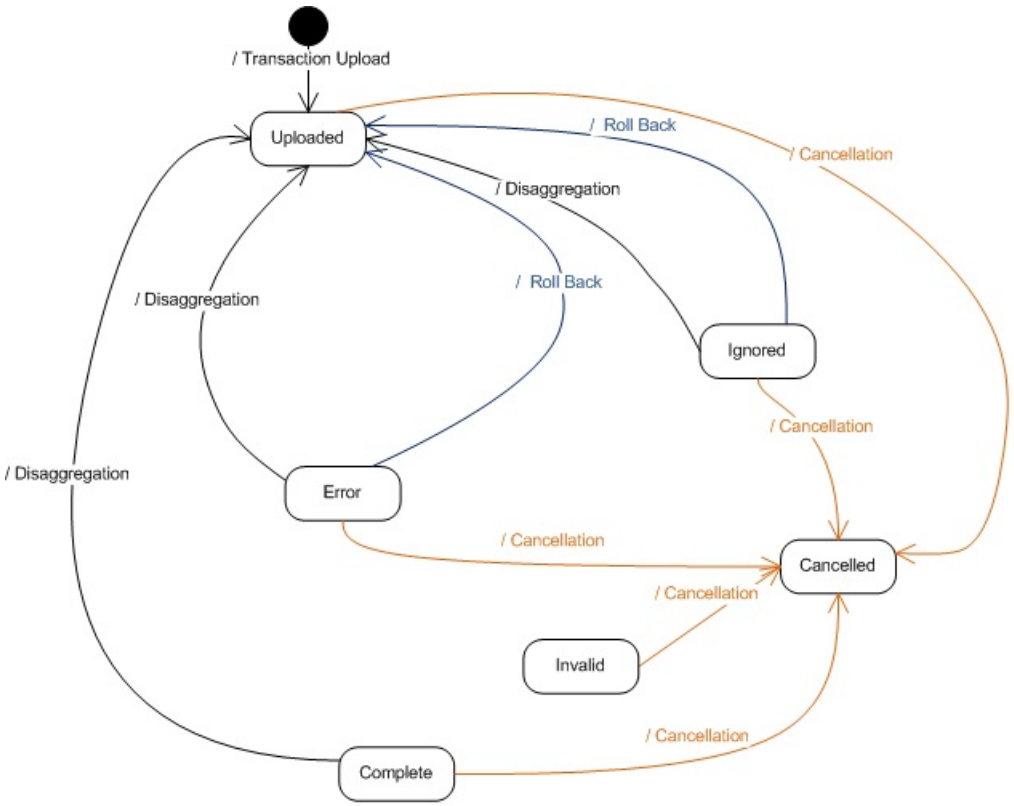
Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.



Disaggregation, Rollback, and Cancellation

The following figure graphically indicates how a transaction moves from one status to another during the disaggregation, rollback, and cancellation processes:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.



Transaction Leg Status Transition

This section explains how a transaction leg moves from one status to another during the following sub-processes:

- Aggregation

  Note: This is the aggregation process for transactions that are recently uploaded or reaggregated after being fully disaggregated.

- Rollack
- Cancellation
- Disaggregation
- Reaggregation

  Note: This is the aggregation process for transactions that are reaggregated after being partially disaggregated.

Aggregation

The following table indicates how a transaction leg moves from one status to another during the aggregation process:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Pre Event Transaction Status	Pre Event Transaction Leg Status	Post Event Transaction Status	Post Event Transaction Leg Status
1	C1-TXNIP	Transaction validation fails due to incomplete transaction data	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created	INVALID	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created
2	C1-TXNIP	Transaction validation fails due to invalid or incorrect transaction data	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created	ERROR	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created
3	C1-TXNIP	Transaction validation is successful but no product is derived	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created	ERROR	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created
4	C1-TXNIP	Transaction validation is successful and product is derived	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED
5	C1-TXNIP	Transaction validation is successful and the transaction is ignored by the rule based on the transaction attributes	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created	IGNORED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created
6	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	Effective pricing is not found for any of the transaction legs	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	ERROR	ERROR
7	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	**Ignore Transaction** flag is set to **Y** in the effective pricing for one or more transaction legs but not for all transaction legs	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	IGNORED (when **Ignore Transaction** flag is set to **Y** in the effective pricing) INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED (when **Ignore Transaction** flag is set to **N** in the effective pricing)
8	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	**Ignore Transaction** flag is set to **Y** in the effective pricing for all transaction legs	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	IGNORED	IGNORED

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Pre Event Transaction Status	Pre Event Transaction Leg Status	Post Event Transaction Status	Post Event Transaction Leg Status
9	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	**Ignore Transaction** flag is set to **N** in the effective pricing for all transaction legs	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED
10	C1-TXNSQ and C1-TXNCM	SQIs are not defined for the product — division combination, Transaction aggregation rule is not defined for the SQI, or Exchange rate is not available during currency conversion	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	ERROR	ERROR
11	C1-TXNSQ and C1-TXNCM	Billable charges are created successfully for all transaction legs	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	COMPLETED	COMPLETED

Rollback

The following table indicates how a transaction leg moves from one status to another during the rollback process:

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Pre Event Transaction Status	Pre Event Transaction Leg Status	Post Event Transaction Status	Post Event Transaction Leg Status
1	C1-TXNRB	Transactions with the Error (EROR) status are rolled back	ERROR	ERROR	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created
2	C1-TXNRB	Transactions with the Ignored (IGNR) status are rolled back	IGNORED	IGNORED	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created

Cancellation

The following table indicates how a transaction leg moves from one status to another during the cancellation process:

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Pre Event Transaction Status	Pre Event Transaction Leg Status	Post Event Transaction Status	Post Event Transaction Leg Status
1	C1-TXCNC	Transactions in any status are cancelled	UPLOADED, INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED, ERROR, COMPLETED, INVALID, or IGNORED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED, ERROR, IGNORED, or COMPLETED	CANCELLED	CANCELLED

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Disaggregation

The following table indicates how a transaction leg moves from one status to another during the disaggregation process:

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Pre Event Transaction Status	Pre Event Transaction Leg Status	Post Event Transaction Status	Post Event Transaction Leg Status
1	C1-DISTG	Transactions in the COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED status are disaggregated.	COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED **Note:** The transactions in the ERROR or IGNORED status must have legs for disaggregation.	COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED	No change in the status	No change in the status
2	C1-DISTG	Transactions in the INVALID or CANCELLED status cannot be disaggregated. In addition, the newly uploaded transactions and fully disaggregated transactions which are in the UPLOADED status cannot be disaggregated.	CANCELLED, INVALID, or UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transactions will not have any legs in these statuses	No change in the status	Not applicable as the transactions will not have any legs in these statuses
3	C1-IAENT	Transactions in the COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED status are disaggregated.	COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED **Note:** The transactions in the ERROR or IGNORED status must have legs for disaggregation.	COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED	No change in the status	No change in the status

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Pre Event Transaction Status	Pre Event Transaction Leg Status	Post Event Transaction Status	Post Event Transaction Leg Status
4	C1-IAENT	Transaction has already been disaggregated and is in the UPLOADED status. The transaction legs which were not affected are moved in the staging table and the transaction legs which were affected are deleted. Now, if the effective pricing is changed for the account to which the transaction leg in the staging table is mapped, then that transaction leg must be disaggregated. Thus, disaggregation is done even though the transaction is in the UPLOADED status.	UPLOADED	UPLOADED	No change in the status	No change in the status
5	C1-PDTXN	Transactions in the COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED status are disaggregated.	COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED **Note:** The transactions in the ERROR or IGNORED status must have legs for disaggregation.	COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED	UPLOADED	Transaction legs which are affected during disaggregation are deleted and the other legs which are not affected are moved to the staging table.

Reaggregation

The following table indicates how a transaction leg moves from one status to another during the reaggregation process:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Transaction Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Leg Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Status After Reaggregation	Transaction Leg Status After Reaggregation
1	C1-TXNIP	Transaction in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. It had four transaction legs – two in the COMPLETED status and other two in the IGNORED status. A transaction leg in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated due to change in the business rule (i.e. **IGNORE_SW** is set to **Y**).	COMPLETED	COMPLETED, IGNORED	COMPLETED	Derived Leg: IGNORED Existing Legs: COMPLETED and IGNORED
2	C1-TXNIP	Transaction in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. It had one transaction leg in the COMPLETED status and all other transaction legs in the IGNORED status. The leg in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated due to change in the business rule (i.e. **IGNORE_SW** is set to **Y**).	COMPLETED	COMPLETED, IGNORED	IGNORED	Derived Leg: IGNORED Existing Legs: IGNORED

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Transaction Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Leg Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Status After Reaggregation	Transaction Leg Status After Reaggregation
3	C1-TXNIP	Transaction in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. All the transaction legs were in the COMPLETED status. One of the transaction legs in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. During reaggregation, no product was derived for this transaction leg.	COMPLETED	COMPLETED	ERROR	Derived Leg: No new transaction leg was created Existing Legs: COMPLETED
4	C1-TXNIP	Transaction in the ERROR status was disaggregated. It had no transaction legs. During reaggregation, no product was derived for the transaction.	ERROR	No Transaction Legs Exist	ERROR	Derived Leg: No new transaction leg was created Existing Legs: None
5	C1-TXNIP	Transaction in the ERROR status was disaggregated. It had no transaction legs. During reaggregation, a product was derived for the transaction.	ERROR	No Transaction Legs Exist	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	Derived Leg: INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED Existing Legs: None

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Transaction Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Leg Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Status After Reaggregation	Transaction Leg Status After Reaggregation
6	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	Transaction in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. It had four transaction legs – two in the COMPLETED status and other two in the IGNORED status. A transaction leg in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. During reaggregation, the effective pricing was not found for the transaction leg.	COMPLETED	COMPLETED, IGNORED	ERROR	Derived Leg: ERROR Existing Legs: COMPLETED and IGNORED
7	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	Transaction in the ERROR status was disaggregated. It had no transaction legs. During reaggregation, the effective pricing is found for the transaction legs.	ERROR	No Transaction Legs Exist	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	Derived Legs: INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED Existing Legs: None
8	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	Transaction in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. It had four transaction legs – two in the COMPLETED status and other two in the IGNORED status. A transaction leg in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated due to change in the effective pricing (i.e. **Ignore Transaction** flag is set to **Y**).	COMPLETED	COMPLETED, IGNORED	COMPLETED	Derived Leg: IGNORED Existing Legs: COMPLETED and IGNORED

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Transaction Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Leg Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Status After Reaggregation	Transaction Leg Status After Reaggregation
9	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	Transaction in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. It had one transaction leg in the COMPLETED status and all other transaction legs in the IGNORED status. The leg in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated due to change in the effective pricing (i.e. **Ignore Transaction** flag is set to **Y**).	COMPLETED	COMPLETED, IGNORED	IGNORED	Derived Leg: IGNORED Existing Legs: IGNORED
10	C1-TXNSQ and C1-TXNCM	While reaggregating transaction legs, SQIs are not defined for the product — division combination, Transaction aggregation rule is not defined for the SQI, or Exchange rate is not available during currency conversion.	COMPLETED, ERROR, IGNORED **Note:** There must be no legs for the transaction in the IGNORED status.	COMPLETED, ERROR	ERROR	Derived Legs: ERROR Existing Legs: No change in the status
11	C1-TXNSQ and C1-TXNCM	Billable charges are created successfully for all transaction legs which were earlier disaggregated and now reaggregated.	COMPLETED, ERROR, IGNORED **Note:** There must be no legs for the transaction in the IGNORED status.	COMPLETED, ERROR	COMPLETED	Derived Leg: COMPLETED Existing Legs: No change in the status

CSV File Format

You need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following when you upload the transaction data using the sample interface:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- **File Header** — Every file must have one header record. It should contain the following details:

Column Name	Contains	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
A	HDR	Used to indicate that the row contains header information.	Yes
B	Transaction Source	Used to specify the source from where the transactions are received.	Yes
D	Header Date	Used to specify the header date.	Yes
E	Transaction Header ID	Used to specify the external transaction header ID.	Yes
F	File Name	Used to specify the file name.	Yes
G	Number of Transactions	Used to specify the total number of transaction records in the file.	Yes
H	Total Transaction Volume	Used to specify the total transaction volume.	Yes
I	Total Transaction Amount	Used to specify the total transaction amount.	Yes

Note: If the header record does not exist in a transaction data file, the default header record is created when you upload the transaction data file in ODI. By default, the header date is set to the current date and file name is set to the name of the file that you are uploading in ODI.

- **Transaction Record** — Every file must have one or more transaction records. It should contain the following details:

Column Name	Contains	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
A	Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	Yes
B	Transaction Source	Used to specify the source from where the transaction is received.	Yes
C	Transaction Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	Yes
J	External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	Yes
K	Customer Reference Number	Used to indicate the customer who has performed the transaction.	No
L	Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs.	Yes
M	Transaction Volume	Used to specify the transaction volume.	Yes
N	Transaction Amount	Used to specify the transaction amount.	Yes
O	Transaction Currency	Used to specify the currency in which the transaction was performed. **Note:** If you specify a currency other than the pricing currency, the system will do the currency conversion if the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Contains	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
P	Credit/Debit Indicator	Used to indicate whether the transaction is a debit or a credit transaction. The valid values are: • Plus (+) • Minus (-)	Yes
Q	Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the account identifier type.	Yes
R	Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which the transaction was performed.	Yes
S, T, U, ..., AB	UDF_NUM_1, UDF_NUM_2, UDF_NUM_3, ..., UDF_NUM_10	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No
AC, AD, ..., AG	UDF_AMT_1, UDF_AMT_2, ..., UDF_AMT_5,	Used to specify additional transaction amount.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** The UDF_AMT_N is required when the corresponding UDF_CCY_N is specified.
AH, AI, ..., AL	UDF_CCY_1, UDF_CCY_2, ..., UDF_CCY_5	Used to specify additional transaction currency. **Note:** If you specify a currency other than the pricing currency, the system will do the currency conversion if the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** The UDF_CCY_N is required when the corresponding UDF_AMT_N is specified.
AM, AN, ..., AQ	UDF_DTTM_1, UDF_DTTM_2, ..., UDF_DTTM_5	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No
AR, AS, ..., CO	UDF_CHAR_1, UDF_CHAR_2, UDF_CHAR_3, ..., UDF_CHAR_50	Used to specify additional information about the transaction. **Note:** If the data in these columns will be used for product parameter mapping, you must not use the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols in these columns.	No

Note: If the file does not contain header or transaction records in the required format, ODI will not upload the transaction data in the system. In addition, ODI will not upload the transaction records received from a transaction source which is not yet defined in the system.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Error List

The following table lists the errors that may occur while executing various batches in the transaction feed management process. It also indicates how you can resolve these errors.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNHV	102	{Checksum Validation Required} field invalid.	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value other than 'Y', 'y', 'N' or 'n' is specified for the **Checksum Validation Required** parameter.
C1-TXNHV	102	{Duplicate Check Required} field invalid.	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value other than 'Y', 'y', 'N' or 'n' is specified for the **Duplicate Check Required** parameter.
C1-TXNHV	1314	The Transaction Source is mandatory.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The data is not available in the **Transaction Source** column.
C1-TXNHV	1332	Sum of transaction records in the header does not match the total number of records in the file.	17000	The possible issues could be: • Inappropriate file is uploaded in the system.
C1-TXNHV	1333	Sum of transaction volume in the header does not match the total transaction volume in the file.	17000	The possible issues could be: • Inappropriate file is uploaded in the system.
C1-TXNHV	1334	Sum of transaction amount in the header does not match the total transaction amount in the file.	17000	The possible issues could be: • Inappropriate file is uploaded in the system.
C1-TXNHV	1338	The Transaction Header ID already exists in the system. Please enter unique header ID.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The same file is uploaded multiple times in the system.
C1-TXNHV	1341	Exception occurred during the transaction header validation.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The data is not available in the required format.
C1-TXNHV	1421	Transaction records does not exist in the file. Please check.	17000	The possible issues could be: • Inappropriate file is uploaded in the system.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNHV	1422	Sum of transaction records in the header cannot be zero. Please enter valid data in the header.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value available in the **Number of Transactions** column is less than or equal to zero.
C1-TXNHV	1423	Sum of transaction volume in the header cannot be zero. Please enter valid data in the header.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value available in the **Total Transaction Volume** column is less than or equal to zero.
C1-TXNHV	1663	Transaction Header External Id is missing.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The data is not available in the **Transaction Header ID** column.
C1-TXNHV	1664	Header Transaction Amount should be greater than 0.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value available in the **Total Transaction Amount** column is less than or equal to zero.
C1-TXNIP	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter is less than or equal to one.
C1-TXNIP	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is greater than the value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter.
C1-TXNIP	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Header ID** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.
C1-TXNIP	106	Value { Given Transaction Source Code } too long for field { transactionSource }. Maximum length: 30. Found: { Length of given Transaction Source Code}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Source** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.
C1-TXNIP	106	Value { Given Transaction Division } too long for field { division }. Maximum length: 5 Found: { Length of given Transaction Division}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Division** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 5 characters.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	1301	The account with the specified identifier does not exist in the system. Enter a valid identifier.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The account with the specified account identifier is not found in the system.
C1-TXNIP	1302	UDF_CURRENCY_1 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_1 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency is not available in the **UDF_CURRENCY_CD_1** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	1303	UDF_AMT_1 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_1 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The amount is not available in the **UDF_AMT_1** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	1304	UDF_CURRENCY_2 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency is not available in the **UDF_CURRENCY_CD_2** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	1305	UDF_AMT_2 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_2 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The amount is not available in the **UDF_AMT_2** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	1306	UDF_CURRENCY_3 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_3 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency is not available in the **UDF_CURRENCY_CD_3** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	1307	UDF_AMT_3 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_3 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The amount is not available in the **UDF_AMT_3** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	1308	UDF_CURRENCY_4 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_4 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency is not available in the **UDF_CURRENCY_CD_4** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	1309	UDF_AMT_4 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_4 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The amount is not available in the **UDF_AMT_4** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	1310	UDF_CURRENCY_5 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_5 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency is not available in the **UDF_CURRENCY_CD_5** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	1311	UDF_AMT_5 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_5 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The amount is not available in the **UDF_AMT_5** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	1347	Could not derive a product from the rules engine.	17000	The possible issues could be: • There is some technical issue while executing the rule or while processing the rule output. • No rules are effective on the processing date. • The rule type is not defined for the transaction source and transaction record type combination in the system.
C1-TXNIP	1349	Division is invalid. Please enter a valid division for the transaction.	17000	The possible issues could be: • Division (to which the transaction belongs) is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	1351	Transaction Currency is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency in which the transaction was performed is not available in the **Transaction Currency** column. • Currency is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	1362	UDF Currency 1 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: • Currency is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	1363	UDF Currency 2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: • Currency is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	1364	UDF Currency 3 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: • Currency is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	1365	UDF Currency 4 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: • Currency is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	1366	UDF Currency 5 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: • Currency is not defined in the system.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	1377	Transaction currency is mandatory when transaction amount is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency is not available in the **Transaction Currency** column.
C1-TXNIP	1378	Transaction amount is mandatory when transaction currency is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The amount is not available in the **Transaction Amount** column.
C1-TXNIP	1379	The user does not exist in the system. Please enter a valid user ID.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The user is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	1380	The value entered in the Credit/Debit Indicator column is incorrect. Enter either "+" or "-".	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value other than '+' or '-' is available in the **HOW_TO_USE_TXN_FLG** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	1381	The value entered in the Manual Switch field is incorrect. Enter either "Y" or "N".	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value other than 'Y' or 'N' is available in the **MANUAL_SW** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is less than or equal to zero.
C1-TXNIP	1636	Invalid batch run [%1] for [%2] division(s). %3 **Note:** [%1] stands for batch code; [%2] stands for division; [%3] stands for expected batch code	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute the C1-TXNVP, C1-TXNEX, C1-TXNSQ, C1-TXNCM or C1-TXNCU batch instead of the C1-TXNIP batch (which is first mandatory batch in the transaction aggregation cycle).
C1-TXNIP	1637	Batch [%1] is already executed for [%2] division(s). Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for [%3] division(s). **Note:** [%1] stands for batch code; [%2] and [%3] stands for division	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch once again with the same division (for example, D1) after executing any other batch in the transaction aggregation cycle which is already initiated for D1.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	1638	Transaction Feed Management cycle for individual division(s) is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for processing [ALL] divisions.	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch for all divisions before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for a particular division.
C1-TXNIP	1639	Transaction Feed Management cycle for [ALL] divisions is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for individual division [%1]. **Note:** [%1] stands for division	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch for a particular division before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for all divisions.
C1-TXNIP	1646	Value for mandatory parameter is missing.	17000	The possible issues could be: • No value is defined for the mandatory product parameter in the rule.
C1-TXNIP	1647	Mandatory parameter is missing.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The mandatory product parameter is not defined as the output parameter in the rule.
C1-TXNIP	1648	Account Number derived by the rule is invalid.	17000	The possible issues could be: • No value is defined for either **Account Identifier (ACCT_NOX_Val)** or **Account Identifier Column Name (ACCT_NOX_Col)** output parameter in the rule.
C1-TXNIP	1649	Account Number type code derived by the rule is invalid.	17000	The possible issues could be: • No value is defined for either **Account Identifier Type (ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Val)** or **Account Identifier Type Column Name (ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Col)** output parameter in the rule.
C1-TXNIP	1650	Division derived by the rule is invalid.	17000	The possible issues could be: • No value is defined for either **Account Division (DIVISIONX_VAL)** or **Account Division Column Name (DIVISIONX_COL)** output parameter in the rule.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	1651	Not able to derive account ID.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The account with the specified account identifier type, account identifier, and division is not found in the system.
C1-TXNIP	1652	Product derived by the rule is invalid.	17000	The possible issues could be: • No value is defined for either **Product Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Val)** or **Product Column Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Col)** output parameter in the rule.
C1-TXNIP	1653	Length of the derived product is greater than 10.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Product Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Val)** or **Product Column Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Col)** output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 10 characters.
C1-TXNIP	1654	Length of the derived variance parameter is greater than 8.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **TOU (TOUX_Y_Val)** or **TOU Column Name (TOUX_Y_Col)** output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 8 characters.
C1-TXNIP	1656	Length of the product parameter value derived by the rule is greater than 254.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Parameter Value (PVLX_Y_Z_VAL)** or **Parameter Value Column Name (PVLX_Y_Z_COL)** output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 254 characters.
C1-TXNIP	1657	Length of the product parameter code derived by the rule is greater than 30.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Parameter Code (PCDX_Y_Z_VAL)** output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.
C1-TXNIP	2002	Transaction is in EROR due to one or more reasons.	17000	The possible issues could be: • There might be one or more reasons why the status of the transaction is set to **Error (EROR)**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2007	%1 cannot be blank. **Note:** [%1] stands for division	17000	The possible issues could be: • The division to which the transaction belongs is not available in the **Division** column.
C1-TXNIP	2007	%1 cannot be blank. **Note:** [%1] stands for user ID	17000	The possible issues could be: • No data exists in the **USER_ID** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table when the **MANUAL_SW** column is set to **Y**.
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Currency Code"; [%2] stands for "Transaction Amount"	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency in which the transaction was performed is not available in the **CURRENCY_CD** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Amount 1 Currency Code"; [%2] stands for "Additional Amount 1"	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency is not available in the **UDF_CURRENCY_CD_1** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Amount 2 Currency Code"; [%2] stands for "Additional Amount 2"	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency is not available in the **UDF_CURRENCY_CD_2** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Amount 3 Currency Code"; [%2] stands for "Additional Amount 3"	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency is not available in the **UDF_CURRENCY_CD_3** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Amount 4 Currency Code"; [%2] stands for "Additional Amount 4"	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency is not available in the **UDF_CURRENCY_CD_4** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Amount 5 Currency Code"; [%2] stands for "Additional Amount 5"	17000	The possible issues could be: • The currency is not available in the **UDF_CURRENCY_CD_5** column of the **CI_TXN_DETAIL** table.
C1-TXNIP	2012	%1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Currency Code"; [%2] stands for transaction currency	17000	The possible issues could be: • Currency is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	2012	%1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Amount 1 Currency Code"; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_1	17000	The possible issues could be: • Currency is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	2012	%1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Amount 2 Currency Code"; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_2	17000	The possible issues could be: • Currency is not defined in the system.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2012	%1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Amount 3 Currency Code"; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_3	17000	The possible issues could be: • Currency is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	2012	%1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Amount 4 Currency Code"; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_4	17000	The possible issues could be: • Currency is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	2012	%1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Amount 5 Currency Code"; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_5	17000	The possible issues could be: • Currency is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	2013	The user %1 does not exist in the system. Please enter a valid user ID. **Note:** [%1] stands for user ID	17000	The possible issues could be: • The user is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNIP	2014	%1 derived using %2 by the rule is invalid. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Account Number" [%2] stands for the ACCT_NOX_Val or ACCT_NOX_Col output parameter	17000	The possible issues could be: • No value is defined for either **Account Identifier (ACCT_NOX_Val)** or **Account Identifier Column Name (ACCT_NOX_Col)** output parameter in the rule.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2014	%1 derived using %2 by the rule is invalid. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Account Identifier Type" [%2] stands for the ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Val or ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Col output parameter	17000	The possible issues could be: • No value is defined for either **Account Identifier Type (ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Val)** or **Account Identifier Type Column Name (ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Col)** output parameter in the rule.
C1-TXNIP	2014	%1 derived using %2 by the rule is invalid. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Division" [%2] stands for the DIVISIONX_VAL or DIVISIONX_COL output parameter	17000	The possible issues could be: • No value is defined for either **Account Division (DIVISIONX_VAL)** or **Account Division Column Name (DIVISIONX_COL)** output parameter in the rule.
C1-TXNIP	2014	%1 derived using %2 by the rule is invalid. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Initial Product Code" [%2] stands for the PRODUCTX_Y_Val or PRODUCTX_Y_Col output parameter	17000	The possible issues could be: • No value is defined for either **Product Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Val)** or **Product Column Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Col)** output parameter in the rule.
C1-TXNIP	2015	Not able to derive account id for given Account Number %1, Account Number Type Code %2 and Division %3. **Note:** [%1] stands for account identifier; [%2] stands for account identifier type; [%3] stands for division	17000	The possible issues could be: • The account with the specified account identifier type, account identifier and division is not found in the system.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2016	Length of the derived %1 using %2 by the rule is greater than %3. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Initial Product Code"; [%2] stands for PRODUCTX_Y_Val or PRODUCTX_Y_Col output parameter; [%3] stands for length of product code (i.e. 30)	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Product Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Val)** or **Product Column Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Col)** output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.
C1-TXNIP	2016	Length of the derived %1 using %2 by the rule is greater than %3. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Variance Parameter"; [%2] stands for TOUX_Y_Val or TOUX_Y_Col output parameter; [%3] stands for length of variance parameter (i.e. 8)	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **TOU (TOUX_Y_Val)** or **TOU Column Name (TOUX_Y_Col)** output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 8 characters.
C1-TXNIP	2016	Length of the derived %1 using %2 by the rule is greater than %3. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Parameter"; [%2] stands for PCDX_Y_Z_VAL output parameter; [%3] stands for length of parameter (i.e. 30)	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Parameter Code (PCDX_Y_Z_VAL)** output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2016	Length of the derived %1 using %2 by the rule is greater than %3. **Note:** [%1] stands for "Parameter Value"; [%2] stands for PVLX_Y_Z_VAL or PVLX_Y_Z_COL output parameter; [%3] stands for length of parameter value (i.e. 254)	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Parameter Value (PVLX_Y_Z_VAL)** or **Parameter Value Column Name (PVLX_Y_Z_COL)** output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 254 characters.
C1-TXNIP	2017	Mandatory parameter %1 is missing for %2 %3 and processing date %4. **Note:** [%1] stands for the product parameter code; [%2] stands for "Initial Product Code" [%3] stands for the product code [%4] stands for the processing date	17000	The possible issues could be: • The mandatory product parameter is not defined as the output parameter in the rule.
C1-TXNIP	2018	Value for mandatory parameter %1 is missing for product %2 and processing date %3. **Note:** [%1] stands for product parameter code; [%2] stands for product code; [%3] stands for processing date	17000	The possible issues could be: • No value is defined for the mandatory product parameter in the rule.
C1-TXNIP	2019	Value of the derived %1 %2 contains '~' or '='. **Note:** [%1] stands for parameter code [%2] stands for parameter value	17000	The possible issues could be: • The parameter code or value contains the equal to (=) and tide (~) symbols.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2037	Error during executing rules for transaction record type %1, transaction source %2 and processing date %3. **Note:** [%1] stands for transaction record type; [%2] stands for transaction source; [%3] stands for processing date	17000	The possible issues could be: • There is some technical issue while executing the rule or while processing the rule output. • No rules are effective on the processing date. • The rule type is not defined for the transaction source and transaction record type combination in the system.
C1-TXNIP	2043	Unable to derive Rule Type with Transaction Source %1 and Transaction Record Type %2. **Note:** [%1] stands for transaction source; [%2] stands for transaction record type	17000	The possible issues could be: • The rule type is not defined for the transaction source and transaction record type combination in the system.
C1-TXNIP	2087	Division %1 is invalid. Please enter a valid division for the transaction. **Note:** [%1] stands for division	17000	The possible issues could be: • Division (to which the transaction belongs) is not defined in the system.
C1-TXNVP	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter is less than or equal to one.
C1-TXNVP	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Header ID** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.
C1-TXNVP	106	Value { Given Transaction Source Code } too long for field { transactionSource }. Maximum length: 30. Found: { Length of given Transaction Source Code}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Source** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.
C1-TXNVP	106	Value { Given Transaction Division } too long for field { division }. Maximum length: 5 Found: { Length of given Transaction Division}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Division** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 5 characters.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNVP	1636	Invalid batch run [%1] for [%2] division(s). %3 **Note:** [%1] stands for batch code; [%2] stands for division; [%3] stands for expected batch code	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute the C1-TXNVP batch before executing the C1-TXNIP batch (which is first mandatory batch in the transaction aggregation cycle). • You are trying to execute the C1-TXNVP batch in between the C1-TXNCM and C1-TXNCU batches during the transaction aggregation cycle.
C1-TXNVP	1638	Transaction Feed Management cycle for individual division(s) is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for processing [ALL] divisions.	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch for all divisions before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for a particular division.
C1-TXNVP	1639	Transaction Feed Management cycle for [ALL] divisions is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for individual division [%1]. **Note:** [%1] stands for division	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch for a particular division before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for all divisions.
C1-TXNVP	1644	Transaction Feed Management cycle for division(s) [%1] is already in progress with filter [Source= %2, Header= %3] criteria. Filter criteria must be same for complete cycle. **Note:** [%1] stands for division; [%2] stands for transaction source; [%3] stands for transaction header ID	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch once again with the same division and different parameters.
C1-TXNEX	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter is less than or equal to one.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNEX	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is greater than the value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter.
C1-TXNEX	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Header ID** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.
C1-TXNEX	106	Value { Given Transaction Source Code } too long for field { transactionSource }. Maximum length: 30. Found: { Length of given Transaction Source Code}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Source** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.
C1-TXNEX	106	Value { Given Transaction Division } too long for field { division }. Maximum length: 5 Found: { Length of given Transaction Division}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Division** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 5 characters.
C1-TXNEX	790	The selected Member account does not have active Contracts.	17000	The possible issues could be: • There are no contracts for the account in **Active**, **Pending Stop**, or **Stop** status on the transaction date.
C1-TXNEX	1336	Effective pricing is not available for the product. Please check.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The effective pricing is not available for the product.
C1-TXNEX	1392	Invalid configuration of Price Search Algorithm Parameters or Contracts or Schedule Periods.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The parameter values are either not defined or invalid in the **Price Assignment Search** algorithm (which is associated with the division). • The period in which the transaction date falls is not defined in the aggregation schedule. • There are multiple effective contracts of the same contract type (available on the transaction date) in **Active**, **Pending Stop**, or **Stop** status.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNEX	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is less than or equal to zero.
C1-TXNEX	1588	No Schedule Period found for the transaction date.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The period in which the transaction date falls is not defined in the aggregation schedule.
C1-TXNEX	1611	Division specific Price Search Algorithm is not configured.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The **Price Assignment Search** algorithm is not defined for the division.
C1-TXNEX	1612	Price Search Algorithm parameters are not set or are invalid.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The parameter values are either not defined or invalid in the **Price Assignment Search** algorithm (which is associated with the division).
C1-TXNEX	1613	Multiple contracts in Active, Pending Stop, Stop status exists for same contract type.	17000	The possible issues could be: • There are multiple effective contracts of the same contract type in **Active**, **Pending Stop**, or **Stop** status on the transaction date.
C1-TXNEX	1636	Invalid batch run [%1] for [%2] division(s). %3 **Note:** [%1] stands for batch code; [%2] stands for division; [%3] stands for expected batch code	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute the C1-TXNEX batch before executing the C1-TXNIP batch (which is first mandatory batch in the transaction aggregation cycle). • You are trying to execute the C1-TXNEX batch in between the C1-TXNCM and C1-TXNCU batches during the transaction aggregation cycle.
C1-TXNEX	1638	Transaction Feed Management cycle for individual division(s) is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for processing [ALL] divisions.	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch for all divisions before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for a particular division.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNEX	1639	Transaction Feed Management cycle for [ALL] divisions is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for individual division [%1]. **Note:** [%1] stands for division	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch for a particular division before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for all divisions.
C1-TXNEX	1644	Transaction Feed Management cycle for division(s) [%1] is already in progress with filter [Source= %2, Header= %3] criteria. Filter criteria must be same for complete cycle. **Note:** [%1] stands for division; [%2] stands for transaction source; [%3] stands for transaction header ID	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch once again with the same division and different parameters.
C1-TXNIP	2003	One or more Sub Transactions are in EROR state.	17000	The possible issues could be: • One or more transaction legs are in the **Error (EROR)** status.
C1-TXNEX	2006	No active contract exists for account %1, product %2 and transaction date %3. **Note:** [%1] stands for derived account; [%2] stands for derived product; and [%3] stands for transaction date	17000	The possible issues could be: • There is no contract with the specified contract type available on the transaction date. • The contract is inactive.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNEX	2020	Invalid configuration of Price Search Algorithm Parameters or Contracts or Schedule Periods for division %1, account %2, product %3, transaction date %4 and processing date %5. **Note:** [%1] stands for derived division; [%2] stands for derived account; [%3] stands for derived product; [%4] stands for transaction date; [%5] stands for processing date	17000	The possible issues could be: • The parameter values are either not defined or invalid in the **Price Assignment Search** algorithm (which is associated with the division). • The period in which the transaction date falls is not defined in the aggregation schedule. • There are multiple effective contracts of the same contract type (available on the transaction date) in **Active**, **Pending Stop**, or **Stop** status.
C1-TXNEX	2021	Division specific Price Search Algorithm is not configured for division %1 and processing date %2. **Note:** [%1] stands for derived division; [%2] stands for processing date	17000	The possible issues could be: • The **Price Assignment Search** algorithm is not defined for the derived division on the processing date.
C1-TXNEX	2022	Price Search Algorithm parameters are not set or are invalid for division %1 and processing date %2. **Note:** [%1] stands for derived division; [%2] stands for processing date	17000	The possible issues could be: • The parameter values are either not defined or invalid in the **Price Assignment Search** algorithm which is associated with the derived division on the processing date.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNEX	2023	Effective pricing is not available for account %1, product %2, parameters %3 and processing date %4. **Note:** [%1] stands for derived account; [%2] stands for derived product; [%3] stands for derived product parameter; [%4] stands for processing date	17000	The possible issues could be: • The effective pricing is not available for the account, product and product parameters combination on the processing date.
C1-TXNEX	2024	No Schedule Period found for product %1, price assignment id %2 and transaction date %3. **Note:** [%1] stands for derived product; [%2] stands for price assignment ID; [%3] stands for transaction date	17000	The possible issues could be: • The period in which the transaction date falls is not defined in the aggregation schedule (which is used in the product pricing).
C1-TXNEX	2025	Multiple contracts in Active, Pending Stop, Stop status exists for same contract type against account %1, product %2 and transaction date %3. **Note:** [%1] stands for derived account; [%2] stands for derived product; [%3] stands for transaction date	17000	The possible issues could be: • There are multiple effective contracts of the same contract type in **Active**, **Pending Stop**, or **Stop** status on the transaction date.
C1-TXNEX	2026	No active contract exists for account %1, product %2 and transaction date %3. **Note:** [%1] stands for derived account; [%2] stands for derived product; [%3] stands for transaction date	17000	The possible issues could be: • There are no contracts for the account in **Active**, **Pending Stop**, or **Stop** status on the transaction date.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNSQ	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is greater than the value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter.
C1-TXNSQ	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter is less than or equal to one.
C1-TXNSQ	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Header ID** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.
C1-TXNSQ	106	Value { Given Transaction Source Code } too long for field { transactionSource }. Maximum length: 30. Found: { Length of given Transaction Source Code}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Source** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.
C1-TXNSQ	106	Value { Given Transaction Division } too long for field { division }. Maximum length: 5 Found: { Length of given Transaction Division}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Division** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 5 characters.
C1-TXNSQ	1388	Data configuration error for { ENV_ID }.	17000	The possible issues could be: • No data exists in the **ENV_ID** column of the **CI_INSTALLATION** table. • The data available in the **ENV_ID** column of the **CI_INSTALLATION** table is not properly cached.
C1-TXNSQ	1388	Data configuration error for { SQI Fragment }.	17000	The possible issues could be: • No data exists in the **SQL_FRAG**, **TXN_PRM**, **SQI_CD**, and **SQL_FUNC** columns of the **CI_TXN_SQI_FRAG** table. • The data available in the **SQL_FRAG**, **TXN_PRM**, **SQI_CD**, and **SQL_FUNC** columns of the **CI_TXN_SQI_FRAG** table is not properly cached.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNSQ	1388	Data configuration error for { Price Item SQI }.	17000	The possible issues could be: • No data exists in the **PRICEITEM_CD**, **CIS_DIVISION**, and **SQI_CD** columns of the **CI_PRICEITEM_SQI** table. • The data available in the **PRICEITEM_CD**, **CIS_DIVISION**, and **SQI_CD** columns of the **CI_PRICEITEM_SQI** table is not properly cached.
C1-TXNSQ	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is less than or equal to zero.
C1-TXNSQ	1636	Invalid batch run [%1] for [%2] division(s). %3 **Note:** [%1] stands for batch code; [%2] stands for division; [%3] stands for expected batch code	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute the C1-TXNSQ batch before executing the C1-TXNIP batch (which is first mandatory batch in the transaction aggregation cycle). • You are trying to execute the C1-TXNSQ batch in between the C1-TXNCM and C1-TXNCU batches during the transaction aggregation cycle.
C1-TXNSQ	1638	Transaction Feed Management cycle for individual division(s) is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for processing [ALL] divisions.	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch for all divisions before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for a particular division.
C1-TXNSQ	1639	Transaction Feed Management cycle for [ALL] divisions is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for individual division [%1]. **Note:** [%1] stands for division	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch for a particular division before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for all divisions.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNSQ	1644	Transaction Feed Management cycle for division(s) [%1] is already in progress with filter [Source= %2, Header= %3] criteria. Filter criteria must be same for complete cycle. **Note:** [%1] stands for division; [%2] stands for transaction source; [%3] stands for transaction header ID	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch once again with the same division and different parameters.
C1-TXNSQ	2003	One or more Sub Transactions are in EROR state.	17000	The possible issues could be: • One or more transaction legs are in the **Error (EROR)** status.
C1-TXNSQ	2026	SQIs not configured for product %1 and division %2. **Note:** [%1] stands for final product code; [%2] stands for derived division	17000	The possible issues could be: • The SQIs are not defined for the product — division combination.
C1-TXNSQ	2027	Currency Conversion from Currency [%1] to Currency [%2] not successful.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The exchange rate is not available during currency conversion.
C1-TXNCM	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter is less than or equal to one.
C1-TXNCM	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is greater than the value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter.
C1-TXNCM	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Header ID** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNCM	106	Value { Given Transaction Source Code } too long for field { transactionSource }. Maximum length: 30. Found: { Length of given Transaction Source Code}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Source** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.
C1-TXNCM	106	Value { Given Transaction Division } too long for field { division }. Maximum length: 5 Found: { Length of given Transaction Division}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Division** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 5 characters.
C1-TXNCM	1393	Either the transaction feed management setup is incomplete, or there is no active contract available.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The SQIs are not defined for the product — division combination. • The transaction aggregation rule is not defined for the SQI. • There is no contract with the specified contract type available in the system. • The contract is inactive.
C1-TXNCM	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is less than or equal to zero.
C1-TXNCM	1636	Invalid batch run [%1] for [%2] division(s). %3 **Note:** [%1] stands for batch code; [%2] stands for division; [%3] stands for expected batch code	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute the C1-TXNCM batch before executing the C1-TXNIP batch.
C1-TXNCM	1638	Transaction Feed Management cycle for individual division(s) is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for processing [ALL] divisions.	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch for all divisions before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for a particular division.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNCM	1639	Transaction Feed Management cycle for [ALL] divisions is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for individual division [%1]. **Note:** [%1] stands for division	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch for a particular division before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for all divisions.
C1-TXNCM	1644	Transaction Feed Management cycle for division(s) [%1] is already in progress with filter [Source= %2, Header= %3] criteria. Filter criteria must be same for complete cycle. **Note:** [%1] stands for division; [%2] stands for transaction source; [%3] stands for transaction header ID	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch once again with the same division and different parameters.
C1-TXNCM	2003	One or more Sub Transactions are in EROR state.	17000	The possible issues could be: • One or more transaction legs are in the **Error (EROR)** status.
C1-TXNCM	2026	SQIs not configured for product %1 and division %2. **Note:** [%1] stands for final product code; [%2] stands for derived division	17000	The possible issues could be: • The SQIs are not defined for the product — division combination.
C1-TXNCM	2027	Currency Conversion from Currency [%1] to Currency [%2] not successful.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The exchange rate is not available during currency conversion.
C1-TXNCU	101	{ Disaggregation From Date} field missing	11001	The possible issues could be: • No value is specified for the **Disaggregate Transactions From Date** parameter when the request type is set to DISAGG.
C1-TXNCU	101	{ Request Type} field missing	11001	The possible issues could be: • No value is specified for the **Request Type** parameter.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNCU	101	{ Transaction Header Id } field missing	11001	The possible issues could be: • No value is specified for the **Transaction Header ID** parameter when the request type is set to CNCL.
C1-TXNCU	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter is less than or equal to one.
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is greater than the value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter.
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Request Type } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value other than 'EROR', 'CNCL' or 'DISAGG' is specified for the **Request Type** parameter.
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Transaction Division } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value for the **Division** parameter is specified when the request type is set to CNCL.
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Transaction Source Code } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value for the **Transaction Source** parameter is specified when the request type is set to CNCL.
C1-TXNCU	102	{Account Id } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value for the **Account ID** parameter is specified when the request type is set to CNCL.
C1-TXNCU	102	{Bill Cycle Code } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value for the **Bill Cycle** parameter is specified when the request type is set to CNCL.
C1-TXNCU	102	{Disaggregation From Date } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value for the **Disaggregate Transactions From Date** parameter is specified when the request type is set to CNCL.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNCU	102	{Account Id } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value for the **Account ID** parameter is specified when the request type is set to EROR.
C1-TXNCU	102	{Bill Cycle Code } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value for the **Bill Cycle** parameter is specified when the request type is set to EROR.
C1-TXNCU	102	{Disaggregation From Date } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value for the **Disaggregate Transactions From Date** parameter is specified when the request type is set to EROR.
C1-TXNCU	102	{Transaction Header Id } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value for the **Transaction Header ID** parameter is specified when the request type is set to DISAGG.
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Transaction Source Code } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value for the **Transaction Source** parameter is specified when the request type is set to DISAGG.
C1-TXNCU	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Header ID** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.
C1-TXNCU	106	Value { Given Transaction Source Code } too long for field { transactionSource }. Maximum length: 30. Found: { Length of given Transaction Source Code}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Source** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.
C1-TXNCU	106	Value { Given Transaction Division } too long for field { division }. Maximum length: 5 Found: { Length of given Transaction Division}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Division** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 5 characters.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNCU	1388	Data configuration error for { SQI Fragment }.	17000	The possible issues could be: • No data exists in the SQL_FRAG, TXN_PRM, SQI_CD, and SQL_FUNC columns of the CI_TXN_SQI_FRAG table. • The data available in the SQL_FRAG, TXN_PRM, SQI_CD, and SQL_FUNC columns of the CI_TXN_SQI_FRAG table is not properly cached.
C1-TXNCU	1388	Data configuration error for { Price Item SQI }.	17000	The possible issues could be: • No data exists in the PRICEITEM_CD, CIS_DIVISION, and SQI_CD columns of the CI_PRICEITEM_SQI table. • The data available in the PRICEITEM_CD, CIS_DIVISION, and SQI_CD columns of the CI_PRICEITEM_SQI table is not properly cached.
C1-TXNCU	1391	Bill is completed hence cant cancel the header.	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to cancel a transaction feed for which a bill with the **Complete** status already exists in the system.
C1-TXNCU	1424	There are pending bills for the feed you want to cancel. Please execute the Pending Bill Deletion (C1-DELBL) batch.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The **Pending Bill Deletion (C1-DELBL)** batch is not yet executed to delete the bills (generated for the feed) which are in the **Pending** status.
C1-TXNCU	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is less than or equal to zero.
C1-TXNCU	1636	Invalid batch run [%1] for [%2] division(s). %3 **Note:** [%1] stands for batch code; [%2] stands for division; [%3] stands for expected batch code	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute the C1-TXNCU batch before executing the C1-TXNIP or C1-TXNCM batch.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNCU	1638	Transaction Feed Management cycle for individual division(s) is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for processing [ALL] divisions.	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch for all divisions before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for a particular division.
C1-TXNCU	1639	Transaction Feed Management cycle for [ALL] divisions is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for individual division [%1]. **Note:** [%1] stands for division	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch for a particular division before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for all divisions.
C1-TXNCU	1644	Transaction Feed Management cycle for division(s) [%1] is already in progress with filter [Source= %2, Header= %3] criteria. Filter criteria must be same for complete cycle. **Note:** [%1] stands for division; [%2] stands for transaction source; [%3] stands for transaction header ID	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to execute this batch once again with the same division and different parameters.
C1-TXNRB	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter is less than or equal to one.
C1-TXNRB	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is greater than the value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter.
C1-TXNRB	102	{ Status Value } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value other than 'ERROR' or 'IGNR' is specified for the **Transaction Status** parameter.
C1-TXNRB	102	{ RollBack From Date } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The date specified in the **Rollback From Date** parameter is later than the date specified in the **Rollback To Date** parameter.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNRB	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is less than or equal to zero.
C1-DELBL	101	{ Transaction Header Id } field missing	11001	The possible issues could be: • No value is specified for the **Transaction Header ID** parameter.
C1-DELBL	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter is less than or equal to one.
C1-DELBL	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id}	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Transaction Header ID** parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.
C1-DELBL	1391	Bill is completed or bill segment is frozen or pending-cancelled hence can not cancel the header.	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to cancel a transaction feed for which a bill with the **Pending** status is already generated in the system. This pending bill has a bill segment in either **Frozen** or **Pending Cancel** status.
C1-DELBL	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is less than or equal to zero.
C1-TXCNC	101	{ Transaction Header Id } field missing	11001	The possible issues could be: • No value is specified for the **Transaction Header ID** parameter.
C1-TXCNC	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter is less than or equal to one.
C1-TXCNC	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is greater than the value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXCNC	1391	Bill is completed or bill segment is frozen or pending-cancelled hence can not cancel the header.	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to cancel a transaction feed for which a bill with the **Pending** status is already generated in the system. This pending bill has a bill segment in either **Frozen** or **Pending Cancel** status.
C1-TXCNC	1424	There are pending bills for the feed you want to cancel. Please execute the Pending Bill Deletion (C1-DELBL) batch.	17000	The possible issues could be: • The **Pending Bill Deletion (C1-DELBL)** batch is not yet executed to delete the bills (generated for the feed) which are in the **Pending** status.
C1-TXCNC	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is less than or equal to zero.
C1-DISTG	102	{Division} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • Division is not defined in the system.
C1-DISTG	102	{ Billing Cycle Code } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • Bill cycle is not defined in the system.
C1-IAENT	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter is less than or equal to one.
C1-IAENT	1660	Disaggregate Transactions From Date would impose partial disaggregation for some billable charges	17000	The possible issues could be: • The identified aggregated billable charges aggregate transactions whose transaction date falls before the disaggregate transactions from date.
C1-DARSU	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter is less than or equal to one.
C1-PDTXN	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter is less than or equal to one.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-PDTXN	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is greater than the value specified for the **Chunk Size** parameter.
C1-PDTXN	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **Maximum Batch Count** parameter is less than or equal to zero.

Feed Management Dashboard

The **Feed Management Dashboard** screen allows you to view the details of a transaction feed. You can drill down and view the transaction details of a feed at the division level and at the transaction level. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search — Feed Level* on page 442
- *Division Level Information* on page 443
- *Transaction Level Information* on page 444

Search — Feed Level

The **Search — Feed Level** zone allows you to search for a transaction feed using various search criteria. You can view the details of a transaction feed which is already uploaded in the system. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Feed Header Date From	Used to search for transaction feeds having header date later than or equal to the specified date.	No
Feed Header Date To	Used to search for transaction feeds having header date earlier than or equal to the specified date.	No
Transaction Source	Used to search for transaction feeds received from a particular transaction source.	No
File Name	Used to search for a transaction feed based on the file name.	No
Feed Load Date From	Used to search for transaction feeds which are uploaded on or later than the specified date.	No
Feed Load Date To	Used to search for transaction feeds which are uploaded on or earlier than the specified date.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used to search for a transaction feed based on the header ID.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
File Name	Displays the name of the file from where the transaction feed is uploaded.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction feed is received.
Transaction Header ID	Displays the transaction header ID. **Note:** The transaction header ID is generated automatically when the file is uploaded.
Transaction Header External ID	Displays the ID mentioned in the file header.
Feed Header Date	Displays the date mentioned in the file header.
Feed Load Date	Displays the date when the transaction feed was uploaded in the system.
Feed Status	Displays the status of the transaction feed. The valid values are: • **Uploaded** — Indicates that the transaction feed is uploaded. • **Validated** — Indicates that the file header is validated. • **Invalid** — Indicates that the file header validation failed. • **Cancelled** — Indicates that the transaction feed is cancelled.
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the file header validation failed.
Total Volume	Displays the total transaction volume of the feed.
Uploaded Volume	Displays the total transaction volume which is uploaded in the system.
INPD Volume	Displays the total transaction volume which is validated and for which product is determined in the system.
Completed Volume	Displays the total transaction volume for which billable charges are created and completed in the system.
Error Volume	Displays the total transaction volume which could not pass through the validation, product determination, or billable charge creation process.
Cancelled Volume	Displays the total transaction volume which is cancelled in the system.
Ignored Volume	Displays the total transaction volume which is ignored in the system.
Invalid Volume	Displays the total transaction volume which is invalid.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction feed	*Searching for a Transaction Feed* on page 445
How to view the division level details of a transaction feed	*Viewing Division Level Details of a Transaction Feed* on page 446
How to view the transaction details of a division	*Viewing Transaction Details of a Division in a Feed* on page 446

Division Level Information

The **Division Level Information** zone allows you to drill down and view the transaction volume details of a feed at the division level. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the division.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Division	Indicates the division.
Total Volume	Displays the total transaction volume of the division.
Uploaded Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) which is uploaded in the system.
INPD Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) which is validated and for which product is determined in the system.
Completed Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) for which billable charges are created and completed in the system.
Error Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) which could not pass through the validation, product determination, or billable charge creation process.
Cancelled Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) which is cancelled in the system.
Ignored Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) which is ignored in the system.
Invalid Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) which is invalid.

By default, the **Division Level Information** zone does not appear in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the transaction feed in the **Search — Feed Level** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the division level details of a transaction feed	*Viewing Division Level Details of a Transaction Feed* on page 446

Transaction Level Information

The **Transaction Level Information** zone lists transactions in a feed which belong to a division. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — This section allows you to filter the transactions based on the various search criteria. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source from where the transaction was received.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	No
Transaction Status	Used to specify the status of the transaction.	No
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Division	Displays the division to which the transaction belongs.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the type of account identifier.
Account Identifier	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Transaction Currency	Displays the currency in which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Credit/Debit Indicator	Indicates whether the transaction is a debit or credit transaction.
Customer Reference Number	Indicates the customer who performed the transaction.
Transaction Status	Displays the status of the transaction.
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the validation, product determination, or billable charge creation process failed.
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial product for the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Rule** screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the transaction details of a division	*Viewing Transaction Details of a Division in a Feed* on page 446

Searching for a Transaction Feed

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Procedure

To search for a transaction feed:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Feed Management Dashboard**.

   The **Feed Management Dashboard** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search — Feed Level** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of transaction feeds that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Feed Management Dashboard screen	*Feed Management Dashboard* on page 442
Search — Feed Level zone	*Search — Feed Level* on page 442

Viewing Division Level Details of a Transaction Feed

Procedure

To view the division level details of a transaction feed:

1. Search for the transaction feed in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the transaction feed whose *d*ivision level details you want to view.

   The **Division Level Information** zone appears.

3. View the transaction volume details of each division in the **Division Level Information** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction feed	*Searching for a Transaction Feed* on page 445
Division Level Information zone	*Division Level Information* on page 443

Viewing Transaction Details of a Division in a Feed

Procedure

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To view the transaction details of a division in a feed:

1. Search for the transaction feed in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the transaction feed whose *d*etails you want to view.

   The **Division Level Information** zone appears.
3. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the division whose transaction details you want to view.

   The **Transaction Level Information** zone appears.
4. View the list of the transactions that belong to the division in the **Transaction Level Information** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction feed	*Searching for a Transaction Feed* on page 445
Division Level Information zone	*Division Level Information* on page 443
Transaction Level Information zone	*Transaction Level Information* on page 444

View Billed Transactions

The **View Billed Transactions** screen allows you to view the transactions which are billed to the customer. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 447
- *Bill Segments* on page 449
- *Transaction Details* on page 450
- *SQ Details* on page 451

You can also access this screen from the **Bill** screen by selecting the **Go To View Billed Transactions** option from the **Bill ID** context menu. The only difference is that the **Search** zone does not appear when you access this screen from the **Bill** screen.

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for a bill. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill ID	Used to specify the bill ID.	No
Alternate Bill ID	Used to specify the alternate bill ID.	No
Division	Used to search for bills of accounts that belong to a division. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is not required when you search for a bill using the Bill ID or the Alternate Bill ID.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Primary Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for bills of an account.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Primary Account Identifier	Used to specify the primary account identifier of the account.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Primary Customer Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for bills of a customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the customer identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the customer identifier type.
Primary Customer Identifier	Used to specify the ID linked to the customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the customer identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the customer identifier.
Bill Completion From Date	Used to search for bills which are completed on or later than the specified date.	No
Bill Completion To Date	Used to search for bills which are completed on or earlier than the specified date.	No
Bill Status	Used to indicate the status of the bill. The valid values are: • Complete • Pending	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Bill** screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Bill Status	Displays the status of the bill.
Completion Date	Displays the date when the bill was completed.
Invoice Amount	Displays the total amount billed to the customer.
Invoice Currency	Displays the currency in which the amount is billed to the customer.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the primary account identifier type.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Account Identifier	Indicates the account for which the bill is created.
Customer Identifier Type	Displays the primary customer identifier type.
Customer Identifier	Indicates the customer for whom the bill is created.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.
Alternate Bill ID	Displays the alternate bill ID.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bill	*Searching for a Bill* on page 451
How to view the bill segments of a bill	*Viewing the Bill Segments of a Bill* on page 451
How to view the transactions for which a bill segment is generated in a bill	*Viewing Transactions for which the Bill Segment is Generated* on page 452

Bill Segments

The **Bill Segments** zone lists the bill segments of a bill. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Segment	Displays the bill segment ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Bill Segment** screen appears with the details of the respective bill segment.
Bill Segment Status	Indicates the current status of the bill segment.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the bill segment.
End Date	Displays the end date of the bill segment.
Amount	Displays the amount of the bill segment.
Currency	Displays the currency of the bill segment.
Product	Displays the description of the product.
Variance Parameter	Indicates the variance parameter mapped to the transaction. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
Product Parameters	Indicates the product parameters mapped to the transaction. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
Rate Schedule Description	Indicates the rate schedule used for defining the product pricing.
Billable Charge ID	Indicates the billable charge for which the bill segment is created. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Billable Charge** screen appears with the details of the respective billable charge.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Account Info	Indicates the member account (in the invoicing group) for which the bill segment was generated.

By default, the **Bill Segments** zone does not appear in the **View Billed Transactions** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the bill in the **Search** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the bill segments of a bill	*Viewing the Bill Segments of a Bill* on page 451

Transaction Details

The **Transaction Details** zone lists the transactions for which the billable charge (corresponding to the bill segment) is created. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Currency	Displays the currency in which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Initial Product	Displays the product mapped to the transaction.
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial product for the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Rule** screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

By default, the **Transaction Details** zone does not appear in the **View Billed Transactions** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the bill segment in the **Bill Segments** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the transactions for which a bill segment is generated in a bill	*Viewing Transactions for which the Bill Segment is Generated* on page 452

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

SQ Details

The **SQ Details** zone lists the SQIs calculated on the billable charge (corresponding to the bill segment). This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
SQI	Indicates the service quantity identifier.
Billable Service Quantity	Displays the SQI value which is calculated using the transaction aggregation rule defined for the product — division combination.

By default, the **SQ Details** zone does not appear in the **View Billed Transactions** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the bill segment in the **Bill Segments** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the SQIs calculated on the billable charge	*Viewing SQIs Calculated on the Billable Charge* on page 452

Searching for a Bill

Procedure

To search for a bill:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **View Billed Transactions**.

   The **View Billed Transactions** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of bills that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
View Billed Transactions screen	*View Billed Transactions* on page 447
Search zone	*Search* on page 447

Viewing the Bill Segments of a Bill

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Procedure

To view the bill segments of a bill:

1. Search for the bill in the **View Billed Transactions** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the bill whose bill segments you want to view.

   The **Bill Segments** zone appears.
3. View all bill segments of the bill in the **Bill Segments** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bill	*Searching for a Bill* on page 451
Bill Segments zone	*Bill Segments* on page 449

Viewing Transactions for which the Bill Segment is Generated

Procedure

To view transactions for which the bill segment is generated:

1. Search for the bill in the **View Billed Transactions** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the bill whose bill segments you want to view.

   The **Bill Segments** zone appears.
3. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the bill segment whose details you want to view.

   The **Transaction Details** zone appears.
4. View the list of transactions for which the billable charge (corresponding to the bill segment) is created.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bill	*Searching for a Bill* on page 451
Bill Segments zone	*Bill Segments* on page 449
Transaction Details zone	*Transaction Details* on page 450

Viewing SQIs Calculated on the Billable Charge

Procedure

To view the SQIs calculated on the billable charge:

1. Search for the bill in the **View Billed Transactions** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the bill whose bill segments you want to view.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Bill Segments** zone appears.

3. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the bill segment whose billable charge details you want to view.

   The **SQ Details** zone appears.

4. View the SQIs calculated on the billable charge in the **SQ Details** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bill	*Searching for a Bill* on page 451
Bill Segments zone	*Bill Segments* on page 449
SQ Details zone	*SQ Details* on page 451

Transaction Details

The **Transaction Details** screen allows you to search for transactions using various search criteria. It also allows you to add and copy a transaction. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 453

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for transactions using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The fields in the **Search Criteria** section change depending on the query option selected. You can select either of the following query options:
  - **Uploaded** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is recently uploaded in the system.
  - **Initial Product Determined** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction for which a product is determined in the system.
  - **Ignored** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is ignored in the system.
  - **Error** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which could not pass through the validation, product determination, or billable charge creation process.
  - **Cancelled** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is cancelled in the system.
  - **Completed** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction for which billable charge is completed in the system.
  - **Invalid** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is invalid.
- **Search Results** — The **Search Results** section displays the records based on the specified search criteria. The columns in the search results change depending on the query option selected.

You can also add a transaction manually by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an uploaded transaction	*Searching for an UPLD Transaction* on page 454
How to search for a transaction for which product is determined	*Searching for an INPD Transaction* on page 456
How to search for an ignored transaction	*Searching for an IGNR Transaction* on page 466
How to search for an invalid transaction	*Searching for an INVL Transaction* on page 468
How to search for a transaction with an error	*Searching for an EROR Transaction* on page 463
How to search for a cancelled transaction	*Searching for an CNCL Transaction* on page 461
How to search for a transaction for which billable charge is completed	*Searching for an COMP Transaction* on page 459
How to add a transaction manually	*Adding a Transaction* on page 474
How to view the details of a transaction	*Viewing the Transaction Details* on page 472
How to cancel a transaction	*Cancelling a Transaction*

Searching for an UPLD Transaction

Procedure

To search for an uploaded transaction:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.

   The **Transaction Details** screen appears.

4. Select the **Uploaded** option from the **Query Option** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is recently uploaded in the system.

   The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	No
Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source from where the transaction was received.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used to search for transactions that are uploaded through a particular transaction feed.	No
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search for transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No

5. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

6. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Upload Date	Displays the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.
Transaction Header ID	Indicates the transaction feed through which the transaction was uploaded in the system.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Manual Entry	Indicates whether the transaction is manually added in the system. The valid values are: • Yes • No
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Currency	Displays the currency in which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Displays the division to which the transaction belongs.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed. The string includes the account identifier type and account identifier.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

7. View the legs of the transaction in the **Derived Sub-Transactions** zone, if required.

   Note: You can only view the legs of an UPLD transaction which is partially disaggregated.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Details screen	*Transaction Details* on page 453
Search zone	*Search* on page 453
How to view the legs of a transaction	*Viewing the Transaction Legs* on page 470

Searching for an INPD Transaction

Procedure

To search for a transaction for which a product is determined:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.

   The **Transaction Details** screen appears.

4. Select the **Initial Product Determined** option from the **Query Option** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction for which a product is determined in the system.

   The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	No
Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source from where the transaction was received.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.	No
Product	Used to search for transactions mapped to a particular product.	No
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search for transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No

5. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all the input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

6. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Upload Date	Displays the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.
Product	Indicates the product mapped to the transaction.
Variance Parameter	Indicates the variance parameter mapped to the transaction. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
Product Parameters	Indicates the product parameters mapped to the transaction. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Currency	Displays the currency in which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Displays the division to which the transaction belongs.
Account Information	Indicates the account which will bear the charges for the transaction. The string includes the account identifier type, account identifier, and division (to which the account belongs).
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial product for the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Rule** screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

7. View the legs of the transaction in the **Derived Sub-Transactions** zone, if required.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Details screen	*Transaction Details* on page 453
Search zone	*Search* on page 453
How to view the legs of a transaction	*Viewing the Transaction Legs* on page 470

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Searching for an COMP Transaction

Procedure

To search for a transaction for which billable charge is completed:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.

   The **Transaction Details** screen appears.

4. Select the **Completed** option from the **Query Option** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction for which billable charge is completed in the system.

   The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	No
Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source from where the transaction was received.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.	No
Billable Charge ID	Used to search for transactions that contributed to the specified billable charge.	No
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search for transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No

5. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

6. Click **Refresh**.

A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Billable Charge ID	Indicates the billable charge in which the transaction is included for billing.
Product	Indicates the product mapped to the transaction.
Variance Parameter	Indicates the variance parameter mapped to the transaction. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
Product Parameters	Indicates the product parameters mapped to the transaction. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Currency	Displays the currency in which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Displays the division to which the transaction belongs.
Account Information	Indicates the account which will bear the charges for the transaction. The string includes the account identifier type, account identifier, and division (to which the account belongs).
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial product for the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Rule** screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

7. View the legs of the transaction in the **Derived Sub-Transactions** zone, if required.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Details screen	*Transaction Details* on page 453
Search zone	*Search* on page 453
How to view the legs of a transaction	*Viewing the Transaction Legs* on page 470

Searching for an CNCL Transaction

Procedure

To search for a cancelled transaction:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.

   The **Transaction Details** screen appears.

4. Select the **Cancelled** option from the **Query Option** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is cancelled in the system.

   The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	No
Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source from where the transaction was received.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for transactions of an account.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used to search for transactions that are uploaded through the specified transaction feed.	No
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search for transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No

5. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

6. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Upload Date	Displays the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.
Transaction Header ID	Indicates the transaction feed through which the transaction was uploaded in the system.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Manual Entry	Indicates whether the transaction is manually added in the system. The valid values are: • Yes • No
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Currency	Displays the currency in which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Displays the division to which the transaction belongs.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed. The string includes the account identifier type and account identifier.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Details screen	*Transaction Details* on page 453
Search zone	*Search* on page 453

Searching for an EROR Transaction

Procedure

To search for a transaction with an error:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.

   The **Transaction Details** screen appears.

4. Select the **Error** option from the **Query Option** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which could not pass through the validation, product determination, or billable charge creation process.

   The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source from where the transaction was received.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used to search for transactions that are uploaded through the specified transaction feed.	No
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search for transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No

5. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

6. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Upload Date	Displays the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Customer Reference Number	Indicates the customer who performed the transaction.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Currency	Displays the currency in which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Displays the division to which the transaction belongs.
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the validation and product determination process failed. **Note:** If the error occurred while executing the **Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1–TXNIP)** batch, a generic message appears indicating that the transaction is in the **Error (EROR)** status due to one or more reasons. You can view all error messages logged for the transaction in the **Transaction Error Messages** zone. However, if the error occurred while executing the **Product Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** or **Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)** batch, a generic message appears indicating that one or more transaction legs are in the **Error (EROR)** status. You can view the error message corresponding to the transaction leg in the **Derived Sub-Transactions** zone.
Account Information	If the error has occurred during the transaction validation process, this column indicates the account for which the transaction was performed. However, if the error has occurred after the transaction validation process, this column indicates the account which will bear the charges for the transaction. The string includes the account identifier type, account identifier, and division (to which the account belongs). Note that division appears in the string only when the error has occurred after the transaction validation process.
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial product for the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Rule** screen appears where you can view the details of the rule. This column is blank when the error has occurred while determining initial product for the transaction.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

7. View the legs of the transaction in the **Derived Sub-Transactions** zone, if required.
8. View the error messages logged for the transaction in the **Transaction Error Messages** zone, if required.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Details screen	*Transaction Details* on page 453
Search zone	*Search* on page 453
How to view the legs of a transaction	*Viewing the Transaction Legs* on page 470
How to view the list of error messages	*Viewing Error Messages* on page 472

Searching for an IGNR Transaction

Procedure

To search for an ignored transaction:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.

   The **Transaction Details** screen appears.
4. Select the **Ignored** option from the **Query Option** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is ignored in the system.

   The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	No
Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source from where the transaction was received.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Header ID	Used to search for transactions that are uploaded through the specified transaction feed.	No
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search for transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No

5. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

6. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Upload Date	Displays the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.
Transaction Header ID	Indicates the transaction feed through which the transaction was uploaded in the system.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Currency	Displays the currency in which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Displays the division to which the transaction belongs.
Account Information	Indicates the account which will bear the charges for the transaction. The string includes the account identifier type, account identifier, and division (to which the account belongs).

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial product for the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Rule** screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

7. View the legs of the transaction in the **Derived Sub-Transactions** zone, if required.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Details screen	*Transaction Details* on page 453
Search zone	*Search* on page 453
How to view the legs of a transaction	*Viewing the Transaction Legs* on page 470

Searching for an INVL Transaction

Procedure

To search for an invalid transaction:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.

   The **Transaction Details** screen appears.

4. Select the **Invalid** option from the **Query Option** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is invalid.

   The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	No
Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	No
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source from where the transaction was received.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used to search for transactions that are uploaded through the specified transaction feed.	No
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search for transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No	No

5. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

6. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Upload Date	Displays the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.
Transaction Header ID	Indicates the transaction feed through which the transaction was uploaded in the system.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Currency	Displays the currency in which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Displays the division to which the transaction belongs.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed. The string includes the account identifier type and account identifier.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Transaction Details** screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the transaction is invalid. **Note:** A generic message appears indicating that the transaction is in the **Invalid (INVL)** status due to one or more reasons. You can view all error messages logged for the transaction in the **Transaction Error Messages** zone.

7. View the error messages logged for the transaction in the **Transaction Error Messages** zone, if required.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Details screen	*Transaction Details* on page 453
Search zone	*Search* on page 453
How to view the list of error messages	*Viewing Error Messages* on page 472

Viewing the Transaction Legs

Procedure

To view the legs of a transaction:

1. Search for the transaction in the **Transaction Details** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the transaction whose legs you want to view.

   The **Derived Sub-Transactions** zone appears. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Sub-Transaction Status	Indicates the status of the transaction leg. The valid values are: • Uploaded (UPLD) • Initial Product Derived (INPD) • Ignored (IGNR) • Error (EROR) • Completed (COMP)
Account Information	Indicates the account which will bear the charges for the transaction. The string includes the account identifier type, account identifier, and division (to which the account belongs).
Initial Product Code	Indicates the initial product to which the transaction is mapped.
Variance Parameter	Indicates the variance parameter to which the transaction is mapped. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
Product Parameters	Indicates the product parameters to which the transaction is mapped. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
Final Product Code	Indicates the final product to which the transaction is mapped.
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial product, account, and/or variance parameter or product parameters for the transaction. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Rule** screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.
Price Assignment ID	Indicates the effective pricing which is available for the account, product or regular bundle (to which the product belongs) and/or variance parameter or product parameters (parameter group) combination on the processing date.
Aggregate Transaction	Indicates whether the transaction leg is aggregated. The valid values are: • Yes • No
Billable Charge ID	Indicates the billable charge in which the transaction leg is included for billing.
Division	Indicates the division to which the derived account belongs. The derived account means the account which will bear the charges for the transaction.
Sequence Number	Displays the sequence number of the transaction leg.
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the product pricing verification or billable charge creation process failed.

Note: The **Broadcast** ( ) icon appears corresponding to an UPLD, INPD, IGNR, EROR and COMP transaction. This is because you can only view legs of an UPLD, INPD, IGNR, EROR and COMP transaction.

3. View the details of the transaction legs in the **Derived Sub-Transactions** zone.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an uploaded transaction	*Searching for an UPLD Transaction* on page 454
How to search for a transaction for which product is determined	*Searching for an INPD Transaction* on page 456
How to search for an ignored transaction	*Searching for an IGNR Transaction* on page 466
How to search for a transaction with an error	*Searching for an EROR Transaction* on page 463
How to search for a transaction for which billable charge is completed	*Searching for an COMP Transaction* on page 459

Viewing Error Messages

Procedure

To view the error messages logged for a transaction:

1. Search for the transaction which is in the **Invalid (INVL)** or **Error (EROR)** status in the **Transaction Details** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the transaction whose error messages you *w*ant to view.

   The **Transaction Error Messages** zone appears. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the transaction is in the **Invalid (INVL)** or **Error (EROR)** status.

   Note: The **Transaction Error Messages** zone appears when the transactions are in the **Invalid (INVL)** status and when the errors occur while executing the **Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1–TXNIP)** batch. It does not appear when the errors occur while executing the **Product Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** or **Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)** batch.
3. View the error messages in the **Transaction Error Messages** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction with an error	*Searching for an EROR Transaction* on page 463
How to search for an invalid transaction	*Searching for an INVL Transaction* on page 468

Viewing the Transaction Details

Procedure

To view the details of a transaction:

1. Search for the transaction in the **Transaction Details** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Transaction ID** column corresponding to the transaction *w*hose details you want to view.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Transaction Details** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID. **Note:** The transaction ID is generated automatically when the transaction is uploaded or manually created in the system.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Division	Displays the division to which the transaction belongs.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Manual Entry	Indicates whether the transaction was manually entered in the system.
Credit/Debit Indicator	Indicates whether the transaction is a debit or credit transaction.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Customer Reference Number	Indicates the customer who performed the transaction.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the type of account identifier.
Account Identifier	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Currency	Displays the currency in which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Account ID	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed.
Additional Amount 1, Additional Amount 2, ..., Additional Amount 5 **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Displays additional information about the transaction.
Amount 1 Currency Code, Amount 2 Currency Code, ..., Amount 5 Currency Code **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Displays additional information about the transaction.
Additional Date 1, Additional Date 2, ..., Additional Date 5 **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Displays additional information about the transaction.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description
Additional Numeric Data 1, Additional Numeric Data 2, Additional Numeric Data 3, ..., Additional Numeric Data 10 **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Displays additional information about the transaction.
Additional Data 1, Additional Data 2, Additional Data 3, ..., Additional Data 50 **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Displays additional information about the transaction.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to copy a transaction	*Copying a Transaction* on page 477

Adding a Transaction

Prerequisites

To add a transaction manually, you should have:

- Divisions, account identifier types, transaction sources, transaction record types, and currencies defined in the application

Procedure

To add a transaction manually:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.

   The **Transaction Details** screen appears.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Transaction Details** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source from where the transaction was received.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	Yes
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	Yes
Transaction Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	Yes
Manual Entry	Indicates that the transaction is manually entered in the system.	Not applicable
Credit/Debit Indicator	Used to indicate whether the transaction is a debit or credit transaction.	Yes
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	No
Customer Reference Number	Used to indicate the customer who performed the transaction.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the type of account identifier.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the account identifier of the account for which the transaction was performed.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Transaction Amount	Used to specify the transaction amount.	Yes
Transaction Currency	Used to specify the currency in which the transaction was performed.	Yes
Transaction Volume	Used to specify the transaction volume.	Yes
Additional Amount 1, Additional Amount 2, ..., Additional Amount 5 **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Used to specify additional information about the transaction. **Note:** These fields appear only when you select the transaction source and record type from the respective list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are specifying the currency in the corresponding field.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Amount 1 Currency Code, Amount 2 Currency Code, ..., Amount 5 Currency Code **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Used to specify additional information about the transaction. **Note:** These fields appear only when you select the transaction source and record type from the respective list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are specifying the amount in the corresponding field.
Additional Date 1, Additional Date 2, ..., Additional Date 5 **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Used to specify additional information about the transaction. **Note:** These fields appear only when you select the transaction source and record type from the respective list.	No
Additional Numeric Data 1, Additional Numeric Data 2, Additional Numeric Data 3, ..., Additional Numeric Data 10 **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Used to specify additional information about the transaction. **Note:** These fields appear only when you select the transaction source and record type from the respective list.	No
Additional Data 1, Additional Data 2, Additional Data 3, ..., Additional Data 50 **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Used to specify additional information about the transaction. **Note:** These fields appear only when you select the transaction source and record type from the respective list.	No

5. Enter the required details.
6. Click **Save**.

   The transaction is added in the system. If the following option types are set in the **Dummy Header (C1-TXNDMYID)** feature configuration, the header details including the header ID are generated automatically for the manually added transaction:

   - Dummy File Name
   - Dummy Header ID
   - Dummy Transaction Source
   - Dummy Header Date

   Note: The header ID remains same for all transactions which are manually created on a particular date. You can cancel manually added transactions using the Transaction Header ID.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Details screen	*Transaction Details* on page 453
Search zone	*Search* on page 453
How to set the **Dummy Header (C1-TXNDMYID)** feature configuration	*Setting the Dummy Header (C1-TXNDMYID) Feature Configuration* on page 761

Copying a Transaction

Instead of adding a transaction from scratch, you can create a copy of similar transaction and then edit it accordingly.

Prerequisites

To copy a transaction, you should have:

- Transaction (whose copy you want to create) available in the application
- Divisions, account identifier types, transaction sources, transaction record types, and currencies defined in the application

Procedure

To copy a transaction:

1. Search for the transaction in the **Transaction Details** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Transaction ID** column corresponding to the transaction whose copy you want to create.

   The **Transaction Details** screen appears. Note that the fields are in the read-only mode.
3. Click **Copy**.

   The **Transaction Details** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source from where the transaction was received.	Yes
Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	Yes
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	Yes
Transaction Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	Yes
Manual Entry	Indicates that the transaction is manually entered in the system.	Not applicable
Credit/Debit Indicator	Used to indicate whether the transaction is a debit or credit transaction.	Yes
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Customer Reference Number	Used to indicate the customer who performed the transaction.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the type of account identifier.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the account identifier of the account for which the transaction was performed.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Transaction Amount	Used to specify the transaction amount.	Yes
Transaction Currency	Used to specify the currency in which the transaction was performed.	Yes
Transaction Volume	Used to specify the transaction volume.	Yes
Additional Amount 1, Additional Amount 2, ..., Additional Amount 5 **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are specifying the currency in the corresponding field.
Amount 1 Currency Code, Amount 2 Currency Code, ..., Amount 5 Currency Code **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are specifying the amount in the corresponding field.
Additional Date 1, Additional Date 2, ..., Additional Date 5 **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Additional Numeric Data 1, Additional Numeric Data 2, Additional Numeric Data 3, ..., Additional Numeric Data 10 **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No
Additional Data 1, Additional Data 2, Additional Data 3, ..., Additional Data 50 **Note:** If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No

4. Enter the required details.
5. Click **Save**.

   The new transaction is added in the system.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a transaction	*Viewing the Transaction Details* on page 472

Transaction Source

The **Transaction Source** screen allows you to define, edit, delete, and copy a transaction source. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 479

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for a transaction source. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the transaction source.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source.
Description	Displays the description of the transaction source.
Account Identifier Type	Indicates the type of account identifier received from the transaction source.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Transaction Source** screen appears where you can edit the details of the transaction source.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the transaction source. **Note:** You can only delete a transaction source which is not yet used.
Copy	On clicking the **Copy** ( ) icon, the **Transaction Source** screen appears where you can create a transaction source using an existing transaction source.

You can create a new transaction source by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction source	*Searching for a Transaction Source* on page 480
How to define a transaction source	*Defining a Transaction Source* on page 481
How to edit a transaction source	*Editing a Transaction Source* on page 481
How to delete a transaction source	*Deleting a Transaction Source* on page 482
How to copy a transaction source	*Copying a Transaction Source* on page 483

Searching for a Transaction Source

Procedure

To search for a transaction source:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **T** and then click **Transaction Source**.

   The **Transaction Source** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of transaction sources that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Source screen	*Transaction Source* on page 479
Search zone	*Search* on page 479

Defining a Transaction Source

Prerequisites

To define a transaction source, you should have:

- Account identifier types defined in the application

Procedure

To define a transaction source:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **T** and then click **Transaction Source**.

   The **Transaction Source** screen appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Transaction Source** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source. **Note:** You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the transaction source.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the transaction source.	Yes
Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the type of account identifier that will be received from the transaction source.	Yes

5. Enter the required details.
6. Click **Save**.

   The transaction source is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Source screen	*Transaction Source* on page 479
Search zone	*Search* on page 479

Editing a Transaction Source

Prerequisites

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To edit a transaction source, you should have:

- Account identifier types defined in the application

Procedure

To edit a transaction source:

1. Search for the transaction source in the **Transaction Source** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the transaction source whose details you want to edit.

   The **Transaction Source** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source.	Not applicable
Description	Used to modify the description of the transaction source.	Yes
Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the type of account identifier that will be received from the transaction source.	Yes

3. Modify the required details.
4. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the transaction source are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction source	*Searching for a Transaction Source* on page 480

Deleting a Transaction Source

Procedure

To delete a transaction source:

1. Search for the transaction source in the **Transaction Source** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the transaction source that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the transaction source.

   Note: You can only delete a transaction source which is not yet used.
3. Click **OK**.

   The transaction source is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction source	*Searching for a Transaction Source* on page 480

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copying a Transaction Source

Instead of creating a transaction source from scratch, you can create a new transaction source using an existing transaction source. This is possible through copying a transaction source. Once you create a copy of a transaction source, the record types defined for the original transaction source are also copied to the new transaction source.

Prerequisites

To copy a transaction source, you should have:

- Transaction source (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Account identifier types defined in the application

Procedure

To copy a transaction source:

1. Search for the transaction source in the **Transaction Source** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** ( ) icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the transaction source whose copy you want to create.

   The **Transaction Source** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source. **Note:** You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the transaction source.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the transaction source.	Yes
Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the type of account identifier that will be received from the transaction source.	Yes

3. Enter the required details.
4. Click **Save**.

   The new transaction source is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction source	*Searching for a Transaction Source* on page 480

Transaction Record Type

The **Transaction Record Type** screen allows you to define, edit, delete, and copy a transaction record type. In addition, you can define a rule type which you want to invoke for the transaction source and record type combination.

This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 484

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for a transaction record type. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source whose transaction record types you want to view.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the transaction record type.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the transaction record type.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Record Type	Displays the transaction record type.
Description	Displays the description of the transaction record type.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source for which the transaction record type is defined.
Rule Type	Indicates the rule type that is invoked for the transaction record type. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Rule Type** screen appears with the details of the respective rule type.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Transaction Record Type** screen appears where you can edit the details of the transaction record type.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the transaction record type. **Note:** You can delete a transaction record type when: • It is not yet used. • Rules are not yet defined using the rule type which is invoked by the transaction source and record type combination.
Copy	On clicking the **Copy** ( ) icon, the **Transaction Record Type** screen appears where you can create a new transaction record type using an existing transaction record type.

You can create a new transaction record type by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction record type	*Searching for a Transaction Record Type* on page 485
How to define a transaction record type	*Defining a Transaction Record Type* on page 485
How to edit a transaction record type	*Editing a Transaction Record Type* on page 487
How to delete a transaction record type	*Deleting a Transaction Record Type* on page 489

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to copy a transaction record type	*Copying a Transaction Record Type* on page 489

Searching for a Transaction Record Type

Procedure

To search for a transaction record type:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **T** and then click **Transaction Record Type**.

   The **Transaction Record Type** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   The search results appear.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Record Type screen	*Transaction Record Type* on page 483
Search zone	*Search* on page 484

Defining a Transaction Record Type

Prerequisites

To define a transaction record type, you should have:

- Transaction sources defined in the application
- Validation algorithm defined using the C1-RULE-VAL algorithm type
- Transaction Information String algorithm defined using the C1-TXDETINFO algorithm type

Procedure

To define a transaction record type:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **T** and then click **Transaction Record Type**.

   The **Transaction Record Type** screen appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Transaction Record Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source for which you want to define the transaction record type.	Yes
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the transaction record type. **Note:** You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the transaction record type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the transaction record type.	Yes
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type. **Note:** You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the rule type.	Yes
Rule Type Description	Used to specify the description for the rule type.	Yes
Rule Validation Algorithm	Used to specify the validation algorithm that will be triggered when a rule is defined with this rule type. **Note:** This algorithm checks whether: • The values specified against the output parameters exist in the system • The same product parameter (for example, PCD1_1_1_VAL) is not used multiple times for a division, account, and product combination	No
Info String Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will generate the information string which appears in the **Transaction Information** column throughout the application. **Note:** This algorithm concatenates the fields (related to the transaction) and delimiters specified as parameters in the algorithm.	No
Maximum Accounts to be charged	Used to indicate the maximum number of accounts which can bear the charges for the transaction.	Yes
Maximum Products to be mapped	Used to indicate the maximum number of products to which the transaction can be mapped for each account.	Yes
Maximum Product Parameters	Used to indicate the maximum number of parameters that can be used for each product.	Yes
Transaction Field	Displays the transaction field name.	Not applicable
Business Label	Used to specify a business label for the user defined fields. **Note:** The business label appears when you add, copy, or view a transaction in the **Transaction Details** screen. The label changes depending on the transaction source and record type combination that you have selected.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type Input	Used to indicate whether you want to use the transaction field as an input parameter while defining rules of this type.	No

5. Enter the required details.
6. Click **Save**.

   The transaction record type is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Record Type screen	*Transaction Record Type* on page 483
Search zone	*Search* on page 484

Editing a Transaction Record Type

Prerequisites

To edit a transaction record type, you should have:

- Validation algorithm defined using the C1-RULE-VAL algorithm type
- Transaction Information String algorithm defined using the C1-TXDETINFO algorithm type

Procedure

To edit a transaction record type:

1. Search for the transaction record type in the **Transaction Record Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the transaction record type whose details you want to edit.

   The **Transaction Record Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source for which the transaction record type is defined.	Not applicable
Transaction Record Type	Displays the transaction record type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to modify the description of the transaction record type.	Yes
Rule Type	Indicates the rule type invoked for the transaction source and record type combination.	Not applicable
Rule Type Description	Used to modify the description of the rule type.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Validation Algorithm	Used to modify the validation algorithm that will be triggered when a rule is defined with this rule type. **Note:** This algorithm checks whether: • The values specified against the output parameters exist in the system • The same product parameter (for example, PCD1_1_1_VAL) is not used multiple times for a division, account, and product combination	No
Info String Algorithm	Used to modify the algorithm that will generate the information string which appears in the **Transaction Information** column throughout the application. **Note:** This algorithm concatenates the fields (related to the transaction) and delimiters specified as parameters in the algorithm.	No
Maximum Accounts to be charged	Used to indicate the maximum number of accounts which can bear the charges for the transaction.	Yes
Maximum Products to be mapped	Used to indicate the maximum number of products to which the transaction can be mapped for each account.	Yes
Maximum Product Parameters	Used to indicate the maximum number of parameters that can be used for each product.	Yes
Transaction Field	Displays the transaction field name.	Not applicable
Business Label	Used to modify the business label for the user defined fields. **Note:** This business label appears when you add or view a transaction in the **Transaction Details** screen. The label changes depending on the transaction source and record type combination that you have selected.	No
Rule Type Input	Used to indicate whether you want to use the transaction field as an input parameter while defining rules of this type.	No

3. Modify the required details.

   Note: You can edit and remove an input parameter from a rule type only when it is not yet used in any rule created using the rule type.

4. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the transaction record type are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction record type	*Searching for a Transaction Record Type* on page 485

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Deleting a Transaction Record Type

Procedure

To delete a transaction record type:

1. Search for the transaction record type in the **Transaction Record Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the transaction record type that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the transaction record type.

   Note: You can only delete a transaction record type which is not yet used.
3. Click **OK**.

   The transaction record type is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction record type	*Searching for a Transaction Record Type* on page 485

Copying a Transaction Record Type

Instead of creating a transaction record type from scratch, you can create a new transaction record type using an existing transaction record type. This is possible through copying a transaction record type.

Prerequisites

To copy a transaction record type, you should have:

- Transaction record type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Validation algorithm defined using the C1-RULE-VAL algorithm type
- Transaction Information String algorithm defined using the C1-TXDETINFO algorithm type

Procedure

To copy a transaction record type:

1. Search for the transaction record type in the **Transaction Record Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** ( ) icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the transaction record type whose copy you want to create.

   The **Transaction Record Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source for which you want to define the transaction record type.	Not applicable
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the transaction record type. **Note:** You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the transaction record type.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Description	Used to specify the description for the transaction record type.	Yes
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type. **Note:** You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the rule type.	Yes
Rule Type Description	Used to specify the description for the rule type.	Yes
Rule Validation Algorithm	Used to specify the validation algorithm that will be triggered when a rule is defined with this rule type. **Note:** This algorithm checks whether: • The values specified against the output parameters exist in the system • The same product parameter (for example, PCD1_1_1_VAL) is not used multiple times for a division, account, and product combination	No
Info String Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will generate the information string which appears in the **Transaction Information** column throughout the application. **Note:** This algorithm concatenates the fields (related to the transaction) and delimiters specified as parameters in the algorithm.	No
Maximum Accounts to be charged	Used to indicate the maximum number of accounts which can bear the charges for the transaction.	Yes
Maximum Products to be mapped	Used to indicate the maximum number of products to which the transaction can be mapped for each account.	Yes
Maximum Product Parameters	Used to indicate the maximum number of parameters that can be used for each product.	Yes
Transaction Field	Displays the transaction field name.	Not applicable
Business Label	Used to specify a business label for the user defined fields. **Note:** This business label appears when you add or view a transaction in the **Transaction Details** screen. The label changes depending on the transaction source and record type combination that you have selected.	No
Rule Type Input	Used to indicate whether you want to use the transaction field as an input parameter while defining rules of this type.	No

3. Enter the required details.
4. Click **Save**.

   The new transaction record type is defined.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction record type	*Searching for a Transaction Record Type* on page 485

Transaction Aggregation Rule

The **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen allows you to define transaction aggregation rule for an SQI. You can also edit and delete the transaction aggregation rule of an SQI. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Transaction Aggregation Rules* on page 491

Transaction Aggregation Rules

The **Transaction Aggregation Rules** zone lists transaction aggregation rules that are already defined in the system. You can define, edit, and delete a transaction aggregation rule through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
SQI Description	Displays the description of the service quantity identifier (SQI).
Aggregation Function	Indicates the formula used in the transaction aggregation rule defined for the SQI.
Function	Indicates the function used for aggregation.
Transaction Parameter	Indicates the transaction parameter used for aggregation.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen appears where you can edit the aggregation rule.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the transaction aggregation rule.

You can define transaction aggregation rule for an SQI by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define transaction aggregation rule for an SQI	*Defining Transaction Aggregation Rule for an SQI* on page 491
How to edit transaction aggregation rule of an SQI	*Editing Transaction Aggregation Rule of an SQI* on page 492
How to delete transaction aggregation rule of an SQI	*Deleting Transaction Aggregation Rule of an SQI* on page 493

Defining Transaction Aggregation Rule for an SQI

Prerequisites

To define transaction aggregation rule for an SQI, you should have:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- SQI defined in the application

Procedure

To define transaction aggregation rule for an SQI:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **T** and then click **Transaction Aggregation Rule**.

   The **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Transaction Aggregation Rules** zone.

   The **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
SQI	Used to indicate the SQI for which you want to define the transaction aggregation rule.	Yes
Function	Used to indicate the function that you want to use for aggregation. The valid values are: • SUM() • MIN() • MAX() • COUNT()	Yes
Transaction Parameter	Used to indicate the transaction parameter that you want to use for aggregation.	Yes

5. Enter the required details.
6. Click **Save**.

   The transaction aggregation rule is defined for the SQI.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Aggregation Rule screen	*Transaction Aggregation Rule* on page 491
Transaction Aggregation Rules zone	*Transaction Aggregation Rules* on page 491

Editing Transaction Aggregation Rule of an SQI

Procedure

To edit the transaction aggregation rule of an SQI:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **T** and then click **Transaction Aggregation Rule**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen appears.

4. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the SQI whose transaction aggregation rule you want to edit.

   The **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
SQI	Indicates the SQI for which the transaction aggregation rule is defined.	Not applicable
Function	Used to indicate the function that you want to use for aggregation. The valid values are: • SUM() • MIN() • MAX() • COUNT()	Yes
Transaction Parameter	Used to indicate the transaction parameter that you want to use for aggregation.	Yes

5. Modify the required details.
6. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the transaction aggregation rule are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Aggregation Rule screen	*Transaction Aggregation Rule* on page 491
Transaction Aggregation Rules zone	*Transaction Aggregation Rules* on page 491

Deleting Transaction Aggregation Rule of an SQI

Procedure

To delete the transaction aggregation rule of an SQI:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **T** and then click **Transaction Aggregation Rule**.

   The **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen appears.
4. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the SQI whose transaction aggregation rule you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the transaction aggregation rule.
5. Click **OK**.

   The transaction aggregation rule is deleted.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Aggregation Rule screen	*Transaction Aggregation Rule* on page 491
Transaction Aggregation Rules zone	*Transaction Aggregation Rules* on page 491

Product SQIs

In the Transaction Feed Management process, SQIs are calculated on a billable charge depending on the SQIs that you have associated with the product for which the billable charge is created. Therefore, as a perquisite, you need to associate the required SQIs with each product. The **Product SQIs** screen allows you to define SQIs for a product — division combination. You can also edit and delete the SQIs for a product — division combination.

This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 494

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for a product whose SQI details you want to view. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Product Description	Used to specify the description of the product.	No
Division	Used to specify the division to which the product belongs.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code.
Product Description	Displays the description of the product.
Division	Displays the division to which the product belongs.
View	On clicking the **View** ( ) icon, the **Product SQIs** screen appears where you can view the SQIs associated with the product — division combination.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Product SQIs** screen appears where you can edit the SQIs associated with the product — division combination.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can remove the link between the SQIs and the product — division combination.
Copy	On clicking the **Copy** ( ) icon, the **Product SQIs** screen appears where you can associate SQIs with the new product — division combination.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

You can associate SQIs with a product — division combination by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the SQIs associated with the product — division combination	*Viewing SQIs Associated with a Product — Division Combination* on page 495
How to associate SQIs with a product — division combination	*Associating an SQI with a Product — Division Combination* on page 496
How to edit the SQIs associated with the product — division combination	*Editing SQIs Associated with the Product — Division Combination* on page 497
How to remove the link between the SQIs and the product — division combination	*Removing a Link Between SQIs and the Product — Division Combination* on page 497
How to copy a product SQIs mapping	*Copying Product SQIs* on page 498

Viewing SQIs Associated with a Product — Division Combination

Procedure

To view the SQIs associated with the product — division combination:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Product SQIs**.

   The **Product SQIs** screen appears.
4. In the **Search** zone, search for the product whose SQI details you want to view.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the product — *d*ivision combination *w*hose SQI details you want to view.

   The **Product SQIs** screen appears.
6. View the SQIs associated with the product — division combination in the **Product SQIs** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Product SQIs screen	*Product SQIs* on page 494
Search zone	*Search* on page 494

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Associating an SQI with a Product — Division Combination

Prerequisites

To associate an SQI with a product — division combination, you should have:

- Product, Division and SQI defined in the application

Procedure

To associate an SQI with a product — division combination:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Product SQIs**.

   The **Product SQIs** screen appears.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Product SQIs** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to indicate the product to which you want to associate the SQI.	Yes
Division	Used to indicate the division to which the product belongs. **Note:** In the **Division** list, you can only view those divisions to which the product is associated and to which you have access.	Yes
SQI	Used to indicate the SQI that you want to associate with the product — division combination.	Yes

5. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for a product by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

6. If you want to associate more than one SQI with the product — division combination, click the **Plus** ( ) icon *a*nd then select the SQI from the list.

   Note: However, if you want to remove the link between an SQI and the product — division combination, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the SQI.

7. Click **Save**.

   The SQIs are associated with the product — division combination.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Product SQIs screen	*Product SQIs* on page 494
Search zone	*Search* on page 494

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Editing SQIs Associated with the Product — Division Combination

Procedure

To edit the SQIs associated with the product — division combination:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Product SQIs**.

   The **Product SQIs** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, search for the product whose SQI details you want to edit.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the product — *d*ivision combination whose SQIs you want to edit.

   The **Product SQIs** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Indicates the product to which the SQIs are associated.	Not applicable
Division	Indicates the division to which the SQIs are associated.	Not applicable
SQI	Used to indicate the SQI that you want to associate with the product — division combination.	Yes

6. Modify the list of SQIs associated with the product — division combination, if required.

   Note: If you want to associate more than one SQI with the product — division combination, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then select the SQI from the list. However, if you want to remove the link between an SQI and the product — division combination, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the SQI.

7. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the product — division combination are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Product SQIs screen	*Product SQIs* on page 494
Search zone	*Search* on page 494

Removing a Link Between SQIs and the Product — Division Combination

Procedure

To remove a link between SQIs and the product — division combination:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Product SQIs**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Product SQIs** screen appears.

4. In the **Search** zone, search for the product whose SQI details you want to delete.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the product — *d*ivision combination whose SQI details you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to remove the link between the SQIs and the product — division combination.
6. Click **OK**.

   The link between the SQIs and the product — division combination is removed.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Product SQIs screen	*Product SQIs* on page 494
Search zone	*Search* on page 494

Copying Product SQIs

Instead of associating SQIs to a product — division combination from scratch, you can create a copy of an existing product SQIs mapping and then associate the SQIs with the new product — division combination. You can also add or remove SQIs from the list.

Procedure

To copy a product SQIs mapping:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Product SQIs**.

   The **Product SQIs** screen appears.
4. In the **Search** zone, search for the product whose SQI details you want to copy.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** ( ) icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the product — *d*ivision combination whose SQI details you want to copy.

   The **Product SQIs** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to indicate the product to which you want to associate the SQIs.	Yes
Division	Used to indicate the division to which the product belongs. **Note:** In the **Division** list, you can only view those divisions to which the product is associated and to which you have access.	Yes
SQI	Used to indicate the SQI that you want to associate with the product — division combination.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

6. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for a product by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

7. If you want to associate more than one SQI with the product — division combination, click the **Plus** ( ) icon *a*nd then select the SQI from the list.

   Note: However, if you want to remove the link between an SQI and the product — division combination, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the SQI.

8. Click **Save**.

   The SQIs are associated with the new product — division combination.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Product SQIs screen	*Product SQIs* on page 494
Search zone	*Search* on page 494

Schedule

The **Schedule** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete a schedule. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 499

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for a schedule. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Schedule	Used to specify the schedule code.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the schedule.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Schedule	Displays the schedule.
Description	Displays the description of the schedule.
View	On clicking the **View** ( ) icon, the **View Schedule** screen appears where you can view the details of the schedule.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Edit Schedule** screen appears where you can edit the details of the schedule.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the schedule. **Note:** You can only delete a schedule which is not yet used.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

You can create a new schedule by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a schedule	*Searching for a Schedule* on page 500
How to view the details of a schedule	*Viewing the Schedule Details* on page 500
How to define a schedule	*Defining a Schedule* on page 501
How to edit a schedule	*Editing a Schedule* on page 502
How to delete a schedule	*Deleting a Schedule* on page 503

Searching for a Schedule

Procedure

To search for a schedule:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **S** and then click **Schedule**.

   The **Schedule** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   The search results appear.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Schedule screen	*Schedule* on page 499
Search zone	*Search* on page 499

Viewing the Schedule Details

Procedure

To view the details of a schedule:

1. Search for the schedule in the **Schedule** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the schedule whose details you want to view.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **View Schedule** screen appears.

3. View the details of the schedule in the **View Schedule** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a schedule	*Searching for a Schedule* on page 500

Defining a Schedule

Procedure

To define a schedule:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **S** and then click **Schedule**.

   The **Schedule** screen appears.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Add Schedule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Schedule	Used to specify the schedule code.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the schedule.	Yes

In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:

- **Schedule Periods** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the start date of the billable charge. **Note:** The start date cannot be later than the end date.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the end date of the billable charge. **Note:** The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.	Yes

Note: At least one schedule period must be defined in the schedule. Also, ensure that the schedule periods do not have overlapping days.

- **Schedule Types** — This section contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Schedule Type	Used to indicate the functionality where you want to use the schedule. You can use a schedule for more than one functionality. For example, you can use the same schedule for Earnings Credit and Transaction Feed Management.	Yes

5. Enter the required details.
6. If you want to define more than one period in the schedule, click the **Plus** (+) icon and then specify the details.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a period from the schedule, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the period.
7. Click **Save**.

   The schedule is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Schedule screen	*Schedule* on page 499
Search zone	*Search* on page 499

Editing a Schedule

Procedure

To edit a schedule:

1. Search for the schedule in the **Schedule** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the schedule whose details you want to edit.

   The **Edit Schedule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Schedule	Displays the schedule code.	Not applicable
Description	Used to modify the description of the schedule.	Yes

   In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:

   - **Schedule Periods** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the start date of the billable charge. **Note:** The start date cannot be later than the end date.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the end date of the billable charge. **Note:** The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: At least one schedule period must be defined in the schedule. Also, ensure that the schedule periods do not have overlapping days.

- **Schedule Types** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Schedule Type	Used to indicate the functionality where you want to use the schedule. You can use a schedule for more than one functionality. For example, you can use the same schedule for Earnings Credit and Transaction Feed Management.	Yes

3. Modify the required details.
4. If you want to define more than one period in the schedule, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then specify the details.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a period from the schedule, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the period.
5. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the schedule are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a schedule	*Searching for a Schedule* on page 500

Deleting a Schedule

Procedure

To delete a schedule:

1. Search for the schedule in the **Schedule** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the schedule that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the schedule.

   Note: You can only delete a schedule which is not yet used.
3. Click **OK**.

   The schedule is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a schedule	*Searching for a Schedule* on page 500

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Disaggregation Request

The **Disaggregation Request** screen allows you to search for disaggregation requests using various search criteria. It also allows you to create and delete a disaggregation request. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 504

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for disaggregation requests using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The fields in the **Search Criteria** section change depending on the query option selected. You can select either of the following query options:
  - **Person** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a disaggregation request created for a customer.
  - **Account** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a disaggregation request created for an account.
- **Search Results** — The **Search Results** section displays the records based on the specified search criteria. The columns in the search results change depending on the query option selected.

You can create a disaggregation request manually by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a disaggregation request	*Searching for a Disaggregation Request* on page 504
How to create a disaggregation request manually	*Creating a Disaggregation Request* on page 507
How to delete a disaggregation request	*Deleting a Disaggregation Request* on page 511

Searching for a Disaggregation Request

Procedure

To search for a disaggregation request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Disaggregation Request**.

   The **Disaggregation Request** screen appears.
4. Select the **Person** or **Account** option from the **Query Option** list depending on whether you want to search for *a* disaggregation request created for a customer or an account.

   The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Customer Name	Used to indicate the customer whose disaggregation requests you want to search. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Person** option from the **Query Option** list.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Request Date From	Used to search disaggregation requests that are created from a particular date onwards.	Yes
Request Date To	Used to search disaggregation requests that are created till a particular date.	Yes
Processing Date From	Used to search disaggregation requests that are processed from a particular date onwards.	No
Processing Date To	Used to search disaggregation requests that are processed till a particular date.	No
Request Source	Used to indicate whether the disaggregation request was created automatically, manually, or through the batch process. The valid values are: • AUTOMATIC • BATCH • MANUAL	No
Request Status	Used to indicate the status of the disaggregation request. The valid values are: • COMPLETE • PENDING	No
Customer ID	Used to indicate the customer whose disaggregation requests you want to search. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Person** option from the **Query Option** list.	No
Division	Used to specify the division to which the customer or account belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are searching for disaggregation requests created for an account.
Customer Identifier Type	Used to select the customer identifier type based on which you want to search for disaggregation requests created for a customer. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Person** option from the **Query Option** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter customer identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the customer identifier type.
Customer Identifier	Used to specify the ID linked to the customer. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Person** option from the **Query Option** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify customer identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the customer identifier.
Account ID	Used to indicate the account whose disaggregation requests you want to search. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Account** option from the **Query Option** list.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the account identifier type based on which you want to search for disaggregation requests created for an account. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Account** option from the **Query Option** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Account** option from the **Query Option** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.

5. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

6. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of disaggregation requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Request ID	Displays the disaggregation request ID.
Request Date	Displays the date when the disaggregation request was created.
Status	Displays the status of the disaggregation request. The valid values are: • COMPLETE • PENDING
Person ID	Indicates the customer for whom the disaggregation request is created.
Person Information	Displays additional information about the customer. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Person** screen appears with the details of the respective person (customer).
Account ID	Indicates the account for which the disaggregation request is created.
Account Information	Displays additional information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Account** screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Processing Date	Displays the date when the disaggregation request was processed.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** button, you can delete the disaggregation request. **Note:** You can only delete a disaggregation request which is in the **Pending** status.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Disaggregation Request screen	*Disaggregation Request* on page 504
Search zone	*Search* on page 504

Creating a Disaggregation Request

Prerequisites

To create a disaggregation request manually, you should have:

- Divisions, customer identifier types, account identifier types, bill cycles, and invoice currencies defined in the application
- Price list assigned to the customer or account (in case you want to search a customer or an account based on an assigned price list)

Procedure

To create a disaggregation request manually:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Disaggregation Request**.

   The **Disaggregation Request** screen appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Add Disaggregation Request** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Request Type	Used to indicate whether you want to create disaggregation request for a person (customer) or an account. The valid values are: • Account • Person	Yes
Division	Used to specify the division to which the customer or account belongs. **Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are creating a disaggregation request for an account.
Account ID	Used to indicate the account for which you want to create a disaggregation request. **Note:** This field is enabled only when you select the **Account** option from the **Request Type** list.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Customer ID	Used to indicate the customer for whom you want to create a disaggregation request. **Note:** This field is enabled only when you select the **Person** option from the **Request Type** list.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type based on which you want to search for an account. **Note:** This field is enabled only when you select the **Account** option from the **Request Type** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type. **Note:** This field is enabled only when you select the **Account** option from the **Request Type** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Customer Identifier Type	Used to specify the customer identifier type based on which you want to search for a customer. **Note:** This field is enabled only when you select the **Person** option from the **Request Type** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter customer identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the customer identifier type.
Customer Identifier	Used to specify the ID linked to the customer. **Note:** This field is enabled only when you select the **Person** option from the **Request Type** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify customer identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the customer identifier.
Bill Cycle	Used when you want to search for accounts having a particular bill cycle. **Note:** This field is enabled only when you select the **Account** option from the **Request Type** list.	No
Customer Name	Used to specify the name of the customer.	No
Invoice Currency	Used when you want to search for accounts having a particular invoice currency. **Note:** This field is enabled only when you select the **Account** option from the **Request Type** list.	No
With Assigned Price List	Used when you want to search for a customer or an account to which a particular price list is assigned.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you want to search for a customer or an account based on an assigned price list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Assigned From	Used when you want to search for a customer or an account based on an assigned price list which is effective within the specified date range.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you want to search for a customer or an account based on an assigned price list.
Price List Assigned To	Used when you want to search for a customer or an account based on an assigned price list which is effective within the specified date range.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you want to search for a customer or an account based on an assigned price list.

5. Select the **Person** or **Account** option from the **Request Type** list depending on whether you want to search for *a* customer or an account.
6. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** section.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
7. Click **Search**.

   A list of customers or accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account Identifier Type	Displays the primary account identifier type of the account. **Note:** The data appears in this column only when you search for an account.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the primary account identifier type. **Note:** The data appears in this column only when you search for an account.
Division	Displays the division to which the customer or account belongs.
Customer Identifier Type	Displays the primary customer identifier type of the customer. **Note:** The data appears in this column only when you search for a customer.
Customer Identifier	Displays the ID linked to the customer. **Note:** The data appears in this column only when you search for a customer.
Customer Name	Displays the name of the customer.
With Assigned Price List	Displays the price list assigned to the customer or account. **Note:** The data appears in this column only when you search for a customer or an account based on an assigned price list.
Price List Assigned From	Displays the date from when the price list is assigned to the customer or account. **Note:** The data appears in this column only when you search for a customer or an account based on an assigned price list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Price List Assigned To	Displays the date till when the price list is assigned to the customer or account. **Note:** The data appears in this column only when you search for a customer or an account based on an assigned price list.
Account Info	Displays additional information about the account. **Note:** The data appears in this column only when you search for an account.
Bill Cycle	Indicates the bill cycle defined for the account. **Note:** The data appears in this column only when you search for an account.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. By default, 20 records are displayed in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required.

You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** ( ), **Previous** (), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

The values appear in the **Page Limit** list only when you define values for the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field.

8. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then
Create disaggregation request for one or more customers or accounts	1. In the **Search Results** section, select the check box corresponding to the customer or account for which you want to create a disaggregation request. 2. Click **Disaggregate**. A disaggregation request is created for each customer or account whose check box you have selected.
Create disaggregation request for all customers or accounts that meet the search criteria	1. Click **Disaggregate All**. A message appears confirming whether you want to create disaggregation requests for all customers or accounts that meet the search criteria. 2. Click **OK**. A disaggregation request is created for each customer or account that meet the search criteria.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Disaggregation Request screen	*Disaggregation Request* on page 504
Search zone	*Search* on page 504

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Deleting a Disaggregation Request

Procedure

To delete a disaggregation request:

1. Search for the disaggregation request in the **Disaggregation Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** button in the **Delete** column corresponding to the disaggregation request that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the disaggregation request.

   Note:

   You can only delete a disaggregation request which is in the **Pending** status.

   If the disaggregation process is already started for a disaggregation request, we recommend you not to delete the disaggregation request from the system. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.
3. Click **OK**.

   The disaggregation request is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a disaggregation request	*Searching for a Disaggregation Request* on page 504

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 11

On Demand Billing

Topics:

- *Prerequisites*
- *CSV File Format for Banking Usage Data*
- *CSV File Format for Insurance Usage Data*
- *Usage Record Status Transition*
- *File Type*
- *On Demand Billing*
- *Usage Data Processing*

Oracle no longer supports the Off Cycle Billing feature introduced in Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Version 2.2.4.2. Instead, the On Demand Billing feature has been introduced to facilitate adhoc billing. Earlier, you were only able to carry out billing based on the bill cycle (defined for the account). In other words, you were able to generate a bill for a bill cycle using the billable charges whose start and end dates fall within the bill cycle. However, there might be situations where you have received certain billing information after the bill is generated for the bill cycle. In such scenarios, you would like to generate a separate bill for the newly created billable charges. The system now allows you to generate an adhoc bill. However, note that you cannot generate adhoc bills through the **Bill** screen.

A bill is generated using the billable charges. Now, in order to differentiate between the normal and adhoc billable charges, you need to set the **Adhoc Bill** flag for the billable charges. If the value of the **Adhoc Bill** flag is set to **Y**, the system will consider the billable charge during adhoc billing. And, if the value of the **Adhoc Bill** flag is set to **N**, the system will consider the billable charge during regular billing based on the bill cycle.

A new batch named **Adhoc Billing (C1-FABL)** is created which generates adhoc bills. Both, automatically generated and manually created billable charges (with the **Adhoc Bill** flag set to **Y**) are considered during adhoc billing.

With Oracle Revenue Management and Billing V2.4.0.0.0, the On Demand Billing feature has been enhanced to facilitate billing for multiple usage data files in one go. Till now you were only able to create billable charges and bill for only one usage data file at a time using the using the **On Demand Billing** screen. However, there might be situations where you want to upload multiple usage data files and generate billable charges for the usage records (of a single or multiple accounts) that you may want to group together based on certain criteria. For example, you may want to generate billable charges for all debit transactions of one or more accounts. In such scenarios, you can now upload multiple usage data files using a file group and create billable charges for the records uploaded through the **Usage Data Processing** screen. You can create file groups based on various criteria to upload multiple usage data files. For example, you may want to create a file group for uploading usage data files of accounts that need to be billed for the services to be charged for using the credit card facility. You can create a file group using the **On Demand Billing** screen. You can then upload one or more usage data files using the file group through the **Usage Data Processing** screen. Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides you with a facility to upload usage data received from various product processors or banking applications for billing. You can upload a usage data file in the CSV format. The **Usage Data Processing** screen allows you to upload usage data files for both banking and insurance modules. You need to ensure that the CSV file is in the required format; otherwise the file will not be uploaded in the system. For more information about the CSV file format,

see CSV File Format for Banking and CSV File Format for Insurance. When you upload a usage data file, mapping algorithm parses the flat file in the CSV format and maps the columns in the CSV file to an XML schema named Interface. The validation process starts immediately after the file is uploaded in the system. During the validation process, the system and custom validations (if any) are executed. The status of each usage record is changed to Valid or Invalid depending on whether the usage record was validated successfully or not. Once a usage record is successfully validated, you can submit the valid records and create billable charges for them. Once the usage data files are uploaded and billable charges are generated through the **Usage Data Processing** screen, you can then create and freeze the bills using the **On Demand Billing** screen.

You can optionally configure the system to use the approval workflow process for a usage data file. On submitting a valid record, the approval workflow process routes the usage record to the approver for approval. The approver receives a notification to approve the valid records. The approver can either approve or reject one or more valid records. Once the approver approves a valid record, a billable charge is created for the usage record. However, if the approver rejects a valid record, a notification is sent to the submitter to resolve the usage record. The submitter can then correct the existing data or add missing data (based on the review comments), and can again submit the valid record for approval. Once the valid record is approved, a billable charge is created for the usage record.

The system generates the bills based on the Bill After Date. The Bill After Date indicates the date after which adhoc or normal bills must be generated. In case of adhoc billing, the Bill After Date is specified for a file group using which you can upload one or more usage data files.

While uploading usage data files for adhoc billing, you may or may not specify the Bill After Date for a file group. The system behaves in the following manner when:

- **Bill After Date — Specified:** Adhoc bill is generated for the usage data file and account combination when the Bill After Date is equal to or earlier than the current date.
- **Bill After Date — Not Specified:** During the upload process, the Bill After Date is set to the current date. And, adhoc bill is generated for the usage data file and account combination when the Bill After Date is equal to or earlier than the current date.

In case of regular billing, you may or may not specify the Bill After Date while uploading a usage data file. The system behaves in the following manner when:

- **Bill After Date — Specified:** Normal bill is generated for the account in the bill cycle in which the bill after date falls.
- **Bill After Date — Not Specified:** Normal bill is generated for the account based on the bill cycle defined for the account.

Once the adhoc or normal bills are generated for a usage data file, you can freeze and complete the bills. Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides you with the ability to freeze and complete adhoc bills generated for a usage data file from the **On Demand Billing** screen.

During the on demand billing process, each usage record of a file goes through various statuses until it is billed to the customer. For more information about the usage record statuses, see *Usage Record Status Transition* on page 522.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Prerequisites

To setup the on demand billing process, you need to do the following:

- Ensure approver's user group has access to the **F1-DFLTS** application service
- Create a To Do Type for submitter named **C1-ODBSU** using the following information:
  - **Navigation Option** — C1_SUBMIT
  - **Priority** — Priority 10 – Highest
  - **Message Category** — 17000
  - **Message Number** — 1470
  - **Sort Keys** — Define the following sort keys for the To Do type:

Sort Key	Use as Default	Sort Order
Usage Data ID	Yes	Descending

  - **Drill Keys** — Define the following drill keys for the To Do type:

Table Name	Field Name
CI_BCHG_STG	BCHG_HSTG_ID
CI_BCHG_STG	FILE_NAME
CI_BCHG_STG	BCHG_STG_STAT_FLG

- Create a To Do Type for approver named **C1-ODBAP** using the following information:
  - **Navigation Option** — CI_NDAP
  - **Priority** — Priority 10 – Highest
  - **Message Category** — 17000
  - **Message Number** — 1470
  - **Sort Keys** — Define the following sort keys for the To Do type:

Sort Key	Use as Default	Sort Order
Usage Data ID	Yes	Descending

  - **Drill Keys** — Define the following drill keys for the To Do type:

Table Name	Field Name
CI_BCHG_STG	BCHG_HSTG_ID
CI_BCHG_STG	FILE_NAME

- Create a To Do role named **C1-ODBSU** for submitter and **C1-ODBAP** for approver
- Assign the **C1-ODBSU** To Do type to the **C1-ODBSU** To Do role
- Assign the **C1-ODBAP** To Do type to the **C1-ODBAP** To Do role
- Create a To Do role named **C1-ODFU** and assign users to this To Do role. The users who have the **C1-ODFU** To Do role will receive the To Do entries generated while executing the **Upload and Validate Usage Data File (C1-ODFU)** batch.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- Assign the **C1-ODFU** To Do type to the **C1-ODFU** To Do role
- Create a To Do role named **C1-ODBCH** and assign users to this To Do role. The users who have the **C1-ODBCH** To Do role will receive the To Do entries generated while executing the **Billable Charge Creation (C1-ODBCH)** batch.
- Assign the **C1-ODBCH** To Do type to the **C1-ODBCH** To Do role
- Create a To Do role named **C1-FABL** and assign users to this To Do role. The users who have the **C1-FABL** To Do role will receive the To Do entries generated while executing the **Adhoc Billing (C1-FABL)** batch.
- Assign the **C1-FABL** To Do type to the **C1-FABL** To Do role
- Create a To Do role named **C1-FCADH** and assign users to this To Do role. The users who have the **C1-FCADH** To Do role will receive the To Do entries generated while executing the **Freeze and Complete Adhoc Bills (C1-FCADH)** batch.
- Assign the **C1-FCADH** To Do type to the **C1-FCADH** To Do role
- Set e-mail address for the users who are going to use the **On Demand Billing** screen (otherwise To Do entry will not be generated on executing the above batches)
- Create a mapping algorithm using the **C1-CSVPMALGO** algorithm type
- Create a validation algorithm using the **C1-VLDALGO** algorithm type
- Create an extract algorithm using the **C1-EXTALGO** algorithm type
- Create a To Do algorithm using the **C1_ODBTDALGO** algorithm type and set the following parameters in the algorithm:
  - **To Do Role for Submitter** — Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only resolve the records which are rejected by the approver.
  - **To Do Type for Submitter** — Used to indicate that a To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when the approver rejects the records.
  - **To Do Role for Approver** — Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the records submitted by the submitter.
  - **To Do Type for Approver** — Used to indicate that a To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when the submitter submits the valid records for approval.
- Define the required file types in the system
- Define values for the following lookup fields:
  - ODB_CAN_RSN_FLG
  - ODB_REJ_RSN_FLG
  - PAGE_NUMBER
- If you want to create billable charges with future date for a contract, then ensure that the **Use Calendar Billing** option is set to **Allow Advanced Billing** in the respective contract type.

Besides this, you need to setup the following feature configurations:

- On Demand Billing (C1-ODBFC)
- Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to set the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration	*Setting the On Demand Billing (C1-ODBFC) Feature Configuration* on page 757

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to set the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration	*Setting the Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG) Feature Configuration* on page 759

CSV File Format for Banking Usage Data

Before uploading a usage data file for banking, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following columns:

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
DATA IDENTIFIER	Used to specify the serial number of the usage record.	No
ACCOUNT ID TYPE	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes
ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER	Used to indicate the account to which the usage record belongs.	Yes
START DATE	Used to specify the date from when the product was used. **Note:** You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	No
END DATE	Used to specify the date till when the product was used. **Note:** You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	No
DIVISION	Used to specify the division to which the usage record belongs.	Yes
DESCRIPTION	Used to specify the description of the usage record. It is shown on the billable charge.	Yes
BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10	Used to specify the description of the line item (charge).	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the charge amount is specified.
AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10	Used to specify the charge amount.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the bill line description or currency is specified.
CURRENCY1, CURRENCY2, ..., CURRENCY10	Used to specify the currency in which the amount is charged. **Note:** If you specify a currency other than the account's invoice currency, the system will do the currency conversion if the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the charge amount is specified.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
MEMO ONLY1, MEMO ONLY2, ..., MEMO ONLY10	Used to indicate whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not. The valid values are: • true • false **Note:** By default, the value will be set to **false** if the column does not contain any value.	No
SUMMARY1, SUMMARY2, ..., SUMMARY10	Used to indicate whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not. The valid values are: • true • false **Note:** By default, the value will be set to **true** if the column does not contain any value.	No
SHOW ON BILL1, SHOW ON BILL2, ..., SHOW ON BILL10	Used to indicate whether the charge should appear on the customer's printed bill or not. The valid values are: • true • false **Note:** By default, the value will be set to **true** if the column does not contain any value.	No
GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10	Used to specify the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when **false** is specified in the **Memo Only** column corresponding to the bill line description.
PRODUCT	Used to specify the product code.	Yes
VARIANCE	Used to indicate the variance that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing.	No
PARAM TYPE1, PARAM TYPE2, ..., PARAM TYPE15	Used to indicate the product parameter that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** If the data in these columns will be used for product parameter mapping, you must not use the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols in these columns.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the parameter value is specified.
PARAM VALUE1, PARAM VALUE2, ..., PARAM VALUE15	Used to specify the parameter value. **Note:** If the data in these columns will be used for product parameter mapping, you must not use the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols in these columns.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the parameter type is specified.
SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10	Used to indicate the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the product charges.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the service quantity is specified.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10	Used to specify the number of units of the service quantity.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the SQI is specified.
CHARTYPE1, CHARTYPE2, ..., CHARTYPE10	Used to indicate the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the characteristic value is specified.
CHARVAL1, CHARVAL2, ..., CHARVAL10	Used to specify the value of the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the characteristic type is specified.

Note:

The column names in the CSV file must be in the Upper case. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur when you upload the usage data file.

While uploading a file using a file type where business labels are defined for usage data fields, the CSV file should contain the business label in the respective column. Otherwise, the usage data file will not be uploaded in the system.

CSV File Format for Insurance Usage Data

Before uploading a usage data file for insurance, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following columns:

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
DATA IDENTIFIER	Used to specify the serial number of the usage record.	No
START DATE	Used to specify the date from when the product was used. **Note:** You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	No
END DATE	Used to specify the date till when the product was used. **Note:** You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	No
CONTRACT ID	Used to specify the contract ID.	Yes
CHARGE TYPE	Used to indicate the charge type.	No
DESCRIPTION	Used to specify the description of the usage record. It is shown on the billable charge.	Yes
BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10	Used to specify the description of the line item (charge).	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the charge amount is specified.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10	Used to specify the charge amount.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the bill line description or currency is specified.
CURRENCY1, CURRENCY2, ..., CURRENCY10	Used to specify the currency in which the amount is charged. **Note:** If you specify a currency other than the account's invoice currency, the system will do the currency conversion if the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the charge amount is specified.
MEMO ONLY1, MEMO ONLY2, ..., MEMO ONLY10	Used to indicate whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not. The valid values are: • true • false **Note:** By default, the value will be set to **false** if the column does not contain any value.	No
SUMMARY1, SUMMARY2, ..., SUMMARY10	Used to indicate whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not. The valid values are: • true • false **Note:** By default, the value will be set to **true** if the column does not contain any value.	No
SHOW ON BILL1, SHOW ON BILL2, ..., SHOW ON BILL10	Used to indicate whether the charge should appear on the customer's printed bill or not. The valid values are: • true • false **Note:** By default, the value will be set to **true** if the column does not contain any value.	No
GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10	Used to specify the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when **false** is specified in the **Memo Only** column corresponding to the bill line description.
PRODUCT	Used to specify the product code.	Yes
VARIANCE	Used to indicate the variance that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
PARAM TYPE1, PARAM TYPE2, ..., PARAM TYPE15	Used to indicate the product parameter that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** If the data in these columns will be used for product parameter mapping, you must not use the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols in these columns.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the parameter value is specified.
PARAM VALUE1, PARAM VALUE2, ..., PARAM VALUE15	Used to specify the parameter value. **Note:** If the data in these columns will be used for product parameter mapping, you must not use the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols in these columns.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the parameter type is specified.
SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10	Used to indicate the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the product charges.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the service quantity is specified.
SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10	Used to specify the number of units of the service quantity.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the SQI is specified.
CHARTYPE1, CHARTYPE2, ..., CHARTYPE10	Used to indicate the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the characteristic value is specified.
CHARVAL1, CHARVAL2, ..., CHARVAL10	Used to specify the value of the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the characteristic type is specified.
RECURRING FLAG	Used to indicate whether recurring bill segments must be created at the intervals defined in the bill period or at the set invoice frequency.	No
BILL PERIOD	Used to indicate the bill period that you want to use for specifying the intervals at which the recurring bill segments must be created.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the recurring flag is equal to Bill Period.
FREQUENCY	Used to indicate the invoice frequency at which the recurring bill segments must be created.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the recurring flag is equal to Frequency.

Note:

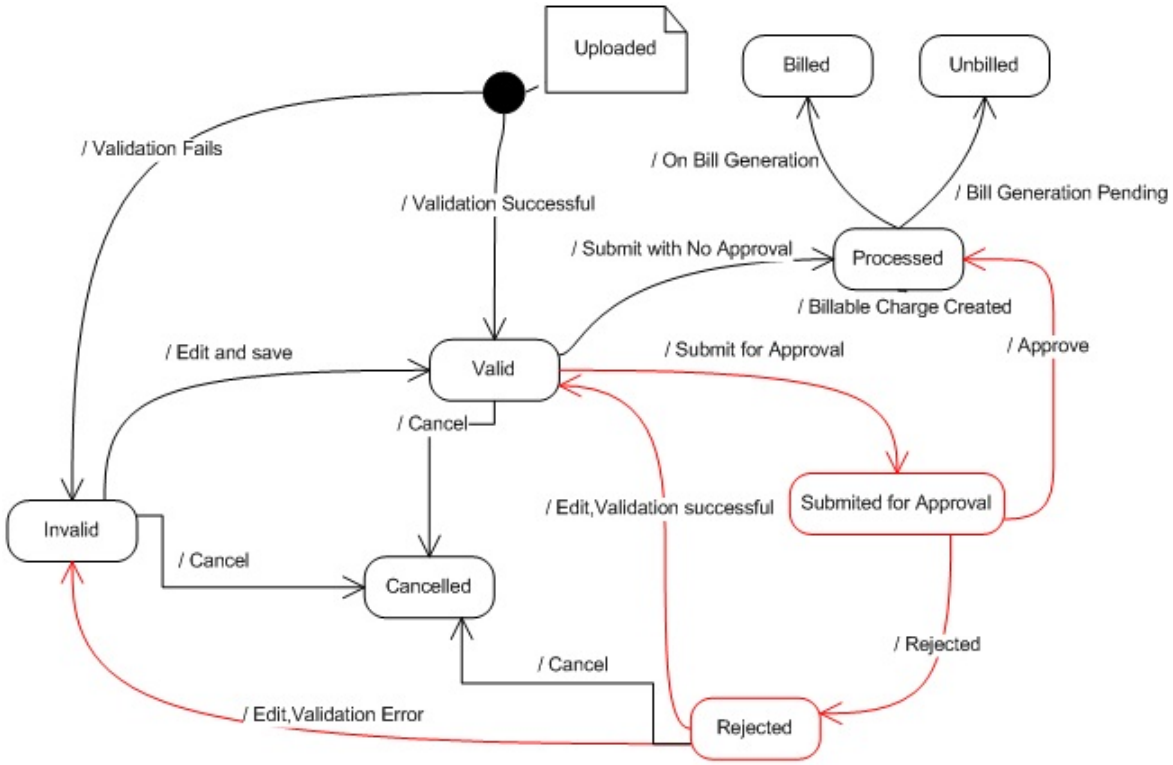
The column names in the CSV file must be in the Upper case. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur when you upload the usage data file.

While uploading a file using a file type where business labels are defined for usage data fields, the CSV file should contain the business label in the respective column. Otherwise, the usage data file will not be uploaded in the system.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Usage Record Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a usage record moves from one status to another during the on demand billing process:



File Type

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you define file type(s) using which you can upload a usage data file. During the upload process, each file must be mapped to a file type. It is the file type which helps the system to understand how to process the file. Each file type has the mapping algorithm attached to it. The mapping algorithm parses the flat file in the CSV format and maps the columns in the CSV file to an XML schema named **Interface**. In addition, you can also define Validation, Extract, and To Do algorithms for each file type. If the To Do algorithm is attached to a file type, it means that all usage records in the file must be approved before creating the billable charges.

The **File Type** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete a file type. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *File Types* on page 522

File Types

The **File Types** zone lists the file types that are already defined in the system. You can define, edit and delete a file type through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
File Type	Displays the file type.
Description	Displays the description of the file type.
Mapping Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered when you upload a usage data file.
Validation Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered once the usage data file is uploaded in the system.
Feed Type	Indicates the type of data stored in the file. The valid value is: • Banking Usage Data • Insurance Usage Data • Payment Upload Data
To Do Algorithm	Indicates whether the records must be approved before creating the billable charges. If the algorithm is specified in this field, it means the approval is required.
Extract Algorithm	Indicates whether the export to excel functionality should be enabled for the file type. If the algorithm is specified in this field, it means export to excel functionality is enabled for the file type.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **File Type** screen appears where you can edit the details of the file type. **Note:** You can edit the details of a file type only when no files of this type have been uploaded in the system.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the file type. **Note:** You can only delete a file type which is not yet used.

You can define a file type by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see *Changing the Layout* on page 729.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a file type	*Defining a File Type* on page 523
How to edit a file type	*Editing a File Type* on page 528
How to delete a file type	*Deleting a File Type* on page 534

Defining a File Type

Prerequisites

To define a file type, you should have:

- Mapping algorithm defined using the C1-CSVPMALGO algorithm type
- Validation algorithm defined using the C1-VLDALGO algorithm type
- Extract algorithm defined using the C1-EXTALGO algorithm type
- To Do algorithm defined using the C1_ODBTDALGO algorithm type

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: The C1-VLDALGO algorithm type is, at present, designed to validate banking usage data file. You should not use an algorithm created using the C1-VLDALGO algorithm type to validate the insurance usage data file. If you want to validate the insurance usage data file, you need to create a custom algorithm type.

Procedure

To define a file type:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **File Type**.

   The **File Type** screen appears.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **File Types** zone.

   The **File Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Type	Used to specify the file type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the file type.	Yes
Feed Type	Used to indicate the type of data stored in the file. The valid value is: • Banking Usage Data • Insurance Usage Data • Payment Upload Data	Yes

Mapping Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered when you upload a usage data file.
	Note: This algorithm parses the flat file in the CSV format and maps the columns in the CSV file to an XML schema named **Interface**. It also validates whether:
	• The file that is uploaded is in the CSV format.
	• The file contains data in the required format.
	• The following data is available for each usage record:
	  • Account Identifier Type
	  • Account Identifier
	  • Division
	  • Product
	  • Description
		Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
To Do Algorithm	Used to indicate whether the records must be approved before creating the billable charges. If the algorithm is specified in this field, it means the approval is required. **Note:** This algorithm contains the following parameters: • **To Do Role for Submitter** — Indicates that users with the specified To Do role can only resolve the records which are rejected by the approver. • **To Do Type for Submitter** — Indicates that a To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when the approver rejects the records. • **To Do Role for Approver** — Indicates that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the records submitted by the submitter. • **To Do Type for Approver** — Indicates that a To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when the submitter submits the valid records for approval.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Validation Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered once the usage data file is uploaded in the system. **Note:** Once the usage data file is uploaded, the system checks whether: • Division, Product, and SQIs are available in the system. • Account with the specified combination (account identifier type, account identifier, and division) exists in the system. • GL Distribution code is valid. • Characteristic types exist in the system. • Usage Data Start Date is earlier than or equal to the Bill After Date or Current Date if the contract type does not support billable charges with future date. • Account has an active contract which is created using the contract type associated with the product. • Usage Data Start and End Dates fall within the Contract Start and End Dates. • Parameters are associated with the product for a given date range. • Parameter value matches one of the predefined values when the parameter value type is set to **Predefined**. • Parameter value exists in the reference entity when the parameter value type is set to **Reference**. • Characteristic value matches one of the predefined values when the characteristic value type is set to **Predefined Value**. If you want to define custom validations, you can define them in the validation algorithm. At present, when you create an algorithm using the C1-VLDALGO algorithm type, it checks whether account identifier contains any special characters.	No
Extract Algorithm	Used to indicate the algorithm that should be used to enable the export to excel functionality.	No

In addition, it contains the following two sections:

- **Map Divisions** — Used to specify the division(s) that you want to associate with the file type.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to select the division for a file type.	No **Note:** If you do not associate division(s) with the file type, the file type is not available for uploading a usage data file. This means only those file types for which you have specified division(s) can be used for uploading a usage data file.

Note:

- **Custom Labels** — Used to specify business labels for the following usage data fields of a CSV file:
  - ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER
  - ACCOUNT ID TYPE
  - AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10
  - BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10
  - CHARTYPE1, CHARTYPE2, ..., CHARTYPE10
  - CHARVAL1, CHARVAL2, ..., CHARVAL10
  - CURRENCY1, CURRENCY2, ..., CURRENCY10
  - DATA IDENTIFIER
  - DESCRIPTION
  - DIVISION
  - END DATE
  - GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10
  - MEMO ONLY1, MEMO ONLY2, ..., MEMO ONLY10
  - PARAM TYPE1, PARAM TYPE2, ..., PARAM TYPE15
  - PARAM VALUE1, PARAM VALUE2, ..., PARAM VALUE15
  - PRODUCT
  - SHOW ON BILL1, SHOW ON BILL2, ..., SHOW ON BILL10
  - SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10
  - SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10
  - START DATE
  - SUMMARY1, SUMMARY2, ..., SUMMARY10
  - VARIANCE

  Note: If you have defined business labels for usage data fields, the CSV file should contain business label in the respective column. Otherwise, the usage data file will not be uploaded in the system.

5. Enter the required details.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note:

You can search for an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

If you want to associate more than one division with the file type, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a division from the file type, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the division.

6. Click **Save**.

   The file type is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
File Type screen	*File Type* on page 522
File Types zone	*File Types* on page 522
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732

Editing a File Type

Prerequisites

To edit a file type, you should have:

- Mapping algorithm defined using the C1-CSVPMALGO algorithm type
- Validation algorithm defined using the C1-VLDALGO algorithm type
- Extract algorithm defined using the C1-EXTALGO algorithm type
- To Do algorithm defined using the C1_ODBTDALGO algorithm type

Note:

You can edit the details of a file type only when no files of this type have been uploaded in the system.

The C1-VLDALGO algorithm type is, at present, designed to validate banking usage data file. You should not use an algorithm created using the C1-VLDALGO algorithm type to validate the insurance usage data file. If you want to validate the insurance usage data file, you need to create a custom algorithm type.

Procedure

To edit a file type:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **File Type**.

   The **File Type** screen appears.

4. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the file type whose details you want to edit.

   The **File Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Type	Used to specify the file type.	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Description	Used to specify the description for the file type.	Yes
Feed Type	Used to indicate the type of data stored in the file. The valid value is: • Banking Usage Data • Insurance Usage Data • Payment Upload Data	Yes

Mapping Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered when you upload a usage data file.
	Note: This algorithm parses the flat file in the CSV format and maps the columns in the CSV file to an XML schema named **Interface**. It also validates whether:
	• The file that is uploaded is in the CSV format.
	• The file contains data in the required format.
	• The following data is available for each usage record:
	  • Account Identifier Type
	  • Account Identifier
	  • Division
	  • Product
	  • Description
		Yes

To Do Algorithm	Used to indicate whether the records must be approved before creating the billable charges. If the algorithm is specified in this field, it means the approval is required. **Note:** This algorithm contains the following parameters: • **To Do Role for Submitter** — Indicates that users with the specified To Do role can only resolve the records which are rejected by the approver. • **To Do Type for Submitter** — Indicates that a To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when the approver rejects the records. • **To Do Role for Approver** — Indicates that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the records submitted by the submitter. • **To Do Type for Approver** — Indicates that a To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when the submitter submits the valid records for approval.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Validation Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered once the usage data file is uploaded in the system. **Note:** Once the usage data file is uploaded, the system checks whether: • Division, Product, and SQIs are available in the system. • Account with the specified combination (account identifier type, account identifier, and division) exists in the system. • GL Distribution code is valid. • Characteristic types exist in the system. • Usage Data Start Date is earlier than or equal to the Bill After Date or Current Date if the contract type does not support billable charges with future date. • Account has an active contract which is created using the contract type associated with the product. • Usage Data Start and End Dates fall within the Contract Start and End Dates. • Parameters are associated with the product for a given date range. • Parameter value matches one of the predefined values when the parameter value type is set to **Predefined**. • Parameter value exists in the reference entity when the parameter value type is set to **Reference**. • Characteristic value matches one of the predefined values when the characteristic value type is set to **Predefined Value**. If you want to define custom validations, you can define them in the validation algorithm. At present, when you create an algorithm using the C1-VLDALGO algorithm type, it checks whether account identifier contains any special characters.	No
Extract Algorithm	Used to indicate the algorithm that should be used to enable the export to excel functionality.	No

In addition, it contains the following two sections:

- **Map Divisions** — Used to specify the division(s) that you want to associate with the file type.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to select the division for a file type.	No **Note:** If you do not associate division(s) with the file type, the file type is not available for uploading a usage data file. This means only those file types for which you have specified division(s) can be used for uploading a usage data file.

Note:

- **Custom Labels** — Used to specify business labels for the usage data fields of a CSV file.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER	Used to indicate the account to which the usage record belongs.	Yes
ACCOUNT ID TYPE	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes
AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10	Used to specify the charge amount.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the bill line description or currency is specified.
BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10	Used to specify the description of the line item (charge).	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the charge amount is specified.
CHARTYPE1, CHARTYPE2, ..., CHARTYPE10	Used to indicate the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the characteristic value is specified.
CHARVAL1, CHARVAL2, ..., CHARVAL10	Used to specify the value of the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the characteristic type is specified.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
CURRENCY1, CURRENCY2, ..., CURRENCY10	Used to specify the currency in which the amount is charged. **Note:** If you specify a currency other than the account's invoice currency, the system will do the currency conversion if the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the charge amount is specified.
DATA IDENTIFIER	Used to specify the serial number of the usage record.	No
DESCRIPTION	Used to specify the description of the usage record. It is shown on the billable charge.	Yes
DIVISION	Used to specify the division to which the usage record belongs.	Yes
END DATE	Used to specify the date till when the product was used. **Note:** You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	No
GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10	Used to specify the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when **false** is specified in the **Memo Only** column corresponding to the bill line description.
MEMO ONLY1, MEMO ONLY2, ..., MEMO ONLY10	Used to indicate whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not. The valid values are: • true • false **Note:** By default, the value will be set to **false** if the column does not contain any value.	No
PARAM TYPE1, PARAM TYPE2, ..., PARAM TYPE15	Used to indicate the product parameter that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** If the data in these columns will be used for product parameter mapping, you must not use the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols in these columns.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the parameter value is specified.
PARAM VALUE1, PARAM VALUE2, ..., PARAM VALUE15	Used to specify the parameter value. **Note:** If the data in these columns will be used for product parameter mapping, you must not use the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols in these columns.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the parameter type is specified.
PRODUCT	Used to specify the product code.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
SHOW ON BILL1, SHOW ON BILL2, ..., SHOW ON BILL10	Used to indicate whether the charge should appear on the customer's printed bill or not. The valid values are: • true • false **Note:** By default, the value will be set to **true** if the column does not contain any value.	No
SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10	Used to indicate the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the product charges.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the service quantity is specified.
SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10	Used to specify the number of units of the service quantity.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required when the SQI is specified.
START DATE	Used to specify the date from when the product was used. **Note:** You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	No
SUMMARY1, SUMMARY2, ..., SUMMARY10	Used to indicate whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not. The valid values are: • true • false **Note:** By default, the value will be set to **true** if the column does not contain any value.	No
VARIANCE	Used to indicate the variance that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing.	No

5. Modify the required details.

   Note:

   You can search for an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   If you want to associate more than one division with the file type, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a division from the file type, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the division.

6. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the file type are saved.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
File Type screen	*File Type* on page 522
File Types zone	*File Types* on page 522
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732

Deleting a File Type

Procedure

To delete a file type:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **File Type**.

   The **File Type** screen appears.
4. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the file type that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the file type.

   Note: You can only delete a file type which is not yet used.
5. Click **OK**.

   The file type is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
File Type screen	*File Type* on page 522
File Types zone	*File Types* on page 522

On Demand Billing

The **On Demand Billing** screen allows you to search for a file group based on various search criteria. Through this screen, you can:

- Define a file group
- Edit a file group
- Delete a file group
- Close a file group
- Generate adhoc bills for a file group
- Freeze and complete adhoc bills of a file group
- View all bills generated for a file group

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- View usage data files of a file group
- Cancel a usage data file

This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 535

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for file groups for which bills are processed and/or generated in the system. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Group	Used to specify the file group.	No
Description	Used to specify the description for the file group.	No
User ID	Used to specify the name of the user who has uploaded the usage data files in the file group.	No
Bill After Date	Used to specify the date after which the bills must be generated for the file group.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the file group. The valid values are: • Closed • Open	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a file group.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
File Group	Displays the name of the file group. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **File Group** screen appears where you can view the details of the file group.
Bill After Date	Displays the date after which the bills must be generated for the file group.
Default Usage Start Date	Displays the date from when the product was used.
Default Usage End Date	Displays the date till when the product was used.
Status	Displays the status of the file group. The valid values are: • Open • Close
Close	On clicking the **Close** ( ) icon, you can close a file group. **Note:** You can only close a file group in which all the records of the usage data files are either in the processed or cancelled status.
Generate Bill	On clicking the **Generate Bill** ( ) icon, you can generate bills for a file group.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Complete Bill	On clicking the **Complete Bill**( ) icon, you can freeze and complete the bills of a file group.
Total	Displays the total number of records that are uploaded through the file group.
Valid	Displays the number of records which are successfully validated in the system.
Invalid	Displays the number of records which could not pass through the validation process in the system.
Submitted	Displays the number of valid records which are submitted for approval.
Processed	Displays the number of valid records for which billable charges are already created.
Rejected	Displays the number of records which are rejected by the approver.
Cancelled	Displays the number of records which are cancelled in the system.
Unbilled	Displays the number of records for which billable charges are created, but are not yet billed to the customer.
Billed	Displays the number of records for which billable charges are created and billed to the customer.
Bills	Displays the number of bills generated for the file group. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Bill Data** screen appears where you can view all bills generated for the usage data file.
Last Batch Status	Indicates the batch that was last executed on the file group and its current status. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Batch Run Tree** screen appears where you can view the execution details of the batch.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
On Demand Billing screen	*On Demand Billing* on page 534
How to search for a file group	*Searching for a File Group* on page 538
How to define a file group	*Defining a File Group* on page 538
How to edit a file group	*Editing a File Group* on page 540
How to delete a file group	*Deleting a File Group* on page 541
How to close a file group	*Closing a File Group* on page 542
How to generate adhoc bills for a file group	*Generating Adhoc Bills for a File Group* on page 542
How to freeze and complete one or more bills	*Freezing Selected Bills of a File Group* on page 544
How to freeze and complete all bills of a file group	*Freezing All Bills of a File Group* on page 543
How to view all bills generated for a file group	*Viewing All Bills Generated for a File Group* on page 545
How to view usage data files of a file group	*Viewing Usage Data Files of a File Group* on page 547
How to cancel a usage data file	*Cancelling a Usage Data File* on page 592

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Group Files

The **Group Files** zone allows you to view the usage data files uploaded using a file group. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Used to specify the name of the usage data file.	No
File Type	Used to specify the type of usage data file.	No
File Upload From Date	Used to specify the start date of the period during which the usage data file that you want to search was uploaded in the system.	No
File Upload To Date	Used to specify the end date of the period during which the usage data file that you want to search was uploaded in the system.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
File Information	Displays the name of the usage data file of the file group and its related details.
Total	Displays the total number of records that are uploaded through the usage data file.
Valid	Displays the number of records which are successfully validated in the system.
Invalid	Displays the number of records which could not pass through the validation process in the system.
Submitted	Displays the number of valid records which are submitted for approval.
Rejected	Displays the number of records which are rejected by the approver.
Processed	Displays the number of valid records for which billable charges are already created.
Cancelled	Displays the number of records of a usage data file which are cancelled.
UnBilled	Displays the number of records for which billable charges are created, but are not yet billed to the customer.
Billed	Displays the number of records for which billable charges are created and billed to the customer.
Cancel	On clicking the **Cancel** ( ) icon, you can cancel a file.

By default, the **Group Files** zone does not appear in the **On Demand Billing** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the file group in the **Search Results** section.

Note: By default, the **Group Files** zone displays a list of usage data files that are uploaded using the file group in the **Search Results** section. However, you can filter the list of usage data files by specifying a search criteria in the **Search Criteria** section.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to view usage data files of a file group	*Viewing Usage Data Files of a File Group* on page 547
How to cancel a file in the file group	*Cancelling a Usage Data File* on page 592

Searching for a File Group

Procedure

To search for a file group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **On Demand Billing**.

   The **On Demand Billing** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of file groups that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
On Demand Billing screen	*On Demand Billing* on page 534
Search zone	*Search* on page 535

Defining a File Group

Prerequisites

To define a file group, you should have:

- Access to the divisions for which you want to define the file group

Procedure

To define a file group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **On Demand Billing**.

   The **On Demand Billing** screen appears.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Add/Edit File Group** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Group	Used to specify the file group.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the file group.	Yes
Bill After Date	Used to specify the date after which the bill must be generated for the file group.	Yes
Default Usage Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the product was used. The default usage start date is used when the start date is not specified for a record in the usage data file. By default, the current date appears in this field. You can change the default usage start date, if required. **Note:** The default usage start date cannot be later than the default usage end date.	Yes
Default Usage End Date	Used to specify the date till when the product was used. The default usage end date is used when the end date is not specified for a record in the usage data file. By default, the current date appears in this field. You can change the default usage end date, if required. **Note:** The default usage end date cannot be earlier than the default usage start date.	Yes

In addition, the **Add/Edit File Group** screen contains the following section:

Map Divisions— The **Map Divisions** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to indicate the division for which you want to define the file group.	No **Note:** If you do not associate division(s) with the file group, the file group is not available for uploading a usage data file. This means only those file groups for which you have specified division(s) can be used for uploading a usage data file.

5. Enter the required details.
6. If you want to define the file group for more than one division, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step 5.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a division from the file group, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the division.
7. Click **Save**.

   The file group is defined.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
On Demand Billing screen	*On Demand Billing* on page 534
Search zone	*Search* on page 535

Editing a File Group

Procedure

To edit a file group:

Note: You can edit the details of a file group only when no usage data files of this group have been uploaded in the system or all the records in the usage data files of a file group are cancelled.

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **On Demand Billing**.

   The **On Demand Billing** screen appears.

4. Search for the file group in the **On Demand Billing** screen.

5. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **File Group** column corresponding to the file group whose details you want to edit.

   The **Add/Edit File Group** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Group	Displays the file group.	Not applicable
Description	Used to modify the description for the file group.	Yes
Bill After Date	Used to modify the date after which the bill must be generated for the file group	Yes
Usage Start Date	Used to modify the date from when the product was used. The default usage start date is used when the start date is not specified for a record in the usage data file. **Note:** The default usage start date cannot be later than the default usage end date.	Yes
Usage End Date	Used to modify the date till when the product was used. The default usage end date is used when the end date is not specified for a record in the usage data file. **Note:** The default usage end date cannot be earlier than the default usage start date.	Yes

   In addition, the **Add/Edit File Group** screen contains the following section:

   Map Divisions— The **Map Divisions** section contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to indicate the division for which you want to define the file group.	No **Note:** If you do not associate division(s) with the file group, the file group is not available for uploading a usage data file. This means only those file groups for which you have specified division(s) can be used for uploading a usage data file.

6. Modify the required details.

   Note: If you want to define the file group for more than one division, click the **Plus** (+) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a division from the file group, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to it.

7. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the file group are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
On Demand Billing screen	*On Demand Billing* on page 534
Search zone	*Search* on page 535

Deleting a File Group

Procedure

To delete a file group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **On Demand Billing**.

   The **On Demand Billing** screen appears.

4. Search for the file group in the **On Demand Billing** screen.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **File Group** column corresponding to the file group that you want to delete.

   The **Add/Edit File Group** screen appears.

6. Click **Delete**.

   The file group is deleted.

   Note: The delete button appears only if the file group is not yet used. In other words, you cannot delete a file group that you have used for uploading usage data files.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
On Demand Billing screen	*On Demand Billing* on page 534
Search zone	*Search* on page 535

Closing a File Group

Procedure

To close a file group:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **On Demand Billing**.

   The **On Demand Billing** screen appears.

4. Search for the file group in the **On Demand Billing** screen.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Close** ( ) icon in the **Close** column corresponding to the file group that you want to close.

   The status of the file group is changed to **Closed**.

   Note: You can only close a file group in which all the records of the usage data files are either in the processed, cancelled, or rejected status. However, you may close a file group in which all the records are not in the cancelled and/or processed status, but in that case a to do entry is sent to the approver for approval of the pending records.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
On Demand Billing screen	*On Demand Billing* on page 534
Search zone	*Search* on page 535

Generating Adhoc Bills for a File Group

The **On Demand Billing** screen allows you to generate adhoc bills for a file group. However, you can generate bills only after you close the file group for which you want to generate adhoc bills.

Procedure

To generate adhoc bills for a file group:

1. Search for the file group in the **On Demand Billing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Generate Bill** ( ) icon corresponding to the file group for which you want to generate the adhoc bills.

   The **Generate Bill** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Cutoff Date	Used to specify the cutoff date for the bill.	Yes
Accounting Date	Used to specify the accounting date of the bill.	Yes

3. Enter the required details.
4. Click **OK**.

   The adhoc bills are generated for the usage data files of a file group. An adhoc bill is generated for a usage data file and account combination when the bill after date is equal to or earlier than the current date. The status of the usage records is changed to **Billed**. If the total number of billable charges created for a usage data file exceeds the online bill creation limit, a batch job is created using the **Adhoc Billing (C1-FABL)** batch. A message appears indicating the batch job ID. This batch job creates adhoc bills for the usage data file.

   Note:

   You can change the online bill creation limit, whenever required, using the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration. For more information on the **Adhoc Billing (C1-FABL)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Execution Guide*.

   If an adhoc bill with the **Pending** status already exists for a usage data file and account combination, then the existing bill is deleted and regenerated. However, you can generate the bill again for a file group only after manually deleting the bill from the **Bill** screen.

   On successful completion of the **Adhoc Billing (C1-FABL)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **C1-FABL** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-FABL** To Do type. This To Do indicates whether the batch was successfully executed or not. If the batch was successfully executed, it indicates the following:

   - Number of billable charges which were processed
   - Number of billable charges for which the bill after date is a future date
   - Number of adhoc bills generated for the usage data file
   - Number of billable charges which could not be processed successfully

   Once the batch is executed successfully, the status of the usage records in a usage data file of a file group is changed to **Billed**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a file group	*Searching for a File Group* on page 538
How to set the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration	*Setting the On Demand Billing (C1-ODBFC) Feature Configuration* on page 757

Freezing All Bills of a File Group

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides you with the ability to freeze and complete adhoc bills generated for the usage data files of a file group from the **On Demand Billing** screen. You can either freeze and complete all or selected adhoc bills, whenever required. However, you cannot freeze and complete normal or regular bills from the **On Demand Billing** screen.

Procedure

To freeze and complete all adhoc bills generated for a file group:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

1. Search for the file group in the **On Demand Billing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

   Freeze and Complete ( ) icon corresponding to the file group whose adhoc bills you want to freeze and complete.

   The **Complete Bill** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Date	Used to specify the date on which the bill was completed.	Yes
Accounting Date	Used to specify the accounting date of the bill.	Yes

3. Enter the required details.
4. Click **OK** in the message box.

   A batch job is created using the **Freeze and Complete Adhoc Bills (C1-FCADH)** batch. A message appears indicating the batch job ID. This batch job freezes and completes all adhoc bills of the usage data file which are in the **Pending** status. The system does not freeze and complete pending adhoc bills which have bill segments in the **Error** status. For more information on the **Freeze and Complete Adhoc Bills (C1-FCADH)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Execution Guide*.

   Note:

   On successful completion of the **Freeze and Complete Adhoc Bills (C1-FCADH)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **C1-FCADH** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-FCADH** To Do type. This To Do indicates whether the batch was successfully executed or not. If the batch was successfully executed, it indicates the following:

   - Number of bills which were picked up for completion
   - Number of bills which were completed
   - Number of bills which could not be completed successfully

   Once the batch is executed successfully, the status of the bills is changed to **Complete**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a file group	*Searching for a File Group* on page 538
How to freeze and complete one or more bills	*Freezing Selected Bills of a File Group* on page 544

Freezing Selected Bills of a File Group

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides you with the ability to freeze and complete adhoc bills generated for a file group from the **On Demand Billing** screen. You can either freeze and complete all or selected adhoc bills, whenever required. However, you cannot freeze and complete normal or regular bills from the **On Demand Billing** screen.

Procedure

To freeze and complete selected adhoc bills of a file group:

1. Search for the file group in the **On Demand Billing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the
   Bills column corresponding to the file group whose adhoc bills you want to freeze and complete.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **View Bill Data** screen appears.

3. Select the check box corresponding to the pending adhoc bill that you want to freeze and complete.

   Note: The check box does not appear corresponding to the completed adhoc bills and pending adhoc bills which have bill segments in the **Error** status.

4. Click **Freeze/Complete**.

   The **Complete Bill** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Date	Used to specify the date on which the bill was completed.	Yes
Accounting Date	Used to specify the accounting date of the bill.	Yes

5. Enter the required details.
6. Click **OK** in the message box.

   The status of the bills is changed to **Complete**.

   Note:

   The **Freeze/Complete** button is not available in the **View Bill Data** screen when:

   - All bills generated for a file group are in the **Complete** status
   - Multiple bills are generated for a usage data file of a file group and one or more bill segments of each bill are in the **Error** status

   In other words, the **Freeze/Complete** button is available in the **View Bill Data** screen only when there is at least one pending bill for a file group where none of the bill segments are in the **Error** status.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a file group	*Searching for a File Group* on page 538
How to freeze and complete all bills of a file group	*Freezing All Bills of a File Group* on page 543

Viewing All Bills Generated for a File Group

Procedure

To view all bills generated for a file group:

1. Search for the file group in the **On Demand Billing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Bills** column corresponding to the file group whose bills you want to view.

   The **View Bill Data** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
File Group	Displays the name of the file group.
Description	Displays the description of the file group.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description
Bill Generation Date	Used to specify the date when the bills were generated for the file group.
Billing Method	Indicates the type of billing used for the file group. The valid values are: • Adhoc Billing
Bill Status	Used to indicate the status of the bill. The valid values are: • Pending • Complete

In addition, this screen contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Bill** screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Alternate Bill ID	Displays the alternate bill ID.
Bill Status	Displays the status of the bill. The valid values are: • Pending • Complete
Bill Date	Displays the date when the bill was completed.
Accounting Date	Displays the accounting date for which the financial transaction of the bill is created.
Invoice Amount	Displays the total amount billed to the customer.
Invoice Currency	Displays the currency in which the amount is billed to the customer.
Invoice Account ID	Indicates the account for which the bill is created. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Account** screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Display Bill	On clicking this link, you can view the details of the respective bill. **Note:** This link appears only for the bills that are in the **Complete** status. The facility to view the generated bills in PDF format is available only if Oracle Documaker is integrated with Oracle Revenue Management and Billing.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** (), and **Last** ( ) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. Click **Search**.
4. View the bills generated for the usage data file in the **View Bill Data** screen.
5. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.

6. If required, you can click the **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) buttons to navigate *b*etween pages.
7. If required, you can freeze and complete adhoc bills which are generated for the usage data file.

   Note:

   The **Freeze/Complete** button is not available in the **View Bill Data** screen when:

   - All bills generated for a usage data file are in the **Complete** status
   - Multiple bills are generated for a usage data file and one or more bill segments of each bill are in the **Error** status

   In other words, the **Freeze/Complete** button is available in the **View Bill Data** screen only when there is at least one pending bill for a usage data file where none of the bill segments are in the **Error** status.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to freeze and complete one or more bills	*Freezing Selected Bills of a File Group* on page 544
How to freeze and complete all bills of a file group	*Freezing All Bills of a File Group* on page 543

Viewing Usage Data Files of a File Group

Procedure

To view usage data files of a file group:

1. Search for the file group in the **On Demand Billing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the file group whose usage data files *y*ou want to view.

   The **Group Files** zone appears.
3. View the usage data files of the file group in the **Group Files** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to cancel a usage data file of a file group	*Cancelling a Usage Data File* on page 592
How to search for a file group	*Searching for a File Group* on page 538
Group Files zone	*Group Files* on page 537

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Usage Data Processing

The **Usage Data Processing** screen allows you to search for a usage data file based on various search criteria. Through this screen, you can:

- Upload a usage data file
- Cancel a usage data file
- View all records uploaded through a usage data file
- View the valid, invalid, and cancelled records of a usage data file
- View the valid records of a usage data file which are submitted for approval
- View the valid records of a usage data file for which billable charges are already created
- View the rejected, billed and unbilled records of a usage data file
- Submit the valid records of a usage data file and create billable charges for them
- Approve or reject one or more valid records of a usage data file
- Revalidate the valid and invalid records of a usage data file
- Edit the valid, invalid and rejected records of a usage data file
- Export the usage data of a usage data file into a CSV file

This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 548

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for usage data files that are uploaded and/or processed in the system. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Used to specify the name of the usage data file.	No
File Type	Used to indicate the type of usage data file.	No
File Upload From	Used when you want to search for usage data files that were uploaded from a particular date onwards.	No
To	Used when you want to search for usage data files that were uploaded till a particular date.	No
User ID	Used to specify the name of the user who has uploaded the usage data file.	No
Billing Method	Used to specify the type of billing used for the usage data file. The valid values are: • Adhoc Billing • Regular Billing	No
File Group	Used to specify the file group of the usage data file.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a usage data file.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
File Information	Displays the name of the usage data file and its related details.
Revalidate	On clicking the **Revalidate** ( ) icon, you can execute the validation process once again on the valid, invalid, and rejected records. **Note:** The **Revalidate** icon appears only when the usage records are in the **Valid**, **Invalid**, and/or **Rejected** status. In other words, you cannot revalidate a usage data file for which billable charges are created or when the bills are generated for a usage data file.
Cancel	On clicking the **Cancel** ( ) icon, you can cancel all valid, invalid, and rejected records of the usage data file. **Note:** The **Cancel** icon appears only when the usage records are in the **Valid**, **Invalid**, and/or **Rejected** status. In other words, you cannot cancel a usage data file for which billable charges are created or when the bills are generated for a usage data file.
Submit	On clicking the **Submit** ( ) icon, you can submit the valid records and create billable charges for them. If the valid usage records need to be approved before creating the billable charges, a To Do entry is created for the approver to approve the valid records. **Note:** The **Submit** icon appears only when all the records of a usage data file are in the **Valid** status. In other words, if a usage data file contains records in the **Invalid** status, you cannot create billable charges for a usage data file.
Approve	On clicking the **Approve** ( ) icon, the approver can approve all valid records of the usage data file. **Note:** The **Approve** icon appears only when the usage data file (with all usage records in the **Valid** status) is uploaded using a file type to which the To Do algorithm (for enabling approval workflow) is attached.
Total	Displays the total number of records that are uploaded through the usage data file. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Usage Data** screen appears where you can view all records uploaded through the usage data file.
Valid	Displays the number of records which are successfully validated in the system. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Usage Data** screen appears where you can view and edit all valid records of the usage data file.
Invalid	Displays the number of records which could not pass through the validation process in the system. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Usage Data** screen appears where you can view and edit all invalid records of the usage data file.
Submitted	Displays the number of valid records which are submitted for approval. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Usage Data** screen appears where you can view all submitted records of the usage data file.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Rejected	Displays the number of records which are rejected by the approver. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Usage Data** screen appears where you can view and edit all rejected records of the usage data file.
Processed	Displays the number of valid records for which billable charges are already created. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Usage Data** screen appears where you can view all processed records of the usage data file.
Billed	Displays the number of records for which billable charges are created and billed to the customer. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Usage Data** screen appears where you can view all billed records of the usage data file.
Unbilled	Displays the number of records for which billable charges are created, but are not yet billed to the customer. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Usage Data** screen appears where you can view all unbilled records of the usage data file.
Cancelled	Displays the number of records which are cancelled in the system. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Usage Data** screen appears where you can view all cancelled records of the usage data file.
Batch Run Status	Indicates the batch that was last executed on the usage data file and its current status. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Batch Run Tree** screen appears where you can view the execution details of the batch.

You can upload a usage data file by clicking the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Usage Data Processing screen	*Usage Data Processing* on page 548
How to upload a usage data file	*Uploading a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to replace an existing file	*Replacing an Existing File* on page 554
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to view all records of a usage data file	*Viewing All Records of a Usage Data File* on page 557
How to view valid records of a usage data file	*Viewing Valid Records of a Usage Data File* on page 560
How to view invalid records of a usage data file	*Viewing Invalid Records of a Usage Data File* on page 564
How to view submitted records of a usage data file	*Viewing Submitted Records of a Usage Data File* on page 567
How to view processed records of a usage data file	*Viewing Processed Records of a Usage Data File* on page 570
How to view rejected records of a usage data file	*Viewing Rejected Records of a Usage Data File* on page 577
How to view cancelled records of a usage data file	*Viewing Cancelled Records of a Usage Data File* on page 574
How to view billed records of a usage data file	*Viewing Billed Records of a Usage Data File* on page 580
How to view unbilled records of a usage data file	*Viewing Unbilled Records of a Usage Data File* on page 584

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to view all bills generated for a usage data file	*Viewing All Bills Generated for a File Group* on page 545
How to submit the valid records	*Submitting a Valid Record* on page 587
How to edit the valid, invalid or rejected records	*Editing a Valid, Invalid, or Rejected Usage Record* on page 595
How to approve the valid records	*Approving a Valid Record* on page 588
How to reject the valid records	*Rejecting a Valid Record* on page 591
How to cancel a usage data file	*Cancelling a Usage Data File* on page 592
How to revalidate a usage data file	*Revalidating a Usage Data File* on page 594
How to generate adhoc bills for a usage data file	*Generating Adhoc Bills for a File Group* on page 542

Searching for a Usage Data File

Procedure

To search for a usage data file:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **Usage Data Processing**.

   The **Usage Data Processing** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of usage data files that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Usage Data Processing screen	*Usage Data Processing* on page 548
Search zone	*Search* on page 548

Uploading a Usage Data File

Prerequisites

To upload a usage data file, you should have:

- File types defined in the application
- Usage data in the required CSV file format

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- File group using which you want to upload the usage data files is in **Open** status

Procedure

To upload a usage data file:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **Usage Data Processing**.

   The **Usage Data Processing** screen appears.
4. Click the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Upload Usage Data File** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billing Method	Used to specify the type of billing you want to use for the usage data file. The valid values are: • Adhoc Billing • Regular Billing	Yes
File Group	Used to specify the file group to which you want to add the usage data file. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Adhoc Billing** option from the **File Group** list. You can only view those file groups that are in the open status and to which you have access in the **File Group** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you select the billing method as **Adhoc Billing**, you have to specify the file group to which you want to add the usage data file.
Bill After Date	Used to specify the date after which the bills must be generated for the usage data file. By default, the current date appears in this field. **Note:** If you have selected the billing method as **Adhoc Billing**, this field appears in read-only mode and displays the bill after date as defined for the selected file group. If you have selected the billing method as **Regular Billing** then this field is enabled displaying the current date.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you select the billing method as **Regular Billing**, you have to specify the bill after date.
Default Usage Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the product was used. The default usage start date is used when the start date is not specified for a record in the usage data file. By default, the current date appears in this field. You can change the default usage start date, if required. **Note:** If you have selected the billing method as **Adhoc Billing**, this field appears in read-only mode and displays the default usage start date as defined for the selected file group. If you have selected the billing method as **Regular Billing** then this field is enabled displaying the current date. The default usage start date cannot be later than the default usage end date.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you select the billing method as **Regular Billing**, you have to specify the default usage start date.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Default Usage End Date	Used to specify the date till when the product was used. The default usage end date is used when the end date is not specified for a record in the usage data file. By default, the current date appears in this field. You can change the default usage end date, if required. **Note:** If you have selected the billing method as **Adhoc Billing**, this field appears in read-only mode and displays the default usage end date as defined for the selected file group. If you have selected the billing method as **Regular Billing** then this field is enabled displaying the current date. The default usage end date cannot be earlier than the default usage start date.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you select the billing method as **Regular Billing**, you have to specify the default usage end date.
File Type	Used to specify the type of usage data file.	Yes
Replace Existing File	Used to indicate whether you want to replace any existing file in the system. You must select this check box when you want to upload the same file once again.	No
File Name	Used to specify the name and path of the usage data file that you want to upload. **Note:** You can also click the **Browse** button corresponding to this field to browse to the location where the usage data file is available in the system.	Yes

5. Enter the required details.
6. Click the **Browse** button corresponding to the **File Name** field.

   The **Choose File to Upload** dialog box appears.
7. Browse to the location where the usage data file that you want to upload is available.
8. Click **Open**.

   The usage data file name and path appears in the **File Name** field.
9. Click **Upload**.

   A message appears indicating that the usage data file has been uploaded successfully. If an error occurs while parsing, the usage data file is not uploaded in the system.

   Note:

   The validation process starts immediately after the file is uploaded in the system. If a usage record is successfully validated, the status of the usage record is changed to **Valid**. And, if a usage record could not pass through the validation process, the status of the usage record is changed to **Invalid**. You can view the details of the uploaded file and its records in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.

   If the usage data file size exceeds the file size limit set in the **C1–ODBFC** feature configuration, a batch job is created using the **Upload and Validate Usage Data File (C1-ODFU)** batch. A message appears indicating the batch job ID. This batch job uploads and validates the usage data file. You can change the file size limit using the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration. For more information on the **Upload and Validate Usage Data File (C1-ODFU)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Execution Guide*.

   The number of usage records that are parsed and mapped in an XML file depends on the value defined for the **Staging XML Size** option type in the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration. For example, if the **Staging XML Size** option type is set to 100 and a usage data file contains 500 records, then the system creates 5 XML files — each containing 100 records.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If a batch job is created automatically, the number of usage records that are validated in each work unit depends on the value defined for the **Validation Chunk Size** option type in the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration.

On successful completion of the **Upload and Validate Usage Data File (C1-ODFU)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **C1-ODFU** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-ODFU** To Do type. This To Do indicates whether the batch was successfully executed or not. If the batch was successfully executed, it indicates the following:

- Number of records that were uploaded in the system
- Number of records which were successfully validated
- Number of records which could not pass through the validation process
- Number of records which failed to validate due to some technical reasons

10. Click **OK** in the message box.

    Once a usage record is successfully validated, the status of the usage record is changed to **Valid**. And, if a usage record could not pass through the validation process, the status of the usage record is changed to **Invalid**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Usage Data Processing screen	*Usage Data Processing* on page 548
Search zone	*Search* on page 548
How to set the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration	*Setting the On Demand Billing (C1-ODBFC) Feature Configuration* on page 757

Replacing an Existing File

Prerequisites

To replace an existing usage data file, you should have:

- File types defined in the application
- Usage data in the required CSV file format
- File group using which you want to upload the usage data files is in **Open** status

Procedure

To replace an existing usage data file:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **Usage Data Processing**.

   The **Usage Data Processing** screen appears.

4. Click the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Upload Usage Data File** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billing Method	Used to specify the type of billing you want to use for the usage data file. The valid values are: • Adhoc Billing • Regular Billing	Yes
File Group	Used to specify the file group to which you want to add the usage data file. **Note:** This field appears only when you select the **Adhoc Billing** option from the **File Group** list. You can only view those file groups that are in the open status and to which you have access in the **File Group** list.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you select the billing method as **Adhoc Billing**, you have to specify the file group to which you want to add the usage data file.
Bill After Date	Used to specify the date after which the bills must be generated for the usage data file. By default, the current date appears in this field. **Note:** If you have selected the billing method as **Adhoc Billing**, this field appears in read-only mode and displays the bill after date as defined for the selected file group. If you have selected the billing method as **Regular Billing** then this field is enabled displaying the current date.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you select the billing method as **Regular Billing**, you have to specify the bill after date.
Default Usage Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the product was used. The default usage start date is used when the start date is not specified for a record in the usage data file. By default, the current date appears in this field. You can change the default usage start date, if required. **Note:** If you have selected the billing method as **Adhoc Billing**, this field appears in read-only mode and displays the default usage start date as defined for the selected file group. If you have selected the billing method as **Regular Billing** then this field is enabled displaying the current date. The default usage start date cannot be later than the default usage end date.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you select the billing method as **Regular Billing**, you have to specify the default usage start date.
Default Usage End Date	Used to specify the date till when the product was used. The default usage end date is used when the end date is not specified for a record in the usage data file. By default, the current date appears in this field. You can change the default usage end date, if required. **Note:** If you have selected the billing method as **Adhoc Billing**, this field appears in read-only mode and displays the default usage end date as defined for the selected file group. If you have selected the billing method as **Regular Billing** then this field is enabled displaying the current date. The default usage end date cannot be earlier than the default usage start date.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you select the billing method as **Regular Billing**, you have to specify the default usage end date.
File Type	Used to specify the type of usage data file.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Replace Existing File	Used to indicate that you want to replace any existing file in the system.	Yes
File Name	Used to specify the name and path of the usage data file that you want to upload. **Note:** You can also click the **Browse** button corresponding to this field to browse to the location where the usage data file is available in the system.	Yes

5. Select the **Replace Existing File** check box.

   Note: You can replace an existing file only when the usage records of a usage data file are in any of the statuses:

   - **Valid** and/or **Invalid**
   - **Rejected**
   - **Cancelled**

   In other words, you cannot replace a file when the billable charges are already created for the usage records of a usage data file, or are pending for approval with the approver.

6. Click the **Browse** button corresponding to the **File Name** field.

   The **Choose File to Upload** dialog box appears.

7. Browse to the location where the usage data file that you want to replace is available.

8. Click **Open**.

   The usage data file name and path appears in the **File Name** field.

9. Click **Upload**.

   A message appears indicating that the usage data file has been uploaded successfully. If an error occurs while parsing, the usage data file is not uploaded in the system.

   Note:

   The validation process starts immediately after the file is uploaded in the system. If a usage record is successfully validated, the status of the usage record is changed to **Valid**. And, if a usage record could not pass through the validation process, the status of the usage record is changed to **Invalid**. You can view the details of the uploaded file and its records in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.

   If the usage data file size exceeds the file size limit set in the **C1–ODBFC** feature configuration, a batch job is created using the **Upload and Validate Usage Data File (C1-ODFU)** batch. A message appears indicating the batch job ID. This batch job uploads and validates the usage data file. You can change the file size limit using the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration. For more information on the **Upload and Validate Usage Data File (C1-ODFU)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Execution Guide*.

   The number of usage records that are parsed and mapped in an XML file depends on the value defined for the **Staging XML Size** option type in the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration. For example, if the **Staging XML Size** option type is set to 100 and a usage data file contains 500 records, then the system creates 5 XML files — each containing 100 records.

   If a batch job is created automatically, the number of usage records that are validated in each work unit depends on the value defined for the **Validation Chunk Size** option type in the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration.

   On successful completion of the **Upload and Validate Usage Data File (C1-ODFU)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **C1-ODFU** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-ODFU** To Do type. This To Do indicates whether the batch was successfully executed or not. If the batch was successfully executed, it indicates the following:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- Number of records that were uploaded in the system
- Number of records which were successfully validated
- Number of records which could not pass through the validation process
- Number of records which failed to validate due to some technical reasons

10. Click **OK** in the message box.

    Once a usage record is successfully validated, the status of the usage record is changed to **Valid**. And, if a usage record could not pass through the validation process, the status of the usage record is changed to **Invalid**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Usage Data Processing screen	*Usage Data Processing* on page 548
Search zone	*Search* on page 548

Viewing All Records of a Usage Data File

Procedure

To view all records of a usage data file:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Total** column corresponding to the usage data file whose records you want to view.

   The **Usage Data** screen appears. It contains the following two sections:

   - **Search Criteria** — This section allows you to filter the usage records based on the various search criteria. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the usage data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Indicates the type of the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage Start Date	Displays the usage start date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage End Date	Displays the usage end date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Status	Used to specify the status of the usage record. The valid values are: • Valid • Invalid • Submitted for Approval • Processed • Rejected • Cancelled	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the division to which the usage record belongs.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the identifier type based on which you want to search for the usage records.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account whose usage records you want to view.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.

- **Search Results** — By default, all records of the usage data file are listed in the **Search Results** section. You can filter the search results based on the specified criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
BILLABLE CHARGE ID	Indicates the billable charge which is generated for the usage record. **Note:** This column appears only for the valid records for which billable charges have been created.
ACCOUNT ID TYPE	Indicates the account identifier type.
ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER	Indicates the account to which the usage record belongs.
ACCOUNT INFORMATION	Displays information about the account.
DIVISION	Indicates the division to which the usage record belongs.
CONTRACT ID	Displays the contract ID. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
CHARGE TYPE	Indicates the charge type. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
START DATE	Displays the date from when the product was used. **Note:** If the start date is not available, the default usage start date appears in this column.
END DATE	Displays the date till when the product was used. **Note:** If the end date is not available, the default usage end date appears in this column.
DESCRIPTION	Displays the description of the usage record. It is shown on the billable charge.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
PRODUCT	Displays the product code.
VARIANCE	Indicates the variance that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
PARAM TYPE1, PARAM TYPE2, ..., PARAM TYPE15	Indicates the product parameter that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
PARAM VALUE1, PARAM VALUE2, ..., PARAM VALUE15	Displays the value of the product parameter. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10	Indicates the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the product charges.
SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10	Displays the number of units of the service quantity.
BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10	Displays the description of the line item (charge).
AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10	Displays the charge amount.
CURRENCY1, CURRENCY2, ..., CURRENCY10	Displays the currency in which the amount is charged.
MEMO ONLY1, MEMO ONLY2, ..., MEMO ONLY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not.
SUMMARY1, SUMMARY2, ..., SUMMARY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not.
SHOW ON BILL1, SHOW ON BILL2, ..., SHOW ON BILL10	Indicates whether the charge should appear on the customer's printed bill or not.
GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10	Displays the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
CHARTYPE1, CHARTYPE2, ..., CHARTYPE10	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.
CHARVAL1, CHARVAL2, ..., CHARVAL10	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

Note:

If you have defined business labels for usage data fields, the columns will appear with the business labels defined for the respective column.

Only those columns that contain data in the CSV file appear in the **Usage Data** screen. For example, if information about characteristics is provided in the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns of the CSV file, then only the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen. Similarly, if information about the line item (charge) is provided in the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, and GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns of the CSV file, then only the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, AND GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

Note: You can download details of all the records of a usage data file in a CSV file format using the **Export TO Excel** link provided in the **Search** section.

3. View the records of the usage data file in the **Usage Data** screen.
4. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.
5. If required, you can click the **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) buttons to navigate *b*etween pages.
6. If required, you can filter the usage records in the **Usage Data** screen.
7. If required, you can click the **Export TO Excel** link to download details of all the records of a usage data file in a CSV file format.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to filter the usage records	*Filtering Usage Records* on page 595

Viewing Valid Records of a Usage Data File

Procedure

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To view valid records of a usage data file:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Valid** column corresponding to the usage data file whose valid records you want to view.

   The **Usage Data** screen appears. It contains the following two sections:

   - **Search Criteria** — This section allows you to filter the valid records based on the various search criteria. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the usage data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Indicates the type of the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage Start Date	Displays the usage start date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage End Date	Displays the usage end date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates that all valid records are displayed in the **Usage Data** screen.	Not applicable
Division	Used to specify the division to which the valid record belongs.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the identifier type based on which you want to search for the valid records.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account whose valid records you want to view.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.

   - **Search Results** — By default, all valid records of the usage data file are listed in the **Search Results** section. You can filter the search results based on the specified criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
ACCOUNT ID TYPE	Indicates the account identifier type.
ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER	Indicates the account to which the usage record belongs.
ACCOUNT INFORMATION	Displays information about the account.
DIVISION	Indicates the division to which the usage record belongs.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
CONTRACT ID	Displays the contract ID. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
CHARGE TYPE	Indicates the charge type. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
START DATE	Displays the date from when the product was used. **Note:** If the start date is not available, the default usage start date appears in this column.
END DATE	Displays the date till when the product was used. **Note:** If the end date is not available, the default usage end date appears in this column.
DESCRIPTION	Displays the description of the usage record. It is shown on the billable charge.
PRODUCT	Displays the product code.
VARIANCE	Indicates the variance that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
PARAM TYPE1, PARAM TYPE2, ..., PARAM TYPE15	Indicates the product parameter that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
PARAM VALUE1, PARAM VALUE2, ..., PARAM VALUE15	Displays the value of the product parameter. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10	Indicates the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the product charges.
SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10	Displays the number of units of the service quantity.
BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10	Displays the description of the line item (charge).
AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10	Displays the charge amount.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
CURRENCY1, CURRENCY2, ..., CURRENCY10	Displays the currency in which the amount is charged.
MEMO ONLY1, MEMO ONLY2, ..., MEMO ONLY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not.
SUMMARY1, SUMMARY2, ..., SUMMARY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not.
SHOW ON BILL1, SHOW ON BILL2, ..., SHOW ON BILL10	Indicates whether the charge should appear on the customer's printed bill or not.
GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10	Displays the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.
CHARTYPE1, CHARTYPE2, ..., CHARTYPE10	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.
CHARVAL1, CHARVAL2, ..., CHARVAL10	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

Note:

If you have defined business labels for usage data fields, the columns will appear with the business labels defined for the respective column.

Only those columns that contain data in the CSV file appear in the **Usage Data** screen. For example, if information about characteristics is provided in the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns of the CSV file, then only the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen. Similarly, if information about the line item (charge) is provided in the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, and GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns of the CSV file, then only the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, AND GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the valid records of the usage data file in the **Usage Data** screen.
4. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.

5. If required, you can click the **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) buttons to navigate between pages.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

6. If required, you can filter the valid records in the **Usage Data** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to filter the usage records	*Filtering Usage Records* on page 595

Viewing Invalid Records of a Usage Data File

Procedure

To view invalid records of a usage data file:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Invalid** column corresponding to the usage data file whose *i*nvalid records you want to view.

   The **Usage Data** screen appears. It contains the following two sections:

   - **Search Criteria** — This section allows you to filter the invalid records based on the various search criteria. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the usage data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Indicates the type of the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage Start Date	Displays the usage start date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage End Date	Displays the usage end date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates that all invalid records are displayed in the **Usage Data** screen.	Not applicable
Division	Used to specify the division to which the invalid record belongs.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the identifier type based on which you want to search for the invalid records.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account whose invalid records you want to view.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- **Search Results** — By default, all invalid records of the usage data file are listed in the **Search Results** section. You can filter the search results based on the specified criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
ACCOUNT ID TYPE	Indicates the account identifier type.
ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER	Indicates the account to which the usage record belongs.
ACCOUNT INFORMATION	Displays information about the account.
DIVISION	Indicates the division to which the usage record belongs.
CONTRACT ID	Displays the contract ID. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
CHARGE TYPE	Indicates the charge type. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
START DATE	Displays the date from when the product was used. **Note:** If the start date is not available, the default usage start date appears in this column.
END DATE	Displays the date till when the product was used. **Note:** If the end date is not available, the default usage end date appears in this column.
DESCRIPTION	Displays the description of the usage record. It is shown on the billable charge.
PRODUCT	Displays the product code.
VARIANCE	Indicates the variance that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
PARAM TYPE1, PARAM TYPE2, ..., PARAM TYPE15	Indicates the product parameter that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
PARAM VALUE1, PARAM VALUE2, ..., PARAM VALUE15	Displays the value of the product parameter. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10	Indicates the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the product charges.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10	Displays the number of units of the service quantity.
BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10	Displays the description of the line item (charge).
AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10	Displays the charge amount.
CURRENCY1, CURRENCY2, ..., CURRENCY10	Displays the currency in which the amount is charged.
MEMO ONLY1, MEMO ONLY2, ..., MEMO ONLY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not.
SUMMARY1, SUMMARY2, ..., SUMMARY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not.
SHOW ON BILL1, SHOW ON BILL2, ..., SHOW ON BILL10	Indicates whether the charge should appear on the customer's printed bill or not.
GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10	Displays the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.
CHARTYPE1, CHARTYPE2, ..., CHARTYPE10	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.
CHARVAL1, CHARVAL2, ..., CHARVAL10	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

Note:

If you have defined business labels for usage data fields, the columns will appear with the business labels defined for the respective column.

Only those columns that contain data in the CSV file appear in the **Usage Data** screen. For example, if information about characteristics is provided in the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns of the CSV file, then only the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen. Similarly, if information about the line item (charge) is provided in the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, and GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns of the CSV file, then only the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, AND GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** ( ), **Previous**

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the invalid records of the usage data file in the **Usage Data** screen.
4. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.
5. If required, you can click the **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) buttons to navigate *b*etween pages.
6. If required, you can filter the invalid records in the **Usage Data** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to filter the usage records	*Filtering Usage Records* on page 595

Viewing Submitted Records of a Usage Data File

Procedure

To view submitted records of a usage data file:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Submitted** column corresponding to the usage data file *w*hose submitted records you want to view.

   The **Usage Data** screen appears. It contains the following two sections:

   - **Search Criteria** — This section allows you to filter the submitted records based on the various search criteria. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the usage data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Indicates the type of the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage Start Date	Displays the usage start date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage End Date	Displays the usage end date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates that all records submitted for approval are displayed in the **Usage Data** screen.	Not applicable
Division	Used to specify the division to which the submitted record belongs.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the identifier type based on which you want to search for the submitted records.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account whose submitted records you want to view.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.

- **Search Results** — By default, all submitted records of the usage data file are listed in the **Search Results** section. You can filter the search results based on the specified criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
BILLABLE CHARGE ID	Indicates the billable charge which is generated for the usage record.
ACCOUNT ID TYPE	Indicates the account identifier type.
ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER	Indicates the account to which the usage record belongs.
ACCOUNT INFORMATION	Displays information about the account.
DIVISION	Indicates the division to which the usage record belongs.
CONTRACT ID	Displays the contract ID. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
CHARGE TYPE	Indicates the charge type. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
START DATE	Displays the date from when the product was used. **Note:** If the start date is not available, the default usage start date appears in this column.
END DATE	Displays the date till when the product was used. **Note:** If the end date is not available, the default usage end date appears in this column.
DESCRIPTION	Displays the description of the usage record. It is shown on the billable charge.
PRODUCT	Displays the product code.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
VARIANCE	Indicates the variance that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
PARAM TYPE1, PARAM TYPE2, ..., PARAM TYPE15	Indicates the product parameter that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
PARAM VALUE1, PARAM VALUE2, ..., PARAM VALUE15	Displays the value of the product parameter. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10	Indicates the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the product charges.
SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10	Displays the number of units of the service quantity.
BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10	Displays the description of the line item (charge).
AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10	Displays the charge amount.
CURRENCY1, CURRENCY2, ..., CURRENCY10	Displays the currency in which the amount is charged.
MEMO ONLY1, MEMO ONLY2, ..., MEMO ONLY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not.
SUMMARY1, SUMMARY2, ..., SUMMARY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not.
SHOW ON BILL1, SHOW ON BILL2, ..., SHOW ON BILL10	Indicates whether the charge should appear on the customer's printed bill or not.
GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10	Displays the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
CHARTYPE1, CHARTYPE2, ..., CHARTYPE10	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.
CHARVAL1, CHARVAL2, ..., CHARVAL10	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

Note:

If you have defined business labels for usage data fields, the columns will appear with the business labels defined for the respective column.

Only those columns that contain data in the CSV file appear in the **Usage Data** screen. For example, if information about characteristics is provided in the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns of the CSV file, then only the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen. Similarly, if information about the line item (charge) is provided in the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, and GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns of the CSV file, then only the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, AND GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the submitted records of the usage data file in the **Usage Data** screen.
4. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.
5. If required, you can click the **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) buttons to navigate *b*etween pages.
6. If required, you can filter the submitted records in the **Usage Data** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to filter the usage records	*Filtering Usage Records* on page 595

Viewing Processed Records of a Usage Data File

Procedure

To view processed records of a usage data file:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Processed** column corresponding to the usage data file *w*hose processed records you want to view.

   The **Usage Data** screen appears. It contains the following two sections:

   - **Search Criteria** — This section allows you to filter the processed records based on the various search criteria. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the usage data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Indicates the type of the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage Start Date	Displays the usage start date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage End Date	Displays the usage end date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates that all processed records are displayed in the **Usage Data** screen.	Not applicable
Division	Used to specify the division to which the processed record belongs.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the identifier type based on which you want to search for the processed records.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account whose processed records you want to view.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.

   - **Search Results** — By default, all processed records of the usage data file are listed in the **Search Results** section. You can filter the search results based on the specified criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
BILLABLE CHARGE ID	Indicates the billable charge which is generated for the usage record.
ACCOUNT ID TYPE	Indicates the account identifier type.
ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER	Indicates the account to which the usage record belongs.
ACCOUNT INFORMATION	Displays information about the account.
DIVISION	Indicates the division to which the usage record belongs.
CONTRACT ID	Displays the contract ID. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
CHARGE TYPE	Indicates the charge type. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
START DATE	Displays the date from when the product was used. **Note:** If the start date is not available, the default usage start date appears in this column.
END DATE	Displays the date till when the product was used. **Note:** If the end date is not available, the default usage end date appears in this column.
DESCRIPTION	Displays the description of the usage record. It is shown on the billable charge.
PRODUCT	Displays the product code.
VARIANCE	Indicates the variance that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
PARAM TYPE1, PARAM TYPE2, ..., PARAM TYPE15	Indicates the product parameter that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
PARAM VALUE1, PARAM VALUE2, ..., PARAM VALUE15	Displays the value of the product parameter. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10	Indicates the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the product charges.
SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10	Displays the number of units of the service quantity.
BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10	Displays the description of the line item (charge).
AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10	Displays the charge amount.
CURRENCY1, CURRENCY2, ..., CURRENCY10	Displays the currency in which the amount is charged.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
MEMO ONLY1, MEMO ONLY2, ..., MEMO ONLY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not.
SUMMARY1, SUMMARY2, ..., SUMMARY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not.
SHOW ON BILL1, SHOW ON BILL2, ..., SHOW ON BILL10	Indicates whether the charge should appear on the customer's printed bill or not.
GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10	Displays the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.
CHARTYPE1, CHARTYPE2, ..., CHARTYPE10	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.
CHARVAL1, CHARVAL2, ..., CHARVAL10	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

Note:

If you have defined business labels for usage data fields, the columns will appear with the business labels defined for the respective column.

Only those columns that contain data in the CSV file appear in the **Usage Data** screen. For example, if information about characteristics is provided in the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns of the CSV file, then only the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen. Similarly, if information about the line item (charge) is provided in the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, and GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns of the CSV file, then only the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, AND GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the processed records of the usage data file in the **Usage Data** screen.
4. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.
5. If required, you can click the **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) buttons to navigate *b*etween pages.
6. If required, you can filter the processed records in the **Usage Data** screen.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to filter the usage records	*Filtering Usage Records* on page 595

Viewing Cancelled Records of a Usage Data File

Procedure

To view cancelled records of a usage data file:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Cancelled** column corresponding to the usage data file whose cancelled records you want to view.

   The **Usage Data** screen appears. It contains the following two sections:

   - **Search Criteria** — This section allows you to filter the cancelled records based on the various search criteria. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the usage data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Indicates the type of the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage Start Date	Displays the usage start date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage End Date	Displays the usage end date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates that all cancelled records are displayed in the **Usage Data** screen.	Not applicable
Division	Used to specify the division to which the cancelled record belongs.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the identifier type based on which you want to search for the cancelled records.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account whose cancelled records you want to view.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.

   - **Search Results** — By default, all cancelled records of the usage data file are listed in the **Search Results** section. You can filter the search results based on the specified criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
BILLABLE CHARGE ID	Indicates the billable charge which is generated for the usage record. **Note:** This column appears only if you have cancelled a valid record for which billable charges have been created.
ACCOUNT ID TYPE	Indicates the account identifier type.
ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER	Indicates the account to which the usage record belongs.
ACCOUNT INFORMATION	Displays information about the account.
DIVISION	Indicates the division to which the usage record belongs.
CONTRACT ID	Displays the contract ID. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
CHARGE TYPE	Indicates the charge type. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
START DATE	Displays the date from when the product was used. **Note:** If the start date is not available, the default usage start date appears in this column.
END DATE	Displays the date till when the product was used. **Note:** If the end date is not available, the default usage end date appears in this column.
DESCRIPTION	Displays the description of the usage record. It is shown on the billable charge.
PRODUCT	Displays the product code.
VARIANCE	Indicates the variance that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
PARAM TYPE1, PARAM TYPE2, ..., PARAM TYPE15	Indicates the product parameter that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
PARAM VALUE1, PARAM VALUE2, ..., PARAM VALUE15	Displays the value of the product parameter. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10	Indicates the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the product charges.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10	Displays the number of units of the service quantity.
BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10	Displays the description of the line item (charge).
AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10	Displays the charge amount.
CURRENCY1, CURRENCY2, ..., CURRENCY10	Displays the currency in which the amount is charged.
MEMO ONLY1, MEMO ONLY2, ..., MEMO ONLY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not.
SUMMARY1, SUMMARY2, ..., SUMMARY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not.
SHOW ON BILL1, SHOW ON BILL2, ..., SHOW ON BILL10	Indicates whether the charge should appear on the customer's printed bill or not.
GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10	Displays the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.
CHARTYPE1, CHARTYPE2, ..., CHARTYPE10	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.
CHARVAL1, CHARVAL2, ..., CHARVAL10	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
REASON	Indicates the reason why the usage record was cancelled.
COMMENTS	Displays additional information entered while cancelling a usage record.

Note:

If you have defined business labels for usage data fields, the columns will appear with the business labels defined for the respective column.

Only those columns that contain data in the CSV file appear in the **Usage Data** screen. For example, if information about characteristics is provided in the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns of the CSV file, then only the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen. Similarly, if information about the line item (charge) is provided in the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, and GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns of the CSV file, then only the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, AND GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the cancelled records of the usage data file in the **Usage Data** screen.
4. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.
5. If required, you can click the **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) buttons to navigate *b*etween pages.
6. If required, you can filter the cancelled records in the **Usage Data** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to filter the usage records	*Filtering Usage Records* on page 595

Viewing Rejected Records of a Usage Data File

Procedure

To view rejected records of a usage data file:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Rejected** column corresponding to the usage data file whose *r*ejected records you want to view.

   The **Usage Data** screen appears. It contains the following two sections:

   - **Search Criteria** — This section allows you to filter the rejected records based on the various search criteria. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the usage data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Indicates the type of the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage Start Date	Displays the usage start date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage End Date	Displays the usage end date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates that all rejected records are displayed in the **Usage Data** screen.	Not applicable
Division	Used to specify the division to which the rejected record belongs.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the identifier type based on which you want to search for the rejected records.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account whose rejected records you want to view.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.

- **Search Results** — By default, all rejected records of the usage data file are listed in the **Search Results** section. You can filter the search results based on the specified criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
ACCOUNT ID TYPE	Indicates the account identifier type.
ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER	Indicates the account to which the usage record belongs.
ACCOUNT INFORMATION	Displays information about the account.
DIVISION	Indicates the division to which the usage record belongs.
CONTRACT ID	Displays the contract ID. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
CHARGE TYPE	Indicates the charge type. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
START DATE	Displays the date from when the product was used. **Note:** If the start date is not available, the default usage start date appears in this column.
END DATE	Displays the date till when the product was used. **Note:** If the end date is not available, the default usage end date appears in this column.
DESCRIPTION	Displays the description of the usage record. It is shown on the billable charge.
PRODUCT	Displays the product code.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
VARIANCE	Indicates the variance that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
PARAM TYPE 1, PARAM TYPE 2, ..., PARAM TYPE 15	Indicates the product parameter that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
PARAM VALUE 1, PARAM VALUE 2, ..., PARAM VALUE 15	Displays the value of the product parameter. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10	Indicates the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the product charges.
SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10	Displays the number of units of the service quantity.
BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10	Displays the description of the line item (charge).
AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10	Displays the charge amount.
CURRENCY 1, CURRENCY 2, ..., CURRENCY 10	Displays the currency in which the amount is charged.
MEMO ONLY 1, MEMO ONLY 2, ..., MEMO ONLY 10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not.
SUMMARY 1, SUMMARY 2, ..., SUMMARY 10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not.
SHOW ON BILL 1, SHOW ON BILL 2, ..., SHOW ON BILL 10	Indicates whether the charge should appear on the customer's printed bill or not.
GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10	Displays the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.
CHARTYPE 1, CHARTYPE 2, ..., CHARTYPE 10	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
CHARVAL 1, CHARVAL 2, ..., CHARVAL 10	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
REASON	Indicates the reason why the usage record was rejected by the approver.
COMMENTS	Displays additional information entered while rejecting a usage record.

Note:

If you have defined business labels for usage data fields, the columns will appear with the business labels defined for the respective column.

Only those columns that contain data in the CSV file appear in the **Usage Data** screen. For example, if information about characteristics is provided in the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns of the CSV file, then only the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen. Similarly, if information about the line item (charge) is provided in the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, and GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns of the CSV file, then only the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, AND GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the rejected records of the usage data file in the **Usage Data** screen.
4. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.
5. If required, you can click the **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) buttons to navigate *b*etween pages.
6. If required, you can filter the rejected records in the **Usage Data** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to filter the usage records	*Filtering Usage Records* on page 595

Viewing Billed Records of a Usage Data File

Procedure

To view billed records of a usage data file:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Billed** column corresponding to the usage data file whose *b*illed records you want to view.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Usage Data** screen appears. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — This section allows you to filter the billed records based on the various search criteria. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the usage data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Indicates the type of the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage Start Date	Displays the usage start date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage End Date	Displays the usage end date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates that all billed records are displayed in the **Usage Data** screen.	Not applicable
Division	Used to specify the division to which the billed record belongs.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the identifier type based on which you want to search for the billed records.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account whose billed records you want to view.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.

- **Search Results** — By default, all billed records of the usage data file are listed in the **Search Results** section. You can filter the search results based on the specified criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
BILLABLE CHARGE ID	Indicates the billable charge which is generated for the usage record.
ACCOUNT ID TYPE	Indicates the account identifier type.
ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER	Indicates the account to which the usage record belongs.
ACCOUNT INFORMATION	Displays information about the account.
DIVISION	Indicates the division to which the usage record belongs.
CONTRACT ID	Displays the contract ID. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
CHARGE TYPE	Indicates the charge type. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
START DATE	Displays the date from when the product was used. **Note:** If the start date is not available, the default usage start date appears in this column.
END DATE	Displays the date till when the product was used. **Note:** If the end date is not available, the default usage end date appears in this column.
DESCRIPTION	Displays the description of the usage record. It is shown on the billable charge.
PRODUCT	Displays the product code.
VARIANCE	Indicates the variance that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
PARAM TYPE1, PARAM TYPE2, ..., PARAM TYPE15	Indicates the product parameter that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
PARAM VALUE1, PARAM VALUE2, ..., PARAM VALUE15	Displays the value of the product parameter. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10	Indicates the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the product charges.
SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10	Displays the number of units of the service quantity.
BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10	Displays the description of the line item (charge).
AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10	Displays the charge amount.
CURRENCY1, CURRENCY2, ..., CURRENCY10	Displays the currency in which the amount is charged.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
MEMO ONLY1, MEMO ONLY2, ..., MEMO ONLY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not.
SUMMARY1, SUMMARY2, ..., SUMMARY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not.
SHOW ON BILL1, SHOW ON BILL2, ..., SHOW ON BILL10	Indicates whether the charge should appear on the customer's printed bill or not.
GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10	Displays the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.
CHARTYPE1, CHARTYPE2, ..., CHARTYPE10	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.
CHARVAL1, CHARVAL2, ..., CHARVAL10	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

Note:

If you have defined business labels for usage data fields, the columns will appear with the business labels defined for the respective column.

Only those columns that contain data in the CSV file appear in the **Usage Data** screen. For example, if information about characteristics is provided in the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns of the CSV file, then only the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen. Similarly, if information about the line item (charge) is provided in the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, and GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns of the CSV file, then only the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, AND GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the billed records of the usage data file in the **Usage Data** screen.
4. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.
5. If required, you can click the **First** ( ), **Previous** (), **Next** (), and **Last** () buttons to navigate between pages.
6. If required, you can filter the billed records in the **Usage Data** screen.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to filter the usage records	*Filtering Usage Records* on page 595

Viewing Unbilled Records of a Usage Data File

Procedure

To view unbilled records of a usage data file:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Unbilled** column corresponding to the usage data file whose *u*nbilled records you want to view.

   The **Usage Data** screen appears. It contains the following two sections:

   - **Search Criteria** — This section allows you to filter the unbilled records based on the various search criteria. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the usage data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Indicates the type of the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage Start Date	Displays the usage start date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Default Usage End Date	Displays the usage end date entered while uploading the usage data file.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates that all unbilled records are displayed in the **Usage Data** screen.	Not applicable
Division	Used to specify the division to which the unbilled record belongs.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the identifier type based on which you want to search for the unbilled records.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account whose unbilled records you want to view.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you enter the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.

   - **Search Results** — By default, all unbilled records of the usage data file are listed in the **Search Results** section. You can filter the search results based on the specified criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
BILLABLE CHARGE ID	Indicates the billable charge which is generated for the usage record.
ACCOUNT ID TYPE	Indicates the account identifier type.
ACCOUNT IDENTIFIER	Indicates the account to which the usage record belongs.
ACCOUNT INFORMATION	Displays information about the account.
DIVISION	Indicates the division to which the usage record belongs.
CONTRACT ID	Displays the contract ID. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
CHARGE TYPE	Indicates the charge type. **Note:** This column appears only if usage data files are uploaded for the insurance module.
START DATE	Displays the date from when the product was used. **Note:** If the start date is not available, the default usage start date appears in this column.
END DATE	Displays the date till when the product was used. **Note:** If the end date is not available, the default usage end date appears in this column.
DESCRIPTION	Displays the description of the usage record. It is shown on the billable charge.
PRODUCT	Displays the product code.
VARIANCE	Indicates the variance that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** This column appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**.
PARAM TYPE1, PARAM TYPE2, ..., PARAM TYPE15	Indicates the product parameter that must be used along with the product for determining the product pricing. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
PARAM VALUE1, PARAM VALUE2, ..., PARAM VALUE15	Displays the value of the product parameter. **Note:** These columns appear only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.
SQI1, SQI2, ..., SQI10	Indicates the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the product charges.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
SQIVALUE1, SQIVALUE2, ..., SQIVALUE10	Displays the number of units of the service quantity.
BILL LINE DESCRIPTION1, BILL LINE DESCRIPTION2, ..., BILL LINE DESCRIPTION10	Displays the description of the line item (charge).
AMOUNT1, AMOUNT2, ..., AMOUNT10	Displays the charge amount.
CURRENCY1, CURRENCY2, ..., CURRENCY10	Displays the currency in which the amount is charged.
MEMO ONLY1, MEMO ONLY2, ..., MEMO ONLY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not.
SUMMARY1, SUMMARY2, ..., SUMMARY10	Indicates whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not.
SHOW ON BILL1, SHOW ON BILL2, ..., SHOW ON BILL10	Indicates whether the charge should appear on the customer's printed bill or not.
GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 1, GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 2, ..., GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 10	Displays the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.
CHARTYPE1, CHARTYPE2, ..., CHARTYPE10	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.
CHARVAL1, CHARVAL2, ..., CHARVAL10	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

Note:

If you have defined business labels for usage data fields, the columns will appear with the business labels defined for the respective column.

Only those columns that contain data in the CSV file appear in the **Usage Data** screen. For example, if information about characteristics is provided in the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns of the CSV file, then only the CHARTYPE4 and CHARVAL4 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen. Similarly, if information about the line item (charge) is provided in the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, and GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns of the CSV file, then only the BILL LINE DESCRIPTION6, AMOUNT6, CURRENCY6, MEMO ONLY6, SUMMARY6, SHOW ON BILL6, AND GL DISTRIBUTION CODE 6 columns appear in the **Usage Data** screen.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** ( ), **Previous**

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

(<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the unbilled records of the usage data file in the **Usage Data** screen.
4. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.
5. If required, you can click the **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) buttons to navigate *b*etween pages.
6. If required, you can filter the unbilled records in the **Usage Data** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to filter the usage records	*Filtering Usage Records* on page 595

Submitting a Valid Record

Procedure

To submit a valid record:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Submit** ( ) icon corresponding to the usage data file whose valid *r*ecords you want to submit.

   The system behaves in the following manner when:

   - **Billing Method — Adhoc Billing, Approval Workflow — Off, and Bill After Date — Current or Future Date:** A billable charge is created for each valid usage record. The **Adhoc Bill** flag is set to **Y** and the **Bill After Date** is stamped on the billable charge. If the total number of valid records in a usage data file exceeds the transaction limit, a batch job is created using the **Billable Charge Creation (C1-ODBCH)** batch. A message appears indicating the batch job ID. This batch job creates a billable charge for each valid usage record. The status of the usage record is changed to **Processed**.
   - **Billing Method — Adhoc Billing, Approval Workflow — On, and Bill After Date — Current or Future Date:** A To Do entry is created for the approver to approve the valid records. The status of the usage record is changed to **Submitted**.
   - **Billing Method — Regular Billing, Approval Workflow — Off, and Bill After Date — Specified:** A billable charge is created for each valid usage record. The **Adhoc Bill** flag is set to **N** and the **Bill After Date** is stamped on the billable charge. If the total number of valid records in a usage data file exceeds the transaction limit, a batch job is created using the **Billable Charge Creation (C1-ODBCH)** batch. A message appears indicating the batch job ID. This batch job creates a billable charge for each valid usage record. The status of the usage record is changed to **Processed**. The bills will be generated for the account in the bill cycle in which the bill after date falls.
   - **Billing Method — Regular Billing, Approval Workflow — Off, and Bill After Date — Not Specified:** A billable charge is created for each valid usage record. The **Adhoc Bill** flag is set to **N** in the billable charge. If the total number of valid records in a usage data file exceeds the transaction limit, a batch job is created using the **Billable Charge Creation (C1-ODBCH)** batch. A message appears indicating the batch job ID.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This batch job creates a billable charge for each valid usage record. The status of the usage record is changed to **Processed**. The bills will be generated for the account based on the bill cycle defined for the account.

- **Billing Method — Regular Billing and Approval Workflow — On:** A To Do entry is created for the approver to approve the valid records. The status of the usage record is changed to **Submitted**.

Note:

You can change the transaction limit, whenever required, using the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration. For more information on the **Billable Charge Creation (C1-ODBCH)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Execution Guide*.

If you want to create billable charges for valid usage records where start date is a future date, then ensure that the **Use Calendar Billing** option is set to **Allow Advanced Billing** in the respective contract type.

If a batch job is created automatically, the number of valid records for which billable charges are created in each work unit depends on the value defined for the **Billable Charge Chunk Size** option type in the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration.

In case an account belongs to an invoicing group, the billable charge is created for the member account and the bill is generated for the master account.

On successful completion of the **Billable Charge Creation (C1-ODBCH)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **C1-ODBCH** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-ODBCH** To Do type. This To Do indicates whether the batch was successfully executed or not. If the batch was successfully executed, it indicates the following:

- Number of records for which billable charges were created
- Number of records for which billable charges could not be created successfully

3. If a batch job is created automatically, click **OK** in the message box.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to set the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration	*Setting the On Demand Billing (C1-ODBFC) Feature Configuration* on page 757

Approving a Valid Record

You can view the number of records which are pending for approval in the **Submitted** column corresponding to the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve or reject the usage record based on the observations.

Note: The system will not allow you to approve or reject a usage record submitted by you.

Procedure

To approve a valid record:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Approve the usage record from the **Usage Data Processing** screen	1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If you want to	Then
	2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Approve** ( ) icon corresponding to the usage data file whose records you want to review.
Approve the usage record from the **To Do List** screen	1. From the **Main Menu**, select **To Do** and then click **To Do List**. The **To Do Type for User Search** window appears. 2. Select the type of To Do entries you want to view. The **To Do List** screen appears. 3. Select **Open** from the **Filter by** list to view all unassigned To Dos. 4. Click the **Submitted Message** link corresponding to the To Do entry whose records you want to review.

The **Usage Data** screen appears.

2. Review the usage records which you want approve or reject.
3. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Approve one or more usage records	1. If the usage record is accurate, then select the check box corresponding to the usage record. 2. Click **Approve**. The system behaves in the following manner when: • **Billing Method — Adhoc Billing and Bill After Date — Current or Future Date:** A billable charge is created for each valid record which is approved. The **Adhoc Bill** flag is set to **Y** and the **Bill After Date** is stamped on the billable charge. The status of the usage record is changed to **Processed**. • **Billing Method — Regular Billing and Bill After Date — Specified:** A billable charge is created for each valid record which is approved. The **Adhoc Bill** flag is set to **N** and the **Bill After Date** is stamped on the billable charge. The status of the usage record is changed to **Processed**. The bills will be generated for the account in the bill cycle in which the bill after date falls. • **Billing Method — Regular Billing and Bill After Date — Not Specified:** A billable charge is created for each valid record which is approved. The **Adhoc Bill** flag is set to **N** in the billable charge. The status of the usage record is changed

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If you want to	Then
	to **Processed**. The bills will be generated for the account based on the bill cycle defined for the account.
Approve all usage records	**1.** Click **Approve All**. The system behaves in the following manner when: • **Billing Method — Adhoc Billing and Bill After Date — Current or Future Date:** A billable charge is created for each valid record which is approved. The **Adhoc Bill** flag is set to **Y** and the **Bill After Date** is stamped on the billable charge. If the total number of records that you want to approve exceeds the transaction limit, a batch job is created using the **Billable Charge Creation (C1-ODBCH)** batch. A message appears indicating the batch job ID. This batch job creates a billable charge for each valid usage record. The status of the usage record is changed to **Processed**. • **Billing Method — Regular Billing and Bill After Date — Specified:** A billable charge is created for each valid record which is approved. The **Adhoc Bill** flag is set to **N** and the **Bill After Date** is stamped on the billable charge. If the total number of records that you want to approve exceeds the transaction limit, a batch job is created using the **Billable Charge Creation (C1-ODBCH)** batch. A message appears indicating the batch job ID. This batch job creates a billable charge for each valid usage record. The status of the usage record is changed to **Processed**. The bills will be generated for the account in the bill cycle in which the bill after date falls. • **Billing Method — Regular Billing and Bill After Date — Not Specified:** A billable charge is created for each valid record which is approved. The **Adhoc Bill** flag is set to **N** in the billable charge. If the total number of records that you want to approve exceeds the transaction limit, a batch job is created using the **Billable Charge Creation (C1-ODBCH)** batch. A message appears indicating the batch job ID. This batch job creates a billable charge for each valid usage record. The status of the usage record is changed to **Processed**. The bills will be generated for the account based on the bill cycle defined for the account.

Note:

You can change the transaction limit, whenever required, using the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration. For more information on the **Billable Charge Creation (C1-ODBCH)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Execution Guide*.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If you want to create billable charges for approved records where start date is a future date, then ensure that the **Use Calendar Billing** option is set to **Allow Advanced Billing** in the respective contract type.

If a batch job is created automatically, the number of approved records for which billable charges are created in each work unit depends on the value defined for the **Billable Charge Chunk Size** option type in the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration.

In case an account belongs to an invoicing group, the billable charge is created for the member account and the bill is generated for the master account.

On successful completion of the **Billable Charge Creation (C1-ODBCH)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **C1-ODBCH** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-ODBCH** To Do type. This To Do indicates whether the batch was successfully executed or not. If the batch was successfully executed, it indicates the following:

- Number of records for which billable charges were created
- Number of records for which billable charges could not be created successfully

4. If a batch job is created automatically, click **OK** in the message box.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to set the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration	*Setting the On Demand Billing (C1-ODBFC) Feature Configuration* on page 757

Rejecting a Valid Record

You can view the number of records which are pending for approval in the **Submitted** column corresponding to the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve or reject the usage record based on the observations.

Note: The system will not allow you to approve or reject a usage record submitted by you.

Procedure

To reject a valid record:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Reject the usage record from the **Usage Data Processing** screen	1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen. 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Approve** ( ) icon corresponding to the usage data file whose records you want to review.
Reject the usage record from the **To Do List** screen	1. From the **Main Menu**, select **To Do** and then click **To Do List**. The **To Do Type for User Search** window appears. 2. Select the type of To Do entries you want to view.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If you want to	Then
	The **To Do List** screen appears. 3. Select **Open** from the **Filter by** list to view all unassigned To Dos. 4. Click the **Submitted Message** link corresponding to the To Do entry whose records you want to review.

The **Usage Data** screen appears.

2. Review the usage records which you want approve or reject.
3. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Reject one or more usage records	1. If the usage record is not appropriate, then select the check box corresponding to the usage record. 2. Click **Reject**.
Reject all usage records	1. Click **Reject All**.

The **Rejection Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to reject the usage record.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while rejecting the usage record.	Yes

4. Select the reason for rejecting the usage record and enter the comments in the respective field.

   Note: The **ODB_REJ_RSN_FLG** lookup field values appear in the **Reason** list.

5. Click **OK**.

   The status of the usage record is changed to **Rejected**. A To Do entry is created for the submitter to include correct or missing data.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551

Cancelling a Usage Data File

There might be situations when incorrect usage data file is uploaded in the system. In such case, the system provides you with an ability to cancel the file. Once the usage data file is cancelled, the status of the file and all usage records in the file is changed to **Cancelled**. However, note that you can cancel a usage data file only when there are no records (in other words, zero records) in the **Processed** and **Submitted** statuses.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Procedure

To cancel a usage data file:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Cancel the usage data file from the **Usage Data Processing** screen	1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen. 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Cancel** ( ) icon corresponding to the usage data file that you want to cancel.
Cancel the usage data file from the **On Demand Billing** screen	1. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **On Demand Billing**. The **On Demand Billing** screen appears. 2. Search for the file group whose usage data file you want to cancel. The search results appears. 3. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the required file group. The **Group Files** zone appears. The **Group Files** zone lists the usage data files that are uploaded using the file group. 4. Click the **Cancel** ( ) icon corresponding to the usage data file that you want to cancel.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to cancel the usage data file.

2. Click **OK**.

   The **Cancel Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to cancel the usage data file.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while cancelling the usage data file.	Yes

3. Select the reason for cancelling the usage data file and enter the comments in the respective field.

   Note: The **ODB_CAN_RSN_FLG** lookup field values appear in the **Reason** list.

4. Click **OK**.

   The status of the usage data file is changed to **Cancelled**.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a file group	*Searching for a File Group* on page 538
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
Group Files zone	*Group Files* on page 537

Revalidating a Usage Data File

There might be situations when you want to execute the validation process once again on the usage data file. For example, initially when the usage data file was uploaded, accounts didn't have an active contract and therefore the status of the usage records was set to **Invalid**. Later, a contract was created and activated for each account (whose usage records are available in the usage data file). In such case, you need to execute the validation process once again on the usage data file. However, note that when you revalidate a usage data file, only the records in the **Valid** and **Invalid** status are revalidated.

Procedure

To revalidate a usage data file:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.
2. Click the

   Revalidate ( ) icon corresponding to the usage data file on which you want to execute the validation process once again.

   The valid and invalid records are revalidated, and accordingly the status of records is changed. A message appears indicating that the validation process has completed successfully.

   Note:

   If the usage data file size exceeds the file size limit set in the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration, a batch job is created using the **Upload and Validate Usage Data File (C1-ODFU)** batch. A message appears indicating the batch job ID. This batch job revalidates the usage data file. For more information on the **Upload and Validate Usage Data File (C1-ODFU)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Execution Guide*.

   If a batch job is created automatically, the number of usage records that are revalidated in each work unit depends on the value defined for the **Validation Chunk Size** option type in the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration.

   On successful completion of the **Upload and Validate Usage Data File (C1-ODFU)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **C1-ODFU** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-ODFU** To Do type. This To Do indicates whether the batch was successfully executed or not. If the batch was successfully executed, it indicates the following:

   - Number of records which were successfully validated
   - Number of records which could not pass through the validation process
   - Number of records which failed to validate due to some technical reasons
3. Click **OK** in the message box.

   Once a usage record is successfully validated, the status of the usage record is changed to **Valid**. And, if a usage record could not pass through the validation process, the status of the usage record is changed to **Invalid**.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to set the **On Demand Billing (C1–ODBFC)** feature configuration	*Setting the On Demand Billing (C1-ODBFC) Feature Configuration* on page 757

Editing a Valid, Invalid, or Rejected Usage Record

If the usage record validation fails or the approver rejects the usage record due to some reason, the status of the record is changed to **Invalid** or **Rejected**, respectively. You need to then correct the existing data or add the missing data. The system allows you to edit the valid, invalid, and rejected usage records.

Procedure

To edit a valid, invalid or rejected usage record:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.
2. Depending on whether you want to edit a valid, invalid, or rejected record, click the link in the **Valid**, **Invalid**, *o*r **Rejected** column corresponding to the usage data file whose records you want to edit.

   The **Usage Data** screen appears. The columns in the**Search Results** section are editable.

   Note:

   In case of rejected records, all columns except the **Reason** and **Comments** columns are editable.

   In case of invalid record, the field with incorrect or missing data is highlighted with the red color. This helps to easily identify the reason why the validation process failed.
3. Enter the correct or missing data in the respective field.
4. Click **Save**.

   All valid, invalid, or rejected usage records are validated once again. Once the validation process has completed successfully, the status of the records is changed accordingly.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage data file	*Searching for a Usage Data File* on page 551

Filtering Usage Records

Procedure

To filter records of a usage data file:

1. Search for the usage data file in the **Usage Data Processing** screen.
2. Depending on whether you want to filter total, valid, invalid, submitted, processed, rejected, cancelled, billed, or *u*nbilled usage records, click the link in the respective column corresponding to the usage data file.

   The **Usage Data** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria based on which you want to filter the records.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

   The search results are filtered based on the specified criteria.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view all records of a usage data file	*Viewing All Records of a Usage Data File* on page 557
How to view valid records of a usage data file	*Viewing Valid Records of a Usage Data File* on page 560
How to view invalid records of a usage data file	*Viewing Invalid Records of a Usage Data File* on page 564
How to view submitted records of a usage data file	*Viewing Submitted Records of a Usage Data File* on page 567
How to view processed records of a usage data file	*Viewing Processed Records of a Usage Data File* on page 570
How to view rejected records of a usage data file	*Viewing Rejected Records of a Usage Data File* on page 577
How to view cancelled records of a usage data file	*Viewing Cancelled Records of a Usage Data File* on page 574
How to view billed records of a usage data file	*Viewing Billed Records of a Usage Data File* on page 580
How to view unbilled records of a usage data file	*Viewing Unbilled Records of a Usage Data File* on page 584

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 12

Upload Validated Payment Data

Topics:

- *Payment Upload Process*
- *Prerequisites*
- *CSV File Format*
- *Payment Data File Status Transition*
- *Payment Record Status Transition*
- *Error List*
- *Payment Upload*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing until now provided you with an ability to interface payments from an external source, such as remittance processor. The system supported two mechanisms to upload payment data — one using which you can populate payment upload staging records and another using which you can populate payment event upload staging records. The system now enables you to validate the payment records before you move them to the staging area. The system provides the pre-staging area where you can upload and validate the payment records. The system provides a user interface which helps you to upload a payment data file in the pre-staging area. It also helps you to perform various tasks, such as:

- Track the status of the payment records and the payment data file
- Move the payment records to the staging area
- Cancel a payment data file
- Create payments for a payment data file
- View a list of payment events and payments created for a payment data file

You can upload a payment data file in the CSV format. You need to ensure that the CSV file is in the required format; otherwise the file will not be uploaded in the system. For more information about the CSV file format, see *CSV File Format* on page 600 At present, the system supports only the CSV file format. This is because the payment data mapping algorithm type shipped with the product is designed to support the CSV format. If you want to use any other file format, you need to define custom mapping algorithm type that supports the required file format.

The file type using which you upload a file indicates the mapping and validation algorithms that you want to use for the payment data file. On uploading a payment data file, the mapping algorithm parses the CSV file and uploads the payments records in the pre-staging area. The validation process starts immediately after the file is uploaded in the system. During the validation process, the system and custom validations (if any) are executed. Once the validation process is complete, you can move the payment records from the pre-staging to staging area and then create payment events, tenders, payments and payment segments. For detailed information about the payment upload process, see *Payment Upload Process* on page 598.

During this payment upload process, a payment data file and each record of the file goes through various statuses until the payment records are moved to the staging area. For more information about the payment data file and payment record statuses, see *Payment Data File Status Transition*on page 602 and *Payment Record Status Transition* on page 602, respectively.

Payment Upload Process

The payment upload process includes the following sub-processes:

- *Upload Payment Records in the Pre-Staging Area* on page 598
- *Move Payment Records to the Staging Area* on page 599
- *Create Payment Events and Payments* on page 599

Upload Payment Records in the Pre-Staging Area

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to validate the payment records before you move them to the staging area. You can upload and validate the payment records in the pre-staging area. You can upload a payment data file in the CSV format. You need to ensure that the CSV file is in the required format; otherwise the file will not be uploaded in the system. For more information about the CSV file format, see *CSV File Format* on page 600.

You need to specify the file type using which you want to upload the payment data file. The file type indicates the mapping and validation algorithms that you want to use for the payment data file. On uploading a payment data file, the mapping algorithm does the following:

1. Validates whether the file is in the CSV format
2. Validates whether at least one payment record is available in the CSV file
3. Parses the CSV file and converts the data into the XML format
4. Uploads the payments records in the pre-staging area

The validation process starts immediately after the file is uploaded in the system. During the validation process, the system and custom validations (if any) are executed. The system checks whether:

- The following data is available in the CSV file:
  - Tender ID
  - Tender Amount
  - Payment Amount
  - Date Received
  - Bank Account
  - Payment Type
- Account with the specified account identifier type and account identifier exists in the system.
- Currency is same as the account's invoice currency

  Note: This validation is done only when the currency is specified in the payment record. If the currency is not specified, the currency is set to the account's invoice currency.
- Payment type (i.e. tender type) exists in the system
- Account identifier type exists in the system

  Note: This validation is done only when the account ID does not exist in the system or when the account ID is not specified in the payment record.
- Match type exists in the system
- Characteristic type exists in the system

Note: When you define a file type where the feed type is set to **Payment Data**, you need to attach a mapping algorithm of the **C1-CSVUPLPAY** algorithm type and a validation algorithm of the **C1-PUPLVALID** algorithm type.

You can upload a file by clicking the **Upload** link in the **Payment Upload** screen. On uploading a payment data file, a batch job is created using the **Upload Payment Records in Pre-Staging Area (C1-PYUP1)** batch. Once the batch is

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

executed successfully, the payment records are copied to the pre-staging area and the status of the payment data file is set to **Pending**. If a payment record is successfully validated, the status of the payment record is changed to **Valid**. If some mandatory payment data is incorrect or missing, the status of the payment record is changed to **Invalid**. However, if some optional payment data is incorrect or missing, the status of the payment record is changed to **Error**.

If the batch ends abruptly during execution and the payments records are partially uploaded in the system, the status of the payment data file is set to **Partially Uploaded**. You are then required to investigate the issue and upload the same file once again. If you continue with the payment upload process without reuploading the file, the erroneous results will occur during payment and tender creation.

If any error occurs while executing the **Upload Payment Records in Pre-Staging Area (C1-PYUP1)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **C1-PYUP1** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-PYUP1** To Do type. For more information about the **Upload Payment Records in Pre-Staging Area (C1-PYUP1)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

Once the payment records are uploaded and validated in the pre-staging area, you can do either of the following:

- Move the payment records to the staging area
- Cancel a payment data file
- Reupload the payment data file

Move Payment Records to the Staging Area

Once the payment records are uploaded and validated in the pre-staging area, you can move the records to the staging area. The system allows you to move only valid and error records of a payment data file to the staging area. If a payment data file contains an invalid record, you cannot move any record of the payment data file to the staging area. In such scenario, you need to correct the invalid payment records and upload the same file once again in the system. In addition, if you have cancelled a payment data file, you cannot move any records (including valid and error records) of the payment data file to the staging area.

You can move the payment records to the staging area by clicking the **Move to Staging** icon corresponding to the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen. The **Move to Staging** icon appears only when there are no invalid records in the payment data file. On clicking the **Move to Staging** icon, a batch job is created using the **Move Payment Records to Staging Area (C1-PYUP2)** batch.

Once the batch is executed successfully, the payment records are copied (and not moved) from the pre-staging to staging area and the status of the payment data file is changed to **Complete**. In addition, the status of the payment records in the pre-staging area is changed to **Moved to Staging**. If any error occurs while executing the **Move Payment Records to Staging Area (C1-PYUP2)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **C1-PYUP2** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-PYUP2** To Do type. For more information about the **Move Payment Records to Staging Area (C1-PYUP2)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

Once you move the payment records to the staging area, you can edit the payment staging records, if required.

Create Payment Events and Payments

Once the payment records are moved to the staging area, you can create payments for the payment data file. You can create the payments by clicking the **Create Payments** icon corresponding to the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen. The **Create Payments** icon appears only when the payment records are moved from the pre-staging to staging area. On clicking the **Create Payments** icon, a batch job is created using the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch. Once the batch is executed successfully, the following entities are created:

- Deposit Control
- Tender Control
- Payment Events
- Payment Tenders

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- Payments
- Payment Segments
- Financial Transactions (when the payments are frozen)

In addition, the status of the deposit control, tender control, and payment tender staging records is changed to **Complete**. You can view a list of payment events created for a payment data file in the **Payment Events** zone and a list of payments created through a payment event in the **Payments** zone.

Prerequisites

To setup the payment upload process, you need to do the following:

- Define the required match types with the appropriate payment distribution override and manual distribution algorithms.
- Create a mapping algorithm using the **C1-CSVUPLPAY** algorithm type.
- Create a validation algorithm using the **C1-PUPLVALID** algorithm type.
- Define the required file types where the feed type is set to **Payment Data**.
- Define the required values for the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field.
- Set the **Upload Payment Data (C1-PAYFLUPLD)** feature configuration.
- Assign the **C1-PYUP1** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do entries generated while executing the **Upload Payment Records in Pre-Staging Area (C1-PYUP1)** batch.
- Assign the **C1-PYUP2** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do entries generated while executing the **Move Payment Records to Staging Area (C1-PYUP2)** batch.
- Assign the **PUPL** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do entries generated while executing the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to set the **Upload Payment Data (C1-PAYFLUPLD)** feature configuration	*Setting the Upload Payment Data (C1-PAYFLUPLD) Feature Configuration*

CSV File Format

Before uploading a payment data file, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following columns:

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Used to specify the payee account ID. **Note:** If the payee account ID, account identifier type, and account identifier are not specified, the payment is made on the suspense account.	No
Match Type	Used to specify the match type using which you want to match the payment.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required if the match value is specified.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Match Value	Used to specify the entity (such as bill, contract, and so on) against which you want to match the payment.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required if the match type is specified.
Tender ID	Used to specify the payment tender ID.	Yes
Tender Amount	Used to specify the tender amount.	Yes
Payment Amount	Used to specify the amount paid through the tender.	Yes
Date Received	Used to specify the date when the payment is made.	Yes
Bank Account	Used to specify the bank account from which the payment is made.	Yes
Payment Type	Used to specify the type of tender through which the payment is made.	Yes
Check Number	Used to specify the check number if the payment is made through check.	No
Currency	Used to specify the currency in which the payment is made. **Note:** The currency must be same as the payor account's invoice currency. If the currency is not specified, it is set to the payor account's invoice currency.	No
Account ID Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required if the account identifier is specified.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the account for which the payment is made.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required if the account identifier type is specified.
Payment Char Type1, Payment Characteristic Type2, ..., Payment Char Type5	Used to indicate the characteristic that must be defined for the payment.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required if the characteristic value is specified.
Payment Char Value1, Payment Char Value2, ..., Payment Char Value5	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This data is required if the characteristic type is specified.
MICR ID	Used to specify the MICR code.	No

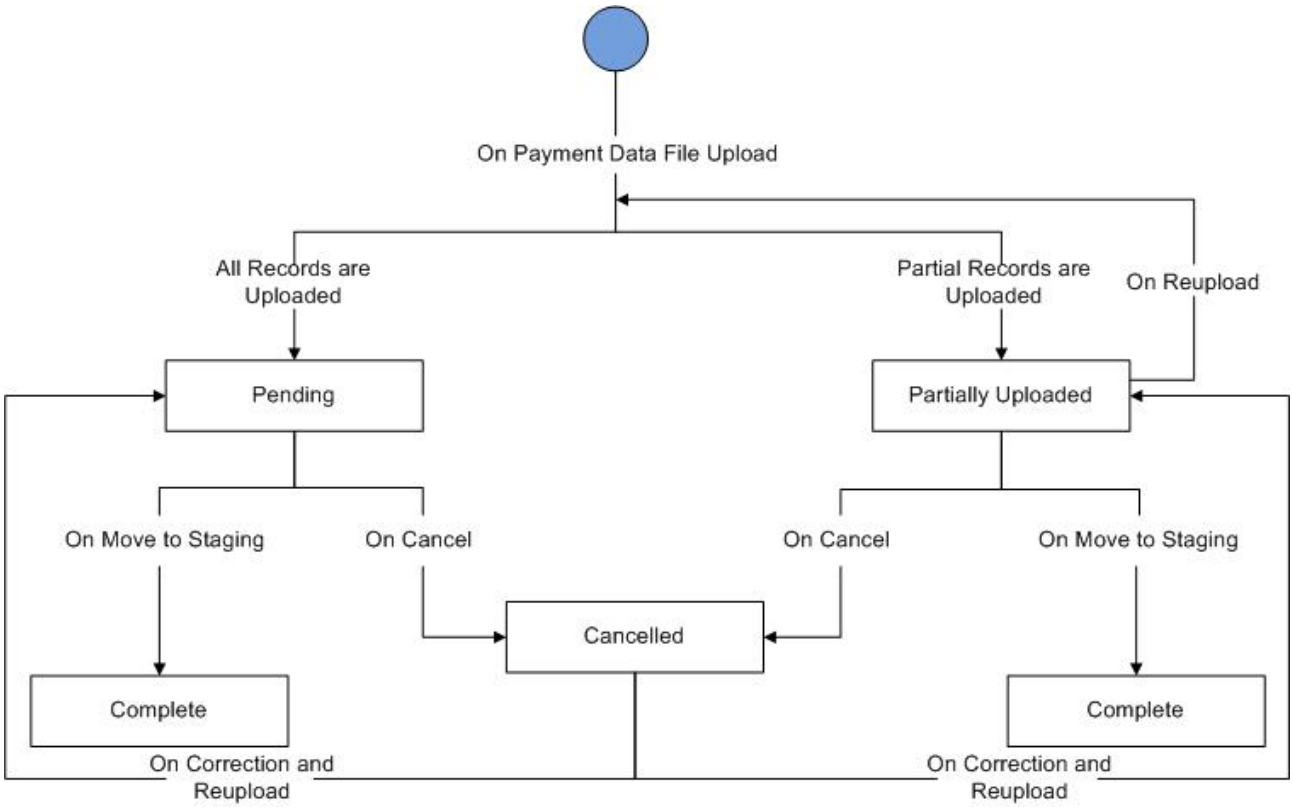
Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payor ID	Used to specify the payor account ID. **Note:** If the payor account ID is not specified, the payor account ID is set to the payee account ID assuming that the payor and payee are the same.	No

Note: If a payment data file contains column names other than those mentioned in the above table, the system will not upload the payment data file.

Payment Data File Status Transition

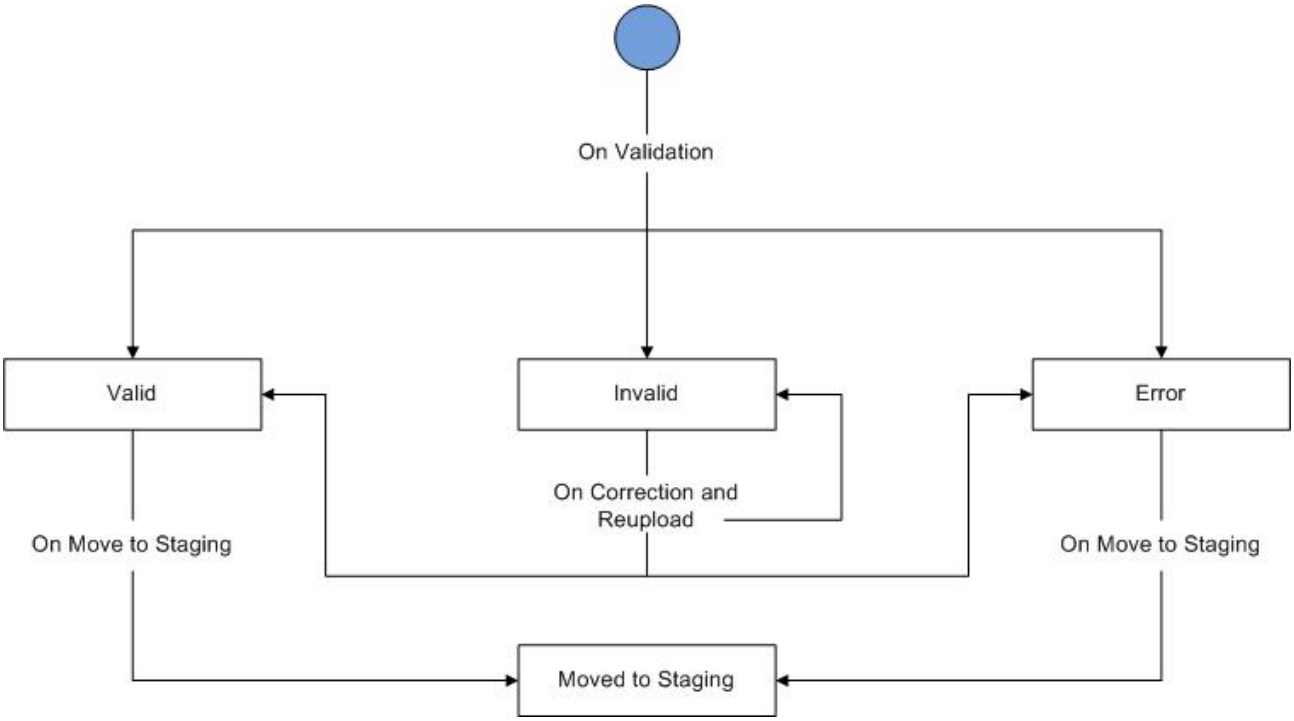
The following figure graphically indicates how a payment data file moves from one status to another during the payment upload process:



Payment Record Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a payment record moves from one status to another during the payment upload process:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.



The following table lists the scenarios when a payment record is set to **Invalid** or**Error** status:

Scenario	**Payment Record Status**
The account ID specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.	Error
The match type is not specified in the payment record.	Error
The match type specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.	Error
The match value is not specified in the payment record.	Error
The system could not find the account ID for a given account identifier type and account identifier combination when the account ID specified in the payment record is invalid.	Error
The account identifier type and/or account identifier are not specified in the payment record. **Note:** This validation is done only when the account ID specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.	Error
The currency code does not exist in the system.	Invalid
The currency, account ID, account identifier type, and account identifier are not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The tender amount is either zero or not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The precision specified for the tender amount exceed the decimal places defined for the currency in the system.	Invalid
The payment amount is either zero or not specified in the payment record.	Invalid

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Scenario	Payment Record Status
The precision specified for the payment amount exceed the decimal places defined for the currency in the system.	Invalid
The bank account is not specfied in the payment record.	Invalid
The payment type (i.e. tender type) does not exist in the system.	Invalid
The payment type is not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The tender ID is not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The date received is not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The characteristic type specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.	Invalid
The payor account ID specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.	Invalid

Error List

The following table lists the errors that may occur while executing various batches in the payment upload process. It also indicates how you can resolve these errors.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-PYUP1	80108	Empty file cannot be uploaded.	11111	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to upload a file whose file size is zero and contains no data.
C1-PYUP1	80110	File cannot be reuploaded as some records have already been processed.	11111	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to replace an existing file whose payment records are already moved to the staging area and/or for which payments are already created.
C1-PYUP1	1463	This file already exists in the system. Please check.	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to upload a file which is already uploaded in the system without selecting the **Replace Existing File** check box.
C1-PYUP1	1465	Please upload a file in the CSV format.	17000	The possible issues could be: • You are trying to upload a file which is not in the CSV format.
C1-PYUP1	80113	Duplicate Header for column %1 in file.	11111	The possible issues could be: • The file has two or more columns with the same header.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Batch Name</th><th>Message Number</th><th>Error Message</th><th>Message Category</th><th>Possible Issues</th></tr>
<tr><td>C1-PYUP1</td><td>80111</td><td>Length of value %1 too long for Field %2. Maximum length: %3 Found %4.</td><td>11111</td><td>The possible issues could be:
The length of value specified in the column exceeds the maximum field length. The following table lists the maximum length of each field:<table>
<tr><th>Column Name</th><th>Maximum Length</th></tr>
<tr><td>Account ID</td><td>10</td></tr>
<tr><td>Match Type</td><td>8</td></tr>
<tr><td>Match Value</td><td>30</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tender ID</td><td>12</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tender Amount</td><td>15</td></tr>
<tr><td>Payment Amount</td><td>15</td></tr>
<tr><td>Date Received</td><td>10</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bank Account</td><td>30</td></tr>
<tr><td>Payment Type</td><td>4</td></tr>
<tr><td>Check Number</td><td>10</td></tr>
<tr><td>Currency</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>Account ID Type</td><td>8</td></tr>
<tr><td>Account Identifier</td><td>30</td></tr>
<tr><td>Payment Char Type1, Payment Characteristic Type2, ..., Payment Char Type5</td><td>8</td></tr>
<tr><td>Payment Char Value1, Payment Char Value2, ..., Payment Char Value5</td><td>254</td></tr>
<tr><td>MICR ID</td><td>30</td></tr>
<tr><td>Payor ID</td><td>15</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-PYUP1	80085	Invalid value for column: %1.	11111	The possible issues could be: • The account ID specified in the payment record does not exist in the system. • The match type is not specified in the payment record. • The match type specified in the payment record does not exist in the system. • The match value is not specified in the payment record. • The currency code does not exist in the system. • The currency, account ID, account identifier type, and account identifier are not specified in the payment record. • The tender amount is either zero or not specified in the payment record. • The payment amount is either zero or not specified in the payment record. • The bank account is not specified in the payment record. • The payment type (i.e. tender type) does not exist in the system. • The payment type is not specified in the payment record. • The tender ID is not specified in the payment record. • The date received is not specified in the payment record. • The characteristic type specified in the payment record does not exist in the system. • The payor account ID specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-PYUP1	80100	Invalid Account Number and Account Number Type code combination.	11111	The possible issues could be: • The system could not find the account ID for a given account identifier type and account identifier combination when the account ID specified in the payment record is invalid. • The account identifier type and/or account identifier are not specified in the payment record. This validation is done only when the account ID specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.
C1-PYUP1	80086	%1 has more decimal positions than currency code %2 supports (%3).	11111	The possible issues could be: • The precision specified for the tender amount exceed the decimal places defined for the currency in the system. • The precision specified for the payment amount exceed the decimal places defined for the currency in the system.
C1-PYUP1	102	{C1-PYUP1 – Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **C1-PYUP1 – Chunk Size** option type in the **Upload Payment Data (C1-PAYFLUPLD)** feature configuration is less than or equal to one.
C1-PYUP1	102	{C1-PYUP1 - Maximum Batch Count} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **C1-PYUP1 - Maximum Batch Count** option type in the **Upload Payment Data (C1-PAYFLUPLD)** feature configuration is less than or equal to one.
C1-PYUP2	102	{C1-PYUP2 – Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **C1-PYUP2 – Chunk Size** option type in the **Upload Payment Data (C1-PAYFLUPLD)** feature configuration is less than or equal to one.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-PYUP2	80103	{C1-PYUP2 - Maximum Batch Count} field should be greater than zero	11111	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **C1-PYUP2 - Maximum Batch Count** option type in the **Upload Payment Data (C1-PAYFLUPLD)** feature configuration is less than or equal to one.
C1-PYUP2	102	{C1-PYUP2 - Maximum Batch Count} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: • The value specified for the **C1-PYUP2 - Maximum Batch Count** option type is greater than the value specified for the **C1-PYUP2 – Chunk Size** option type in the **Upload Payment Data (C1-PAYFLUPLD)** feature configuration.
PUPL	13601	Tender Source does not exist for External Source ID (%1)	11	The possible issues could be: • The tender source does not exist for the external source ID in the system.
PUPL	13603	Deposit control (%1/%2) Deposit Amount is not equal to sum of Tender Amounts	11	The possible issues could be: • The sum of tender control staging amount does not match the deposit control staging amount.
PUPL	13604	Deposit Control (%1/%2) Tender count does not equal the number of Tender controls	11	The possible issues could be: • The number of tender control staging records does not match the total tender controls specified in the deposit control staging record.
PUPL	13605	Tender control (%1/%2/%3) Total Tender Amount not equal to sum of Tender Amounts	11	The possible issues could be: • The sum of payment tender staging amount does not match the total tender amount specified in tender control staging record.
PUPL	13606	Tender control (%1/%2/%3) tender count does not equal the number of Tenders	11	The possible issues could be: • The number of payment tender staging records does not match the total number of tenders specified in the tender control staging record.
PUPL	13607	Suspense Contract does not exist for External Source ID (%1)	11	The possible issues could be: • The suspense contract is not defined for the tender source.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
PUPL	13608	Many Tender Sources found for External Source ID (%1)	11	The possible issues could be: • There are multiple tender sources in the system with the same external source ID.
PUPL	13701	Pay Tender (%1/%2/%3/%4) Amount not equal to sum of Pay Amounts	11	The possible issues could be: • The sum of payment staging amount does not match the total amount specified in payment tender staging record.
PUPL	13705	Payment (%1/%2/%3/%4) Customer ID (%5) exists on multiple accounts.	11	The possible issues could be: • There are multiple payment records having contracts with the same old account ID but their payee account ID is different.

Payment Upload

The **Payment Upload** screen allows you to search for a payment data file based on various search criteria. Through this screen, you can:

- Upload a payment data file
- Cancel a payment data file
- View all records uploaded through a payment data file
- View the valid, invalid, error, and processed records of a payment data file
- Move the payment records to the staging area
- Edit a payment staging record
- Create payments for a payment data file

This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 609
- *Payment Events* on page 612
- *Payments* on page 612

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for a payment data file that is uploaded and/or processed in the system. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Used to specify the name of the payment data file.	No
User ID	Used to specify the name of the user who has uploaded the payment data file.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload From Date	Used when you want to search for payment data files that were uploaded from a particular date onwards.	No
To	Used when you want to search for payment data files that were uploaded till a particular date.	No
File Type	Used to specify the type of payment data file.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a payment data file.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
File Name	Displays the name of the payment data file.
File Type	Displays the type of the payment data file.
Upload Date	Displays the date when the payment data file was uploaded in the system.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment data file. The valid values are: • Pending • Cancelled • Complete
Total	Displays the total number of records that are uploaded through the payment data file. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Payment Data** screen appears where you can view all records uploaded through the payment data file.
Valid	Displays the number of records which are successfully validated in the system. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Payment Data** screen appears where you can view the valid records of the payment data file.
Invalid	Displays the number of records which could not pass through the validation process in the system. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Payment Data** screen appears where you can view the invalid records of the payment data file.
Error	Displays the number of records where the data is either missing or incorrect. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Payment Data** screen appears where you can view the error records of the payment data file.
Processed	Displays the number of records which are successfully moved to the staging area. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **View Payment Data** screen appears where you can view the processed records of the payment data file.
Payment Event	Displays the number of payment events created for the payment data file.
Cancel	On clicking the **Cancel** ( ) icon, you can cancel the payment data file. **Note:** The **Cancel** icon appears only when the status of the payment data file is **Pending**. In other words, you cannot cancel a payment data file when its records are moved to the staging area or when the payments are created for the payment data file.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Move to Staging	On clicking the **Move to Staging** ( ) icon, you can move the valid and error records of the payment data file to the staging area. **Note:** The **Move to Staging** icon appears only when there are no invalid records in the payment data file. In other words, if the payment data file contains an invalid record, you cannot move any record of the payment data file to the staging area.
Create Payments	On clicking the **Create Payments** ( ) icon, you can create payments for the payment data file. **Note:** The **Create Payments** icon appears only when all records of the payment data file are moved to the staging area.
Batch Job ID	Indicates the batch job that was last executed on the payment data file. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Batch Run Tree** screen appears where you can view the execution details of the batch.

You can upload a payment data file by clicking the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the payment data file, the **Payment Events** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Payment Upload screen	*Payment Upload* on page 609
How to upload a payment data file	*Uploading a Payment Data File* on page 613
How to search for a payment data file	*Searching for a Payment Data File* on page 613
How to view all records of a payment data file	*Viewing All Records of a Payment Data File* on page 615
How to view valid records of a payment data file	*Viewing Valid Records of a Payment Data File* on page 616
How to view invalid records of a payment data file	*Viewing Invalid Records of a Payment Data File* on page 618
How to view error records of a payment data file	*Viewing Error Records of a Payment Data File* on page 619
How to view processed records of a payment data file	*Viewing Processed Records of a Payment Data File* on page 621
How to cancel a payment data file	*Cancelling a Payment Data File* on page 624
How to move the payment records to the staging area	*Moving the Payment Records to the Staging Area* on page 624
How to edit a payment staging record	*Editing a Payment Staging Record* on page 625
How to create payments for a payment data file	*Creating Payments for a Payment Data File* on page 625
How to view the payment events created for a payment data file	*Viewing Payment Events Created for a Payment Data File* on page 626
How to view payments created through a payment event	*Viewing Payments Created Through a Payment Event* on page 626

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Payment Events

The **Payment Events** zone lists all payment events created for the payment data file. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payment Event ID	Displays the payment event ID.
Payment Date	Displays the date when the payments were created.
Tender Type	Displays the type of tender through which the payments were made.
Payor Account ID	Indicates the account which made the payments.
Tender Amount	Displays the tender amount.
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payments were made.
Check Number	Displays the check number if the payments were made through check.

On clicking the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the payment event, the **Payments** zone appears.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the payment events created for a payment data file	*Viewing Payment Events Created for a Payment Data File* on page 626

Payments

The **Payments** zone lists all payments created through the payment event. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payment ID	Displays the payment ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Payment** screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payment.
Payee Account ID	Indicates the account for which the payment was made.
Payment Amount	Displays the amount paid through the tender.
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the payment was matched.
Match Value	Indicates the entity (such as bill, contract, and so on) against which the payment was matched.
Payment Status	Indicates the current status of the payment. The valid values are: • Incomplete • Error • Freezable • Frozen • Canceled

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to view payments created through a payment event	*Viewing Payments Created Through a Payment Event* on page 626

Searching for a Payment Data File

Prerequisites

To search for a payment data file, you should have:

- File types defined in the application

Procedure

To search for a payment data file:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **Payment Upload**.

   The **Payment Upload** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of payment data files that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Payment Upload screen	*Payment Upload* on page 609
Search zone	*Search* on page 609

Uploading a Payment Data File

Prerequisites

To upload a payment data file, you should have:

- File types defined in the application (where feed type is set to Payment Data)
- Payment data in the required CSV file format

Procedure

To upload a payment data file:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **Payment Upload**.

   The **Payment Upload** screen appears.

4. Click the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Upload Payment Data File** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Type	Used to specify the type of payment data file.	Yes
File Name	Used to specify the name and path of the payment data file that you want to upload. **Note:** You can also click the **Browse** button corresponding to this field to browse to the location where the payment data file is available in the system.	Yes
Replace Existing File	Used to indicate whether you want to replace any existing file in the system. You must select this check box when you want to upload the same file once again.	No

5. Select the type of payment data file from the **File Type** list.
6. Click the **Browse** button corresponding to the **File Name** field.

   The **Choose File to Upload** dialog box appears.

7. Browse to the location where the payment data file that you want to upload is available.
8. Click **Open**.

   The payment data file name and path appears in the **File Name** field.

9. Click **Upload**.

   A message appears indicating that a batch job is created using the **Upload Payment Records in Pre-Staging Area (C1-PYUP1)** batch. If an error occurs while parsing, the payment data file is not uploaded in the system.

10. Click **OK** in the message box.

    The validation process starts immediately after the file is uploaded in the system. If a payment record is successfully validated, the status of the payment record is changed to **Valid**. If some mandatory payment data is incorrect or missing, the status of the payment record is changed to **Invalid**. However, if some optional payment data is incorrect or missing, the status of the payment record is changed to **Error**. You can view the details of the uploaded file and its records in the **Payment Upload** screen.

    Once the batch is executed successfully, the payment records are copied to the pre-staging area and the status of the payment data file is set to **Pending**. If the batch ends abruptly during execution and the payments records are partially uploaded in the system, the status of the payment data file is set to **Partially Uploaded**. You are then required to investigate the issue and upload the same file once again. If you continue with the payment upload process without reuploading the file, the erroneous results will occur during payment and tender creation.

    If any error occurs while executing the **Upload Payment Records in Pre-Staging Area (C1-PYUP1)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **C1-PYUP1** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-PYUP1** To Do type. For more information about the **Upload Payment Records in Pre-Staging Area (C1-PYUP1)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

    Note: If a payment data file contains an invalid record, you need to correct or add missing data in the CSV file and then upload the file once again. Unless, a payment data file has no invalid records, you cannot move any record of the payment data file to the staging area.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Payment Upload screen	*Payment Upload* on page 609
Search zone	*Search* on page 609

Viewing All Records of a Payment Data File

Procedure

To view all records of a payment data file:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Total** column corresponding to the payment data file whose *r*ecords you want to view.

   The **View Payment Data** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the payment data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Displays the type of the payment data file.	Not applicable
Upload Date	Displays the date when the payment data file was uploaded in the system.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates the status of the payment data file. The valid values are: • Pending • Cancelled • Complete	Not applicable

   In addition, this screen contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payor Account ID	Indicates the account which made the payment.
Payee Account ID	Indicates the account for which the payment was made.
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the payment was matched.
Match Value	Indicates the entity (such as bill, contract, and so on) against which the payment was matched.
Pay Tender ID	Displays the payment tender ID.
Tender Amount	Displays the tender amount.
Payment Amount	Displays the amount paid through the tender.
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.
Date Received	Displays the date when the payment was made.
Bank Account	Displays the bank account from which the payment was made.
Tender Type	Displays the type of tender through which the payment was made.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Check Number	Displays the check number if the payment was made through check.
MICR ID	Displays the MICR code.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment record. The valid values are: • Valid • Invalid • Error • Moved to Staging
Payment Staging Record	On clicking the **View/Edit** link, you can edit the payment staging record. **Note:** The **View/Edit** link appears only when the payment record is moved to the staging area. In other words, you cannot edit a payment record unless it is moved from the pre-staging to staging area.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **View Payment Data** screen. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the records of the payment data file in the **View Payment Data** screen.
4. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.
5. If required, you can click the **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) buttons to navigate between pages.
6. If required, you can edit a payment record in the staging area.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	*Searching for a Payment Data File* on page 613
How to edit a payment staging record	*Editing a Payment Staging Record* on page 625

Viewing Valid Records of a Payment Data File

Procedure

To view valid records of a payment data file:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Valid** column corresponding to the payment data file whose valid records you want to view.

   The **View Payment Data** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the payment data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Displays the type of the payment data file.	Not applicable
Upload Date	Displays the date when the payment data file was uploaded in the system.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates the status of the payment data file. The valid values are: • Pending • Cancelled • Complete	Not applicable

In addition, this screen contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payor Account ID	Indicates the account which made the payment.
Payee Account ID	Indicates the account for which the payment was made.
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the payment was matched.
Match Value	Indicates the entity (such as bill, contract, and so on) against which the payment was matched.
Pay Tender ID	Displays the payment tender ID.
Tender Amount	Displays the tender amount.
Payment Amount	Displays the amount paid through the tender.
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.
Date Received	Displays the date when the payment was made.
Bank Account	Displays the bank account from which the payment was made.
Tender Type	Displays the type of tender through which the payment was made.
Check Number	Displays the check number if the payment was made through check.
MICR ID	Displays the MICR code.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment record.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **View Payment Data** screen. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the valid records of the payment data file in the **View Payment Data** screen.
4. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

5. If required, you can click the **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) buttons to navigate between pages.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	*Searching for a Payment Data File* on page 613

Viewing Invalid Records of a Payment Data File

Procedure

To view invalid records of a payment data file:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Invalid** column corresponding to the payment data file whose invalid records you want to view.

   The **View Payment Data** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the payment data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Displays the type of the payment data file.	Not applicable
Upload Date	Displays the date when the payment data file was uploaded in the system.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates the status of the payment data file. The valid values are: • Pending • Cancelled • Complete	Not applicable

   In addition, this screen contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payor Account ID	Indicates the account which made the payment.
Payee Account ID	Indicates the account for which the payment was made.
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the payment was matched.
Match Value	Indicates the entity (such as bill, contract, and so on) against which the payment was matched.
Pay Tender ID	Displays the payment tender ID.
Tender Amount	Displays the tender amount.
Payment Amount	Displays the amount paid through the tender.
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.
Date Received	Displays the date when the payment was made.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Bank Account	Displays the bank account from which the payment was made.
Tender Type	Displays the type of tender through which the payment was made.
Check Number	Displays the check number if the payment was made through check.
MICR ID	Displays the MICR code.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment record.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **View Payment Data** screen. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the invalid records of the payment data file in the **View Payment Data** screen.
4. If you want to know the reason why a payment record is invalid, click on the invalid record in the grid.

   The system displays the message indicating the columns which have invalid values. You need to correct the invalid records and upload the payment data file once again. Otherwise, the system will not allow you to move the payment records to the staging area.
5. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.
6. If required, you can click the **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) buttons to navigate between pages.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	*Searching for a Payment Data File* on page 613

Viewing Error Records of a Payment Data File

Procedure

To view error records of a payment data file:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Error** column corresponding to the payment data file whose error records you want to view.

   The **View Payment Data** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the payment data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Displays the type of the payment data file.	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Date	Displays the date when the payment data file was uploaded in the system.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates the status of the payment data file. The valid values are: • Pending • Cancelled • Complete	Not applicable

In addition, this screen contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payor Account ID	Indicates the account which made the payment.
Payee Account ID	Indicates the account for which the payment was made.
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the payment was matched.
Match Value	Indicates the entity (such as bill, contract, and so on) against which the payment was matched.
Pay Tender ID	Displays the payment tender ID.
Tender Amount	Displays the tender amount.
Payment Amount	Displays the amount paid through the tender.
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.
Date Received	Displays the date when the payment was made.
Bank Account	Displays the bank account from which the payment was made.
Tender Type	Displays the type of tender through which the payment was made.
Check Number	Displays the check number if the payment was made through check.
MICR ID	Displays the MICR code.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment record.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **View Payment Data** screen. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the error records of the payment data file in the **View Payment Data** screen.
4. If you want to know the reason why a payment record is in the **Error** status, click on the error record in the grid.

   The system displays the message indicating the columns which have invalid values. You can correct the error records and upload the payment data file once again. The system allows you to move the error records to the staging area.
5. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.

6. If required, you can click the **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) buttons to navigate *b*etween pages.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	*Searching for a Payment Data File* on page 613

Viewing Processed Records of a Payment Data File

Procedure

To view processed records of a payment data file:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Processed** column corresponding to the payment data file whose processed records you want to view.

   The **View Payment Data** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Displays the name of the payment data file.	Not applicable
File Type	Displays the type of the payment data file.	Not applicable
Upload Date	Displays the date when the payment data file was uploaded in the system.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates the status of the payment data file. The valid values are: • Pending • Cancelled • Complete	Not applicable

In addition, this screen contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payor Account ID	Indicates the account which made the payment.
Payee Account ID	Indicates the account for which the payment was made.
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the payment was matched.
Match Value	Indicates the entity (such as bill, contract, and so on) against which the payment was matched.
Pay Tender ID	Displays the payment tender ID.
Tender Amount	Displays the tender amount.
Payment Amount	Displays the amount paid through the tender.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.
Date Received	Displays the date when the payment was made.
Bank Account	Displays the bank account from which the payment was made.
Tender Type	Displays the type of tender through which the payment was made.
Check Number	Displays the check number if the payment was made through check.
MICR ID	Displays the MICR code.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment record.
Payment Staging Record	On clicking the **View/Edit** link, you can edit the payment staging record.

Note:

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **View Payment Data** screen. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

3. View the processed records of the payment data file in the **View Payment Data** screen.
4. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.
5. If required, you can click the **First** ( ), **Previous** ( ), **Next** ( ), and **Last** ( ) buttons to navigate between pages.
6. If required, you can edit a payment record in the staging area.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	*Searching for a Payment Data File* on page 613
How to edit a payment staging record	*Editing a Payment Staging Record* on page 625

Replacing an Existing File

Prerequisites

To replace an existing payment data file, you should have:

- File types defined in the application (where feed type is set to Payment Data)
- Payment data in the required CSV file format

Procedure

To replace an existing payment data file:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **Payment Upload**.

   The **Payment Upload** screen appears.
4. Click the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Upload Payment Data File** screen appears.
5. Select the type of payment data file from the **File Type** list.
6. Click the **Browse** button corresponding to the **File Name** field.

   The **Choose File to Upload** dialog box appears.
7. Browse to the location where the payment data file that you want to replace is available.
8. Click **Open**.

   The payment data file name and path appears in the **File Name** field.
9. Select the **Replace Existing File** check box.

   Note: You can replace an existing file only when the payment data file is in the **Pending** status. In other words, you cannot replace a file whose payment records are already moved to the staging area and/or for which payments are already created.
10. Click **Upload**.

    A message appears indicating that a batch job is created using the **Upload Payment Records in Pre-Staging Area (C1-PYUP1)** batch. If an error occurs while parsing, the payment data file is not uploaded in the system.
11. Click **OK** in the message box.

    The validation process starts immediately after the file is uploaded in the system. If a payment record is successfully validated, the status of the payment record is changed to **Valid**. If some mandatory payment data is incorrect or missing, the status of the payment record is changed to **Invalid**. However, if some optional payment data is incorrect or missing, the status of the payment record is changed to **Error**. You can view the details of the uploaded file and its records in the **Payment Upload** screen.

    Once the batch is executed successfully, the payment records are copied to the pre-staging area and the status of the payment data file is set to **Pending**. If the batch ends abruptly during execution and the payments records are partially uploaded in the system, the status of the payment data file is set to **Partially Uploaded**. You are then required to investigate the issue and upload the same file once again. If you continue with the payment upload process without reuploading the file, the erroneous results will occur during payment and tender creation.

    If any error occurs while executing the **Upload Payment Records in Pre-Staging Area (C1-PYUP1)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **C1-PYUP1** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-PYUP1** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-PYUP1** To Do type. For more information about the **Upload Payment Records in Pre-Staging Area (C1-PYUP1)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

    Note: If a payment data file contains an invalid record, you need to correct or add missing data in the CSV file and then upload the file once again. Unless, a payment data file has no invalid records, you cannot move any record of the payment data file to the staging area.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Payment Upload screen	*Payment Upload* on page 609
Search zone	*Search* on page 609

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Cancelling a Payment Data File

There might be situations when incorrect payment data file is uploaded in the system. In such case, the system provides you with an ability to cancel the file. However, note that you can cancel a payment data file only when it is in the **Pending** status. In other words, you cannot cancel a payment data file when its records are moved to the staging area or when the payments are created for the payment data file.

Procedure

To cancel a payment data file:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the**Search Results** section, click the

   Cancel ( ) icon corresponding to the payment data file that you want to *c*ancel.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to cancel the payment data file.

   Note: The **Cancel** icon appears only when the status of the payment data file is **Pending**.
3. Click **OK**.

   The status of the payment data file is changed to **Cancelled**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	*Searching for a Payment Data File* on page 613

Moving the Payment Records to the Staging Area

Procedure

To move the payment records to the staging area:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the**Search Results** section, click the **Move to Staging** ( ) icon corresponding *t*o the payment data file whose records you want to move to the staging area.

   A message appears indicating that a batch job is created using the **Move Payment Records to Staging Area (C1-PYUP2)** batch.

   Note: The **Move to Staging** icon appears only when there are no invalid records in the payment data file. If the payment data file contains an invalid record, you cannot move any record of the payment data file to the staging area. The system allows you to move only valid and error records of the payment data file to the staging area. However, if you have cancelled a payment data file, you cannot move any records (including valid and error records) of the payment data file to the staging area.
3. Click **OK** in the message box.

   Once the batch is executed successfully, the payment records are copied from the pre-staging to staging area and the status of the payment data file is changed to **Complete**. The status of the payment records in the pre-staging area is changed to **Moved to Staging** and the status of the deposit control, tender control, and payment tender staging records is set to **Pending**. If any error occurs while executing the **Move Payment Records to Staging Area (C1-PYUP2)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **C1-PYUP2** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **C1-PYUP2** To Do type. For

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

more information about the **Move Payment Records to Staging Area (C1-PYUP2)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	*Searching for a Payment Data File* on page 613

Editing a Payment Staging Record

You can edit a payment record only when it is moved from the pre-staging to staging area. On editing a payment record in the staging area, the system does not reflect the changes in the pre-staging area. It only reflects the changes in the staging area.

Procedure

To edit a payment staging record:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Total** or **Processed** column corresponding to the payment data file whose staging records you want to edit.

   The **View Payment Data** screen appears.
3. Click the **View/Edit** link corresponding to the payment staging record that you want to edit.

   The **Payment Upload Staging** screen appears. It contains the following tabs:

   - **Tender Details** — Enables you to view and edit the tender control staging details.
   - **Payment Advice** — Enables you to view and edit the payment staging details.
   - **Payment Characteristics** — Enables you to view and edit the payment characteristic staging details.

   Note: When you are viewing all records of the payment data file, the **View/Edit** link appears only when the payment record is moved to the staging area. This is because you cannot edit a payment record unless it is moved from the pre-staging to staging area.
4. Modify the required details.
5. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the payment staging record are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	*Searching for a Payment Data File* on page 613

Creating Payments for a Payment Data File

Procedure

To create payments for a payment data file:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

   Create Payments ( ) icon corresponding to the payment data file for which you want to create payments.

   A message appears indicating that a batch job is created using the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch.

   Note: The **Create Payments** icon appears only when the payment records are moved from the pre-staging to staging area.

3. Click **OK** in the message box.

   Once the batch is executed successfully, the deposit controls, tender controls, payment events, tenders, payments, and payment segments are created. In addition, the financial transactions are created when the payments are frozen. The status of the deposit control, tender control, and payment tender staging records is changed to **Complete**. You can view the number of payment events created for a payment data file in the **Payment Event** column. You can view a list of payment events created for a payment data file in the **Payment Events** zone and a list of payments created through a payment event in the **Payments** zone.

   If any error occurs while executing the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch, a To Do entry is created using the **PUPL** To Do type. You can view this To Do entry only when you are assigned a To Do role which is mapped to the **PUPL** To Do type. For more information about the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	*Searching for a Payment Data File* on page 613
Payment Events zone	*Payment Events* on page 612
Payments zone	*Payments* on page 612

Viewing Payment Events Created for a Payment Data File

Procedure

To view payment events created for a payment data file:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the payment data file whose details you want to view.

   The **Payment Events** zone appears.
3. View all payment events created for the payment data file in the **Payment Events** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	*Searching for a Payment Data File* on page 613
Payment Events zone	*Payment Events* on page 612

Viewing Payments Created Through a Payment Event

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Procedure

To view payments created through a payment event:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the payment data file whose details you want to view.

   The **Payment Events** zone appears.
3. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the payment event whose payments you want to view.

   The **Payments** zone appears.
4. View all payments created through the payment event in the **Payments** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	**See...**
How to search for a payment data file	*Searching for a Payment Data File* on page 613
Payment Events zone	*Payment Events* on page 612
Payments zone	*Payments* on page 612

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 13

Freeze Payments on Notification

Topics:

- *Freeze Payments on Notification Process*
- *Prerequisites*
- *Clearing Staging Record Status Transition*
- *Auto Payment Upload Reason*
- *Auto Payment Clearing Staging*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing until now enabled you to create and freeze automatic payments on either bill completion or extract date. Now, the system facilitates you to send automatic payments to the auto clearing house before you freeze them.

Once the review comments are received from the auto clearing house, you can freeze or cancel the automatic payments in the system. The review comments can be received in the form of reason (i.e. upload reason) and sub reason codes (i.e. payment cancellation reason or NOC reason) which will help you to determine whether the automatic payment must be frozen or cancelled in the system. These review comments are stored in the staging area. The implementation team will have to upload data received from the auto clearing house in the following staging tables:

- CI_APAY_STAGE_UP
- CI_APAY_STAGE_UP_REM
- CI_APAY_STGUP_CHAR

For more detailed information about the freeze payments on notification process, see *Freeze Payments on Notification Process* on page 630. For more information on how to setup the freeze payments on notification process, see *Prerequisites* on page 632.

Freeze Payments on Notification Process

The Freeze Payments on Notification process includes the following sub-processes:

1. *Creating Automatic Payments* on page 630
2. *Generating a Flat File* on page 630
3. *Freezing or Canceling Automatic Payments* on page 630
4. *Generating To Do Entries* on page 631
5. *Creating Tender Controls* on page 631

Note that during the Freeze Payments on Notification process, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

1. Automatic Payment Creation (APAYCRET)
2. Activate Automatic Payments (ACTVTAPY)
3. Extract Automatic Payments (ACTVTAPY)
4. Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)
5. To Do Creation for Automatic Payment Exception Records (APAYUPTD)
6. Create Tender Controls for Automatic Payments (BALAPY)

Creating Automatic Payments

If you have configured the automatic payment facility on an account, the system calculates the automatic payment amount and extract date during the bill completion and stamps these details on the bill. You can then create automatic payments for such bills through the **Automatic Payment Creation (APAYCRET)** batch. This batch also creates a clearing record for each automatic payment in the CI_APAY_CLR_STG table. For more information about the batch, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

Generating a Flat File

Unless you activate a clearing record, you cannot extract the clearing record in a flat file. You can activate a clearing record through the **Activate Automatic Payments (ACTVTAPY)** batch. This batch stamps the APAYACH batch control and incremental batch run number on the clearing record. Once the clearing records are activated, you can extract the clearing records in a flat file through the **Extract Automatic Payments (APAYACH)** batch. This batch extracts the clearing records with the latest batch run number. The flat file is then sent to the auto clearing house for review. For more information about these batches, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

Freezing or Canceling Automatic Payments

Once the review comments are received in the form of reason and sub reason codes for a clearing record, you need to freeze or cancel the automatic payment based on the reason code. You can freeze or cancel automatic payments through the **Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)** batch. These review comments are stored in the staging area. Each clearing record will have its corresponding clearing staging record in the staging area. Along with the review comments, the payment freeze date must be specified in the clearing record. The implementation team will have to upload data in the following staging tables:

- **CI_APAY_STAGE_UP** – Used to store the clearing staging record for a clearing record. The status of the clearing staging record must be set to **Pending**.
- **CI_APAY_STAGE_UP_REM** – Used to store the reason and sub reason codes of each clearing staging record.
- **CI_APAY_STGUP_CHAR** – Used to store additional information about the clearing staging record in the form of characteristics. Note that, at present, these characteristics are not mapped with any object in the system.

In addition, the implementation team needs to update the APAY_DIST_FRZ_DT column in the CI_APAY_CLR_STG table for each clearing record whose clearing staging record is added in the database.

The reason code can be either of the following types:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- **Cancel** – This type of reason code indicates that you must cancel the automatic payment in the system. In this case, the sub reason code indicates the reason why the automatic payment must be cancelled.
- **Success** – This type of reason code indicates that you must freeze the automatic payment on the payment freeze date. If the sub reason code is specified along with the reason code, it indicates that you must freeze the automatic payment, and at the same time notify user that the automatic payment is accepted with a Notice to Change (NOC) notification. The NOC reason is stored as payment tender characteristic in the system. You can specify more than one sub reason code (i.e. NOC reasons) with this type of reason code. On freezing an automatic payment, the user is notified about these NOC reasons through a To Do entry. The system creates one To Do entry using the C1-ACH To Do type for all NOC reasons specified in the clearing staging record.

On executing the **Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)** batch, it checks whether the reason code (i.e. upload reason) and sub reason code (i.e. payment cancellation reason or NOC reason) specified in the clearing staging record exist in the system. This batch considers only those clearing staging records which are in the **Pending** status and for which payment freeze date is specified in the clearing record. If the reason code and sub reason code exist in the system, the system executes the algorithms attached to the reason code in the specified sequence. If the type of reason code is **Cancel**, the attached algorithm cancels the automatic payment and payment event. If the type of reason code is **Success**, the attached algorithm freezes the automatic payment on the payment freeze date. In addition, the status of the clearing staging record is changed to **Complete**. However, if the type of reason code is Success and the sub reason code is specified along with the reason code, the attached algorithm freezes the automatic payment on the payment freeze date, stores sub reason codes (i.e. NOC reasons) as payment tender characteristics and then creates a To Do entry to notify user about these NOC reasons. In addition, the status of the clearing staging record is changed to **Complete**.

If the reason code and/or sub reason code (i.e. upload reason, payment cancellation reason, or NOC reason) specified in the clearing staging record does not exist in the system, the status of the clearing staging record is changed to **Error**. An exception is logged in the CI_APAY_STGUP_EXC table. In addition, if the status of the NOC reason is **Inactive** in the system, the status of the clearing staging record is changed to **Error** and an exception is logged in the CI_APAY_STGUP_EXC table. During the Freeze Payments on Notification process, the clearing staging record goes through various statuses until the automatic payment is frozen or cancelled. For more information about the statuses, see *Clearing Staging Record Status Transition* on page 632.

The system allows you to define upload reasons, payment cancellation reasons, and NOC reasons. The system also allows you to edit and delete a clearing staging record through the user interface. However, you can edit a clearing staging record only when it is in the **Pending** or **Error** status, and you can delete a clearing staging record only when it is in the **Pending** status.

For more information about the batch, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

Generating To Do Entries

If an exception occurs while executing the **Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)** batch, you can notify the user about such exception. You can generate a To Do entry using the APAYUPTD To Do type through the **To Do Creation for Automatic Payment Exception Records (APAYUPTD)** batch. The system creates one To Do entry for all exceptions that have occurred for each clearing staging record. For more information about these batches, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

Creating Tender Controls

Once you freeze the automatic payments, you need to create tender and deposit controls through the **Create Tender Controls for Automatic Payments (BALAPY)** batch control. On executing this batch, the system creates tender and deposit controls for each automatic payment which is frozen, but not yet linked to any tender control. One tender control is created for the APAYACH batch control and batch run number combination. The payment tenders of these automatic payments are then linked to the tender control. This batch also balances the open tender control records and changes the status of the tender and deposit controls, accordingly. For more information about the batch, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Prerequisites

To setup the freeze payments on notification process, you need to do the following:

- Define the auto pay instructions (in the **Auto Pay** tab of the **Account** screen) for the account for which you want to enable the automatic payment facility.
- Set the **Autopay Creation Option** field to **Freeze Payment on Notification** in the **Billing** tab of the **Installation Options** screen.
- Create an automatic payment creation algorithm using the APAY-CREATE algorithm type and attach it to the **Automatic Payment Creation** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options — Framework** screen.
- Create a date calculation algorithm using the APAY-DTCALC algorithm type and attach it to the **Autopay Date Calculation Alg** spot of the auto pay route type which is specified on the account
- Define the required upload reasons in the system
- Define the required payment cancellation reasons in the system
- Define values for the APAY_UPL_NOC_LOOKUP field

  Note: The APAY_UPL_NOC_LOOKUP field is used to define NOC reasons. The NOC reason specified in the clearing staging record must exists in this lookup field and its status must be **Active**. Otherwise, the status of the clearing staging record is changed to **Error**.
- Create a success algorithm using the C1-APAY-SUCC algorithm type and attach it to the reason code where the reason type is set to **Success**.
- Create a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to **Payment Tender**. And, then specify this characteristic type as the value for the **Tender Characteristic Type** parameter in an algorithm which is created using the C1-APAY-SUCC algorithm type.
- Assign the C1-ACH To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do entries generated when automatic payments are frozen with a Notice to Change (NOC) notification.
- Assign the APAYUPTD To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do entries generated when exceptions have occurred while executing the **Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)** batch.

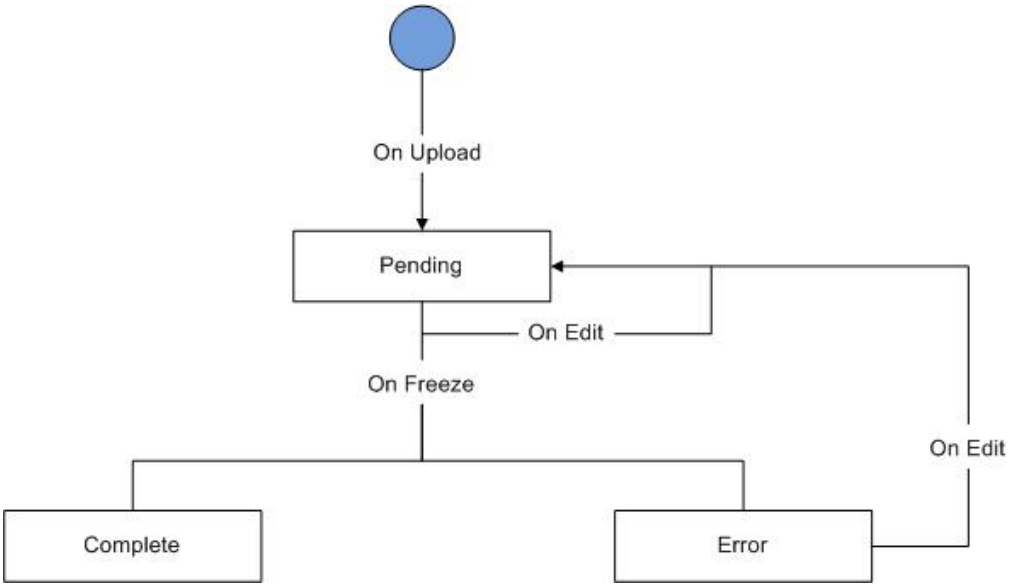
Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an upload reason	*Defining an Upload Reason* on page 634

Clearing Staging Record Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a clearing staging record moves from one status to another during the freeze payments on notification process:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.



Auto Payment Upload Reason

Once the auto clearing house reviews the automatic payments (i.e. the clearing records), they need to specify the appropriate upload reason for each clearing record in the file. The upload reason indicates whether the automatic payment must be frozen or cancelled in the system.

On executing the **APAYRA** batch, the system freezes or cancels the automatic payment depending on the upload reason. Therefore, the upload reason that you specify against the clearing record must already exist in the system. Otherwise, an exception is logged in the CI_APAY_STGUP_EXC table.

The **Auto Payment Upload Reason** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete an upload reason. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Upload Reasons* on page 633

Upload Reasons

The **Upload Reasons** zone lists upload reasons that are already defined in the system. You can add, edit, and delete an upload reason through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Upload Reason	Displays the upload reason.
Reason Type	Indicates the type of upload reason. The valid values are: • Cancel • Success
Eligible for Processing	Indicates whether the algorithms attached to the upload reason must be triggered while executing the **APAYRA** batch. The valid values are: • Y • N

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Description	Displays the description of the upload reason.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Auto Payment Upload Reason** screen appears where you can edit the details of the upload reason.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the upload reason.

You can define an upload reason by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an upload reason	*Defining an Upload Reason* on page 634
How to edit an upload reason	*Editing an Upload Reason* on page 635
How to delete an upload reason	*Deleting an Upload Reason* on page 637

Defining an Upload Reason

Prerequisites

To define an upload reason, you should have:

- Success algorithm defined using the C1-APAY-SUCC algorithm type
- Cancel algorithm defined using the C1-APAY-CAN algorithm type

Procedure

To define an upload reason:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Auto Payment Upload Reason**.

   The **Auto Payment Upload Reason** screen appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Upload Reasons** zone.

   The **Auto Payment Upload Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Reason	Used to specify the upload reason.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the upload reason.	Yes
Reason Type	Used to indicate the type of upload reason. The valid values are: • Cancel • Success	Yes
Eligible for Processing	Used to indicate whether the algorithms attached to the upload reason must be triggered while executing the **APAYRA** batch.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

In addition, this screen contains a section where you can attach algorithms to the upload reason. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the order in which the algorithms must be triggered.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are attaching an algorithm to the upload reason.
Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm code. The algorithms that you can specify change depending on the reason type. **Note:** On specifying the algorithm code, the description of the algorithm appears corresponding to the **Algorithm** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are attaching an algorithm to the upload reason.

5. Enter the required details.

   Note:

   You can search for an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Algorithm** field.

   If you want to attach more than one algorithm to the upload reason, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove an algorithm from the upload reason, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

6. Click **Save**.

   The upload reason is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Auto Payment Upload Reason screen	*Auto Payment Upload Reason* on page 633
Upload Reasons zone	*Upload Reasons* on page 633
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732

Editing an Upload Reason

Prerequisites

To edit an upload reason, you should have:

- Success algorithm defined using the C1-APAY-SUCC algorithm type
- Cancel algorithm defined using the C1-APAY-CAN algorithm type

Procedure

To edit an upload reason:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Auto Payment Upload Reason**.

   The **Auto Payment Upload Reason** screen appears.

4. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the upload reason whose details you want to edit.

   The **Auto Payment Upload Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Reason	Displays the upload reason.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the upload reason.	Yes
Reason Type	Indicates the type of upload reason. The valid values are: • Cancel • Success	Not applicable
Eligible for Processing	Used to indicate whether the algorithms attached to the upload reason must be triggered while executing the **APAYRA** batch.	No

   In addition, this screen contains a section where you can attach algorithms to the upload reason. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the order in which the algorithms must be triggered.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are attaching an algorithm to the upload reason.
Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm code. The algorithms that you can specify change depending on the reason type. **Note:** On specifying the algorithm code, the description of the algorithm appears corresponding to the **Algorithm** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are attaching an algorithm to the upload reason.

5. Modify the required details.

   Note:

   You can search for an algorithm by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Algorithm** field.

   If you want to attach more than one algorithm to the upload reason, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove an algorithm from the upload reason, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.

6. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the upload reason are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Auto Payment Upload Reason screen	*Auto Payment Upload Reason* on page 633

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
Upload Reasons zone	*Upload Reasons* on page 633
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732

Deleting an Upload Reason

Procedure

To delete an upload reason:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **A** and then click **Auto Payment Upload Reason**.

   The **Auto Payment Upload Reason** screen appears.
4. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the upload reason that you want *to* delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the object.
5. Click **OK**.

   The upload reason is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Auto Payment Upload Reason screen	*Auto Payment Upload Reason* on page 633
Upload Reasons zone	*Upload Reasons* on page 633

Auto Payment Clearing Staging

The **Auto Payment Clearing Staging** screen allows you to search for clearing records using various search criteria. In addition, you can:

- View the clearing staging record of a clearing record
- View the details, such as reasons and characteristics, specified in the clearing staging record
- Edit a clearing staging record
- Delete a clearing staging record

This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 638
- *Uploaded Clearing Staging Record* on page 639
- *Auto Payment Upload Reason* on page 640
- *Auto Payment Upload Characteristics* on page 640

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for clearing records (i.e. automatic payments sent to the auto clearing house for review) using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Clearing ID	Used to search for a particular clearing record.	No
Account ID	Used to search for clearing records created for a particular account.	No
Customer Name	Used to search for clearing records created for a particular customer.	No
Extract From Date	Used to search for clearing records that were extracted from a particular date onwards.	No
Extract To Date	Used to search for clearing records that were extracted till a particular date.	No
Bill ID	Used to search for a clearing record which was created against a bill.	No
Alternate Bill ID	Used to search for a clearing record which was created against an alternate bill ID.	No
Batch Control	Used to search for clearing records on which the APAYACH batch control is stamped. The valid value is APAYACH.	No
Batch Run Number	Used to search for clearing records which are considered during a particular batch run number.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a clearing record.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Clearing ID	Displays the clearing ID.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the clearing record is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Account** screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Bill Information	Indicates the bill against which the clearing record is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Bill** screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Payment Amount	Displays the payment amount.
Pay Tender ID	Displays the tender ID. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Payment Event** screen appears with the details of the respective tender.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Tender Status	Indicates the current status of the tender. The valid values are: • Valid • Cancelled
Extract Date	Displays the date when the clearing record was extracted.
Payment Freeze Date	Displays the date when you must freeze the automatic payment.
External Source ID	Indicates the tender source through which the payment was remitted.
Account Number	Indicates the bank account through which the automatic payment is made.
Batch Control	Indicates whether the APAYACH batch control is stamped on the clearing record.
Batch Run Number	Displays the batch run number during which the clearing record was considered for extraction.
Alternate Bill ID	Indicates the alternate bill ID against which the clearing record is created.

Note: Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. By default, 10 records are displayed in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a clearing record	*Searching for a Clearing Record* on page 641

Uploaded Clearing Staging Record

The **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone list the clearing staging record which is uploaded in the system corresponding to the clearing record. You can edit and delete a clearing staging record through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Clearing Staging ID	Displays the clearing staging ID.
Clearing ID	Displays the clearing ID.
Status	Indicates the status of the clearing staging record. The valid values are: • Pending • Complete • Error
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Edit Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** screen appears where you can edit the details of the clearing staging record. **Note:** You can edit a clearing staging record only when it is in the **Pending** or **Error** status.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the clearing staging record. **Note:** You can delete a clearing staging record only when it is in the **Pending** status.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

By default, the **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone does not appear in the **Auto Payment Clearing Staging** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the clearing record in the **Search** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the clearing staging record	*Viewing the Clearing Staging Record* on page 641
How to edit a clearing staging record	*Editing a Clearing Staging Record* on page 643
How to delete a clearing staging record	*Deleting a Clearing Staging Record* on page 645

Auto Payment Upload Reason

The **Auto Payment Upload Reason** zone lists the upload reason, cancel reason, or Notice of Change (NOC) reasons specified in the clearing staging record. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Clearing Staging ID	Displays the clearing staging ID.
Clearing ID	Displays the clearing ID.
Upload Reason	Displays the upload reason specified in the clearing staging record.
Cancel Reason	Displays the cancel reason specified in the clearing staging record.
NOC Reason	Displays the NOC reason specified in the clearing staging record.
NOC Reason Description	Displays the description of the NOC reason.

Note: Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Auto Payment Upload Reason** zone. By default, 10 records are displayed in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

By default, the **Auto Payment Upload Reason** zone does not appear in the **Auto Payment Clearing Staging** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the clearing staging record in the **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the upload reason specified in the clearing staging record	*Viewing the Upload Reason Specified in the Clearing Staging Record* on page 642

Auto Payment Upload Characteristics

The **Auto Payment Upload Characteristics** zone lists the characteristics specified in the clearing staging record. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Clearing Staging ID	Displays the clearing staging ID.
Clearing ID	Displays the clearing ID.
Characteristic Type	Displays the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the characteristic value.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Auto Payment Upload Characteristics** zone. By default, 10 records are displayed in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

By default, the **Auto Payment Upload Characteristics** zone does not appear in the **Auto Payment Clearing Staging** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the clearing staging record in the **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the characteristics specified in the clearing staging record	*Viewing the Characteristics Specified in the Clearing Staging Record* on page 642

Searching for a Clearing Record

Procedure

To search for a clearing record:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **Auto Payment Clearing Staging**.

   The **Auto Payment Clearing Staging** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of clearing records that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Auto Payment Clearing Staging screen	*Auto Payment Clearing Staging* on page 637
Search zone	*Search* on page 638

Viewing the Clearing Staging Record

Procedure

To view the clearing staging record:

1. Search for the clearing record in the **Auto Payment Clearing Staging** screen.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the clearing record whose clearing staging record you want to view.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone appears.

3. View the details of the clearing staging record in the **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a clearing record	*Searching for a Clearing Record* on page 641
Uploaded Clearing Staging Record zone	*Uploaded Clearing Staging Record* on page 639

Viewing the Upload Reason Specified in the Clearing Staging Record

Procedure

To view the upload reason specified in the clearing staging record:

1. Search for the clearing record in the **Auto Payment Clearing Staging** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the clearing record whose clearing staging record you want to view.

   The **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone appears.
3. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the clearing staging record in the **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone.

   The **Auto Payment Upload Reason** and **Auto Payment Upload Characteristics** zones appear.
4. View the upload, cancel, and/or NOC reasons specified in the clearing staging record in the **Auto Payment Upload Reason** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a clearing record	*Searching for a Clearing Record* on page 641
Uploaded Clearing Staging Record zone	*Uploaded Clearing Staging Record* on page 639
Auto Payment Upload Reason zone	*Auto Payment Upload Reason* on page 640

Viewing the Characteristics Specified in the Clearing Staging Record

Procedure

To view the characteristics specified in the clearing staging record:

1. Search for the clearing record in the **Auto Payment Clearing Staging** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the clearing record whose clearing staging record you want to view.

   The **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone appears.
3. Click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the clearing staging record in the **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Auto Payment Upload Reason** and **Auto Payment Upload Characteristics** zones appear.

4. View the characteristics specified in the clearing staging record in the **Auto Payment Upload Characteristics** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a clearing record	*Searching for a Clearing Record* on page 641
Uploaded Clearing Staging Record zone	*Uploaded Clearing Staging Record* on page 639
Auto Payment Upload Characteristics zone	*Auto Payment Upload Characteristics* on page 640

Editing a Clearing Staging Record

Prerequisites

To edit a clearing staging record, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Auto Payment Upload)

Note: You can edit a clearing staging record only when it is in the **Pending** or **Error** status. On editing a clearing staging record which is in the **Error** status, the status is changed to **Pending**. Also, the exceptions logged for the clearing staging record are deleted from the CI_APAY_STGUP_EXC table.

Procedure

To edit a clearing staging record:

1. Search for the clearing record in the **Auto Payment Clearing Staging** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast** ( ) icon corresponding to the clearing record whose clearing staging record you want to edit.

   The **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone appears.
3. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the clearing staging record in the **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone.

   The **Edit Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Clearing Staging ID	Displays the clearing staging ID.	Not applicable
Clearing ID	Displays the clearing ID.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates the status of the clearing staging record. The valid values are: • Pending • Complete • Error	Not applicable
Upload Date	Used to specify the date when the clearing staging record was uploaded in the system.	Yes

In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- **Upload Reasons** — The **Upload Reasons** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Reason	Used to specify the upload reason.	Yes
Reason Type	Used to indicate the type of upload reason. The valid values are: • Cancel • Success	Yes
Auto Pay Upload Sub Reason Code	Used to specify either of the following: • Cancel reason when the reason type is set to **Cancel** • Notice of Change (NOC) reason when the reason type is set to **Success**	No
Auto Pay Upload Sub Reason Description	Used to specify the description of the NOC reason.	No

Note: The upload reason, cancel reason, and NOC reasons that you specify in the respective fields must be already defined in the system. If you specify invalid reason codes, the status of the clearing staging record will be changed to **Error** when you execute the **APAYRA** batch.

- **Characteristics**— The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the clearing staging record.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are specifying a characteristic for the clearing staging record.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. **Note:** The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Auto Payment Upload**.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are specifying a characteristic for the clearing staging record.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. **Note:** On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are specifying a characteristic for the clearing staging record.

4. Modify the required details.
5. If you want to add more than one upload and NOC reason combination, click the **Plus** (+) icon in the **Upload Reasons** section and then enter the required details.

   Note:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

However, if you want to remove an upload and NOC reason combination, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the combination.

If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

6. If you want to specify more than one characteristic for the clearing staging record, click the **Plus** ( ) icon in the **Characteristics** section and then enter the required details.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the clearing staging record, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

7. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the clearing staging record are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a clearing record	*Searching for a Clearing Record* on page 641
Uploaded Clearing Staging Record zone	*Uploaded Clearing Staging Record* on page 639
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	*Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value* on page 743

Deleting a Clearing Staging Record

Procedure

To delete a clearing staging record:

1. Search for the clearing record in the **Auto Payment Clearing Staging** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

   Broadcast ( ) icon corresponding to the clearing record whose clearing staging record you want to delete.

   The **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone appears.

3. Click the **Delete** ( ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the clearing staging record in the **Uploaded Clearing Staging Record** zone.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the clearing staging record.

   Note: You can delete a clearing staging record only when it is in the **Pending** status.

4. Click **OK**.

   The clearing staging record is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a clearing record	*Searching for a Clearing Record* on page 641
Uploaded Clearing Staging Record zone	*Uploaded Clearing Staging Record* on page 639

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 14

Construct Based Billing

Topics:

- *Prerequisites*
- *Construct Status Transition*
- *Template*
- *Profile*
- *Construct*
- *View Billing Hierarchy*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides you with a flexible way to define the billing hierarchy using the construct based billing feature. In a construct, you can include:

- **Usage Accounts** - A set of usage accounts of different customers whose charges and/or adjustments must be billed through an invoice account. These customers need not belong to the same customer hierarchy. The system allows you to select a set of usage accounts based on the criteria using the account selection template. The customers' and their child customers' usage accounts that meet the specified criteria are included in the construct.
- **Billable Charges** - A set of billable charges that you want to bill through an invoice account. The system will only consider billable charges of those usage accounts for which the construct is defined. The system allows you to select a set of billable charges based on the criteria using the billable charge selection template.
- **Adjustments** - A set of adjustments that you want to bill through an invoice account. The system will only consider adjustments of those usage accounts for which the construct is defined. The system allows you to select a set of adjustments based on the criteria using the adjustment selection template.

You can bill the charges and adjustments of usage accounts on the same invoice account. Or, you can bill the charges of usage accounts on one invoice account and the adjustments on another invoice account. Or, you can bill the charges or adjustments of the usage accounts on more than one invoice account. You can define different types of constructs. At present, the system supports only invoice and settlement construct. Here, settlement includes receivables and payables.

One usage account can belong to only one active construct and not to multiple active constructs at the same time. The system also allows you to exclude some usage accounts when you do not want to include all usage accounts that satisfy the criteria in the construct. While defining a construct, you can use an existing invoice account, or you can create a new invoice account with or without using the profile. A profile helps you to quickly create an entity, such as account. You can define the default values for fields related to an account in the profile. While defining a construct, the default values appear when you create an invoice account using the profile. You can edit these values, if required. You can also associate account creation and contract creation algorithms while defining a profile for an account. If the algorithms are associated with the profile, the system creates an invoice account and contracts for the invoice account using these algorithms. However, if you create an invoice account without using any profile, the system uses the default algorithms to create an invoice account and contracts for the invoice account.

The invoice account and contracts for the invoice account are created only when you activate the construct. One contract is created for every target contract type set on usage accounts' contracts' contract type.

You can use a construct during the construct based billing process only when the construct is in the **Active** status. The following batches are designed to support the construct based billing process:

- **Construct Based - Pending Bill Generation (BILLOPEN)** – This batch is used to generate pending bills for accounts that meet the criteria.
- **Construct Based - Bill Segment Generation (BSGENREG)** – This batch is used to generate the bill segments on the pending bills.
- **Construct Based - Bill Completion (POSTPROC)** – This batch is used to generate post processing bill segments during the bill completion process. It changes the status of the bill to **Complete**.

During the bill generation process, all accounts that meet the criteria are considered for billing. These accounts may be usage or invoice accounts. All billable charges (with the **Adhoc** flag set to **No**) whose start date is earlier than or equal to the batch business date are considered during bill segment generation. If a billable charge satisfies the rule defined on any active construct, the bill segment is generated on the respective invoice account. And, if a billable charge does not satisfy the rule defined on any active construct, the bill segment is generated on the usage account. The post-processing bill segments, if any, are generated on the invoice or usage account depending on the type of price assignment.

Note: The construct based billing batches are currently not designed to consider billable charges whose end date is earlier than or equal to the batch business date.

For more information on how to setup the construct based billing process, refer to *Prerequisites* on page 649.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Prerequisites

To setup the construct based billing process, you need to do the following:

- Define the Target Contract Type characteristic for usage accounts' contracts' contract type
- Create a default account creation algorithm using the C1-ACTCR-IC algorithm type
- Create a default contract creation algorithm using the C1-CTMP-IC algorithm type
- Create a usage account construct mapping algorithm using the C1-UACM-IC algorithm type
- Associate the usage account construct mapping algorithm to a division whose usage accounts you want to include in any existing active construct

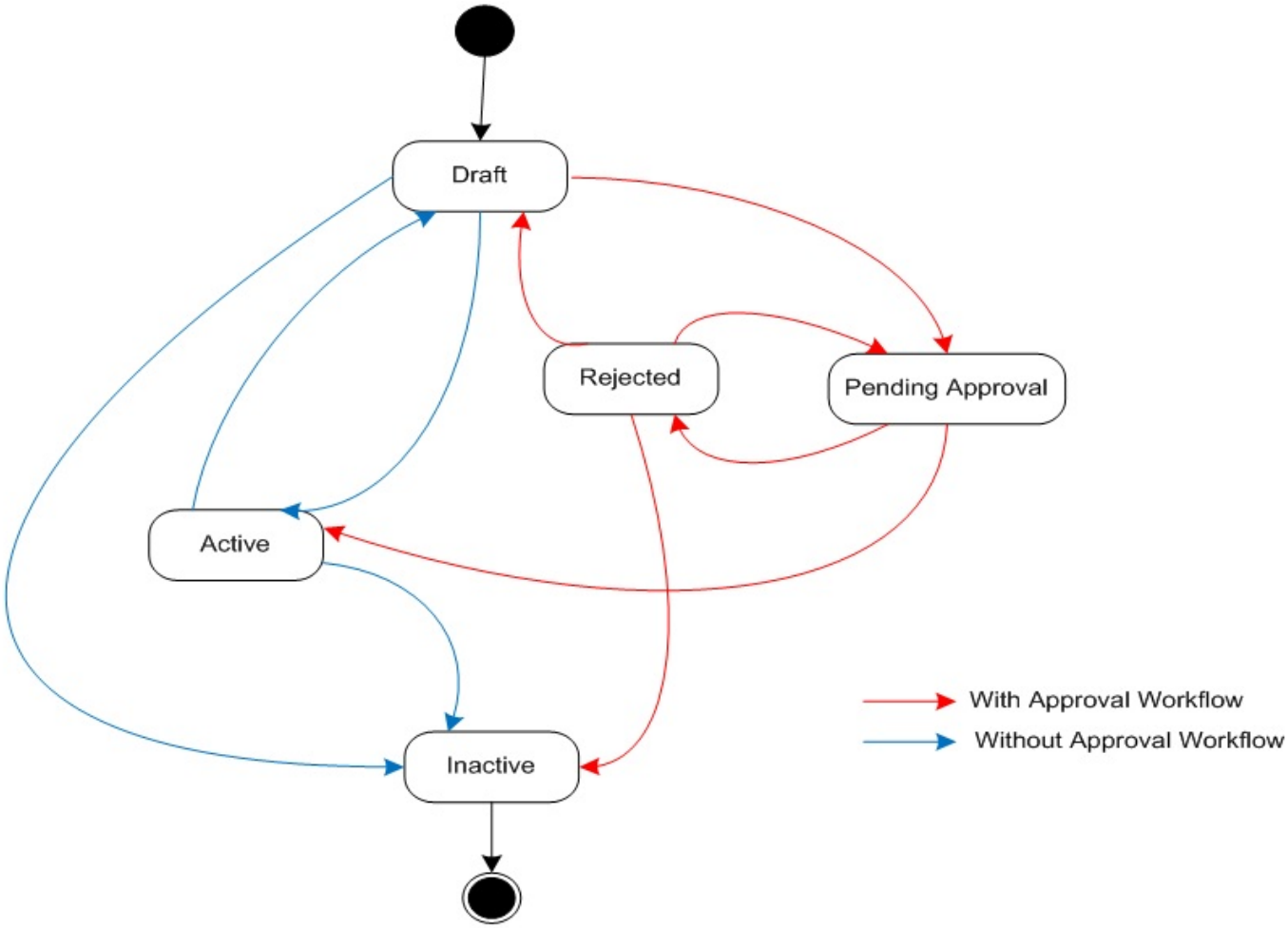
  Note: There might be situations when a usage account is created after the construct is activated. If you want to include such usage account in any existing active construct, you need to associate the usage account construct mapping algorithm to a division in which you are creating the usage account. If the usage account satisfies the criteria specified in any active construct, it is included in the construct once the usage account is created.
- Define the required templates, profiles, and constructs in the application
- Define values for the PAGE_NUMBER lookup field
- Define approval workflow group, approval workflow chain, approval workflow criteria, and approval workflow group chain linkage for construct
- Configure the approval workflow settings for construct
- Define approval workflow reasons which are required while rejecting a construct
- Assign the **C1-IC_AC** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do entries generated when the new invoice account is created while activating a construct
- Define an algorithm of the BS-CRE-INVCN algorithm type and attach it on the **Create Algorithm** spot of the bill segment type.

  Note: If you want to use the regular billing process, you need to attach an algorithm of the BS-CRE-PRICE algorithm type on the **Create Algorithm** spot of the bill segment type. However, if you want to use the construct based billing process, you need to attach an algorithm of the BS-CRE-INVCN algorithm type on **Create Algorithm** spot of the bill segment type.

Construct Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a construct moves from one status to another during its lifecycle:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.



Template

Template is used to select a set of usage accounts, billable charges, or adjustments based on the criteria. In a template, you can define a SELECT statement to retrieve data from a table or view based on a condition. You can use the bind variables in the where clause (condition). The bind variables must be alphanumeric and prefixed with the colon (:). The values for these bind variables are specified while defining a construct.

You can validate the syntax of the SELECT statement. If the syntax of the SELECT statement is correct, a message appears indicating that the SQL statement was validated successfully. However, if the syntax of the SELECT statement is incorrect, an error message occurs. You need to then correct the SELECT statement accordingly. Otherwise, the system will not allow you to save the template.

You can define the following three types of templates:

- **Account Selection** — Used for selecting a set of usage accounts based on the criteria.
- **Adjustment Selection** — Used for selecting a set of adjustments based on the criteria.
- **Billable Charge Selection** — Used for selecting a set of billable charges based on the criteria.

You can only use templates which are active while defining or editing a construct. The **Template** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete a template. You can edit a template even if it is used in any construct. However, any changes made to a template will not be reflected in a construct where the template is already used unless you use the latest template in the construct. This screen consists of the following zones:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

- *Search* on page 651

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for a template using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Template	Used to specify the template name.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the template.	No
Purpose	Used to indicate the purpose of the template. The valid values are: • Account Selection • Adjustment Selection • Billable Charge Selection	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the template. The valid values are: • Active • Inactive	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a template.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Template	Displays the name of the template.
Description	Displays the description of the template.
Purpose	Indicates the purpose of the template. The valid values are: • Account Selection • Adjustment Selection • Billable Charge Selection
Status	Indicates the status of the template. The valid values are: • Active • Inactive
View	On clicking the **View** ( ) icon, the **View Template** screen appears where you can view the details of the template.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Template** screen appears where you can edit the details of the template. **Note:** If a template is used in any construct, a message appears confirming whether you want to edit the template.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the template. **Note:** You can only delete a template which is not yet used in any construct.

You can create a new template by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a template	*Searching for a Template* on page 652
How to define a template	*Defining a Template* on page 652
How to edit a template	*Editing a Template* on page 656
How to delete a template	*Deleting a Template* on page 658
How to view the details of a template	*Viewing the Template Details* on page 658

Searching for a Template

Procedure

To search for a template:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **T** and then click **Template**.

   The **Template** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of templates that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Template screen	*Template* on page 650
Search zone	*Search* on page 651

Defining a Template

Procedure

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To define a template:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **T** and then click **Template**.

   The **Template** screen appears.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Template** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

   - **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the template.
   - **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the template.

   The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

<table>
<tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr>
<tr><td>Template</td><td>Used to specify the template name.</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>Description</td><td>Used to specify the description for the template.</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>Detailed Description</td><td>Used to specify additional information about the template.</td><td>No</td></tr>
<tr><td>Purpose</td><td>Used to indicate the purpose of the template. The valid values are:
Account Selection — Used for selecting a set of usage accounts based on the criteria.
Adjustment Selection — Used for selecting a set of adjustments based on the criteria.
Billable Charge Selection — Used for selecting a set of billable charges based on the criteria.</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>Status</td><td>Used to indicate the status of the template. The valid values are:
Active
Inactive</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>Select</td><td>Used to specify the column name. It indicates the data that you want to retrieve using the SELECT statement.
The default value appears in this field when you select the purpose of the template. However, the default value changes depending on the purpose of template. You can edit the column name whenever required.<table><tr><th>If you have set the purpose of the template to....</th><th>Then, the default value is...</th></tr><tr><td>Account Selection</td><td>ACCT_ID</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment Selection</td><td>ADJ_ID</td></tr><tr><td>Billable Charge Selection</td><td>BILLABLE_CHG_ID</td></tr></table></td><td>Yes</td></tr>
</table>

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
From	Used to specify the table or view name. It indicates the table or view from which you want to retrieve the data.	Yes
Where	Used to specify the condition based on which you want to retrieve the data from the table or view. You can use the bind variables in the where clause using the following syntax: `{column_name}{operator}:{bind_variable}` The bind variables must be alphanumeric and prefixed with the colon (:). There should not be any space between the column name, operator, and the bind variable. For example, CURRENCY_CD=:CURRENCY. All bind variables used in the where clause must be defined in the **Bind Variables** section.	No

In addition, this tab contains the **Bind Variables** section where you can define the bind variables which are used in the where clause. The **Bind Variables** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bind Variable	Used to specify the bind variable (which is used in the where clause).	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a bind variable.
Data Type	Used to indicate the type of data that you want to store in the bind variable. The valid values are: • Date • Numeric • String	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a bind variable.
Label	Used to specify the business label for the bind variable. The business label appears when you define and edit the criteria for selecting a set of usage accounts, adjustments, or billable charges.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a bind variable.

Tip: Alternatively, you can access the **Template** screen by clicking **Add** () icon corresponding to the **Template** menu option.

5. Enter the required details in the **Main** tab.

   Note: If you want to define more than one bind variable, click the **Plus** ( ) icon in the **Bind Variables** section and then enter the required details. However, if you want to remove a bind variable from the **Bind Variables** section, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the bind variable.

6. If required, click **Validate** to validate the syntax of the SELECT statement.

   Note: If the syntax of the SELECT statement is correct, a message appears indicating that the SQL statement was validated successfully. However, if the syntax of the SELECT statement is incorrect, an error message occurs. You need to then correct the SELECT statement accordingly. Otherwise, the system will not allow you to save the template.

7. Define characteristics for the template, if required.

8. Click **Validate and Save**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The system validates the syntax of the SELECT statement and then accordingly saves the template.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Template screen	*Template* on page 650
Search zone	*Search* on page 651
How to define characteristics for a template	*Defining Characteristics for a Template* on page 655

Defining Characteristics for a Template

Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a template, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Template)

Procedure

To define characteristics for a template:

1. Click the **Characteristics** tab in the **Template** screen when you are creating or editing a template.

   The **Characteristics** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the template.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the template.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the template.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. **Note:** On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the template.

2. Enter the required details.

   Note: If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the template, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat step *2*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the template, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The characteristics are defined for the template.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a template	*Defining a Template* on page 652
How to edit a template	*Editing a Template* on page 656
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	*Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value* on page 743

Editing a Template

Procedure

To edit a template:

1. Search for the template in the **Template** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the template whose details you want to edit.

   Note: If a template is used in any construct, a message appears confirming whether you want to edit the template. You must click **OK** if you want to edit the template. Any changes made to a template will not be reflected in any construct where the template is already used unless you use the latest template in the construct.

   The **Template** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

   - **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the template.
   - **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the template.

   The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Template	Displays the template name.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the template.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the template.	No
Purpose	Used to indicate the purpose of the template. The valid values are: • **Account Selection** — Used for selecting a set of usage accounts based on the criteria. • **Adjustment Selection** — Used for selecting a set of adjustments based on the criteria. • **Billable Charge Selection** — Used for selecting a set of billable charges based on the criteria.	Yes
Status	Used to indicate the status of the template. The valid values are: • Active • Inactive	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr>
<tr><td>Select</td><td>Used to specify the column name. It indicates the data that you want to retrieve using the SELECT statement.

The default value appears in this field when you select the purpose of the template. However, the default value changes depending on the purpose of template. You can edit the column name whenever required.

<table><tr><th>If you have set the purpose of the template to....</th><th>Then, the default value is...</th></tr><tr><td>Account Selection</td><td>ACCT_ID</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment Selection</td><td>ADJ_ID</td></tr><tr><td>Billable Charge Selection</td><td>BILLABLE_CHG_ID</td></tr></table></td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>From</td><td>Used to specify the table or view name. It indicates the table or view from which you want to retrieve the data.</td><td>Yes</td></tr>
<tr><td>Where</td><td>Used to specify the condition based on which you want to retrieve the data from the table or view. You can use the bind variables in the where clause using the following syntax:

<code>{column_name}{operator}:
{bind_variable}</code>

The bind variables must be alphanumeric and prefixed with the colon (:). There should not be any space between the column name, operator, and the bind variable. For example, CURRENCY_CD=:CURRENCY. All bind variables used in the where clause must be defined in the Bind Variables section.</td><td>No</td></tr>
</table>

In addition, this tab contains the **Bind Variables** section where you can define the bind variables which are used in the where clause. The **Bind Variables** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bind Variable	Used to specify the bind variable (which is used in the where clause).	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a bind variable.
Data Type	Used to indicate the type of data that you want to store in the bind variable. The valid values are: • Date • Numeric • String	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a bind variable.
Label	Used to specify the business label for the bind variable. The business label appears when you define and edit the criteria for selecting a set of usage accounts, adjustments, or billable charges.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a bind variable.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. Modify the details in the **Main** tab, if required.

   Note: If you want to define more than one bind variable, click the **Plus** (+) icon in the **Bind Variables** section and then enter the required details. However, if you want to remove a bind variable from the **Bind Variables** section, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the bind variable.

4. If required, click **Validate** to validate the syntax of the SELECT statement.

   Note: If the syntax of the SELECT statement is correct, a message appears indicating that the SQL statement was validated successfully. However, if the syntax of the SELECT statement is incorrect, an error message occurs. You need to then correct the SELECT statement accordingly. Otherwise, the system will not allow you to save the template.

5. Define, edit or remove characteristics from the template, if required.

6. Click **Validate and Save**.

   The system validates the syntax of the SELECT statement and then accordingly saves the changes made to the template.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a template	*Searching for a Template* on page 652
How to define characteristics for a template	*Defining Characteristics for a Template* on page 655

Deleting a Template

Procedure

To delete a template:

1. Search for the template in the **Template** screen.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** (🗑) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the template that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the template.

   Note: You can only delete a template which is not yet used in any construct.

3. Click **OK**.

   The template is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a template	*Searching for a Template* on page 652

Viewing the Template Details

Procedure

To view the details of a template:

1. Search for the template in the **Template** screen.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the template whose details you want to view.

   The **View Template** screen appears.

3. View the basic details of the template in the **Main** tab.
4. View the characteristics defined for the template in the **Characteristics** tab.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a template	*Searching for a Template* on page 652

Profile

You can use a profile to create an invoice account while defining a construct. In a profile, you can define the default values for fields related to an entity. This helps you to quickly create an entity using the profile. Note that, at present, you can only define a profile for creating an invoice account.

While defining a construct, the default values appear (depending on how the UI map is defined for creating an entity) when you create an invoice account using the profile. You can edit these values, if required. If the fields are displayed on the UI map, you can edit the values through the UI map or through the respective base entity screen (once the entity is created). However, if the fields are not displayed on the UI map, you can edit the values only through the respective base entity screen (once the entity is created).

You can also associate algorithms with a profile. While associating an algorithm with a profile, you must indicate the system event on which you want to execute the algorithm. You can associate algorithms on the following system events:

- **Account Creation** — Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when you create an invoice account using the profile.
- **Contract Creation** — Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when contracts are created for an invoice account which is created using the profile.

Note: The invoice account and contract(s) are created for a construct only when the construct is approved by the approver.

You can only use profiles which are active while defining or editing a construct. The **Profile** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete a profile. You can edit a profile even if it is used in any construct. However, any changes made to a profile will not be reflected in a construct where the profile is already used unless you create the account using the latest profile. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 659

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for a profile using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Profile	Used to specify the profile name.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the profile.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Entity	Used to indicate the entity for which the profile is created. The valid values are: • Account	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the profile. The valid values are: • Active • Inactive	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a profile.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Profile	Displays the profile name.
Description	Displays the description of the profile.
Entity	Indicates the entity for which the profile is created. The valid values are: • Account
Status	Indicate the status of the profile. The valid values are: • Active • Inactive
View	On clicking the **View** ( ) icon, the **Profile** screen appears where you can view the details of the profile.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Profile** screen appears where you can edit the details of the profile. **Note:** If a profile is used in any construct, a message appears confirming whether you want to edit the profile.
Delete	On clicking the **Delete** ( ) icon, you can delete the profile. **Note:** You can only delete a profile which is not yet used in any construct.

You can create a new profile by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a profile	*Searching for a Profile* on page 661
How to define a profile	*Defining a Profile* on page 661
How to edit a profile	*Editing a Profile* on page 664
How to delete a profile	*Deleting a Profile* on page 665
How to view the details of a profile	*Viewing the Profile Details* on page 666

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Searching for a Profile

Procedure

To search for a profile:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Profile**.

   The **Profile** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of profiles that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Profile screen	*Profile* on page 659
Search zone	*Search* on page 659

Defining a Profile

Procedure

To define a profile:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Profile**.

   The **Profile** screen appears.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Profile** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

   - **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the profile.
   - **Algorithms** — Used to indicate algorithms that must be triggered on various system events when you use the profile for creating an entity.

   The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Profile	Used to specify the profile name.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the profile.	Yes
Entity	Used to indicate the entity for which you want to create a profile. The valid values are: • Account	Yes
Status	Used to indicate the status of the profile. The valid values are: • Active • Inactive	Yes

In addition, this tab contains the **Default Values** section where you can define the default values for fields related to the entity. These default values appear (depending on how the UI map is defined for creating an entity) when you create the entity (for example, an invoice account) using the profile. You can edit these values, if required. If the fields are displayed on the UI map, you can edit the values through the UI map or through the respective base entity screen (once the entity is created). However, if the fields are not displayed on the UI map, you can edit the values only through the respective base entity screen (once the entity is created). The **Default Values** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Field Name	Used to indicate the field for which you want to define the default value.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining the default value for a field.
Value	Used to specify the default value for the field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining the default value for a field.

Tip: Alternatively, you can access the **Profile** screen by clicking the **Add** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Profile** menu option.

5. Enter the required details in the **Main** tab.

   Note: If you want to define the default value for more than one field, click the **Plus** ( ) icon in the **Default Values** section and then enter the required details. However, if you want to remove the default value of a field from the **Default Values** section, click the **Minus** () icon corresponding to the field.

6. Associate algorithms with the profile, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

   The profile is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Profile screen	*Profile* on page 659
Search zone	*Search* on page 659
How to associate algorithms with a profile	*Associating Algorithms with a Profile* on page 663

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Associating Algorithms with a Profile

Prerequisites

To associate algorithms with a profile, you should have:

- Algorithms defined for the Account Creation system event using the C1-ACTCR-IC algorithm type
- Algorithms defined for the Contract Creation system event using the C1-CTMP-IC algorithm type

Procedure

To associate algorithms with a profile:

1. Click the **Algorithms** tab in the **Profile** screen when you are creating or editing a profile.

   The **Algorithms** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Used to specify the order in which the algorithms for each system event must be executed.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the profile.
System Event	Used to indicate the system event on which the algorithm must be executed. The valid values are: • **Account Creation** — Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when you create an invoice account using the profile. • **Contract Creation** — Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when contracts are created for an invoice account which is created using the profile.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the profile.
Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm code. **Note:** On specifying the algorithm code, the description of the algorithm appears corresponding to the **Algorithm** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the profile.

2. Enter the required details.

   Note: You can search for an algorithm by clicking the **Search** (🔍) icon corresponding to the **Algorithm** field.

3. If you want to associate more than one algorithm with the profile, click the **Plus** (➕) icon and then repeat step *2*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove an algorithm from the profile, click the **Minus** (➖) icon corresponding to the algorithm.

4. Click **Save**.

   The algorithms are associated with the profile.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a profile	*Defining a Profile* on page 661

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a profile	*Editing a Profile* on page 664
How to search for an algorithm	*Searching for an Algorithm* on page 732

Editing a Profile

Procedure

To edit a profile:

1. Search for the profile in the **Profile** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the profile whose details you want to edit.

   Note: If a profile is used in any construct, a message appears confirming whether you want to edit the profile. You must click **OK** if you want to edit the profile. Any changes made to a profile will not be reflected in any construct where the profile is already used unless you create the entity using the latest profile.

   The **Profile** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

   - **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the profile.
   - **Algorithms** — Used to indicate algorithms that must be triggered on various system events when you use the profile for creating an entity.

   The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Profile	Displays the profile name.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the profile.	Yes
Entity	Used to indicate the entity for which you want to create a profile. The valid values are: • Account	Yes
Status	Used to indicate the status of the profile. The valid values are: • Active • Inactive	Yes

   In addition, this tab contains the **Default Values** section where you can define the default values for fields related to the entity. These default values appear (depending on how the UI map is defined for creating an entity) when you create the entity (for example, an invoice account) using the profile. You can edit these values, if required. If the fields are displayed on the UI map, you can edit the values through the UI map or through the respective base entity screen (once the entity is created). However, if the fields are not displayed on the UI map, you can edit the values only through the respective base entity screen (once the entity is created). The **Default Values** section contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Field Name	Used to indicate the field for which you want to define the default value.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining the default value for a field.
Value	Used to specify the default value for the field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining the default value for a field.

3. Modify the details in the **Main** tab, if required.

   Note: If you want to define the default value for more than one field, click the **Plus** (+) icon in the **Default Values** section and then enter the required details. However, if you want to remove the default value of a field from the **Default Values** section, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the field.

4. Associate algorithms with the profile, if required.
5. Click **Save**.

   The changes made to the profile are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a profile	*Searching for a Profile* on page 661
How to associate algorithms with a profile	*Associating Algorithms with a Profile* on page 663

Deleting a Profile

Procedure

To delete a profile:

1. Search for the profile in the **Profile** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** (🗑) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the profile that you want to delete.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the profile.

   Note: You can only delete a profile which is not yet used in any construct.

3. Click **OK**.

   The profile is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a profile	*Searching for a Profile* on page 661

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Viewing the Profile Details

Procedure

To view the details of a profile:

1. Search for the profile in the **Profile** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the profile whose details you want to view.

   The **Profile** screen appears.
3. View the basic details of the profile in the **Main** tab.
4. View the algorithms associated with the profile in the **Algorithms** tab.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a profile	*Searching for a Profile* on page 661

Construct

The **Construct** screen allows you to search for a construct using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can define, edit, view, copy, activate, deactivate, approve, and reject a construct. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 666

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for a construct using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Construct ID	Used to specify the construct ID.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the construct.	No
Purpose	Used to indicate the purpose of the construct. The valid values are: • Invoice and Settlement	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the construct. The valid values are: • Active • Draft • Inactive • Pending Approval • Rejected	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective From	Used to specify the date from when the construct is effective.	No
Effective To	Used to specify the date till when the construct is effective.	No
Usage Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the usage account's identifier type based on which you want to search for a construct.	No
Usage Account Identifier	Used to indicate the usage account which belongs to the construct.	No
Invoice Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the invoice account's identifier type based on which you want to search for a construct.	No
Invoice Account Identifier	Used to indicate the invoice account which is used in the construct.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a construct.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Construct ID	Displays the construct ID.
Description	Displays the description of the construct.
Purpose	Indicates the purpose of the construct. The valid values are: • Invoice and Settlement
Effective From	Displays the date from when the construct is effective.
Effective To	Displays the date till when the construct is effective.
Status	Indicates the status of the construct. The valid values are: • Active • Draft • Inactive • Pending Approval • Rejected
Copy	On clicking the **Copy** ( ) icon, the **Construct** screen appears where you can create a construct using an existing construct.
View	On clicking the **View** ( ) icon, the **Construct** screen appears where you can view the details of the construct.
Edit	On clicking the **Edit** ( ) icon, the **Construct** screen appears where you can edit the details of the construct.

You can create a new construct by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a construct	*Searching for a Construct* on page 668
How to define a construct	*Defining a Construct* on page 668
How to edit a construct	*Editing a Construct* on page 683
How to copy a construct	*Copying a Construct* on page 688
How to view the details of a construct	*Viewing the Construct Details* on page 687

Searching for a Construct

Procedure

To search for a construct:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Invoice & Settlement Management** and then click **Construct**.

   The **Construct** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.
5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of constructs that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Construct screen	*Construct* on page 666
Search zone	*Search* on page 666

Defining a Construct

Procedure

To define a construct:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Invoice & Settlement Management** and then click **Construct**.

   The **Construct** screen appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.

   The **Construct** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

   - **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the construct.
   - **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the construct.

   The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Description	Used to specify the description for the construct.	Yes
Purpose	Used to indicate the purpose of the construct. The valid values are: • **Invoice and Settlement** — Indicates that you want to use the construct for billing and settlement. **Note:** Here, settlement includes receivables and payables	Yes
Status	Indicates the status of the construct. By default, the **Draft** option is selected from the list.	Not applicable
Effective From	Used to specify the date from when the construct is effective. **Note:** The effective from date cannot be later than the effective to date.	Yes
Effective To	Used to specify the date till when the construct is effective. **Note:** The effective to date cannot be earlier than the effective from date.	No

   In addition, this tab contains the following sections:

   - **Include Usage Accounts** — Used to indicate the customers and their usage accounts for which you want to define the construct. One usage account can belong to only one active construct and not to multiple active constructs at the same time.
   - **Exclude Usage Accounts** — Used to indicate the usage accounts of the customers to which this construct is not applicable.
   - **Include Billable Charges** — Used to indicate the billable charges that you want to bill through an invoice account. The system will only consider billable charges of those usage accounts for which this construct is defined.
   - **Include Adjustments** — Used to indicate the adjustments that you want to bill through an invoice account. The system will only consider adjustments of those usage accounts for which this construct is defined.

   Tip: Alternatively, you can access the **Construct** screen by clicking the **Add** () icon corresponding to the **Construct** menu option.

5. Enter the required details in the **Main** tab.
6. Include the customers and their usage accounts for which you want to define the construct.
7. Exclude the usage accounts (to which the construct is not applicable), if required.
8. Include the billable charges that you want to bill through an invoice account.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

9. Include the adjustments (if any) that you want to bill through an invoice account.
10. Define characteristics for the construct, if required.
11. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then
Save the construct in the draft version	1. Click **Save as Draft**. The construct is created and the status of the construct is set to **Draft**. The construct ID is generated automatically when the construct is created.
Activate the construct	1. Click **Activate**. The construct is created and the status of the construct is set to **Active**. The construct ID is generated automatically when the construct is created. **Note:** The **Activate** button appears while defining a construct only when the approval workflow process is not configured for construct.
Send the construct for approval	1. Click **Send for Approval**. The construct is created and the approval workflow request is raised for the construct. The status of the construct is set to **Pending Approval**. In addition, the construct ID is generated automatically when the construct is created. **Note:** The **Send for Approval** button appears while defining a construct only when the approval workflow process is configured for construct.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Construct screen	*Construct* on page 666
Search zone	*Search* on page 666
How to include usage accounts in a construct	*Including Usage Accounts in a Construct* on page 670
How to exclude usage accounts from a construct	*Excluding Usage Accounts from a Construct* on page 672
How to include billable charges in a construct	*Including Billable Charges in a Construct* on page 673
How to include adjustments in a construct	*Including Adjustments in a Construct* on page 676
How to define characteristics for a construct	*Defining Characteristics for a Construct* on page 682

Including Usage Accounts in a Construct

While defining a construct, you need to indicate the customers and their usage accounts for which you want to define the construct. The system allows you to select a set of usage accounts based on the criteria using the account selection template.

Note: One usage account can belong to only one active construct and not to multiple active constructs at the same time.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Prerequisites

To include usage accounts in a construct, you should have:

- Persons, usage accounts, and account selection templates defined in the application

Procedure

To include usage accounts in a construct:

1. Click the **Expand** (▭) icon corresponding to the **Include Usage Accounts** section.

   The **Include Usage Accounts** section appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Customer Information	Used to indicate the person or customer whose usage accounts you want to include in the construct.	Yes
Account Selection Template	Used to indicate the account selection template that you want to use for selecting a set of usage accounts.	Yes
Criteria	On clicking the **Specify** link, you can specify the values for the bind variables (which are defined in the account selection template).	No

   Note: You can hide the **Include Usage Accounts** section by clicking the **Collapse** (▬) icon.

2. Search for the person or customer whose usage accounts you want to include in the construct.

   The person ID appears in the **Customer Information** field. In addition, the person name automatically appears corresponding to the person ID.

   Note: You can search for a person or customer by clicking the **Search** (🔍) icon corresponding to the **Customer Information** field.

3. Search for the account selection template that you want to use for selecting a set of usage accounts.

   The template name appears in the **Account Selection Template** field. In addition, the template description automatically appears corresponding to the template name.

   Note: You can search for a template by clicking the **Search** (🔍) icon corresponding to the **Account Selection Template** field.

4. Click the **Specify** link in the **Criteria** column.

   The **Usage Account Selection Criteria** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Construct Description	Displays the description of the construct.	Not applicable
Criteria Description	Used to specify the description for the criteria.	No
Criteria	Indicates the bind variable for which you need to define the value. **Note:** The bind variables change depending on the account selection template that you have selected. If a business label is defined for the bind variable, the business label appears in this field.	Not applicable
Value	Used to specify the value for the bind variable.	No

5. Enter the required details.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

6. Click **OK**.

   The criteria description appears corresponding to the **Specify** link in the **Criteria** column.

7. If you want to include usage accounts of more than one person or customer, click the **Plus** (+) icon and then repeat the steps from 2 to 6.

   Note: However, if you want to remove usage accounts of any person or customer from the construct, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the person or customer.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a construct	*Defining a Construct* on page 668
How to edit a construct	*Editing a Construct* on page 683
How to search for a person or customer	*Searching for a Person* on page 742
How to search for an account selection template	*Searching for a Template* on page 748

Excluding Usage Accounts from a Construct

The system will determine the usage accounts based on the criteria defined in the **Include Usage Accounts** section. There might be situations when you do not want to include all usage accounts that satisfy the criteria in the construct. In such cases, you can list the usage accounts that should be excluded from the construct.

Procedure

To exclude usage accounts from a construct:

1. Click the **Expand** (□) icon corresponding to the **Exclude Usage Accounts** section.

   The **Exclude Usage Accounts** section appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Information	Used to indicate the usage account that you want to exclude from the construct.	No

   Note: You can hide the **Exclude Usage Accounts** section by clicking the **Collapse** (−) icon.

2. Search for the usage account that you want to exclude from the construct.

   The account ID appears in the **Account Information** field. In addition, additional information about the account automatically appears corresponding to the account ID.

   Note: You can search for an account by clicking the **Search** (🔍) icon corresponding to the **Account Information** field.

3. If you want to exclude more than one usage account, click the **Plus** (+) icon and then repeat the step 2.

   Note: However, if you do not want a usage account to be excluded from the construct, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the excluded usage account.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a construct	*Defining a Construct* on page 668
How to edit a construct	*Editing a Construct* on page 683

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a usage account	*Searching for an Account* on page 730

Including Billable Charges in a Construct

While defining a construct, you need to indicate the billable charges that you want to bill through an invoice account. You can use an existing invoice account, or you can create a new invoice account with or without using the profile. The system allows you to select a set of billable charges based on the criteria using the billable charge selection template.

Prerequisites

To include billable charges in a construct, you should have:

- Billable charge selection templates defined in the application
- Invoice account defined in the application (in case you want to use an existing invoice account)
- Profile defined in the application (in case you want to create an invoice account using the profile)

Procedure

To include billable charges in a construct:

1. Click the **Expand** (🗖) icon corresponding to the **Include Billable Charges** section.

   The **Include Billable Charges** section appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Priority	Used to indicate the order in which the bill segments must be generated for a set of billable charges on the invoice account. **Note:** This field is used when you want to bill multiple set of billable charges through the same invoice account.	Yes
Billable Charge Selection Template	Used to indicate the billable charge selection template that you want to use for selecting a set of billable charges.	Yes
Criteria	On clicking the **Specify** link, you can specify the values for the bind variables (which are defined in the billable charge selection template).	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)

Invoice Account	Used to indicate the invoice account through which you want to bill the usage accounts' charges. It contains the following sub-fields:
	• **First** — Used to indicate whether you want to use an existing invoice account or create a new invoice account. The valid values are:
	  • Choose Existing Account
	  • Create New Account
	• **Second** — Used to indicate the existing invoice account that you want to use. The **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Search Account** screen appears.
	• **Third** — Used to indicate whether you want to create a new invoice account using the profile. The blank value in this field indicates that you want to create a new invoice account without using any profile. On clicking the **Specify Account Information** link corresponding to this field, the **Create Invoice Account** screen appears.
		Yes

Note: You can hide the **Include Billable Charges** section by clicking the **Collapse** ( ) icon.

2. Enter the sequence number in the **Priority** field.
3. Search for the billable charge selection template that you want to use for selecting a set of billable charges.

   The template name appears in the **Billable Charge Selection Template** field. In addition, the template description automatically appears corresponding to the template name.

   Note: You can search for a template by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Billable Charge Selection Template** field.
4. Click the **Specify** link in the **Criteria** column.

   The **Billable Charge Selection Criteria** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Construct Description	Displays the description of the construct.	Not applicable
Criteria Description	Used to specify the description for the criteria.	No
Criteria	Indicates the bind variable for which you need to define the value. **Note:** The bind variables change depending on the billable charge selection template that you have selected. If a business label is defined for the bind variable, the business label appears in this field.	Not applicable
Value	Used to specify the value for the bind variable.	No

5. Enter the required details.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

6. Click **OK**.

   The criteria description appears corresponding to the **Specify** link in the **Criteria** column.

7. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then
Use an existing invoice account	1. Select the **Choose Existing Account** option from the **Invoice Account** list. The **Second** sub-field appears. 2. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to this field. The **Search Account** screen appears. 3. Search for the invoice account through which you want to bill the usage accounts' charges. The account ID appears in the **Second** sub-field. In addition, additional information about the account automatically appears corresponding to the account ID.
Create a new invoice account without using any profile	1. Select the **Create New Account** option from the **Invoice Account** list The **Third** sub-field appears. 2. Create a new invoice account by clicking the **Specify Account Information** link corresponding to this field.
Create a new invoice account using a profile	1. Select the **Create New Account** option from the **Invoice Account** list The **Third** sub-field appears. 2. Select the profile from the list. 3. Create a new invoice account by clicking the **Specify Account Information** link corresponding to this field.

8. If you want to include more than one set of billable charges, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat the steps from 2 to 7.

   Note: However, if you want to remove any set of billable charges from the construct, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the set of billable charges.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a construct	*Defining a Construct* on page 668
How to edit a construct	*Editing a Construct* on page 683
How to search for an invoice account	*Searching for an Account* on page 730
How to search for a billable charge selection template	*Searching for a Template* on page 748
How to create a new invoice account	*Creating an Invoice Account* on page 679

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Including Adjustments in a Construct

While defining a construct, you need to indicate the adjustments that you want to bill through an invoice account. You can use an existing invoice account, or you can create a new invoice account with or without using the profile. The system allows you to select a set of adjustments based on the criteria using the adjustment selection template.

Prerequisites

To include adjustments in a construct, you should have:

- Adjustment selection templates defined in the application
- Invoice account defined in the application (in case you want to use an existing invoice account)
- Profile defined in the application (in case you want to create an invoice account using the profile)

Procedure

To include adjustments in a construct:

1. Click the **Expand** (▭) icon corresponding to the **Include Adjustments** section.

   The **Include Adjustments** section appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Priority	Used to indicate the order in which the bill segments must be generated for a set of adjustments on the invoice account. **Note:** This field is used when you want to bill multiple set of adjustments through the same invoice account.	Yes
Adjustment Selection Template	Used to indicate the adjustment selection template that you want to use for selecting a set of adjustments.	Yes
Criteria	On clicking the **Specify** link, you can specify the values for the bind variables (which are defined in the adjustment selection template).	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)

Invoice Account	Used to indicate the invoice account through which you want to bill the usage accounts' adjustments. It contains the following sub-fields:
	• **First** — Used to indicate whether you want to use an existing invoice account or create a new invoice account. The valid values are:
	  • Choose Existing Account
	  • Create New Account
	• **Second** — Used to indicate the existing invoice account that you want to use. The **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Search Account** screen appears.
	• **Third** — Used to indicate whether you want to create a new invoice account using the profile. The blank value in this field indicates that you want to create a new invoice account without using any profile. On clicking the **Specify Account Information** link corresponding to this field, the **Create Invoice Account** screen appears.
		Yes

Note: You can hide the **Include Adjustments** section by clicking the **Collapse** ( ) icon.

2. Enter the sequence number in the **Priority** field.
3. Search for the adjustment selection template that you want to use for selecting a set of adjustments.

   The template name appears in the **Adjustment Selection Template** field. In addition, the template description automatically appears corresponding to the template name.

   Note: You can search for a template by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Adjustment Selection Template** field.
4. Click the **Specify** link in the **Criteria** column.

   The **Adjustment Selection Criteria** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Construct Description	Displays the description of the construct.	Not applicable
Criteria Description	Used to specify the description for the criteria.	No
Criteria	Indicates the bind variable for which you need to define the value. **Note:** The bind variables change depending on the adjustment selection template that you have selected. If a business label is defined for the bind variable, the business label appears in this field.	Not applicable
Value	Used to specify the value for the bind variable.	No

5. Enter the required details.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

6. Click **OK**.

   The criteria description appears corresponding to the **Specify** link in the **Criteria** column.

7. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then
Use an existing invoice account	1. Select the **Choose Existing Account** option from the **Invoice Account** list. The **Second** sub-field appears. 2. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to this field. The **Search Account** screen appears. 3. Search for the invoice account through which you want to bill the usage accounts' adjustments. The account ID appears in the **Second** sub-field. In addition, additional information about the account automatically appears corresponding to the account ID.
Create a new invoice account without using any profile	1. Select the **Create New Account** option from the **Invoice Account** list The **Third** sub-field appears. 2. Create a new invoice account by clicking the **Specify Account Information** link corresponding to this field.
Create a new invoice account using a profile	1. Select the **Create New Account** option from the **Invoice Account** list The **Third** sub-field appears. 2. Select the profile from the list. 3. Create a new invoice account by clicking the **Specify Account Information** link corresponding to this field.

8. If you want to include more than one set of adjustments, click the **Plus** ( ) icon and then repeat the steps from 2 to 7.

   Note: However, if you want to remove any set of adjustments from the construct, click the **Minus** () icon corresponding to the set of adjustments.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a construct	*Defining a Construct* on page 668
How to edit a construct	*Editing a Construct* on page 683
How to search for an invoice account	*Searching for an Account* on page 730
How to search for an adjustment selection template	*Searching for a Template* on page 748
How to create a new invoice account	*Creating an Invoice Account* on page 679

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Creating an Invoice Account

Prerequisites

To create an invoice account, you should have:

- Persons, currencies, customer classes, bill cycles, account identifier types, collection classes, auto pay sources, and auto pay route types defined in the application
- Target contract type (characteristic type) defined on usage accounts' contracts' contract type
- Default account creation algorithm defined using the C1-ACTCR-IC algorithm type
- Default contract creation algorithm defined using the C1-CTMP-IC algorithm type

Procedure

To create an invoice account:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then
Create an invoice account using a profile	1. Select the **Create New Account** option from the **Invoice Account** list The **Third** sub-field appears. 2. Select the profile from the list.
Create an invoice account without using any profile	1. Select the **Create New Account** option from the **Invoice Account** list in the **Include Billable Charges** section. The **Third** sub-field appears.

2. Click the **Specify Account Information** link.

   The **Create Invoice Account** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Construct Description	Displays the description of the construct.	Not applicable
Customer Class	Used to indicate the customer class to which the account belongs.	Yes
Bill Cycle	Used to indicate the bill cycle of the account.	Yes
Main Person	Used to indicate the person for whom you want to create the account.	Yes
Invoice Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to create the bills for the account.	Yes
Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the account identifier type.	Yes
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value for the account identifier type.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Collection Class	Used to indicate the collection class to which the account belongs.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information about the account.	No

In addition, this screen contains the following sections:

- **Override Mailing Address** — Used to indicate whether you want to send the account's bills to an override address. Typically, you would only use this option if the person has multiple accounts and each account's bills should be sent to a different address. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Address Line 1	Used to specify the house number and apartment name.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are overriding the address.
Address Line 2	Used to specify the street name.	No
Address Line 3	Used to specify any landmark, if available.	No
Address Line 4	Used to specify the village, town, or city name.	No
State	Used to specify the state name.	No
County	Used to specify the county name.	No
Postal	Used to specify the postal or zip code.	No
Country	Used to specify the country name.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are overriding the address.

  Note: The fields in the **Override Mailing Address** section are enabled only when you select the **Override Mailing Address** check box.

- **Auto Pay Instructions** — Used to indicate whether the account's bill must be automatically paid through a debit or credit card. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Auto Pay Source Code	Used to indicate the source of funds you want to use to satisfy the automatic payment request. For example, debit card or credit card.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining auto pay instructions for the account.
Auto Pay Route Type Code	Used to indicate when and how automatic payment requests of the account are routed to a financial institution. It also controls when the general ledger is impacted by the automatic payment financial transaction.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining auto pay instructions for the account.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Number	Used to indicate the customer's bank account or credit card number through which payment must be made.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining auto pay instructions for the account.
Expires On	Used to specify the date when the auto pay source (for example, credit card) expires.	No
Max Limit	Used to specify the maximum amount that can be automatically debited from the auto pay source.	No
Effective From	Used to specify the date from when the auto pay source is effective for the account.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining auto pay instructions for the account.
Effective To	Used to specify the date till when the auto pay source is effective for the account.	No
Comments	Used to specify additional information about the auto pay source.	No

3. Enter the required details.

   Note:

   You can search for a person, auto pay source type, and auto pay route type by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   If you have used any profile to create the invoice account, the default values (defined for the fields which are listed in the above tables) appear in the **Create Invoice Account** screen. You can use the default values or edit the values, if required.

4. Click **OK**.

   Note that the invoice account is created only when the construct is activated. In addition, the contracts for the invoice account are also created when the construct is activated. One contract is created for every target contract type set on usage accounts' contracts' contract type. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

   Construct 1 includes the following usage accounts:

Usage Account	Contract	Contract Type	Target Contract Type (Characteristic Type)
A	C1	CT1	TCT1
A	C2	CT2	TCT2
B	C3	CT1	TCT1
B	C4	CT2	TCT2
B	C5	CT3	TCT3
C	C6	CT3	TCT3

   In such case, the system will create three contracts — one using the target contract type TCT1, second using the target contract type TCT2, and third using the target contract type TCT3.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

If you have used any profile to create the invoice account and if the account and contract creation algorithms are associated with the profile, the system uses the respective algorithms in the specified order to create an invoice account and contracts. If any or both of these algorithms are not associated with the profile, an error message occurs. And, if the invoice account is created without using any profile, the system uses the default account and contract creation algorithms to create an invoice account and contracts.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to include billable charges in a construct	*Including Billable Charges in a Construct* on page 673
How to search for a person	*Searching for a Person* on page 742
How to search for an auto pay source	*Searching for an Auto Pay Source* on page 736
How to search for an auto pay route type	*Searching for an Auto Pay Route Type*

Defining Characteristics for a Construct

Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a construct, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Construct)

Procedure

To define characteristics for a construct:

1. Click the **Characteristics** tab in the **Construct** screen when you are creating or editing a construct.

   The **Characteristics** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the construct.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the construct.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the construct.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. **Note:** On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the construct.

2. Enter the required details.

   Note: If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** ( ) icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the construct, click the **Plus** (+) icon and then repeat step *2*.

   Note: However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the construct, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a construct	*Defining a Construct* on page 668
How to edit a construct	*Editing a Construct* on page 683
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	*Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value* on page 743

Editing a Construct

You can only edit a construct in the **Draft**, **Active**, or **Rejected** status. If a bill is already generated through a construct and it is in the **Pending** status, you cannot edit the details of the construct. You can only edit the effective to date of a construct when all bills generated through the construct are in the **Completed** status. The effective to date must be later than the last completed bill's bill date. Otherwise, the system will not allow you to edit the effective to date of the construct.

Procedure

To edit a construct:

1. Search for the construct in the **Construct** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the construct whose details you want to edit.

   The **Construct** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

   - **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the construct.
   - **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the construct.

   The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Description	Used to specify the description for the construct.	Yes
Construct ID	Displays the construct ID. **Note:** The construct ID is generated automatically when the construct is created.	Not applicable
Purpose	Indicates the purpose of the construct. The valid values are: • Invoice and Settlement	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Indicates the status of the construct. The valid values are: • Active • Draft • Inactive • Pending Approval • Rejected	Not applicable
Effective From	Used to specify the date from when the construct is effective. **Note:** The effective from date cannot be later than the effective to date.	Yes
Effective To	Used to specify the date till when the construct is effective. **Note:** The effective to date cannot be earlier than the effective from date.	No
Reason	Indicates the reason why the construct was rejected. **Note:** This field appears only when you are editing a rejected construct.	Not applicable
Comments	Displays additional information provided by the approver while rejecting the construct. **Note:** This field appears only when you are editing a rejected construct.	Not applicable

In addition, this tab contains the following sections:

- **Include Usage Accounts** — Used to indicate the customers and their usage accounts for which you want to define the construct. One usage account can belong to only one active construct and not to multiple active constructs at the same time.
- **Exclude Usage Accounts** — Used to indicate the usage accounts of the customers to which this construct is not applicable.
- **Include Billable Charges** — Used to indicate the billable charges that you want to bill through an invoice account. The system will only consider billable charges of those usage accounts for which this construct is defined.
- **Include Adjustments** — Used to indicate the adjustments that you want to bill through an invoice account. The system will only consider adjustments of those usage accounts for which this construct is defined.

3. Modify the details in the **Main** tab, if required.
4. If you want to include usage accounts of more than one person or customer, click the **Plus** () icon and then enter the required details in the **Include Usage Accounts** section.

   Note:

   However, if you want to remove usage accounts of any person or customer from the construct, click the **Minus** ( ) icon corresponding to the person or customer.

   You can view the usage accounts which are included in the construct by clicking the **View Usage Accounts** button.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

5. If you want to exclude more than one usage account, click the **Plus** (+) icon and then enter the required details in the **Exclude Usage Accounts** section.

   Note: However, if you do not want a usage account to be excluded from the construct, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the excluded usage account.

6. If you want to include more than one set of billable charges, click the **Plus** (+) icon and then enter the required details in the **Include Billable Charges** section.

   Note: However, if you want to remove any set of billable charges from the construct, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the set of billable charges.

7. If you want to include more than one set of adjustments, click the **Plus** (+) icon and then enter the required details in the **Include Adjustments** section.

   Note: However, if you want to remove any set of adjustments from the construct, click the **Minus** (−) icon corresponding to the set of adjustments.

8. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the construct, if required.

9. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	**Then**
Save the construct in the draft version	1. Click **Save as Draft**. The changes made to the construct are saved, and the status of the construct is set to **Draft**.
Activate the construct	1. Click **Activate**. The changes made to the construct are saved, and the status of the construct is set to **Active**. **Note:** The **Activate** button appears while editing a construct only when the approval workflow process is not configured for construct.
Send the construct for approval	1. Click **Send for Approval**. The changes made to the construct are saved, and the approval request is raised for the construct. The status of the construct is set to **Pending Approval**. **Note:** The **Send for Approval** button appears while editing a construct only when the approval workflow process is configured for construct.

Related Topics

For more information on...	**See...**
How to search for a construct	*Searching for a Construct* on page 668
How to include usage accounts in a construct	*Including Usage Accounts in a Construct* on page 670
How to exclude usage accounts from a construct	*Excluding Usage Accounts from a Construct* on page 672
How to include billable charges in a construct	*Including Billable Charges in a Construct* on page 673

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to include adjustments in a construct	*Including Adjustments in a Construct* on page 676
How to define characteristics for a construct	*Defining Characteristics for a Construct* on page 682
How to view the usage accounts included in a construct	*Viewing Usage Accounts* on page 686

Viewing Usage Accounts

Each row added in the **Include Usage Accounts** section will retrieve a set of usage accounts based on the criteria. Once you save the construct, you can view all usage accounts included in the construct.

Procedure

To view the usage accounts included in a construct:

1. Search for the construct in the **Construct** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the construct whose usage accounts you want to view.

   The **Construct** screen appears.
3. Click the **Expand** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Include Usage Accounts** section.

   The **Include Usage Accounts** section appears.
4. Click **View Usage Accounts**.

   The **View Usage Accounts** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Construct ID	Displays the construct ID. **Note:** The construct ID is generated automatically when the construct is created.	Not applicable
Construct Description	Displays the description of the construct.	Not applicable

In addition, this screen contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account Information	Displays information about the account. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Account** screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Customer Information	Displays information about the customer. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Person** screen appears with the details of the respective customer.

Note:

The customers' and their child customers' usage accounts that meet the specified criteria are included in the construct.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Pagination is used to display limited number of records (usage accounts) in the **View Usage Accounts** screen. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

5. View the usage accounts included in the construct in the **View Usage Accounts** screen.
6. If required, you can change the number of records displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.
7. If required, you can click the **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) buttons to navigate *b*etween pages.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a construct	*Searching for a Construct* on page 668

Viewing the Construct Details

Procedure

To view the details of a construct:

1. Search for the construct in the **Construct** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the construct *w*hose details you want to view.

   The **Construct** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

   - **General Information** — Displays basic details about the construct.
   - **Include Usage Accounts** — Indicates the customers and their usage accounts for which the construct is defined.
   - **Exclude Usage Accounts** — Indicates the usage accounts of the customers to which this construct is not applicable.
   - **Include Billable Charges** — Indicates the billable charges of the usage accounts which are billed through an invoice account.
   - **Include Adjustments** — Indicates the adjustments of the usage accounts which are billed through an invoice account.
   - **Characteristics** — Displays the characteristics defined for the construct.
   - **View Linked Accounts** — Indicates the usage accounts which are included in the construct.
3. View the basic details about the construct in the **General Information** section.
4. If you want to view other details, click the **Expand** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a construct	*Searching for a Construct* on page 668

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copying a Construct

Instead of creating a construct from scratch, you can create a new construct using an existing construct. This is possible through copying a construct. On copying a construct, the usage accounts, billable charges, and adjustments' selection criteria and characteristics are copied to the new construct. You can then edit the details, if required.

Prerequisites

To copy a construct, you should have:

- Construct (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application

Procedure

To copy a construct:

1. Search for the construct in the **Construct** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** ( ) icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the construct whose copy you want *t*o create.

   The **Construct** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Construct Description	Used to specify the description for the new construct.	Yes
Effective From	Used to specify the date from when the new construct is effective. **Note:** The effective from date cannot be later than the effective to date.	Yes
Effective To	Used to specify the date till when the new construct is effective. **Note:** The effective to date cannot be earlier than the effective from date.	No

3. Enter the required details.
4. Click **OK**.

   A row is added for the new construct in the **Search Results** section. The status of the construct is set to **Draft**.
5. Click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the new construct which you have created using an existing construct.

   The **Construct** screen appears.
6. Edit the details of the new construct, if required.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a construct	*Searching for a Construct* on page 668
How to edit a construct	*Editing a Construct* on page 683

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Activating a Construct

Only active constructs which are effective are used during the construct based billing process. Therefore, you need to activate a construct.

Prerequisites

To activate a construct, you should have:

- Target contract type (characteristic type) defined on usage accounts' contracts' contract type
- Default account creation algorithm defined using the C1-ACTCR-IC algorithm type
- Default contract creation algorithm defined using the C1-CTMP-IC algorithm type
- Assign the **C1-IC_AC** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do entries generated when the new invoice account is created while activating a construct

Procedure

To activate a construct:

1. Search for the draft construct in the **Construct** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the construct that you want to activate.

   The **Construct** screen appears.
3. Click **Activate**.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to activate a construct.

   Note: The **Activate** button appears while defining or editing a construct only when the approval workflow process is not configured for construct.
4. Click **OK**.

   The construct is activated. In addition, if you have opted to create a new invoice account to bill any usage accounts' charges and/or adjustments, the invoice account and contracts for the invoice account are created. One contract is created for every target contract type set on usage accounts' contracts' contract type. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

   Construct 1 includes the following usage accounts:

Usage Account	Contract	Contract Type	Target Contract Type (Characteristic Type)
A	C1	CT1	TCT1
A	C2	CT2	TCT2
B	C3	CT1	TCT1
B	C4	CT2	TCT2
B	C5	CT3	TCT3
C	C6	CT3	TCT3

   In such case, the system will create three contracts — one using the target contract type TCT1, second using the target contract type TCT2, and third using the target contract type TCT3.

   If you have used any profile to create an invoice account and if the account and contract creation algorithms are associated with the profile, the system uses the respective algorithms in the specified order to create the invoice account and contracts. If any or both of these algorithms are not associated with the profile, an error message

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

occurs. And, if an invoice account is created without using any profile, the system uses the default account and contract creation algorithms to create the invoice account and contracts.

Note: Along with the invoice account and contracts, a To Do is created using the **C1-IC_AC** To Do type. Users having a To Do role to which the **C1-IC_AC** To Do type is associated can view the To Do from the **To Do List** screen. On clicking the **Submitted Message** link corresponding to the To Do, the **Account** screen appears where you can review the details of the respective invoice account.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a construct	*Searching for a Construct* on page 668

Deactivating a Construct

You can only deactivate a construct which is in the **Draft** or **Active** status. On deactivating a construct, the status of the construct is set to **Inactive**. The system does not use the inactive construct during construct based billing process.

Procedure

To deactivate a construct:

1. Search for the draft or active construct in the **Construct** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the construct that you want to deactivate.

   The **Construct** screen appears.
3. Click **De-Activate**.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to inactive a construct.

   Note: The **De-Activate** button appears while editing a construct only when the construct is in the **Draft** or **Active** status. It appears irrespective of whether approval workflow process is configured for construct or not.
4. Click **OK**.

   If the approval workflow process is not configured for construct, the construct is deactivated and the status of the construct is set to **Inactive**. However, if the approval workflow process is configured for construct, the approval workflow request is raised for the construct and the status of the construct is set to **Pending Approval**. Only when the approver approves the request, the status of the construct is set to **Inactive**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a construct	*Searching for a Construct* on page 668

Approving a Construct

A submitter is a person who adds, modifies or de-activates a construct. The system does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the approval workflow request. Only the approver can approve or reject the approval workflow request.

Procedure

To approve a construct:

1. Search for the construct which is in the **Pending Approval** status in the **Construct** screen.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the construct on which you want to take an action.

   The **Construct** screen appears where you can review the changes, and accordingly approve or reject the approval workflow request based on your observations. If the construct is updated or de-activated, you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

3. Click **Approve**.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to approve a construct.

4. Click **OK**.

   A message appears indicating that the transaction was approved successfully.

   If the approval workflow request is raised while de-activating a construct, the status of the construct is set to **Inactive**. However, if the approval workflow request is raised while defining or editing a construct, the status of the construct is set to **Active**. In addition, if you have opted to create a new invoice account to bill any usage accounts' charges and/or adjustments, the invoice account and contracts for the invoice account are created. One contract is created for every target contract type set on usage accounts' contracts' contract type. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

   Construct 1 includes the following usage accounts:

Usage Account	Contract	Contract Type	Target Contract Type (Characteristic Type)
A	C1	CT1	TCT1
A	C2	CT2	TCT2
B	C3	CT1	TCT1
B	C4	CT2	TCT2
B	C5	CT3	TCT3
C	C6	CT3	TCT3

   In such case, the system will create three contracts — one using the target contract type TCT1, second using the target contract type TCT2, and third using the target contract type TCT3.

   If you have used any profile to create an invoice account and if the account and contract creation algorithms are associated with the profile, the system uses the respective algorithms in the specified order to create the invoice account and contracts. If any or both of these algorithms are not associated with the profile, an error message occurs. And, if an invoice account is created without using any profile, the system uses the default account and contract creation algorithms to create the invoice account and contracts.

   Note: Along with the invoice account and contracts, a To Do is created using the **C1-IC_AC** To Do type. Users having a To Do role to which the **C1-IC_AC** To Do type is associated can view the To Do from the **To Do List** screen. On clicking the **Submitted Message** link corresponding to the To Do, the **Account** screen appears where you can review the details of the respective invoice account.

5. Click **OK**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a construct	*Searching for a Construct* on page 668

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Rejecting a Construct

A submitter is a person who adds, modifies or de-activates a construct. The system does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the approval workflow request. Only the approver can approve or reject the approval workflow request.

Prerequisites

To reject a construct, you should have:

- Approval workflow reasons defined in the application

Procedure

To reject a construct:

1. Search for the construct which is in the **Pending Approval** status in the **Construct** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** ( ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the construct on which you want to take an action.

   The **Construct** screen appears where you can review the changes, and accordingly approve or reject the approval workflow request based on your observations. If the construct is updated or de-activated, you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.
3. Click **Reject**.

   A message appears confirming whether you want to reject a construct.
4. Click **OK**.

   The **Approval Workflow Reject Reason Code/Comment** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reason Code	Used to specify the reason why the construct is rejected.	Yes
Rejection Comment	Used to specify additional information while rejecting the construct.	Yes

5. Enter the required details.
6. Click **Reject**.

   A message appears indicating that the transaction was rejected successfully. The status of the construct is set to **Rejected**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a construct	*Searching for a Construct* on page 668

View Billing Hierarchy

The **View Billing Hierarchy** screen allows you to view the billing hierarchy of an invoice or usage account. It allows you to view the following:

- List of usage accounts billed through an invoice account
- List of invoice accounts through which a usage account is billed

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Viewing Usage Accounts Billed through an Invoice Account

Procedure

To view the usage accounts billed through an invoice account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Invoice & Settlement Management** and then click **View Billing Hierarchy**.

   The **View Billing Hierarchy** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
View Type	Used to indicate whether you want to view invoice or usage account billing details. The valid values are: • **Invoice Account View** — Used when you want to view the usage accounts billed through an invoice account. • **Usage Account View** — Used when you want to view the invoice accounts through which a usage account is billed.	Yes
As on Date	Used to search for billing information which is effective on the specified date. **Note:** By default, the date is set to the current date.	Yes
Account ID	Used to specify the invoice or usage account ID.	Yes

4. Select the **Invoice Account View** option from the **View Type** list.
5. Enter the date and invoice account ID in the respective fields.
6. Click **Search**.

   A list of usage accounts which are billed through the invoice account appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Usage Account	Indicates the usage account which is billed through the invoice account. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Account** screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Construct Description	Indicates the construct in which the usage account is included. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Construct** screen appears with the details of the respective construct.
Selection Criteria	Indicates the criteria used to select a set of usage account's charges or adjustments.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
View Billing Hierarchy screen	*View Billing Hierarchy* on page 692

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Viewing Invoice Accounts through which a Usage Account is Billed

Procedure

To view the invoice accounts through which a usage account is billed:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Invoice & Settlement Management** and then click **View Billing Hierarchy**.

   The **View Billing Hierarchy** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
View Type	Used to indicate whether you want to view invoice or usage account billing details. The valid values are: • **Invoice Account View** — Used when you want to view the usage accounts billed through an invoice account. • **Usage Account View** — Used when you want to view the invoice accounts through which a usage account is billed.	Yes
As on Date	Used to search for billing information which is effective on the specified date. **Note:** By default, the date is set to the current date.	Yes
Account ID	Used to specify the invoice or usage account ID.	Yes

4. Select the **Usage Account View** option from the **View Type** list.
5. Enter the date and usage account ID in the respective fields.
6. Click **Search**.

   A list of invoice accounts through which the usage account's charges or adjustments are billed appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Construct Description	Indicates the construct in which the usage account is included. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Construct** screen appears with the details of the respective construct.

   In addition, this section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Invoice Account	Indicates the invoice account through which the usage account's charges or adjustments are billed. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, the **Account** screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Priority	Indicates the order in which the bill segments must be generated for a set of billable charges or adjustments on the invoice account.
Selection Criteria	Indicates the criteria used to select a set of billable charges or adjustments.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
View Billing Hierarchy screen	*View Billing Hierarchy* on page 692

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 15

Trial Billing

Topics:

- *Trial Bill*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing facilitates you to generate trial bills before actual bill is generated for an account. This helps to review the trial bill and make the required corrections before the actual bill is generated. The Trial Billing feature is currently designed and developed for open item accounting and not for balance forward accounting.

The process of trial and actual billing is identical. The only difference is that you cannot freeze and complete trial bills. Also, during trial billing, the account balance is not updated. It is updated only when the actual bill is generated. You can generate trial bill only in case of regular billing, and not in case of adhoc billing. The trial bills can be generated only through the batch process. To generate trial bills, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

1. **Pending Bill Generation (C1-PNDBL)** – This batch is used to generate pending trial or actual bills for accounts that meet the criteria.

2. **Bill Segment Generation (C1-BLGEN)** – This batch is used to generate bill segments for pending trial or actual bills.

3. **Bill Completion (C1-BLPPR)** – This batch is used to generate post processing bill segments for pending trial or actual bills. The adjustments, if any, created on the account are swept onto the pending trial or actual bill. In addition, the bill routing information and bill messages are stamped on the pending trial or actual bill. If the adjustment currency is different from the account's invoice currency, the transfer adjustment is created on the pending actual bill. The transfer adjustment is not created on the pending trial bills. This is because, at present, the currency conversion for adjustments is not supported while generating trial bills. Finally, the status of the actual bill is set to **Complete** and the status of the trial bill remains as **Pending**.

Note: The adjustments which are in the **Freezable** status are not swept onto the trial bills. Only adjustments which are in the **Frozen** status are swept onto the trial bills.

The **Trial Bill** check box is added in the **Main** tab of the **Account** screen. If you leave the **Process All or Selected Accounts** parameter blank while executing the above batches, all accounts (that meet the criteria) irrespective of whether the **Trial Bill** check box is selected or not are considered for generating the trial bills. However, if the **Process All or Selected Accounts** parameter is set to **Y**, then only those accounts that meet the criteria and where the **Trial Bill** check box is selected are considered for generating the trial bills.

You can create an actual bill using a trial bill. While creating actual bills using trial bills, you need to specify the trial billing batch run number whose trial bills

you want to convert to the actual bills. To create actual bills using trial bills, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

1. **Pending Bill Generation (C1-PNDBL)** - This batch generates pending actual bill for accounts that meet the criteria.

2. **Bill Segment Generation (C1-BLGEN)** – This batch copies regular bill segments which are generated for the trial bill and stamps them onto the pending actual bill. It also copies the corresponding financial transactions (FTs).

3. **Bill Completion (C1-BLPPR)** – This batch copies post processing bill segments which are generated for the trial bill and stamps them onto the pending actual bill. The bill routing information and bill messages are copied from the trial bill to the pending actual bill. The adjustment, if any, created on the account are swept onto the pending actual bill. They are not copied from the respective trial bill. If the adjustment currency is different from the account's invoice currency, the transfer adjustment is created on the pending actual bill. Finally, the status of the actual bill is set to **Complete**.

The actual bill ID, bill segment ID and FT ID are different from the trial bill ID, bill segment ID and FT ID, respectively. If an actual bill is created using a trial bill, the system will stamp the trial bill ID on the actual bill. This helps you to track the trial bill of an actual bill.

The system allows you to view a trial bill through a user interface. It also allows you to print the trial bill in the PDF format. You can print a trial bill only when Oracle Documaker is integrated with Oracle Revenue Management and Billing. For more information about batches, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

The system allows you to view a trial bill through a user interface. It also allows you to print the trial bill in the PDF format. You can do this only when Oracle Documaker is integrated with Oracle Revenue Management and Billing.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Trial Bill

The **Trial Bill** screen allows you to search for a trial bill using various search criteria. It also allows you to view the details of a trial bill and print a trial bill in the PDF format. This screen consists of the following zones:

- *Search* on page 699

Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for trial bills using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The criteria are grouped as indicated by line separators between the criteria. Each group is independent from the other, and only one group is used at a time for searching. If you enter criteria in more than one group, the criteria from the first group is used for searching. For example, if you enter Account ID and Bill Description (which are in different criteria groups), the system searches using the Account ID criteria, which appears before the Bill Description criteria. The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person ID	Used to search for trial bills which are generated for a particular customer.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are searching for trial bills using any criteria in this criteria group.
Invoice Currency	Used to search for trial bills which are generated in a particular invoice currency.	No
From Bill Date	Used to search for trial bills which are generated from a particular date onwards.	No
To Bill Date	Used to search for trial bills which are generated till a particular date.	No
Account ID	Used to search for trial bills which are generated for a particular account.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are searching for trial bills using any criteria in this criteria group.
Bill ID	Used to search for a particular trial bill.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are searching for trial bills using any criteria in this criteria group.
Batch Run Date	Used to search for trial bills which are generated in a particular batch run.	No
Bill Description	Used to search for trial bills which are generated in a particular batch run.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** This field is required when you are searching for trial bills using any criteria in this criteria group.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a trial bill.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Description	Displays the description of the batch run in which the trial bill is generated.
Batch Run Date	Displays the date when the batch is executed to generate the trial bill.
View	On clicking the **View** ( ) icon, you can view the details of the trial bill.
Bill ID	Display the trial bill ID.
Current Charges	Displays the trial bill amount.
Batch Run Number	Indicates the batch run in which the trial bill is generated.
Person Name	Indicates the customer for whom the trial bill is generated.
Account ID	Indicates the account for which the trial bill is generated.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Trial Bill screen	*Trial Bill* on page 699
How to search for a trial bill	*Searching for a Trial Bill* on page 700
How to view the details of a trial bill	*Viewing the Trial Bill Details* on page 701
How to view the segments of a trial bill	*Viewing the Segments of a Trial Bill* on page 702
How to print a trial bill in the PDF format	*Printing a Trial Bill in the PDF Format* on page 704

Searching for a Trial Bill

Prerequisites

To search for a trial bill, you should have:

- Currencies defined in the application

Procedure

To search for a trial bill:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **Trial Bill**.

   The **Trial Bill** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in any of the criteria groups.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

5. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of trial bills that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Trial Bill screen	*Trial Bill* on page 699
Search zone	*Search* on page 699

Viewing the Trial Bill Details

Procedure

To view the details of a trial bill:

1. Search for the trial bill in the **Trial Bill** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the trial bill *w*hose details you want to view.

   The **Trial Bill** screen appears. It contains the following two tabs:

   - **Main** — Displays the basic details of the trial bill, including bill messages and characteristics defined for the trial bill.
   - **Bill Segments** — Displays the bill segments of the trial bill.

   The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the trial bill.
Bill ID	Displays the trial bill ID.
Bill Description	Displays the description of the batch run in which the trial bill is generated..
Account ID	Indicates the account for which the trial bill is generated.

   In addition, this screen has the following sections:

   - **Bill Summary** — This section summarizes the financial impact of the bill. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
New Charges	Displays the total amount of frozen bill segment financial transactions which are linked to the trial bill.
Adjustments	Displays the total amount of frozen or canceled adjustment financial transactions which are linked to the trial bill.
Corrections	Displays the total amount of canceled and/or rebilled bill segment financial transactions which are linked to the trial bill.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description
Total	Displays the sum of new charges, adjustments, and corrections amount.
No. of Bill Segments in Error	Indicates the number of bill segments in the trial bill which are in the **Error** status.

- **Bill Messages** — This section lists the bill messages that are stamped on the trial bill. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Bill Message	Displays the code that uniquely identifies the bill message.
Message on Bill	Displays the bill message.
Priority	Displays the priority which determines the order in which the bill message must be printed on the trial bill.
Insert Code	Indicates whether the bill message must be sent separately along with the trial bill.

- **Characteristics** — This section lists characteristics defined for the trial bill. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Characteristic Type	Displays the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

3. View the basic details of the trial bill in the **Main** tab.
4. If required, view the bill segments of the trial bill in the **Bill Segments** tab.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a trial bill	*Searching for a Trial Bill* on page 700
How to view the segments of a trial bill	*Viewing the Segments of a Trial Bill* on page 702

Viewing the Segments of a Trial Bill

Procedure

To view the segments of a trial bill:

1. Search for the trial bill in the **Trial Bill** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the trial bill whose details you want to view.

   The **Trial Bill** screen appears. It contains the following two tabs:

   - **Main** — Displays the basic details of the trial bill, including bill messages and characteristics defined for the trial bill.
   - **Bill Segments** — Displays the bill segments of the trial bill.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. Click the **Bill Segments** tab.

   The **Bill Segments** tab appears. It contains the following sections:

   - **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Usage Account ID	Used to search for bill segments which are generated for a particular usage account.	No
Contract Type	Used to search for bill segments which are generated for a particular type of contract.	No
Bill Segment Type	Used to search for a particular type of bill segments.	No
Product	Used to search for bill segments which are generated for a particular product.	No
Product Parameter	Used to search for bill segments where a particular product parameter is used to determine the product pricing.	No

   Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while filtering the segments of a trial bill.

   - **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Segment	Displays additional information about the bill segment.
Current Amount	Displays the bill segment amount
Construct ID	Indicates the construct through which the bill segment is generated.
Billable Charge ID	Indicates the billable charge for which the bill segment is generated.
Bill Segment ID	Displays the bill segment ID.
Bill Segment Status	Indicates the status of the bill segment.

   Note:

   Pagination is used to display limited number of records (i.e. bill segments) in the **Trial Bill** screen. You can change the number of bill segments displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

4. View the segment of the trial bill in the **Bill Segments** tab.
5. If required, you can change the number of bill segments displayed per page.

   Note: By default, the number of records that appear in each page depends on the minimum value defined in the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field. For example, if the **PAGE_NUMBER** lookup field has four values — 10, 20, 30, and 40, then the number of records displayed in each page, by default, would be 10.

6. If required, you can click the **First** (<<), **Previous** (<), **Next** (>), and **Last** (>>) buttons to navigate *b*etween pages.
7. If required, you can filter the bill segments using various search criteria.

   Note: You can search for an account, contract type, product, and product parameter by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a trial bill	*Searching for a Trial Bill* on page 700

Printing a Trial Bill in the PDF Format

Procedure

To print a trial bill in the PDF format:

1. Search for the trial bill in the **Trial Bill** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** ( ) icon in the **View** column corresponding to the trial bill whose details you want to view.

   The **Trial Bill** screen appears.
3. Click the **Display Bill** button in the **Main** tab.

   The trial bill is printed in the PDF format.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a trial bill	*Searching for a Trial Bill* on page 700

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 16

Bill Tolerance

Topics:

- *Prerequisites*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define tolerance limit for the bill amount. If the difference between the previous and current bill amount exceeds either positive or negative tolerance limit, a To Do entry is generated when you initiate the bill completion process. In addition, a To Do entry is generated for the first bill of an account during the bill completion process. Until you review and close the To Do entry, you cannot complete the bill. After you close the To Do entry, you need to initiate the bill completion process once again to freeze and complete the bill. Note that the To Do entries are generated only for regular bills and not for adhoc bills.

The **Bill Tolerance** feature is supported when you freeze and complete the regular bills through the user interface and through the charge based billing batch named **Bill Completion (C1-BLPPR)**. It is not yet supported when you freeze and complete the bill through the **BILLING** batch. In addition, this feature is not yet designed to work when bills are generated through the construct based billing batches.

For more information on how to setup the bill tolerance feature, refer to *Prerequisites* on page 706.

Prerequisites

To setup the bill tolerance feature, you need to do the following:

- Define an algorithm of the C1-BILL_TOLR algorithm type and attach it to the **Pre-Bill Completion Review** system event on the respective customer class. This algorithm type has the following parameters:
  - **Positive Tolerance Percentage** – Used to specify the positive tolerance limit in percentage.
  - **Negative Tolerance Percentage** – Used to specify the negative tolerance limit in percentage.
  - **Positive Tolerance Amount** - Used to specify the positive tolerance limit in amount.
  - **Negative Tolerance Amount** - Used to specify the negative tolerance limit in amount.
  - **Tolerance To Do Type** – Used to indicate that To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when the bill amount difference exceeds either positive or negative tolerance limit. This parameter is mandatory.
  - **First Bill To Do Type** – Used to indicate that To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when the first bill is generated for an account. This parameter is mandatory.
  - **Tolerance To Do Role** - Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only view the "%1 Bill Tolerance Limit Exceeded" To Do entry. This parameter is mandatory.
  - **First Bill To Do Role** - Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only view the "%1 To-do generated for First Bill" To Do entry. This parameter is mandatory.

  For example, if you set the **Positive Tolerance Percentage** parameter to 10 and the **Negative Tolerance Percentage** parameter to 15 in the algorithm, then in the following scenarios:

Current Bill Amount (USD)	Previous Bill Amount (USD)	Tolerance Amount Calculation	To Do Entry Generated (Yes or No)	Reason
120	100	100+(100*10)/100=110	Yes	Current Bill Amount is above Positive Tolerance Limit
115	105	105+(105*10)/100=115.5	No	Current Bill Amount is within Positive Tolerance Limit
80	100	100-(100*15)/100=85	Yes	Current Bill Amount is below Negative Tolerance Limit
95	110	110-(110*15)/100=93.5	No	Current Bill Amount is within Negative Tolerance Limit

  If the tolerance limit is specified in both percentage and amount, the system calculates the tolerance amount using percentage and amount, considers the minimum value, and then creates the To Do entry accordingly. For example, if you set the **Positive Tolerance Percentage** parameter to 10, the **Positive Tolerance Amount** parameter to 15, the **Negative Tolerance Percentage** parameter to 5, and the **Negative Tolerance Amount** parameter to 25 in the algorithm, then in the following scenarios:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Current Bill Amount (USD)	Previous Bill Amount (USD)	Tolerance Amount Calculation	To Do Entry Generated (Yes or No)	Reason
120	100	100+(100*10)/100=110 (Derived using positive tolerance percentage) 100+15=115 (Derived using positive tolerance amount) Minimum Value is 110 in Positive Scenario	Yes	Current Bill Amount is above Positive Tolerance Limit
180	200	200-(200*5)/100=190 (Derived using negative tolerance percentage) 200-25=175 (Derived using negative tolerance amount) Minimum Value is 190 in Negative Scenario	Yes	Current Bill Amount is below Negative Tolerance Limit

During the tolerance amount calculation, the system checks whether the **Multi-Currency Accounts** feature is enabled or disabled. If the **Multi-Currency Accounts** feature is enabled, the system converts the previous and current bill amount in the division's base currency when the invoice currency is different from the division's base currency. Once the currency conversion is done, the tolerance amount is calculated and To Do entry is generated accordingly.

- Set the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration to **True** if you want to enable the currency conversion feature during tolerance amount calculation
- Define the Tolerance and First Bill To Do types using the following information:
  - **Navigation Option** - billMaint
  - **Priority** – Priority 10 – Highest
  - **Message Category** - 11105
  - **Message Number** – 11009
  - **Sort Keys** — Define the following sort keys for the To Do type:

Sort Key	Use as Default	Sort Order
Bill ID	Yes	Ascending

  - **Drill Keys** — Define the following drill keys for the To Do type:

Table Name	Field Name
CI_BILL	BILL_ID

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to set the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)** feature configuration	*Setting the Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG) Feature Configuration* on page 759

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 17

GL Account Validation

Topics:

- *Static GL Account Validation*
- *Dynamic GL Account Validation*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to validate the GL account statically and dynamically. The static GL account validation means you can validate the GL account while creating or editing a distribution code. And, the dynamic GL account validation means you can validate the GL account while assigning it to trial and actual financial transactions through the batch process.

For more information about static GL account validation and dynamic GL account validation, refer to *Static GL Account Validation* on page 710 and *Dynamic GL Account Validation* on page 710, respectively.

Static GL Account Validation

If you want to validate the GL account while creating or editing a distribution code, you need to select the **Validate GL Account** check box in the **Distribution Code** screen. If the GL account is valid, the following string appears below the check box while saving the distribution code:

"GL Account is validated on YYYY-MM-DD"

And, if the GL account is invalid, the following string appears below the check box while saving the distribution code:

"GL Account is invalid"

If you want to enable the static GL account validation feature on the **Distribution Code** screen, you need to define an algorithm of the **C1-GLVAL** or **C1-GLVAL-COB** algorithm type and attach the algorithm to the **GL Account Validation** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options – Framework** screen. Both these algorithm types have one parameter named **GL Account Length**. You need to set the value of this parameter while creating the algorithm using the **C1-GLVAL** or **C1-GLVAL-COB** algorithm type. If you attach an algorithm of the **C1-GLVAL** algorithm type, the system checks whether the length of GL account is greater than or equal to the value defined in the **GL Account Length** parameter. If the length is greater than or equal to the specified length, the GL account is considered as valid. And, if the length is less than the specified length, the GL account is considered as invalid.

And, if you attach an algorithm of the **C1-GLVAL-COB** algorithm type, the system checks whether the length of GL account is equal to the value defined in the **GL Account Length** parameter. If the length is equal to the specified length, the GL account is considered as valid. And, if the length is less than or greater than the specified length, the GL account is considered as invalid.

Dynamic GL Account Validation

If you want to validate GL account while assigning it to trial and actual financial transactions, you need to set the **Validate GL Account** parameter to **Y** while executing the batch. If the GL account is valid, the date when the GL account is validated is added in the GLA_VAL_DT column of the CI_TRL_FT_GL or CI_FT_GL table, respectively, depending on whether the GL account is assigned to a trial or actual financial transaction.

If you want to enable the dynamic GL account validation feature in the C1-GLASN or GLASSGN2 batch, you need to define an algorithm of the **C1-GLVAL** or **C1-GLVAL-COB** algorithm type and attach the algorithm to either of the following:

- The **GL Account Validation** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen
- The **GL Account Validation** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options – Framework** screen

If the GL account validation algorithm is defined at both these algorithm spots, the algorithm defined at the division level always takes precedence over the algorithm defined in the installation options during dynamic GL account validation.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 18

Payment Distribution

Topics:

- *Prerequisites*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing until now supported payment distribution using the Bill ID and Contract ID match types. Now, you can also distribute payments using the following match types:

- **Bill Regular** – This match type is designed to work at the account level. This match type allows you to distribute payments against the bills of an account. The payment is applied to the bill segments of a bill based on the priority defined on the contract's contract type for which the bill segment is created.
- **Bill Segment** - This match type is designed to work at the account level. This match type allows you to distribute payments against the bill segments of an account. The payment is applied to the selected bill segments of an account.
- **Bill Weighted** - This match type is designed to work at the account level. This match type allows you to distribute payments against the bills of an account. The payment is applied to the bill segments of a bill based on the weighted average of the bill segment amount.
- **Suspense Contract** – This match type is designed to work at the account level. This match type allows you to distribute payments to contracts which are created using a contract type where the **Special Role** flag is set to **Suspense** and **Eligible for Billing** flag is set to **No**.

Note that the supporting algorithm types are shipped with the product. You need to define these match types in the system using the respective algorithm types. For more information, refer to *Prerequisites* on page 712.

You can use these match types while distributing payments from the **Payment Event** or **Payment Portal** screen. The **Payment Portal** screen is a new screen, which allows you to:

- Search for a Payment Event
- View Payments Created through a Payment Event
- View Segments of a Payment
- Create a Payment Event
- Edit a Payment Event
- Distribute Tender and/or Payment Amount
- Transfer All Payments of a Payment Event
- Cancel a Payment Event
- Freeze Payments of a Payment Event
- Delete a Payment Event

Prerequisites

To setup the payment distribution process, you need to do the following:

- Define an algorithm of the following algorithm types:
  - C1-PDOV-PYBL
  - C1-MDOV-BILL
  - C1-PDOV-PYBS
  - C1-MDOV-BSEG
  - C1-PDOV-WTBS
  - C1-MDOV-BILL
  - C1-PDOV-SATY
  - C1-MDOV-ONSA
- Define the following match types:

Match Type	Description	Payment Distribution Override Algorithm	Manual Distribution Algorithm	Entity Type	Match Type Search Zone	Entity Flag
BILLR	Bill Regular	C1-PDOV-PYBL	C1-MDOV-BILL	Account	C1_ACCTSRCH	Bill
BILLSEG	Bill Segment	C1-PDOV-PYBS	C1-MDOV-BSEG	Account	C1_ACCTSRCH	Bill
BILLW	Bill Weighted	C1-PDOV-WTBS	C1-MDOV-BILL	Account	C1_ACCTSRCH	Bill Segment
BYSATY	Suspense Contract	C1-PDOV-SATY	C1-MDOV-ONSA	Account	C1_ACCTSRCH	Contract

- Set the following feature configurations as per the business requirements:
  - C1_PAYBYBTCH
  - C1-PAYFLUPLD
  - C1-PAYPORTAL
  - C1-ADJ-PAY

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Chapter 19

Reporting

Topics:

- *Report Search*
- *Report Submission*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing (ORMB) can optionally be configured to use the reporting feature where Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher (BI Publisher) is used as a reporting tool. ORMB provides you with 10 sample reports that you can use for reporting or as a starting point for creating a new report. While generating the report, data is extracted from ORMB database and presented in the predefined format to the user. Oracle BI Publisher is used for creating the format in which the data in the report needs to be presented to the user.

You can generate reports from ORMB only if Oracle BI Publisher is integrated with ORMB. You can also schedule the reports that you want to execute at a predefined time and interval in Oracle BI Publisher. Once the reports are generated, you can view these reports in Oracle BI Publisher.

To use the reporting feature, you need to:

1. Install Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher.
2. Configure ORMB to use the reporting feature. For more information on how to install and configure reports in ORMB, refer to the *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Reports Installation Guide.*
3. Import report specific metadata from the ORMB sample database and/or manually enter the metadata for reports. For more information on how to import the metadata, refer to the *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Reports Installation Guide*.

Report Search

The **Report Search** window allows you to search for a report. This screen contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Report Code	Used to specify the report code.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the report.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Report Code	Displays the report code.
Description	Displays the description of the report.
External Reference ID	Displays the code that uniquely identifies the report in Oracle BI Publisher.

Report Submission

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides you with the following reports that you can use for reporting or as a starting point for creating a new report:

- Open Cases by Type (CI_CSEOPN)
- Case Statistics for a Given Status (CI_CSESGS)
- Case Statistics by Case Type (CI_CSESTS)
- Customer Contact by Type (CI_CUSTCN)
- GL Accounting Summary (CI_GLACSM)
- Letter Print - Sample Welcome Letter (CI_LTRGN_ENG)
- Payments Balance (CI_PMTBAL)
- Receivables Aging (CI_RCVAGA)
- To Do Entries (CI_TDENTR)
- Tax Payables Analysis (CI_TXPYBL)

The **Report Submission** screen allows you to generate these reports. This screen is available only if the system is integrated with the third party reporting system. This screen contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Report Code	Used to specify the report code. **Note:** You can search for a report by clicking the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field.	Yes
Report Description	Displays the description of the report.	Not applicable
Sequence	Displays the sequence number of the parameter.	Not applicable

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	Displays the parameters defined for the report.	Not applicable
Parameter Value	Used to specify the value for the parameter. **Note:** For some of the parameters, the default value is displayed. These default values are defined for the parameters in the **Report Definition** screen.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If the parameter is set as required while defining a report, you have to specify the value for the parameter.

This screen contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Submit	Used to generate the report.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to generate the CI_CSEOPN report	*Generating the CI_CSEOPN Report* on page 715
How to generate the CI_CSESGS report	*Generating the CI_CSESGS Report* on page 717
How to generate the CI_CSESTS report	*Generating the CI_CSESTS Report* on page 718
How to generate the CI_CUSTCN report	*Generating the CI_CUSTCN Report* on page 719
How to generate the CI_GLACSM report	*Generating the CI_GLACSM Report* on page 720
How to generate the CI_LTRGN_ENG report	*Generating the CI_LTRGN_ENG Report* on page 721
How to generate the CI_PMTBAL report	*Generating the CI_PMTBAL Report* on page 722
How to generate the CI_RCVAGA report	*Generating the CI_RCVAGA Report* on page 723
How to generate the CI_TDENTR report	*Generating the CI_TDENTR Report* on page 724
How to generate the CI_TXPYBL report	*Generating the CI_TXPYBL Report* on page 725

Generating the CI_CSEOPN Report

The **Open Cases by Type (CI_CSEOPN)** report allows you to view cases that are currently open. The data is grouped based on the case type. For each case type, the report shows:

- Number of open cases in various age buckets (the last three parameters control the size (in days) of each bucket)
- Percentage of open cases in various age buckets
- Details of the open cases

Procedure

To generate the CI_CSEOPN report:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Batch** and then click **Report Submission**.

   The **Report Search** window appears.
4. Enter **CI_CSEOPN** in the **Report Code** field.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Report Code** field.

   The **Report Submission** screen appears with the following parameters:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Used to search for cases that are created on or after the specified date and are still open. **Note:** If you do not specify the start date, the system sets the start date to the current date minus seven days.	No
End Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Used to search for cases that are created on or before the specified date and are still open. **Note:** If you do not specify the end date, the system sets the current date as the end date.	No
Case Type	Used to specify the case type. **Note:** If you specify the case type, only open cases of that type are listed in the report.	No
Responsible User	Used to specify the user name. **Note:** If you specify the user name, only open cases that are handled by that user are listed in the report.	No
First Bucket High Limit	Used to group cases that are open for less than or equal to the specified number of days.	Yes
Second Bucket High Limit	Used to group cases that are open for less than or equal to the specified number of days, but greater than the number of days specified in the **First Bucket High Limit** field.	Yes
Third Bucket High Limit	Used to group cases that are open for less than or equal to the specified number of days, but greater than the number of days specified in the **Second Bucket High Limit** field.	Yes

6. Enter the parameters based on which you want to generate the report.
7. Click **Submit**.

   The **Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise Login** page appears.
8. Enter the BI publisher user name and password.
9. Click **Login**.

   The report appears in Oracle BI Publisher.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Report Search window	*Report Search* on page 714
Report Submission screen	*Report Submission* on page 714

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Generating the CI_CSESGS Report

The **Case Statistics for a Given Status (CI_CSESGS)** report allows you to view cases of a given case type that transitioned to a given status within a given date range. It also shows the number and percentage of cases grouped by the time it took to reach the status in the graphical format. These statistics are grouped into age buckets whose size (in days) is controlled by the following parameters:

- First Bucket High Limit
- Second Bucket High Limit
- Third Bucket High Limit

In addition, this report shows the minimum, maximum, average, and median time taken to reach the status.

Procedure

To generate the CI_CSESGS report:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Batch** and then click **Report Submission**.

   The **Report Search** window appears.
4. Enter **CI_CSESGS** in the **Report Code** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Report Code** field.

   The **Report Submission** screen appears with the following parameters:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Used to search for cases of a given case type that transitioned to a given status on or after the specified date. **Note:** If you do not specify the start date, the system sets the start date to the current date minus seven days.	No
End Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Used to search for cases of a given case type that transitioned to a given status on or before the specified date. **Note:** If you do not specify the end date, the system sets the current date as the end date.	No
Case Type/Status	Used to specify the case type and status for which you want to generate the report. You must specify the criteria in the `Case Type|Status` format.	Yes
Responsible User	Used to specify the user name. **Note:** If you specify the user name, only cases that are handled by that user are listed in the report.	No
First Bucket High Limit (in days)	Used to group cases that took less than or equal to the specified number of days to reach a given status.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Second Bucket High Limit (in days)	Used to group cases that took less than or equal to the specified number of days, but greater than the number of days specified in the **First Bucket High Limit** field to reach a given status.	No
Third Bucket High Limit (in days)	Used to group cases that took less than or equal to the specified number of days, but greater than the number of days specified in the **Second Bucket High Limit** field to reach a given status.	No

6. Enter the parameters based on which you want to generate the report.
7. Click **Submit**.

   The **Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise Login** page appears.
8. Enter the BI publisher user name and password.
9. Click **Login**.

   The report appears in Oracle BI Publisher.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Report Search window	*Report Search* on page 714
Report Submission screen	*Report Submission* on page 714

Generating the CI_CSESTS Report

The **Case Statistics by Case Type (CI_CSESTS)** report allows you to view the number and percentage of cases that are open and/or closed. The data is grouped based on the case type.

Procedure

To generate the CI_CSESTS report:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Batch** and then click **Report Submission**.

   The **Report Search** window appears.
4. Enter **CI_CSESTS** in the **Report Code** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Report Code** field.

   The **Report Submission** screen appears with the following parameters:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Used to search for the following: • Cases that are created on or after the specified date and are currently open • Cases that are closed on or after the specified date	No
End date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Used to search for the following: • Cases that are created on or before the specified date and are currently open • Cases that are closed on or before the specified date	No
Case Condition	Used to indicate whether you want to generate the report for open or closed cases. • OPEN • CLSD If you want to generate the report for both open and closed cases, leave this field blank.	No

6. Enter the parameters based on which you want to generate the report.
7. Click **Submit**.

   The **Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise Login** page appears.
8. Enter the BI publisher user name and password.
9. Click **Login**.

   The report appears in Oracle BI Publisher.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Report Search window	*Report Search* on page 714
Report Submission screen	*Report Submission* on page 714

Generating the CI_CUSTCN Report

The **Customer Contact by Type (CI_CUSTCN)** report allows you to view all customer contacts that are created for a given contact class and contact type within a given date range. It displays information both in textual and graphical formats.

Procedure

To generate the CI_CUSTCN report:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Batch** and then click **Report Submission**.

   The **Report Search** window appears.

4. Enter **CI_CUSTCN** in the **Report Code** field.

5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Report Code** field.

   The **Report Submission** screen appears with the following parameters:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Used to search for customer contacts that are created on or after the specified date.	No
End date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Used to search for customer contacts that are created on or before the specified date.	No
Customer Contact Class/Type	Used to specify the customer contact class and type for which you want to generate the report. If you want to generate the report for all contact types within a given contact class, just specify the customer contact class. However, if you want to generate the report for a given contact type within a given contact class, then specify both in the `Customer Contact Class|Type` format.	No

6. Enter the parameters based on which you want to generate the report.

7. Click **Submit**.

   The **Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise Login** page appears.

8. Enter the BI publisher user name and password.

9. Click **Login**.

   The report appears in Oracle BI Publisher.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Report Search window	*Report Search* on page 714
Report Submission screen	*Report Submission* on page 714

Generating the CI_GLACSM Report

The **GL Accounting Summary (CI_GLACSM)** report allows you to view the financial transactions created in ORMB for a given accounting period. The data is grouped based on the GL account types, divisions, and GL divisions.

Procedure

To generate the CI_GLACSM report:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Batch** and then click **Report Submission**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Report Search** window appears.

4. Enter **CI_GLACSM** in the **Report Code** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Report Code** field.

   The **Report Submission** screen appears with the following parameters:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Accounting period	Used to specify the accounting period for which you want to generate the report. You must specify a valid fiscal year and accounting period for a valid accounting calendar in the following format: `CALENDAR_ID|FISCAL_YEAR|ACCOUNTING_PERIOD`	Yes
Characteristic Type - Account type	Used to specify the GL account type for which you want to generate the report.	Yes

6. Enter the parameters based on which you want to generate the report.
7. Click **Submit**.

   The **Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise Login** page appears.
8. Enter the BI publisher user name and password.
9. Click **Login**.

   The report appears in Oracle BI Publisher.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Report Search window	*Report Search* on page 714
Report Submission screen	*Report Submission* on page 714

Generating the CI_LTRGN_ENG Report

The **Letter Print - Sample Welcome Letter (CI_LTRGN_ENG)** report allows you to produce a sample welcome letter for a new customer. The letter contains the name and address of the company which is extracted from the installation options. The text for the letter is defined in the report layout. The report is printed according to the customer's language definition, and not based on the user's language definition.

This report contains the following text:

“Welcome to `<Company Name>`. You have been filed with ID Number `<Person ID>`.

We hope to provide you with our best possible service. If you experience any problems or have any questions, please contact one of our customer service representatives at (800)1234567.”

Note: The `<Company Name>` is stored as a message in the installation options, and the `<Person ID>` is stored in the customer contact.

Procedure

To generate the CI_LTRGN_ENG report:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Batch** and then click **Report Submission**.

   The **Report Search** window appears.
4. Enter **CI_LTRGN_ENG** in the **Report Code** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Report Code** field.

   The **Report Submission** screen appears with the following parameters:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Batch Switch	Used to indicate whether you want to access this report online or not. To access the report online, set the value to **N**.	Yes
Customer Contact ID	Used to specify the ID of the customer contact associated with the main customer for whom you want to generate the letter.	Yes

6. Enter the parameters based on which you want to generate the report.
7. Click **Submit**.

   The **Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise Login** page appears.
8. Enter the BI publisher user name and password.
9. Click **Login**.

   The report appears in Oracle BI Publisher.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Report Search window	*Report Search* on page 714
Report Submission screen	*Report Submission* on page 714

Generating the CI_PMTBAL Report

The **Payments Balance (CI_PMTBAL)** report allows you to view all payments received and cancelled within a given date range. The data is grouped based on the tender source and type of payment. This report is used for financial control and audit purposes.

Procedure

To generate the CI_PMTBAL report:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Batch** and then click **Report Submission**.

   The **Report Search** window appears.
4. Enter **CI_PMTBAL** in the **Report Code** field.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Report Code** field.

   The **Report Submission** screen appears with the following parameters:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to search for payments received and cancelled on or after the specified date. **Note:** If you do not specify the start date, the system sets the start date to the current date minus seven days.	No
End Date	Used to search for payments received and cancelled on or before the specified date. **Note:** If you do not specify the end date, the system sets the current date as the end date.	No

6. Enter the parameters based on which you want to generate the report.
7. Click **Submit**.

   The **Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise Login** page appears.
8. Enter the BI publisher user name and password.
9. Click **Login**.

   The report appears in Oracle BI Publisher.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Report Search window	*Report Search* on page 714
Report Submission screen	*Report Submission* on page 714

Generating the CI_RCVAGA Report

The **Receivables Aging (CI_RCVAGA)** report lists all accounts and their arrears information as of the input cutoff date using the balance forward accounting method. Outstanding debt is placed into the buckets provided as input using the age of the debt as of the cutoff date. For each account, charges that are not yet billed are displayed in the **Unbilled A/R ($)** column.

Procedure

To generate the CI_RCVAGA report:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Batch** and then click **Report Submission**.

   The **Report Search** window appears.
4. Enter **CI_RCVAGA** in the **Report Code** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Report Code** field.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Report Submission** screen appears with the following parameters:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Cutoff Date	Used to specify the date from when the arrears should be calculated. **Note:** If you do not specify the cutoff date, the system sets the cutoff date to the current date minus seven days.	No
1st Bucket High Limit	Used to group debts that are outstanding for less than or equal to the specified number of days.	Yes
2nd Bucket High Limit	Used to group debts that are outstanding for less than or equal to the specified number of days, but greater than the number of days specified in the **First Bucket High Limit** field.	Yes
3rd Bucket High Limit	Used to group debts that are outstanding for less than or equal to the specified number of days, but greater than the number of days specified in the **Second Bucket High Limit** field.	Yes

6. Enter the parameters based on which you want to generate the report.
7. Click **Submit**.

   The **Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise Login** page appears.
8. Enter the BI publisher user name and password.
9. Click **Login**.

   The report appears in Oracle BI Publisher.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Report Search window	*Report Search* on page 714
Report Submission screen	*Report Submission* on page 714

Generating the CI_TDENTR Report

The **To Do Entries (CI_TDENTR)** report allows you to view the total number of To Do entries that are open or being worked on for each To Do type. It displays information both in textual and graphical formats.

Procedure

To generate the CI_TDENTR report:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Batch** and then click **Report Submission**.

   The **Report Search** window appears.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

4. Enter **CI_TDENTR** in the **Report Code** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Report Code** field.

   The **Report Submission** screen appears with the following parameters:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
To Do Entry Status	Used to include To Do entries with the specified status in the report. **Note:** If you leave this field blank, the report shows To Do entries with all statuses.	No
To Do Type	Used to include To Do entries with the specified To Do type in the report. **Note:** If you leave this field blank, the report shows To Do entries with all To Do types.	No

6. Enter the parameters based on which you want to generate the report.
7. Click **Submit**.

   The **Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise Login** page appears.
8. Enter the BI publisher user name and password.
9. Click **Login**.

   The report appears in Oracle BI Publisher.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Report Search window	*Report Search* on page 714
Report Submission screen	*Report Submission* on page 714

Generating the CI_TXPYBL Report

The **Tax Payables Analysis (CI_TXPYBL)** report allows you to view the tax amounts that were levied by the company to customers within a given date range. It also shows the tax exempted during that period.

This report considers tax amounts of only those financial transactions which satisfy the following criteria:

- The financial transaction is frozen.
- The accounting date of the financial transaction is within a given date range.
- The distribution code associated with the financial transaction has a characteristic type and value that matches the one specified as the input parameters.

The report also provides tax exemption information for bill segments whose financial transactions satisfy the above criteria. The tax exemption information is retrieved by looking at the bill calculation lines associated with the financial transaction's bill segment.

Procedure

To generate the CI_TXPYBL report:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Batch** and then click **Report Submission**.

   The **Report Search** window appears.
4. Enter **CI_TXPYBL** in the **Report Code** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Report Code** field.

   The **Report Submission** screen appears with the following parameters:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the report should be generated. **Note:** If you do not specify the start date, the system sets the start date to the current date minus seven days.	No
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the report should be generated. **Note:** If you do not specify the end date, the system sets the current date as the end date.	No
Account Type Characteristic	Used to specify the characteristic type. You must always specify the characteristic type as `Account Type`. Otherwise, the report will not be generated.	Yes
Account Type Char Value for Tax Related GL Account	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes

6. Enter the parameters based on which you want to generate the report.
7. Click **Submit**.

   The **Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise Login** page appears.
8. Enter the BI publisher user name and password.
9. Click **Login**.

   The report appears in Oracle BI Publisher.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Report Search window	*Report Search* on page 714
Report Submission screen	*Report Submission* on page 714

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Appendix
A

Most Commonly Used Tasks

Topics:

- *Changing the Layout*
- *Searching for an Access Group*
- *Searching for an Account*
- *Searching for an Algorithm*
- *Searching for an Approval Workflow Chain*
- *Searching for an Approval Workflow Criteria Type*
- *Searching for an Approval Workflow Group*
- *Searching for an Auto Pay Source*
- *Searching for a Bill Message*
- *Searching for a Business Object*
- *Searching for a Dependent Rule*
- *Searching for a Field*
- *Searching for a Parameter*
- *Searching for a Person*
- *Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value*
- *Searching for a Predefined Parameter Value*
- *Searching for a Price List*
- *Searching for a Product*
- *Searching for a Rate Schedule*
- *Searching for a Table*
- *Searching for a Template*
- *Searching for a To Do Role*
- *Searching for a To Do Type*

This section lists some of the common tasks that are performed while using various functionality in the application.

- *Searching for a UI Map*

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Changing the Layout

You can change the layout of the zone by:

- *Removing a Column from the Zone* on page 729
- *Adding a Column to the Zone* on page 729
- *Rearranging Columns in the Zone* on page 729

Adding a Column to the Zone

Once you have removed the columns from the zone, you can add them back to the zone. To add a column to the zone:

1. Click the **Explorer** ( ) icon in the upper right corner of the zone.

   A panel appears at the bottom of the zone with a list of column names.

   Note: The column names with the orange background in the panel are currently not displayed in the zone.
2. Drag and drop the column name from the panel to the location where you want to add the column in the zone.

   The orange background of the column name in the panel changes to the blue background indicating that the column is currently displayed in the zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to change the layout of the zone	*Changing the Layout* on page 729

Rearranging Columns in the Zone

You can change the order in which the columns are displayed in the zone. To change the position of a column in the zone:

1. Click the column name whose position you want to change in the zone.
2. Drag and drop the column name between the columns where you want to place the selected column.

   The position of the column changes in the zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to change the layout of the zone	*Changing the Layout* on page 729

Removing a Column from the Zone

To remove a column from the zone:

1. Click the column name that you want to remove from the zone.

   A toolbar with the **Delete** ( ) symbols appears in the zone.
2. Drag and drop the column name over the toolbar.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The column is removed from the zone, and the toolbar is replaced with the **Refresh** button. If you want to remove another column from the zone, repeat the first step. You will note that the **Refresh** button is replaced by the toolbar.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to change the layout of the zone	*Changing the Layout* on page 729

Searching for an Access Group

Procedure

To search for an access group:

1. Click the **Search** (🔍) icon corresponding to the **Access Group** field.

   The **Access Group Search** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Access Group	Used to specify the access group.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the access group.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of access groups that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Access Group	Displays the access group.
Description	Displays the description of the access group.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to associate access groups with a division	*Associating Access Groups with a Division* on page 210

Searching for an Account

Prerequisites

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To search for an account, you should have:

- Bill cycles, currencies, divisions, and account identifier types defined in the application

Procedure

To search for an account:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then
Search for a usage account	1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Account Information** field in the **Exclude Usage Accounts** section.
Search for an invoice account	1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Second** sub-field in the **Include Billable Charges** or **Include Adjustments** section depending on whether you want to bill charges or adjustments through an invoice account.

The **Account Search** windows appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Used to search for accounts which belong to a particular customer.	No
Account ID	Used to search for a particular account.	No
Person ID	Used to search for accounts which belong to a particular customer.	No
Bill Cycle	Used to search for accounts where a particular bill cycle is defined.	No
Invoice Currency	Used to search for accounts for which bills are generated in a particular currency.	No
Account Category	Used to search for accounts which belong to a particular category. **Note:** This field is disabled. The value in this field appears automatically depending on the section from where you have initiated the account search.	Not applicable
Account Identifier Type	Used to search for accounts where a particular account identifier type is defined.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to search for an account with a particular account identifier.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to specify the account identifier.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to search for accounts which belong to a particular division.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an account.

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Displays the account ID.
Person Name	Displays the name of the person (customer) to whom the account belongs.
Name Type	Indicates the type of person name. The valid values are: • Alias • Doing Business As • Former • Legal • Primary
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
Account Relationship Type	Indicates how the person is related to the account.

4. Select the required account in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to include usage accounts in a construct	*Including Usage Accounts in a Construct* on page 670
How to include billable charges in a construct	*Including Billable Charges in a Construct* on page 673
How to include adjustments in a construct	*Including Adjustments in a Construct* on page 676
How to exclude usage accounts from a construct	*Excluding Usage Accounts from a Construct* on page 672

Searching for an Algorithm

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Procedure

To search for an algorithm:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   The **Search Algorithm** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Algorithm	Used to specify the code of the algorithm.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the algorithm.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note:

   You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an algorithm.

   ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field in which you have specified the criteria.

   A list of algorithms that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Algorithm	Displays the code of the algorithm.
Algorithm Type	Displays the type of algorithm.
Description	Displays the description of the algorithm.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow group	*Defining an Approval Workflow Group* on page 283
How to edit an approval workflow group	*Editing an Approval Workflow Group* on page 286
How to define an approval level	*Defining an Approval Level* on page 301
How to edit an approval level	*Editing an Approval Level* on page 302
How to define approval workflow settings	*Defining Approval Workflow Settings* on page 315
How to edit approval workflow settings	*Editing Approval Workflow Settings* on page 317
How to define a file type	*Defining a File Type* on page 523
How to edit a file type	*Editing a File Type* on page 528
How to define an upload reason	*Defining an Upload Reason* on page 634
How to edit an upload reason	*Editing an Upload Reason* on page 635

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Searching for an Approval Workflow Chain

Procedure

To search for an approval workflow chain:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   The **Search Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Used to specify the code of the approval workflow chain.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the approval workflow chain.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note:

   You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an approval workflow chain.

   ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field in which you have specified the criteria.

   A list of approval workflow chains that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Code	Displays the code of the approval workflow chain.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow chain.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create an approval workflow group chain link	*Creating an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link* on page 309
How to edit an approval workflow group chain link	*Editing an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link* on page 310

Searching for an Approval Workflow Criteria Type

Procedure

To search for an approval workflow criteria type:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   The **Search Approval Workflow Criteria Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Used to specify the code of the approval workflow criteria type.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the approval workflow criteria type.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note:

   You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an approval workflow criteria type.

   ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field in which you have specified the criteria.

   A list of approval workflow criteria types that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Code	Displays the code of the approval workflow criteria type.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow criteria type.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create an approval workflow group chain link	*Creating an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link* on page 309
How to edit an approval workflow group chain link	*Editing an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link* on page 310

Searching for an Approval Workflow Group

Procedure

To search for an approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   The **Search Approval Workflow Group** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Used to specify the code of the approval workflow group.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the approval workflow group.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note:

   You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an approval workflow group.

   ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field in which you have specified the criteria.

   A list of approval workflow groups that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Code	Displays the code of the approval workflow group.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow group.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create an approval workflow group chain link	*Creating an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link* on page 309
How to edit an approval workflow group chain link	*Editing an Approval Workflow Group Chain Link* on page 310
How to define approval workflow settings	*Defining Approval Workflow Settings* on page 315
How to edit approval workflow settings	*Editing Approval Workflow Settings* on page 317

Searching for an Auto Pay Source

Procedure

To search for an auto pay source:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Auto Pay Source Code** field.

   The **Search Auto Pay Source** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Auto Pay Source Code	Used to specify the auto pay source code.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the auto pay source.	No
External Source ID	Used to specify the external identification of the auto pay source.	No

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an auto pay source.

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of auto pay sources that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Auto Pay Source Code	Displays the auto pay source code.
Description	Displays the description of the auto pay source.
External Source ID	Displays the external identification of the auto pay source.

4. Select the required auto pay source in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create an invoice account	*Creating an Invoice Account* on page 679

Searching for a Bill Message

Procedure

To search for a bill message:

1. Click the **Search** (🔍) icon corresponding to the **Bill Message** field.

   The **Bill Message Search** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Message Code	Used to specify the bill message code.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the bill message.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of bill messages that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Message Code	Displays the bill message code.
Description	Displays the description of the bill message.
Priority	Indicates the order in which the message should appear when multiple messages appear on a bill.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to associate bill messages with a division	*Associating Bill Messages with a Division* on page 218

Searching for a Business Object

Procedure

To search for a business object:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   The **Search Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Code	Used to specify the code of the business object.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the business object.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note:

   You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a business object.

   ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field in which you have specified the criteria.

   A list of business objects that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Code	Displays the code of the business object.
Description	Displays the description of the business object.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a business object in the approval workflow group	*Adding a Business Object* on page 291
How to edit a business object in the approval workflow group	*Editing a Business Object* on page 292
How to define a relationship between business objects in the approval workflow group	*Defining a Group BO Relation* on page 294
How to change the business object's relationship details in the approval workflow group	*Editing a Group BO Relation* on page 295
How to define an approval workflow criteria type	*Defining an Approval Workflow Criteria Type* on page 305
How to edit an approval workflow criteria type	*Editing an Approval Workflow Criteria Type* on page 306

Searching for a Dependent Rule

Procedure

To search for a dependent rule:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Dependent Rule** field.

   The **Search Rule** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Code	Used to specify the rule code.	No
Rule Type	Used to specify the type of rule.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the rule.	No
Rule Priority	Used to specify the priority of the rule.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the rule is effective.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click **Refresh**.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

A list of rules that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Rule Code	Displays the rule code.
Description	Displays the description of the rule.
Rule Type	Displays the type of rule.
Rule Priority	Displays the priority of the rule.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the rule is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the rule is effective.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a rule	*Defining a Rule* on page 335
How to edit a rule	*Editing a Rule* on page 339
How to copy a rule	*Copying a Rule* on page 344

Searching for a Field

Procedure

To search for a field:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   The **Search Field** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Field	Used to specify the name of the field.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the field.	No

   Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a field.

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field in which you have specified the criteria.

   A list of fields that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Field	Displays the name of the field.
Description	Displays the description of the field.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow criteria type	*Defining an Approval Workflow Criteria Type* on page 305
How to edit an approval workflow criteria type	*Editing an Approval Workflow Criteria Type* on page 306
How to create a rule type	*Creating a Rule Type* on page 329
How to edit a rule type	*Editing a Rule Type* on page 330
How to copy a rule type	*Copying a Rule Type* on page 332

Searching for a Parameter

Procedure

To search for a parameter:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Parameter Name** field.

   The **Search Parameter** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the rule type.	No
Parameter Name	Used to specify the field name.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of parameters that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter Name	Displays the field associated the rule type.
Description	Displays the description of the rule type.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to define a rule	*Defining a Rule* on page 335
How to edit a rule	*Editing a Rule* on page 339
How to copy a rule	*Copying a Rule* on page 344

Searching for a Person

Prerequisites

To search for a person, you should have:

- Customer identifier types defined in the application

Procedure

To search for a person:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Customer Information** field.

   The **Person Search** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Used to specify the name of the person.	No
Person ID	Used to specify the person ID.	No
Customer Identifier Type	Used to indicate the customer identifier type based on which you want to search for a person.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the customer identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the customer identifier type.
Customer Identifier	Used to specify the value of the customer identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) **Note:** If you specify the customer identifier type as a search criteria, you have to specify the customer identifier.

   Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a person.

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of persons that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Person ID	Displays the person ID.
Name	Displays the name of the person.
Customer Identifier Type	Displays the customer identifier type.
Customer Identifier	Displays the value of the customer identifier type.

4. Select the required person in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to include usage accounts in a construct	*Including Usage Accounts in a Construct* on page 670

Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value

Procedure

To search for a predefined characteristic value:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field.

   Note: The **Search** icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field only when you select a predefined characteristic type.

   The **Search Characteristic Value** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Displays the predefined characteristic type whose values you want to search.	Not applicable
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the predefined characteristic value.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the predefined characteristic value.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of predefined characteristic values that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Value	Displays the predefined characteristic value.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
Description	Displays the description of the predefined characteristic value.

4. Select the required characteristic value in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a product	*Defining Characteristics for a Product* on page 123
How to define division-specific characteristics for a product	*Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Product* on page 127
How to define characteristics for a division	*Defining Characteristics for a Division* on page 217

Searching for a Predefined Parameter Value

Procedure

To search for a predefined parameter value:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Value** field.

   Note: The **Search** icon appears corresponding to the **Value** field only when the parameter value type is set to **Predefined**.

   The **Search Parameter Value** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	Displays the parameter name.	Not applicable
Parameter Value	Used to specify the predefined parameter value.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Parameter Value** field in which you have specified the criteria.

   A list of predefined values that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter Value	Displays the predefined parameter value. **Note:** It has a link. On clicking the link, you can select the predefined parameter value.

4. Select the required predefined value for the parameter.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to set product parameters while defining, editing or overriding product pricing	*Setting Product Parameters* on page 202

Searching for a Price List

Procedure

To search for a price list:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Price List ID** field.

   The **Price List Search** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List ID	Used to specify the price list ID.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the price list.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price List ID	Displays the price list ID.
Description	Displays the description of the price list.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to associate price lists with a division	*Associating Price Lists with a Division* on page 212

Searching for a Product

Procedure

To search for a product:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Product** field.

   A screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Product	Displays the bundle or parent product code.	Not applicable
Child Product	Used to specify the code of the product that you want to add.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the product that you want to add.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field in which you have specified the criteria.

   A list of products that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Product	Displays the product code.
Description	Displays the description of the product.

4. In the **Search Results** section, click the product that you want to add to the bundle.

   The product is selected and displayed in the **Product** field.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a product to a bundle	*Adding a Product to a Bundle* on page 152

Searching for a Rate Schedule

Procedure

To search for a rate schedule:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Rate Schedule** field.

   The **Search Rate Schedule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Schedule	Used to specify the rate schedule.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the rate schedule.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note:

   You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a rate schedule.

   ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field in which you have specified the criteria.

   A list of rate schedules that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Rate Schedule	Displays the rate schedule.
Description	Displays the description of the rate schedule.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define product pricing	*Defining Product Pricing* on page 172
How to edit product pricing	*Editing Product Pricing* on page 179
How to override product pricing	*Overriding Product Pricing* on page 186

Searching for a Table

Procedure

To search for a table:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Reference Entity** field.

   The **Search Table** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Table	Used to specify the table name.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the table.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note:

   ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field in which you have specified the criteria.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

A list of language tables that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Table	Displays the table name.
Description	Displays the description of the table.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a parameter	*Defining a Parameter* on page 194
How to edit a parameter	*Editing a Parameter* on page 196
How to copy a parameter	*Copying a Parameter* on page 198

Searching for a Template

Procedure

To search for a template:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then
Search for an account selection template	1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Account Selection Template** field in the **Include Usage Accounts** section.
Search for a billable charge selection template	1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Billable Charge Selection Template** field in the **Include Billable Charges** section.
Search for an adjustment selection template	1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Adjustment Selection Template** field in the **Include Adjustments** section.

The **Template Search** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Template	Used to specify the template name.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the template.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Purpose	Indicates the purpose of the template. The valid values are: • Account Selection • Adjustment Selection • Billable Charge Selection	Not applicable

Note: You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a template.

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note: ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click **Refresh**.

   A list of templates that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Template	Displays the name of the template.
Description	Displays the description of the template.

4. Select the required template in the **Search Results** section.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to include usage accounts in a construct	*Including Usage Accounts in a Construct* on page 670
How to include billable charges in a construct	*Including Billable Charges in a Construct* on page 673
How to include adjustments in a construct	*Including Adjustments in a Construct* on page 676

Searching for a To Do Role

Procedure

To search for a To Do role:

1. Click the **Search** (🔍) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   The **Search To Do Role** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Role ID	Used to specify the To Do role ID.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the To Do role.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note:

   You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a To Do role.

   ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field in which you have specified the criteria.

   A list of To Do roles that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Role ID	Displays the To Do role ID.
Description	Displays the description of the To Do role.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow chain	*Defining an Approval Workflow Chain* on page 299
How to edit an approval workflow chain	*Editing an Approval Workflow Chain* on page 300
How to define an approval level	*Defining an Approval Level* on page 301
How to edit an approval level	*Editing an Approval Level* on page 302

Searching for a To Do Type

Procedure

To search for a To Do type:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   The **Search To Do Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
To Do Type	Used to specify the code of the To Do type.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the To Do type.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note:

   You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a To Do type.

   ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore,

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field in which you have specified the criteria.

   A list of To Do types that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
To Do Type	Displays the code of the To Do type.
Description	Displays the description of the To Do type.
Priority	Indicates the priority of the To Do type.
To Do Type Usage	Indicates whether the To Dos of this type are created automatically by the system or manually by a user.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval level	*Defining an Approval Level* on page 301
How to edit an approval level	*Editing an Approval Level* on page 302

Searching for a UI Map

Procedure

To search for a UI map:

1. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the respective field.

   The **Search UI Map** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
UI Map Code	Used to specify the code of the UI map.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of the UI map.	No

2. Enter the search criteria.

   Note:

   You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a UI map.

   ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

3. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the field in which you have specified the criteria.

   A list of UI maps that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Column Description
UI Map Code	Displays the code of the UI map.
Description	Displays the description of the UI map.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow group	*Defining an Approval Workflow Group* on page 283
How to edit an approval workflow group	*Editing an Approval Workflow Group* on page 286

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Appendix
B

Administration

Topics:

- *UI Maps*
- *Feature Configurations*
- *Algorithm Types*

This section lists some of the administrative tasks.

UI Maps

This section explains how to create the UI maps for viewing and modifying data of the business objects within the approval workflow group.

Creating Display UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group

The system provides you with the ability to automatically generate a Display UI map, and associate it with the approval workflow group. Alternatively, you can create a Display UI map manually, and attach it to the approval workflow group.

Procedure

To create a Display UI map manually:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **U** and then click the **Add** ( ) icon corresponding to the **UI Map** menu option.

   The **UI Map** screen appears.
4. In the **Main** tab, enter the name and description of the Display UI map.

   Note: The system uses the `CM_<Approval Workflow Group Code>_AppTxn_Display` naming convention while automatically generating a Display UI map. Therefore, do not use this naming convention while creating a Display UI map manually.
5. Select **Complete HTML Document** from the **UI Map Type** list.
6. Click the **Schema** tab.

   The **Schema** tab appears.
7. Add the following schema in the **Scheme Editor** zone:

   ```
   <schema>
    <<Business Object Name> type="group">
     <includeBO name="<Business Object Name>"/>
    </<Business Object Name>>
   </schema>
   ```

   In the above schema, you must replace `<Business Object Name>` with the name of the business object. For example, if you want to create a Display UI map for account, you must use the following schema:

   ```
   <schema>
    <account type="group">
     <includeBO name="Account"/>
    </account>
   </schema>
   ```
8. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The **Display Only** and **Input Map** buttons are enabled on the dashboard.
9. Click the **Display Only** button.

   The HTML code is generated in the **HTML Editor** zone.
10. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

    The changes are saved.

Related Topics

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow group	*Defining an Approval Workflow Group* on page 283
How to edit an approval workflow group	*Editing an Approval Workflow Group* on page 286

Creating Input UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group

The system provides you with the ability to automatically generate an Input UI map, and associate it with the approval workflow group. Alternatively, you can create an Input UI map manually, and attach it to the approval workflow group.

Procedure

To create an Input UI map manually:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **U** and then click the **Add** ( ) icon corresponding to the **UI Map** menu option.

   The **UI Map** screen appears.

4. In the **Main** tab, enter the name and description of the Input UI map.

   Note: The system uses the `CM_<Approval Workflow Group Code>_AppTxn_Input` naming convention while automatically generating an Input UI map. Therefore, do not use this naming convention while creating an Input UI map manually.

5. Select **Complete HTML Document** from the **UI Map Type** list.

6. Click the **Schema** tab.

   The **Schema** tab appears.

7. Add the following schema in the **Scheme Editor** zone:

```
<schema>
 <approvalTransactionId/>
 <action/>
 <<Business Object Name> type="group">
  <includeBO name="<Business Object Name>"/>
 </<Business Object Name>>
</schema>
```

   In the above schema, you must replace `<Business Object Name>` with the name of the business object. For example, if you want to create an Input UI map for account, you must use the following schema:

```
<schema>
 <approvalTransactionId/>
 <action/>
 <account type="group">
  <includeBO name="Account"/>
 </account>
</schema>
```

   The `<approvalTransactionId/>` tag is used in the schema to retrieve the approval transaction ID of the respective business object. The `<action/>` tag is used in the schema to retrieve the action performed by the submitter.

8. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The **Display Only** and **Input Map** buttons are enabled on the dashboard.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

9. Click the **Input Map** button.

   The HTML code is generated in the **HTML Editor** zone.

10. Add the following tag in the `head` tag:

```
<script language="javascript" type="text/javascript" src="code/
approvalWorkflow.js"></script>
```

11. Add the text highlighted in bold within the tag as shown below:

```
<td>
<input onClick="performAction('<Approval Workflow Group Code>');"
 oraMdLabel="SAVE_BTN_LBL" class="oraButton" type="button">
<input onClick="oraSubmitMap('CANCEL', false);" oraMdLabel="CANCEL_LBL"
 class="oraButton" type="button">
</td>
```

    In the above HTML code, you must replace `<Approval Workflow Group Code>` with the code of the approval workflow group for which you are creating a UI map.

12. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

    The changes are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow group	*Defining an Approval Workflow Group* on page 283
How to edit an approval workflow group	*Editing an Approval Workflow Group* on page 286

Feature Configurations

This section explains how to set various feature configurations which are required for implementing various features in the Banking module.

Setting the Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC) Feature Configuration

Prerequisites

To set the Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC) feature configuration, you should have:

- Adjustment types defined in the application

Procedure

To set the Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC) feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.

4. Enter **C1_MLTCURACC** in the **Feature Name** field.

5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Allow Multi-Currency Accounts	Used to indicate whether you want to enable or disable the Multi-Currency Accounts feature. To enable the feature, set the **Allow Multi-Currency Accounts** option type to **Y**. By default, the value is set to **N**. **Note:** If the **Allow Multi-Currency Accounts** option type is set to **N**, the **Invoice Currency** field is disabled in the **Account** screen. By default, the base currency of the account's division appears in the **Invoice Currency** field. If the base currency is not defined for the account's division, the currency code specified in the **Installation Options - Framework** screen appears in the **Invoice Currency** field. If the **Allow Multi-Currency Accounts** option type is set to **Y**, the following fields are enabled in the application: **Screen Name** / **Field Name** Account / Invoice Currency Billable Charge / Currency (for Bill Line) Adjustment / Currency Payment Event Add / Payment Currency Rate Component / Allow Currency Conversion	Yes
Transfer Adjustment Type	Used to specify the adjustment type using which you want to create the transfer adjustment.	Yes
Reason Code for Cancelling Original Adjustment	Used to specify the reason code that you want to use while cancelling the original adjustment.	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types.
7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Multi-Currency Accounts functionality	*Multi-Currency Accounts* on page 323

Setting the On Demand Billing (C1-ODBFC) Feature Configuration

Procedure

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

To set the On Demand Billing (C1-ODBFC) feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.

4. Enter **C1-ODBFC** in the **Feature Name** field.

5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Average Record Size	Used to specify the average size of a usage record in bytes. By default, the value is set to 500. You can change the value, if required.	Yes
Billable Charge Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of billable charges you want to create in each work unit. By default, the value is set to 500. You can change the value, if required.	Yes
File Size Limit	Used to specify the size of a usage data file in bytes. By default, the value is set to 100000. You can change the value, if required.	Yes
Online Bill Creation Limit	Used to determine whether adhoc bills must be generated for a usage data file online or through the background process. If the total number of billable charges created for a usage data file exceeds the online bill creation limit, adhoc bills are generated for the usage data file through a batch process. By default, the value is set to 500. You can change the value, if required.	Yes
Staging XML Size	Used to specify the number of usage records you want to parse and map in each XML file. By default, the value is set to 500. You can change the value, if required.	Yes
Thread Count	Used to specify the number of threads you want to spawn in parallel.	No
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No
Transaction Limit	Used to determine whether billable charges for a usage data file must be created online or through the background process. If the total number of valid or approved records in a usage data file exceeds the transaction limit, billable charges are created for the valid or approved records through a batch process.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Validation Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of usage records you want to validate or revalidate in each work unit. By default, the value is set to 500. You can change the value, if required.	Yes

6. Enter the value for the option types.
7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
On Demand Billing	*On Demand Billing* on page 513
How to upload a usage data file	*Uploading a Usage Data File* on page 551
How to revalidate a usage data file	*Revalidating a Usage Data File* on page 594
How to submit the valid records	*Submitting a Valid Record* on page 587
How to approve the valid records	*Approving a Valid Record* on page 588
How to generate adhoc bills for a usage data file	*Generating Adhoc Bills for a File Group* on page 542

Setting the Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG) Feature Configuration

Procedure

To set the Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG) feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1_PPARM_FLG** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Multi Price Parameter	Used to indicate whether you want to use the multi parameter based pricing feature. The valid values are: • **True** — Indicates that you want to enable the multi parameter based pricing feature. • **False** — Indicates that you want to disable the multi parameter based pricing feature.	Yes

6. Enter the value for the option type.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Multi Parameter Based Pricing feature	*Multi Parameter Based Pricing* on page 65

Setting the Rule Engine (C1_RLENG) Feature Configuration

Procedure

To set the Rule Engine (C1_RLENG) feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.

4. Enter **C1_RLENG** in the **Feature Name** field.

5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Logging Rules for Transaction Feed	Used to indicate whether a log should be generated when you execute the **Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1-TXNIP)** batch. The valid values are: • True • False **Note:** This log indicates the rules that were executed for each transaction and whether each rule passed or failed during the execution.	Yes
Maximum Number of Rules in Cache	Used to indicate the maximum number of rules whose entry should be created in the log file.	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types.

7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Feed Management	*Transaction Feed Management* on page 367

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Setting the Dummy Header (C1-TXNDMYID) Feature Configuration

For manually added transactions, the system can generate header details including the header ID automatically if you set the option types in the **Dummy Header (C1-TXNDMYID)** feature configuration.

Procedure

To set the Dummy Header (C1-TXNDMYID) feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1-TXNDMYID** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Dummy File Name	Used to specify the dummy file name.	Yes
Dummy Header ID	Used to specify the dummy header ID.	Yes
Dummy Transaction Source	Used to specify the dummy transaction source.	Yes
Dummy Header Date	Used to specify the dummy header date.	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types.
7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Feed Management	*Transaction Feed Management* on page 367

Setting the C1_PR_REC Feature Configuration

Procedure

To set the C1_PR_REC feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1_PR_REC** in the **Feature Name** field.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Pricing RecordSet Limit	Used to specify the number of records that can be displayed in the **Search Results** section of the **Effective Price Assignment** zone. The value must be an integer and not in decimals. The maximum number of records that can be displayed are 5000. **Note:** If you enter the value as **0** or if you do not specify the value for the **Effective Pricing RecordSet Limit** option type, no records will be displayed in the **Search Results** section.	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types.
7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Effective Price Assignment zone in the **Pricing (Account)** screen	*Effective Price Assignment* on page 95
Effective Price Assignment zone in the **Pricing (Customer)** screen	*Effective Price Assignment* on page 105

Setting the C1_PRASNORDR Feature Configuration

Procedure

To set the C1_PRASNORDR feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1_PRASNORDR** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm which contains the default search order for global customers. The valid search order values are: • AGREED_PRICELIST • AGREED_FIRST You can change this default search order, whenever required. You can also create a custom search order, if required.	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types.
7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Pricing (Customer) screen	*Pricing (Customer)* on page 104

Setting the C1_DIVFUNCT Feature Configuration

Procedure

To set the C1_DIVFUNCT feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1_DIVFUNCT** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Enforce division-specific validations	Used to indicate whether the division-specific validations must be triggered on the **Person**, **Account** and **Contract** screens. The valid values are: • Y • N	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types.
7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Setting the C1_PERACCT Feature Configuration

Procedure

To set the C1_PERACCT feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1_PERACCT** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Create Person Account Together	Used to indicate whether you want to create a person and account for that person simultaneously. The valid values are: • Y • N	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types.
7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Setting the C1_FINTRANOP Feature Configuration

Procedure

To set the C1_FINTRANOP feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1_FINTRANOP** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Segment Regeneration on Freeze	Used to indicate whether you want to regenerate the bill segments before freezing them. The valid value is: • Y If you do not want to regenerate the bill segments before freezing them, you must leave this option type blank. **Note:** If the **Freeze and Complete** check box is selected for the bill cycle and the **Bill Segment Regeneration on Freeze** option type is set to **Y**, then the bill segments are regenerated and the status of the bill segments is set to **Frozen**. However, if the **Freeze and Complete** check box is not selected for the bill cycle, then the bill segments are always regenerated irrespective of whether the **Bill Segment Regeneration on Freeze** option type is set to **Y** or not.	No
Billable Charges Date	Used to indicate whether you want to consider the billable charges whose start or end date is earlier than or equal to the cut-off date. The valid values are: • **S** — Used when you want to consider the billable charges whose start date is earlier than or equal to the cut-off date. • **E** — Used when you want to consider the billable charges whose end date is earlier than or equal to the cut-off date. If you do not set the value of this option type, by default, the system considers the billable charges whose start date is earlier than or equal to the cut-off date.	No

6. Enter the values for the required option types.
7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Setting the C1_EXP_OVRD Feature Configuration

Procedure

To set the C1_EXP_OVRD feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.

4. Enter **C1_EXP_OVRD** in the **Feature Name** field.

5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Expire Override Switch	Used to indicate whether you want to automatically expire an agreed pricing when the agreed pricing of a customer or an account without end date is overridden. The valid values are: • Y • N	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types.

7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Override Product Pricing screen	*Override Product Pricing* on page 181

Setting the C1_EXCHRATE Feature Configuration

Procedure

To set the C1_EXCHRATE feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.

2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.

3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.

4. Enter **C1_EXCHRATE** in the **Feature Name** field.

5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
End Date Required for Division Override	Used to indicate whether the end date is mandatory for a division-specific exchange rate. The valid values are: • Y • N By default, the value of this option type is set to **N**.	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types.
7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an exchange rate	*Defining an Exchange Rate* on page 365
How to edit an exchange rate	*Editing an Exchange Rate* on page 364

Setting the C1_AXENTITY Feature Configuration

Procedure

To set the C1_AXENTITY feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1_AXENTITY** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Transaction Compare New or Missing Entry Color	Used to indicate the color in which the new additions must be highlighted. This helps in comparing the existing and new data while approving, rejecting, or cancelling approval workflow requests. You must specify hexadecimal value in this option type.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Transaction Compare Value Changed Color	Used to indicate the color in which the existing data modifications must be highlighted. This helps in comparing the existing and new data while approving, rejecting, or cancelling approval workflow requests. You must specify hexadecimal value in this option type.	Yes
Approval Transaction Entity Access Algorithms	Used to specify the algorithm which controls access to the existing and new maintenance objects based on the access group and division. By default, the C1-APPTXN algorithm is specified. If you create new maintenance objects and want the access control for these new maintenance objects to be based on the access group and division, you have to create a custom algorithm and then attach it to this option type. In such case, you would define this option type twice — one with the default algorithm (that is, C1-APPTXN) and another with the custom algorithm.	Yes
Approval Transaction Fields to be Disabled in Input UI Maps	Used to indicate the fields that you want to disable whenever the input UI maps are regenerated.	Yes
Approval Transaction Resolve To Do Type	Used to indicate the type of To Do that must be created when an approver at any level in the hierarchy rejects a request.	Yes
Display UI XSL	Used to indicate the XSL file that you want to use while regenerating the Display UI maps.	Yes
Input UI XSL	Used to indicate the XSL file that you want to use while regenerating the Input UI maps.	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types.
7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to set the prerequisites to implement the approval workflow process	*Prerequisites* on page 228
How to approve a request	*Approving a Request* on page 232
How to reject a request	*Rejecting a Request* on page 233
How to cancel a request	*Cancelling a Request* on page 234
How to approve price assignment request of an account	*Approving Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 250
How to approve price assignment request of a customer	*Approving Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 252
How to approve price assignment request of a price list	*Approving Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 253

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

For more information on...	See...
How to reject price assignment request of an account	*Rejecting Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 254
How to reject price assignment request of a customer	*Rejecting Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 255
How to reject price assignment request of a price list	*Rejecting Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 256
How to cancel price assignment request of an account	*Cancelling Price Assignment Request of an Account* on page 258
How to cancel price assignment request of a customer	*Cancelling Price Assignment Request of a Customer* on page 259
How to cancel price assignment request of a price list	*Cancelling Price Assignment Request of a Price List* on page 260

Setting the C1_FM Feature Configuration

Procedure

To set the C1_FM feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1_FM** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Batch Control — First Run	Used to specify the first mandatory batch that you want to be executed in the transaction aggregation cycle. **Note:** At present, the system does not support any value other than C1-TXNIP for this option type.	Yes
Batch Control — Last Run	Used to specify the last mandatory batch that you want to be executed in the transaction aggregation cycle. **Note:** At present, the system does not support any value other than C1-TXNCU for this option type.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Feed Management Used	Used to indicate whether default values must appear in the **Ignore Transaction**, **Aggregate Transaction**, and **Aggregation Schedule** fields while defining product pricing. The valid values are: • Y • N	Yes
Materialized Views Used	Used to indicate whether the product pricing information must be cached in the following tables — CI_PRC_AGRD, CI_PRC_PL, and CI_PRC_INH_PL. The valid values are: • true • false	Yes
Max. No. of Product Parameters Cache Size	Used to indicate the maximum number of products whose product parameters' information must be cached in the memory.	Yes
Max. No. of Product Parameters Group Cache Size	Used to indicate the maximum number of product parameter groups whose information must be cached in the memory.	Yes
No. of Account Cache Size	Used to indicate the maximum number of accounts whose information must be cached in the memory.	Yes
SQ Recalculation Required	Used to indicate whether the SQIs in an aggregated billable charge must be recalculated while executing the C1-TXNCU batch. The valid values are: • Y • N **Note:** If you do not specify the value or if you set the value to **N**, the system will not recalculate the SQIs in an aggregated billable charge.	No

6. Enter the values for the required option types.
7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Add Product Pricing screen	*Add Product Pricing* on page 166
Product Pricing Verification	*Product Pricing Verification* on page 380
Clean Up	*Clean Up* on page 386

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Setting the C1_ACCTINFO Feature Configuration

Prerequisites

To set the C1_ACCTINFO feature configuration, you should have:

- Account Type characteristic type defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Account)
- Invoice Group Account characteristic type defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Account)

Procedure

To set the C1_ACCTINFO feature configuration:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   A list appears.
2. Select the **Admin Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Admin Menu**, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

   The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1_ACCTINFO** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** ( ) icon corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

   The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Type	Used to specify the characteristic type. This characteristic type is used to define the type of account in the **Account** screen. **Note:** By default, the **C1_F_ATY** characteristic type is specified. If you want to use account types other than the ones defined in the **C1_F_ATY** characteristic type, you need to create a new predefined characteristic type and add the required account types as its characteristic values. Then, specify the newly created characteristic type as the value for this option type.	Yes
Invoice Group Account	Used to specify the characteristic type. This characteristic type is used to indicate whether the account is a master or member account in the **Account** screen. **Note:** By default, the **C1_F_IGA** characteristic type is specified. If you want to use any other characteristic type other than **C1_F_IGA**, you need to create a new predefined characteristic type and add two characteristic values — Y and N. Then, specify the newly created characteristic type as the value for this option type.	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types.
7. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

   The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Invoicing Group	*Invoicing Group* on page 45

Algorithm Types

This section lists and describes various algorithm types defined in the system.

C1_CURALGBS

The **C1_CURALGBS** algorithm type is used to convert the amount in one currency to another currency using an exchange rate. You can define global and division-specific exchange rates. The system might use the direct division-specific or global exchange rate (i.e. FROM CCY to TO CCY) or direct reverse division-specific or global exchange rate (i.e. TO CCY to FROM CCY) during currency conversion. If either direct or direct reverse exchange rate is not available, the system might use division-specific or global exchange rate through base currency during currency conversion. For example, if the FROM CCY is Canadian Dollars, TO CCY is Japanese Yen, and the division's base currency is U.S. Dollars, the system will first convert the amount from Canadian Dollars to U.S. Dollars and then convert the amount from U.S. Dollars to Japanese Yen.

The system allows you to indicate the order, in which the exchange rate must be searched, in the currency conversion algorithm. If you use the **Direct Rate First** search order, the system searches for an exchange rate in the specified order:

1. Division-specific direct exchange rate
2. Global direct exchange rate
3. Division-specific direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
4. Global direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
5. Division-specific exchange rate through base currency
6. Division-specific reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
7. Global exchange rate through base currency
8. Global reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)

If you use the **Division First** search order, the system searches for an exchange rate in the specified order:

1. Division-specific direct exchange rate
2. Division-specific direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
3. Division-specific exchange rate through base currency
4. Division-specific reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
5. Global direct exchange rate
6. Global direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
7. Global exchange rate through base currency
8. Global reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)

You need to attach an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGBS** algorithm type on the **Currency Conversion For Bill Segments** algorithm spot of the division for which you want to enable the currency conversion feature. Once the algorithm is attached, the currency conversion will take place during:

- Bill Segment Generation
- FT GL Creation for Bill Segments

The **C1_CURALGBS** algorithm type contains the following parameters:

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Override Base Currency	Used to specify the base currency. This will override division's base currency while searching for an exchange rate through base currency.	No
Conversion Type (Valid Value: RGLR)	Used to specify the conversion type. Currently, the system supports only the Regular (RGLR) conversion type.	No
Search Order (Valid Values: Division First, Direct Rate First)	Used to indicate the order in which you want to search for an exchange rate during currency conversion. The valid values are: • Direct Rate First • Division First If you do not specify the value for this parameter, by default, the system uses the **Division First** search order.	No
Division Reverse Rate (Valid Values: Yes, No)	Used to indicate whether you want the system to search for division-specific reverse exchange rate (i.e. To CCY to From CCY). The valid values are: • Yes • No If you do not specify the value for this parameter, by default, the system does not use the division-specific reverse exchange rate.	No
Global Reverse Rate (Valid Values: Yes, No)	Used to indicate whether you want the system to search for global reverse exchange rate (i.e. To CCY to From CCY). The valid values are: • Yes • No If you do not specify the value for this parameter, by default, the system does not use the global reverse exchange rate.	No

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Bill Segment Generation	*Bill Segment Generation* on page 357
FT GL Creation	*FT GL Creation* on page 358
How to setup the currency conversion feature	*Prerequisites* on page 356

C1_CURALGAD

The **C1_CURALGAD** algorithm type is used to convert the amount in one currency to another currency using an exchange rate. You can define global and division-specific exchange rates. The system might use the direct division-specific or global exchange rate (i.e. FROM CCY to TO CCY) or direct reverse division-specific or global exchange rate (i.e. TO CCY to FROM CCY) during currency conversion. If either direct or direct reverse exchange rate is not available, the system might use division-specific or global exchange rate through base currency during currency conversion. For example, if the FROM CCY is Canadian Dollars, TO CCY is Japanese Yen, and the division's base currency is U.S.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Dollars, the system will first convert the amount from Canadian Dollars to U.S. Dollars and then convert the amount from U.S. Dollars to Japanese Yen.

The system allows you to indicate the order, in which the exchange rate must be searched, in the currency conversion algorithm. If you use the **Direct Rate First** search order, the system searches for an exchange rate in the specified order:

1. Division-specific direct exchange rate
2. Global direct exchange rate
3. Division-specific direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
4. Global direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
5. Division-specific exchange rate through base currency
6. Division-specific reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
7. Global exchange rate through base currency
8. Global reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)

If you use the **Division First** search order, the system searches for an exchange rate in the specified order:

1. Division-specific direct exchange rate
2. Division-specific direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
3. Division-specific exchange rate through base currency
4. Division-specific reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
5. Global direct exchange rate
6. Global direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
7. Global exchange rate through base currency
8. Global reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)

You need to attach an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGAD** algorithm type on the **Currency Conversion For Adjustments** algorithm spot of the division for which you want to enable the currency conversion feature. Once the algorithm is attached, the currency conversion will take place during:

- Adjustment Creation
- FT GL Creation for Adjustments

The **C1_CURALGAD** algorithm type contains the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Override Base Currency	Used to specify the base currency. This will override division's base currency while searching for an exchange rate through base currency.	No
Conversion Type (Valid Value: RGLR)	Used to specify the conversion type. Currently, the system supports only the Regular (RGLR) conversion type.	No
Search Order (Valid Values: Division First, Direct Rate First)	Used to indicate the order in which you want to search for an exchange rate during currency conversion. The valid values are: • Direct Rate First • Division First If you do not specify the value for this parameter, by default, the system uses the **Division First** search order.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division Reverse Rate (Valid Values: Yes, No)	Used to indicate whether you want the system to search for division-specific reverse exchange rate (i.e. To CCY to From CCY). The valid values are: • Yes • No If you do not specify the value for this parameter, by default, the system does not use the division-specific reverse exchange rate.	No
Global Reverse Rate (Valid Values: Yes, No)	Used to indicate whether you want the system to search for global reverse exchange rate (i.e. To CCY to From CCY). The valid values are: • Yes • No If you do not specify the value for this parameter, by default, the system does not use the global reverse exchange rate.	No

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Adjustment Creation	*Adjustment Creation* on page 357
FT GL Creation	*FT GL Creation* on page 358
How to setup the currency conversion feature	*Prerequisites* on page 356

C1_CURALGPY

The **C1_CURALGPY** algorithm type is used to convert the amount in one currency to another currency using an exchange rate. You can define global and division-specific exchange rates. The system might use the direct division-specific or global exchange rate (i.e. FROM CCY to TO CCY) or direct reverse division-specific or global exchange rate (i.e. TO CCY to FROM CCY) during currency conversion. If either direct or direct reverse exchange rate is not available, the system might use division-specific or global exchange rate through base currency during currency conversion. For example, if the FROM CCY is Canadian Dollars, TO CCY is Japanese Yen, and the division's base currency is U.S. Dollars, the system will first convert the amount from Canadian Dollars to U.S. Dollars and then convert the amount from U.S. Dollars to Japanese Yen.

The system allows you to indicate the order, in which the exchange rate must be searched, in the currency conversion algorithm. If you use the **Direct Rate First** search order, the system searches for an exchange rate in the specified order:

1. Division-specific direct exchange rate
2. Global direct exchange rate
3. Division-specific direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
4. Global direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
5. Division-specific exchange rate through base currency
6. Division-specific reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
7. Global exchange rate through base currency
8. Global reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)

If you use the **Division First** search order, the system searches for an exchange rate in the specified order:

1. Division-specific direct exchange rate

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

2. Division-specific direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
3. Division-specific exchange rate through base currency
4. Division-specific reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
5. Global direct exchange rate
6. Global direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
7. Global exchange rate through base currency
8. Global reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)

You need to attach an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGPY** algorithm type on the **Currency Conversion For Payments** algorithm spot of the division for which you want to enable the currency conversion feature. Once the algorithm is attached, the currency conversion will take place during:

- Payment and Tender Creation
- FT GL Creation for Payments

The **C1_CURALGPY** algorithm type contains the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Override Base Currency	Used to specify the base currency. This will override division's base currency while searching for an exchange rate through base currency.	No
Conversion Type (Valid Value: RGLR)	Used to specify the conversion type. Currently, the system supports only the Regular (RGLR) conversion type.	No
Search Order (Valid Values: Division First, Direct Rate First)	Used to indicate the order in which you want to search for an exchange rate during currency conversion. The valid values are: • Direct Rate First • Division First If you do not specify the value for this parameter, by default, the system uses the **Division First** search order.	No
Division Reverse Rate (Valid Values: Yes, No)	Used to indicate whether you want the system to search for division-specific reverse exchange rate (i.e. To CCY to From CCY). The valid values are: • Yes • No If you do not specify the value for this parameter, by default, the system does not use the division-specific reverse exchange rate.	No
Global Reverse Rate (Valid Values: Yes, No)	Used to indicate whether you want the system to search for global reverse exchange rate (i.e. To CCY to From CCY). The valid values are: • Yes • No If you do not specify the value for this parameter, by default, the system does not use the global reverse exchange rate.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Payment and Tender Creation	*Payment and Tender Creation* on page 358
FT GL Creation	*FT GL Creation* on page 358
How to setup the currency conversion feature	*Prerequisites* on page 356

C1_CURALGTFM

The **C1_CURALGTFM** algorithm type is used to convert the amount in one currency to another currency using an exchange rate. You can define global and division-specific exchange rates. The system might use the direct division-specific or global exchange rate (i.e. FROM CCY to TO CCY) or direct reverse division-specific or global exchange rate (i.e. TO CCY to FROM CCY) during currency conversion. If either direct or direct reverse exchange rate is not available, the system might use division-specific or global exchange rate through base currency during currency conversion. For example, if the FROM CCY is Canadian Dollars, TO CCY is Japanese Yen, and the division's base currency is U.S. Dollars, the system will first convert the amount from Canadian Dollars to U.S. Dollars and then convert the amount from U.S. Dollars to Japanese Yen.

The system allows you to indicate the order, in which the exchange rate must be searched, in the currency conversion algorithm. If you use the **Direct Rate First** search order, the system searches for an exchange rate in the specified order:

1. Division-specific direct exchange rate
2. Global direct exchange rate
3. Division-specific direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
4. Global direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
5. Division-specific exchange rate through base currency
6. Division-specific reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
7. Global exchange rate through base currency
8. Global reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)

If you use the **Division First** search order, the system searches for an exchange rate in the specified order:

1. Division-specific direct exchange rate
2. Division-specific direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
3. Division-specific exchange rate through base currency
4. Division-specific reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Division Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
5. Global direct exchange rate
6. Global direct reverse exchange rate (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)
7. Global exchange rate through base currency
8. Global reverse exchange rate through base currency (if the **Global Reverse Rate** parameter is set to **Yes**)

You need to attach an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGTFM** algorithm type on the **Currency Conversion For Transaction Feed Management** algorithm spot of the division for which you want to enable the currency conversion feature. Once the algorithm is attached, the currency conversion will take place during the transaction aggregation process when the transaction or UDF currency is different from the pricing currency.

The **C1_CURALGTFM** algorithm type contains the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Override Base Currency	Used to specify the base currency. This will override division's base currency while searching for an exchange rate through base currency.	No
Conversion Type (Valid Value: RGLR)	Used to specify the conversion type. Currently, the system supports only the Regular (RGLR) conversion type.	No

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search Order (Valid Values: Division First, Direct Rate First)	Used to indicate the order in which you want to search for an exchange rate during currency conversion. The valid values are: • Direct Rate First • Division First If you do not specify the value for this parameter, by default, the system uses the **Division First** search order.	No
Division Reverse Rate (Valid Values: Yes, No)	Used to indicate whether you want the system to search for division-specific reverse exchange rate (i.e. To CCY to From CCY). The valid values are: • Yes • No If you do not specify the value for this parameter, by default, the system does not use the division-specific reverse exchange rate.	No
Global Reverse Rate (Valid Values: Yes, No)	Used to indicate whether you want the system to search for global reverse exchange rate (i.e. To CCY to From CCY). The valid values are: • Yes • No If you do not specify the value for this parameter, by default, the system does not use the global reverse exchange rate.	No

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Aggregation	*Transaction Aggregation* on page 358
FT GL Creation	*FT GL Creation* on page 358
How to setup the currency conversion feature	*Prerequisites* on page 356

FTFREZGLEXTN

The **FTFREZGLEXTN** algorithm type is used to create FT GL extension for the following financial transaction (FT) types when the account's invoice currency is different from the division's base currency:

- Adjustment
- Adjustment Cancellation
- Bill Segment
- Bill Cancellation
- Pay Segment
- Pay Cancellation

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

You need to attach an algorithm of the **FTFREZGLEXTN** algorithm type on the **FT Freeze** system event of the customer class. The FT GL extension is created for bill segments only when you have an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGBS** algorithm type attached on the **Currency Conversion For Bill Segments** algorithm spot of the respective division. The FT GL extension is created for payments only when you have an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGPY** algorithm type attached on the **Currency Conversion For Payments** algorithm spot of the respective division. The FT GL extension is created for adjustments only when you have an algorithm of the **C1_CURALGAD** algorithm type attached on the **Currency Conversion For Adjustments** algorithm spot of the respective division.

The **FTFREZGLEXTN** algorithm type contains the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Exchange Rate Date Type for Adjustments with Freeze At Will Option (Valid Values: A, R, F, C)	Used to indicate the date on which the exchange rate should be picked up when FT GL extension is created for adjustments with the **Freeze At Will** option. The valid values are: • **A (Accounting Date)** – Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the accounting date. • **R (Arrears Date)** - Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the arrears date. • **F (FT Freeze Date)** - Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the FT freeze date. • **C (FT Create Date)** - Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the FT creation date.	Yes
Exchange Rate Date Type for Adjustments with Freeze At Bill Completion Option (Valid Values: A, R, F, C, E)	Used to indicate the date on which the exchange rate should be picked up when FT GL extension is created for adjustments with the **Freeze At Bill Completion** option. The valid values are: • **A (Accounting Date)** – Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the accounting date. • **R (Arrears Date)** - Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the arrears date. • **F (FT Freeze Date)** - Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the FT freeze date. • **C (FT Create Date)** - Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the FT creation date. • **E (Bill Segment Maximum End Date)** – Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the bill segment end date. If there are multiple bill segments on the bill, the bill segment with the latest end date is considered.	Yes

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Exchange Rate Date Type for Payments (Valid Values: A, R, F, C)	Used to indicate the date on which the exchange rate should be picked up when FT GL extension is created for payments. The valid values are: • **A (Accounting Date)** – Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the accounting date. • **R (Arrears Date)** - Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the arrears date. • **F (FT Freeze Date)** - Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the FT freeze date. • **C (FT Create Date)** - Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the FT creation date.	Yes
Exchange Rate Date Type for Bill Segments (Valid Values: A, F, C)	Used to indicate the date on which the exchange rate should be picked up when FT GL extension is created for bill segments. The valid values are: • **A (Accounting Date)** – Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the accounting date. • **F (FT Freeze Date)** - Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the FT freeze date. • **C (FT Create Date)** - Used when you want to search for an exchange rate which is effective on the FT creation date.	Yes

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
FT GL Creation	*FT GL Creation* on page 358
How to setup the currency conversion feature	*Prerequisites* on page 356

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Appendix
C

Control Data

Topics:

- *Accounting Environment*
- *Automatic Payment (EFT) Environment*
- *Bill Cycle Environment*
- *Contract Configuration*
- *Credit and Collections Environment*
- *Customer Class Environment*
- *Customer Environment*
- *Division Environment*
- *Financial Transaction Environment*
- *Global Context*
- *Late Payment Environment*
- *Notification and Workflow*
- *Pricing Management*
- *Rate Environment*
- *Security Environment*
- *Services and Characteristics*
- *Statements*
- *Wrap Up*

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing supports the ability to create user profiles which are customized based on the user needs. The following user profiles have been pre-configured in the system with specific set of responsibilities:

- **BKADMIN** – This is the administrator user profile that has access to all administrative and end-user functions related to the Banking functionality in the application. The security profile definition for BKADMIN is based on the SYSUSER user who has access to all screens, transactions and administrative functions.

Note: BKADMIN user and password should be setup post installation for Web server because it is not pre-configured when a user logs in the database or application server.

For more information on how to setup users, how to import users from LDAP, and how to setup security profiles, refer to the framework documentation.

Besides the user profile, you need to setup the control data in the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing application. A user with the BKADMIN user rights should setup the control data.

The control data has been classified into the following categories:

- *Global Context* on page 799
- *Accounting Environment* on page 783
- *Security Environment* on page 803
- *Customer Class Environment* on page 789
- *Division Environment* on page 793
- *Financial Transaction Environment* on page 794
- *Customer Environment* on page 790
- *Statements* on page 804
- *Automatic Payment (EFT) Environment* on page 783
- *Credit and Collections Environment* on page 787
- *Services and Characteristics* on page 804
- *Bill Cycle Environment* on page 785
- *Rate Environment* on page 802
- *Late Payment Environment* on page 799
- *Contract Configuration* on page 786
- *Pricing Management* on page 800

- *Notification and Workflow* on page 799
- *Wrap Up* on page 805

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Accounting Environment

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Country & State	Admin Menu, Country	All base package transactions are automatically populated.
Currency Codes	Admin Menu, Currency	USD is automatically populated.
Accounting Calendar	Admin Menu, Accounting Calendar	All base package transactions are automatically populated.
GL Division	Admin Menu, General Ledger Division	All base package transactions are automatically populated.
Feature Configuration	Admin Menu, Feature Configuration. While defining an account, if you want the system to validate whether the specified account number is unique for a division, you must set the **Validate External Account Char** option type of the **C1_ACCTINFO** feature configuration to **Y**. By default, the value is set to **N**.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Feature Configuration	Admin Menu, Feature Configuration. You can change the invoice currency of an account whenever required to meet the changing business needs. To activate this Multi-Currency Accounts functionality, you must set the **Multi-Currency Accounts (C1_MLTCURACC)** feature configuration.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Automatic Payment (EFT) Environment

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up an algorithm to create automatic payments. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	You can run the **CI_COPAP** DB process to copy this algorithm (and other autopay-oriented algorithms) from the demonstration database.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Tender Source	Admin Menu, Tender Source **Note:** Earlier you created tender sources for the remittance processor and your cash drawers. At this point, you will need to add at least one tender source for automatic payments. This is because automatic payments get linked to a tender control (which, in turn, gets linked to a tender source) when they are interfaced out of the system.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up the appropriate automatic payment date calculation algorithm to populate the extract, GL interface and payment dates on automatic payments.	If you have executed the **CI_COPAP** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.
Auto Pay Route Type	Admin Menu, Auto Pay Route Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Tender Type	Admin Menu, Tender Type **Note:** Earlier you created tender types for things like cash, checks, etc. At this point, you will need to add a tender type for each type of automatic payments (for example, direct debt, credit card, etc.).	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Work Calendar	Admin Menu, Work Calendar. You need to set up additional work calendars only if the auto pay sources (that is, the financial institutions) have different working days than your organization.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. If you need to validate the customer's bank account or credit card number, you will need to set up the appropriate validation algorithms.	If you have executed the **CI_COPAP** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.
Auto Pay Source Type	Admin Menu, Auto Pay Source Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up an algorithm if your customers can define a maximum withdrawal limit on their autopay options.	If you have executed the **CI_COPAP** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.
Return to Customer Class	Admin Menu, Customer Class. You should plug-in the Autopay Over Limit Algorithm in each appropriate customer class.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Bill Cycle Environment

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Bill Cycle, Bill Cycle Schedule	Admin Menu, Bill Cycle	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Bill Period, Bill Period Schedule	Admin Menu, Bill Period	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Return to Division	Admin Menu, Division. At this time, you must define the valid bill cycles for the division.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Contract Configuration

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up the algorithms that determine: • How to calculate the late payment charge amount for contracts of a given type • Special criteria to be tested before a contract is severed • Special processing that should take place prior to the completion of a bill that references contracts of a given type • Special processing that should take place during completion of a bill that references contracts of a given type • Special processing that should take place when contracts of a given type are created. • Special processing that should take place when a financial transaction is frozen for contracts of a given type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may want to set up an algorithm that formats the contract information that is displayed throughout the system. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may want to set up an algorithm that formats the contract information that is displayed throughout the system for a specific contract type. This algorithm is plugged-in on the contract type.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. If you want a Control Central alert to highlight when the current account has any stopped contract(s), you will need to set up the algorithm that does this. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Contract Type	Admin Menu, Contract Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Terms and Conditions	Admin Menu, Terms and Conditions	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Contract type Start Options	Admin Menu, Contract Type Start Option	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Credit and Collections Environment

Note: If you collect overdue bills (as opposed to overdue debt), you don't need to set up these tables; refer to Overdue Processing - Set Up Tasks for the list of control tables required to collect overdue bills.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up algorithms if you have non-standard collection events.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up a collection process cancellation algorithm if your organization allows individual contracts to be removed from a collection process if they are paid (rather than performing cancellation based on all contracts in a debt class).	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Collection Class	Admin Menu, Collection Class	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. At this time, you will need to set up the following algorithms: Collection Process Cancellation Criteria, Severance Process Cancellation Criteria, and Override Arrears due to Pay Plans	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Debt Class	Admin Menu, Debt Class	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Write Off Debt Class	Admin Menu, Write Off Debt Class	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up Collection Condition algorithms.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up algorithms if you have non-standard severance events.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up a severance process cancellation algorithm if your organization allows a severance process to be canceled when the related contract is paid (rather than performing cancellation based on all contracts in a debt class).	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. At this time, you will need to set up the following algorithms: How to refer debt to a collection agency, How to transfer debt to another active contract, How to write down small amounts of debt, and How to refund credit balances to a customer	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up algorithms if you have non-standard write-off events.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Write Off Event Type	Admin Menu, Write Off Event Type **Note:** You will have to wait until you have defined your contract types before you can set up the Write Off Events because contract type is a necessary parameter to write off debt.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Write Off Process Template	Admin Menu, Write Off Process Template	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Write Off Control	Admin Menu, Write Off Control	

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Collection Agency	Admin Menu, Collection Agency. **Note:** Each collection agency references a person, and therefore you must set up a person for each agency before you can enter collection agency information.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up algorithms if you have special logic that should be executed when a pay plan is canceled.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Payment Method	Admin Menu, Pay Method	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Installation	Admin Menu, Installation. Several fields on the installation record impact the Credit and Collections Environment.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to setup an algorithm that is called when a user writes-off debt real time.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Return to Customer Class	Admin Menu, Customer Class. You should plug-in the Autopay Over Limit Algorithm in each appropriate customer class.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Customer Class Environment

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Customer Class	Admin Menu, Customer Class. At this point, you will only be able to set up your customer class codes. You will return to these customer classes throughout the setup process to populate additional information.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Customer Environment

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Account Management Group	Admin Menu, Account Management Group. **Note:** You will probably have to set up To Do Type and To Do Roles before you can setup account management groups. Refer to Assigning A To Do Role in the online help for more information on how account management groups may be used to define an entry's role.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Account Relationship	Admin Menu, Account Relationship Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Alert Type	Admin Menu, Alert Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Bill Message	Admin Menu, Bill Message	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. If you have software that is capable of reconstructing an image of a bill in a PDF (for the purpose of online display), you will need to create an algorithm that formats the extract records that are sent to your bill image software.	If you use the Doc 1 printing software, you can run the **CI_COPD1** DB process to copy all Doc 1 oriented algorithms from the demonstration database.
Bill Route Type	Admin Menu, Bill Route Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Contract Quantity Type	Admin Menu, Contract Quantity Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. If you have software that is capable of reconstructing an image of a letter in a PDF (for the purpose of online display), you will need to create an algorithm that formats the extract records that are sent to your letter image software.	If you have executed the **CI_COPD1** DB process that is described above, these algorithms will have been set up for you.
Letter Template	Admin Menu, Letter Template	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Customer Contact Class	Admin Menu, Customer Contact Class	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Customer Contact Type	Admin Menu, Customer Contact Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up the algorithms that determine if person IDs are in a predefined format.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Identifier Type	Admin Menu, Identifier Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
SICs	Admin Menu, SIC Code	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Tax Exempt Type	Admin Menu, Tax Exempt Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up the algorithms that determine if phone numbers are in a predefined format.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Phone Type	Admin Menu, Phone Type.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Person Relationship Type	Admin Menu, Person Relationship Type.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up an algorithm that formats the person information that is displayed throughout the system. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	If you have executed the **CI_COPIN** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up an algorithm to validate a person's name. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	If you have executed the **CI_COPIN** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You can override the system's standard account information string by setting up an algorithm that produces this string of information. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. If you have software that is capable of reconstructing an image of a letter in a PDF for the purpose of online display, you will need to create an algorithm that renders this PDF. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	If you have executed the **CI_COPD1** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. If you have software that is capable of reconstructing an image of a bill in a PDF for the purpose of online display, you will need to create an algorithm that renders this PDF. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	If you have executed the **CI_COPD1** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.
Installation	Admin Menu, Installation Options. Many fields on the installation record impact the Customer Environment. Refer to the description of the Main, Person, and Account tabs for more information.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Characteristic Type	Admin Menu, Characteristic Type. Characteristic types are required for the account to indicate the external account number, account type, and invoice group account indicator.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Return to Division	Admin Menu, Division. At this time, you must define the valid characteristic types for the division.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Feature Configuration	Admin Menu, Feature Configuration. The characteristic types that were setup for the external account number, account type, and invoice group account indicator must be indicated for feature configuration C1_ACCTINFO.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Feature Configuration	Admin Menu, Feature Configuration. If you want to provide the ability to a user to create a person and the account for that person together, you must set the **Create Person Account together** option type of the **C1_PERACCT** feature to **Y**.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Division Environment

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Feature Configuration	Admin Menu, Feature Configuration. There are certain division-specific validations that are triggered on the Person, Account and Contract screens. In order to activate this Division functionality for Banking, you need to set up the C1_DIVFUNCT feature. The **Enforce division-specific validations** option type for the C1_DIVFUNCT feature must be set to Y. Validations for division will not be triggered if this value is set to N.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You must create algorithm for Price Assignment Search with the algorithm type as **C1_PRASN**.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up the algorithms that would determine the actions to be taken when the status of a division is altered.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Work Calendar	Admin Menu, Work Calendar	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Division	Admin Menu, Division. At this point, you will only be able to set up your division codes. You will return to these divisions throughout the setup process to populate additional information.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements. You must setup a division for each jurisdiction in which you conduct business using different rules. When creating customer accounts, they must be associated with an existing division. For Pricing Management functionality, setting up a division is mandatory and the system must contain information about at least one division.
Access Groups Tab in Division	Admin Menu, Division. At this time, you must define the access groups for the division.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Division. At this time, you must associate Price Assignment Search algorithm for each division.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Financial Transaction Environment

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Work Calendar	Admin Menu, Work Calendar	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Return to Division	Admin Menu, Division. At this time, you must define the work calendar for the division.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Revenue Class	Admin Menu, Revenue Class	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up the algorithm that constructs a distribution code's corresponding GL account when it is interfaced to the general ledger.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Distribution Code	Admin Menu, Distribution Code	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Bank & Bank Accounts	Admin Menu, Bank	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Billable Charge Template	Admin Menu, Billable Charge Template. **Note:** If you want the system to default service quantities onto billable charges created using this template, you must setup the appropriate unit of measure code, time-of-use code and/or service quantity identifier.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Billable Charge Upload Line Type	Admin Menu, Billable Charge Line Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up several algorithms. These algorithms include: 1) Calculate a bill segment's bill lines, 2) Construct a bill segment's financial transaction	Rather than setting up these manually, you can run the **CI_COPBI** DB process to copy many of these algorithms from the demonstration database. Review the parameter values in these algorithms after they are copied.
Bill Segment Type	Admin Menu, Bill Segment Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up the algorithm that constructs a payment segment's financial transaction.	Rather than setting up these manually, you can run the **CI_COPPY** DB process to copy many of these algorithms from the demonstration database. Review the parameter values in these algorithms after they are copied.
Payment Segment Type	Admin Menu, Payment Segment Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up the algorithm that constructs an adjustment's financial transaction.	Rather than setting up these manually, you can run the **CI_COPAD** DB process to copy many of these algorithms from the demonstration database. Review the parameter values in these algorithms after they are copied.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. Several plug-in spots are available to perform additional logic when processing adjustments. For example, if you have the system calculate adjustments, you must set up an adjustment generation algorithm. Refer to Adjustment Type for other available plug-in spots that may be used in your implementation.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. Several plug-in spots are available to perform additional logic when processing adjustments. For example, if you have the system calculate adjustments, you must set up an adjustment generation algorithm. Refer to Adjustment Type for other available plug-in spots that may be used in your implementation.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may want to set up an algorithm that formats the Adjustment information that is displayed throughout the system for a specific Adjustment Type. This algorithm is plugged-in on the Adjustment Type.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may want to set up an algorithm that formats the Adjustment information that is displayed throughout the system. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Adjustment Type	Admin Menu, Adjustment Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Adjustment Type Profile	Admin Menu, Adjustment Type Profile	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Cancel Reason – Bill	Admin Menu, Bill Cancel Reason	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Cancel Reason – Payment	Admin Menu, Payment Cancel Reason	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Cancel Reason – Adjustment	Admin Menu, Adjustment Cancel Reason	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Tender Type	Admin Menu, Tender Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements
Tender Source	Admin Menu, Tender Source	To be setup manually as per the business requirements
Installation	Admin Menu, Installation Options - Framework and Admin Menu, Installation Options. Many fields in the installation record impact the financial transaction environment. Refer to the description of the Billing and Financial Transaction tabs and the Messages tab in the Framework page for more information.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up an algorithm that distributes payments.	If you have executed the **CI_COPPY** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up an algorithm that handles overpayment situations.	
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up an algorithm if specific customers can have individual bill due dates.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up an algorithm if you want the system to delete bills that contain only information about historical payments.	If you have executed the **CI_COPBI** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You may need to set up an algorithm if you want the system to levy a non-sufficient funds charge if a payment is canceled due to non-sufficient funds	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up an algorithm that formats the bill information that is displayed throughout the system. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	You can run the **CI_COPIN** DB process to copy many of the algorithms that format basic information from the demonstration database.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up an algorithm that formats the payment information that is displayed throughout the system. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	If you have executed the **CI_COPIN** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up an algorithm that defaults the amount when a payment is manually added. This algorithm also calculates the amount of an automatic payment for a bill for an account with an active auto pay option. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	If you have executed the **CI_COPIN** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. Refer to Customer Class for other available plug-in spots that may be used in your implementation to perform additional logic when processing payments and bills.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Return to Customer Class	Admin Menu, Customer Class. You will need to plug-in the algorithms defined above on your customer classes.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. Refer to Division for available plug-in spots that may be used in your implementation to perform additional logic when processing payments and bills for division.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Global Context

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up an algorithm that populates global context values. The global context is used by various zones in the system to display relevant data. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	You can run the **CI_COPIN** DB process to copy many of the algorithms that support basic functionality from the demonstration database. For more information, refer to Online Help under **Administration** > **Preparing To Implement** > **How To Copy An Algorithm From The Demo Database** .

Late Payment Environment

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up the algorithm that determines whether customers in a customer class are eligible for late payment charges.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up the algorithm that levies late payment charges for customers in a customer class.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Return to Customer Class	Admin Menu, Customer Class. You will need to plug-in the late payment charge algorithms.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Notification and Workflow

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Workflow Event Type	Admin Menu, Workflow Event Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Workflow Process Template	Admin Menu, Workflow Process Template	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Notification Upload Type	Admin Menu, Notification Upload Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Workflow Process Profile	Admin Menu, Workflow Process Profile	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Notification Download Type	Admin Menu, Notification Download Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Notification Download Profile	Admin Menu, Notification Download Profile	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. If you want a Control Central alert to highlight when the current account has active workflow processes, you will need to set up the algorithm that does this. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Pricing Management

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Feature Configuration	Admin Menu, Feature Configuration. Since a global customer is not associated to any division, the system cannot determine the price assignment search order for a global customer. Hence, the default search order is defined for global customers through the **C1_PRASNORDR** feature configuration. This feature configuration contains the **Price Assignment Algorithm** option type where you specify the algorithm which contains the default search order for global customers. You can change this default search order, if required. The valid search order values are — **AGREED_PRICELIST** and **AGREED_FIRST**. You can also create a custom search order, if required.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Feature Configuration	Admin Menu, Feature Configuration. Prices are effective for a particular duration and do not expire until you specify the end date manually. However, if you set the **C1_EXP_OVRD** feature to **Y**, the system will automatically expire the agreed pricing when the agreed pricing of a customer or an account with no end date is overridden. In case you do not want the agreed pricing to automatically expire when it is overridden, you can set the **C1_EXP_OVRD** feature to **N**.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Feature Configuration	Admin Menu, Feature Configuration. You must define the number of records that can be displayed in the **Pricing (Account)** and **Pricing (Customer)** screens using the **C1_PR_REC** feature configuration. If you do not specify the value for the **Effective Pricing RecordSet Limit** option type, no records will be displayed in these screens. Also, if you enter the value as **0**, no records will be displayed in these screens.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Feature Configuration	Admin Menu, Feature Configuration. For division-specific exchange rate, the end date is optional. If you want the end date to be mandatory, you must set the **End Date Required for Division Override** option type of the **C1_EXCHRATE** feature to **Y**.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Tiering Criteria	Main Menu, Pricing Management, Manage Tiering Criteria	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Rate Definition	Main Menu, Pricing Management, Manage Rate Definitions	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Products	Main Menu, Pricing Management, Manage Products	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Products Tab in Division	Admin Menu, Division. At this time, you must define the valid products (including bundles) for the division.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Price Lists	Main Menu, Pricing Management, Manage Price Lists	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Price List Tab in Division	Admin Menu, Division. At this time, you must define the valid price lists for the division.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Exchange Rates	Main Menu, Pricing Management, Manage Exchange Rates	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Rate Environment

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Frequency	Admin Menu, Frequency	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Service Quantity Identifier	Admin Menu, Service Quantity Identifier	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm Type	Admin Menu, Algorithm Type. If you create new Service Quantity Rules, you must set up an algorithm type for each such rule. **Note:** The algorithm type defines the types of parameters that are passed to the Service Quantity Rule.	All base package algorithm types are automatically populated.
Service Quantity Rule	Admin Menu, Service Quantity Rule	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Bill Factor	Main Menu, Rates, Bill Factor	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Rate	Main Menu, Rates, Rate Schedule	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Rate Version	Main Menu, Rates, Rate Version	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. If you use algorithms to dynamically change step boundaries, calculate prices, convert between currencies, or implement rate component eligibility rules, you must set up these algorithms.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Return to Division	Admin Menu, Division. You will need to plug-in the division specific algorithms defined on the division.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Rate Component	Main Menu, Rates, Rate Component	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Bill Factor Value	Main Menu, Rates, Bill Factor Values	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Security Environment

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Application Service	Admin Menu, Application Service	All base package transactions are automatically populated.
Security Type	Admin Menu, Security Type	All base package transactions are automatically populated.
User Group	Admin Menu, User Group **Note:** You will not be able to set up users at this point.	One user group, **ALL-SERVICES**, is automatically setup. It references all other application services and a single user called **SYSUSER**. **Note:** You may be able to import sample user groups from the demonstration database. Also, you may be able to import user groups if your organization has already defined them using LDAP.
Language	Admin Menu, Language	**ENG** is automatically populated.
Display Profile	Admin Menu, Display Profile	The following two display profiles are automatically setup: • **NORTHAM** - Displays currencies and dates in a classic American format • **EURO** - Displays information in a classic European format
Data Access Role	Admin Menu, Data Access Role	All base package transactions are automatically populated.
Access Group	Admin Menu, Access Group	All base package transactions are automatically populated.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
User	Admin Menu, User	BKADMIN is automatically set up. **Note:** You may be able to import users if your organization has already defined them using LDAP.
Return to User Group	You must return to your user groups and define all of their users.	All base package transactions are automatically populated.

Services and Characteristics

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Service Type	Admin Menu, Service Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. If you have ad hoc characteristic types, you may need to set up the algorithms that control how they are validated.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Foreign Key Reference	Admin Menu, FK Reference. If you have foreign key characteristic types, you may need to set up foreign key references to control how the user selects the characteristic values (and how the foreign key values are validated).	All base package FK references are automatically populated.
Characteristic Type & Values	Admin Menu, Characteristic Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Statements

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. If you have software that is capable of reconstructing an image of a statement in a PDF (for the purpose of online display), you will need to create an algorithm that formats the extract records that are sent to your statement image software.	If you have executed the **CI_COPD1** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.
Statement Route Type	Admin Menu, Statement Route Type	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Statement Cycle	Admin Menu, Statement Cycle	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. If you have software that is capable of reconstructing an image of a statement in a PDF for the purpose of online display, you will need to create an algorithm that renders this PDF. This algorithm is plugged-in on the installation record.	If you have executed the **CI_COPD1** DB process that is described above, this algorithm will have been set up for you.

Wrap Up

Function	Menu	Auto Setup
Algorithm	Admin Menu, Algorithm. You will need to set up the algorithms that determine: • Special alerts on Control Central (assuming you have special alerts)	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Installation Options	Admin Menu, Installation Options - Framework and Admin Menu, Installation Options. At this point, it is recommended to cross-check everything on the installation record.	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.
Postal Default	Admin Menu, Postal Code Default	To be setup manually as per the business requirements.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.